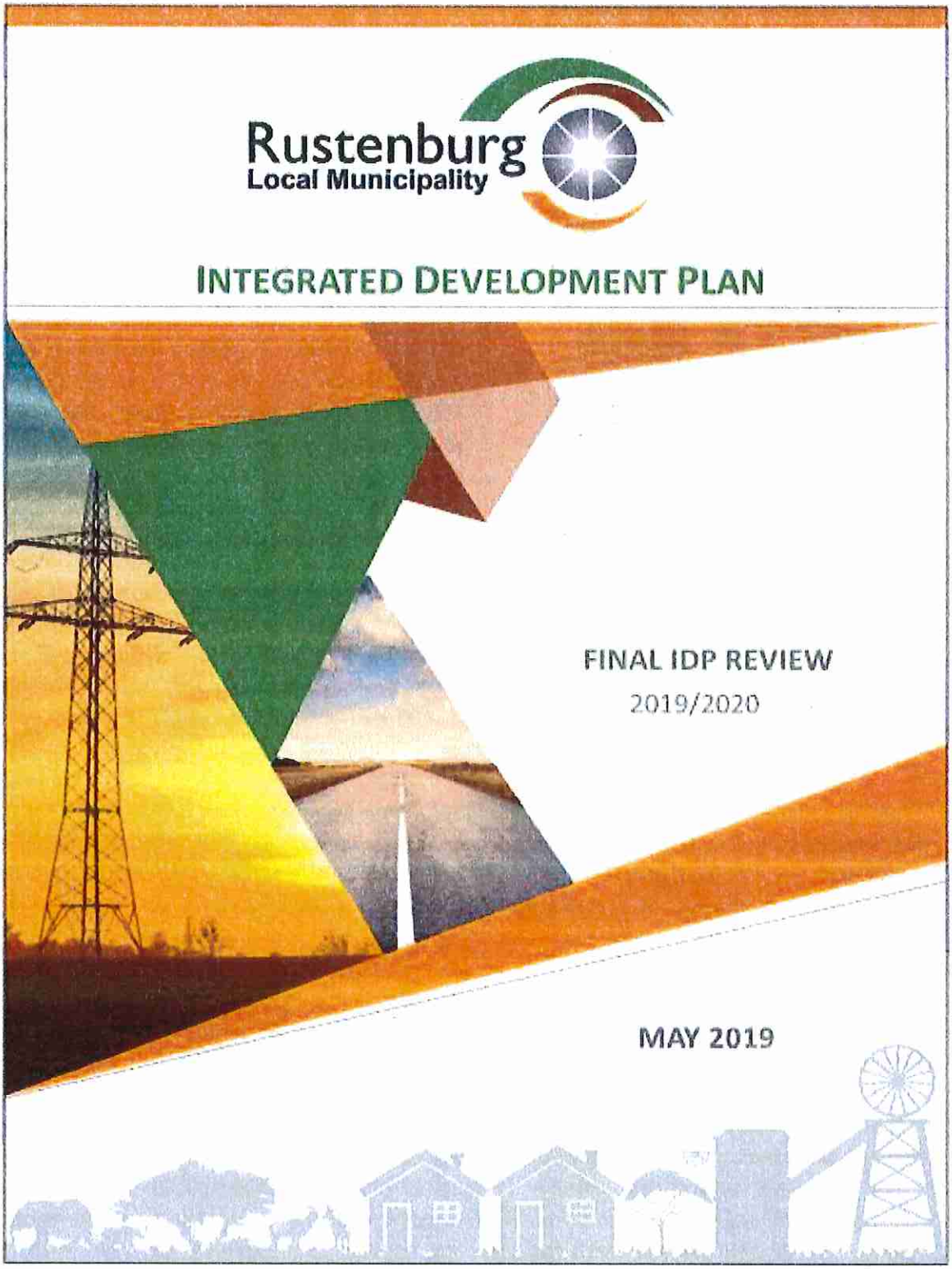
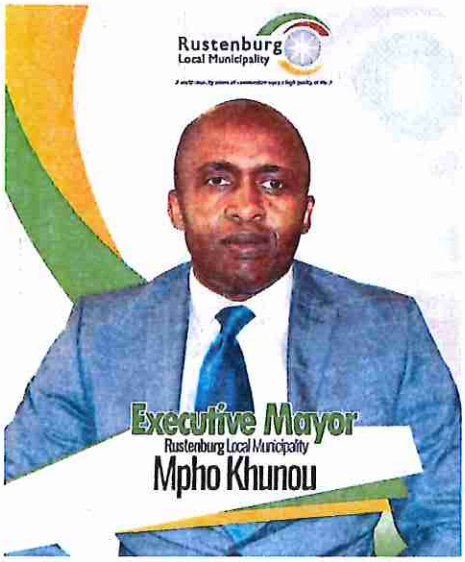

Rustenburg
Local Municipality
INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN
FINAL IDP REVIEW
2019/2020
MAY 2019

EXECUTIVE MAYOR'S FOREWORD



The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) still serves as a strategic tool upon which the developmental needs of the communities of Rustenburg are identified, implemented and monitored. The IDP, drafted in consultation with various stakeholders in the City, aims to provide a structured plan that informs the priorities which must direct the Medium-Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework (MTREF) of the City. In addition, the IDP is used as a basis for sound decision making and allocation of limited resources against unlimited needs and wants. In revising the IDP an extensive exercise has been conducted to ensure we engage as many stakeholders as possible through the public participation mechanisms in place in order to ensure that this strategic document still reflects the key priorities of all stakeholders as well as to enable Council and management to take stock of the achievements and challenges over the past two years along with the two and a half years since the commencement of the new Council in 2016. This revised IDP is to ensure that the mandate of the people based on a liquid environment is still being met by the elected Council. We remain resolute in pursuing the Vision of "***A World Class City where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity***....".

The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 compels the Municipal Council to develop and adopt a five (5) year Integrated Development Plan (IDP), which must be reviewed on an annual basis. It is imperative to note that this IDP represents the medium to long-term developmental Vision and overarching Mission of the Municipality as it charts the road map for a people-centered and people driven developmental Municipality.

The revised five (5) year IDP tabled at Council is the third review of the IDP through which we are determined to progressively continue impacting the livelihoods of our populace positively amidst concerns raised from varying areas of our society.

Post tabling the revised 2017/22 draft IDP at the envisaged ordinary Council of 26th March 2019 an extensive public participation process will unfold to ensure that we, as the servants and representatives of our constituent communities, continue to listen to our various stakeholders' developmental aspirations and that we continue to deliver on the mandate that they have given us as the elected Council. The 2019/20 Medium-Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework (MTREF) which is informed by the revised IDP will be subjected to public participation in order to ensure that what we commit to deliver in the IDP is supported by a credible and funded budget.

Great strides have been made over the 2018/19 financial year which saw an improvement in basic service delivery, huge investments towards municipal water, electricity and sanitation infrastructure, near completion of the BRT road infrastructure upgrades, stabilization in the finances of the municipality, a continued drive towards prioritizing local economic development, maintenance of municipal facilities as well as the general beautification of the City. There were a number of challenges experienced in terms of service delivery especially in the area of electricity and roads maintenance in the first half of the financial year as a result of a lack of resources in terms of fleet (both heavy and light duty vehicles) and materials in those Directorates. These challenges are being resolved as indicated through the launch of the Redirela Sechaba service delivery programme which is a fully resourced service delivery programme that is aimed at focusing on improving the service delivery turnaround times as well as planned maintenance of infrastructure.

Despite the challenges experienced over 2018/19 financial year we remain confident that the establishment of the Rustenburg University is a dream that is nearing its fruition, as well as the establishment of the first of its kind International Convention Center (ICC), the delivery of the Smart City (which is finally set to commence post a thorough consultative process with legal), establishment of the Fresh Produce Market (which is a catalyst to unlocking the Agricultural sector), development of the Industrial Park, completion of the BRT Project (which will contribute to the improvement of transport network as well as provide opportunities for densification), conversion of Waste to Energy Project at the Town and Townlands landfill site which will all be projects that are game changers in terms of driving the agenda of diversification as well as creating much needed business and job opportunities.

In the pursuit of a World Class City it is critical that we look after the well-being of both the political and administrative human capital mandated to drive the agenda of the communities. It is therefore important to ensure that we provide a safe working environment for both the political and administrative teams. In doing so, plans to upgrade both the Mpheni House as well as the Civic Center are at an advanced design stage with the actual refurbishment envisaged to commence at the start of the 2019/20 financial year. It is important that we strive to be a World Class employer through the improvement of the workspaces with the objective of creating a worker friendly environment for sustained improved productivity. We believe that this will improve the service delivery offering by the Municipality to both the internal and external stakeholders.

Cost-cutting measures remain the basis of all our operations as the current economic climate does not permit any inefficiencies as consumers continue to struggle under increased costs of living as depicted by increased ESKOM Tariffs, water tariffs, property rates, VAT as well as the continuous increase in fuel prices.

Despite financial constraints stemming from the current economic climate we remain committed to providing responsive, effective, efficient, and sustainable municipal services. We continue to deliver on our mandate to change the lives of our people for the better. A number of policies, among them the Indigent and the Credit Control policies, have been reviewed and enhanced in order to improve the quality of the lives of those falling within the indigents category whilst also ensuring that the revised Credit Control Policies assists the Municipality in collecting the revenues for services rendered. We continue to urge communities to ensure that they pay for the services consumed as these funds go towards the development of the City and the financial sustainability of the municipality.

We still remain committed to the fight to uproot corruption in the institution which robs our society of quality basic services delivered in a cost efficient and sustainable manner. The fight to rebuild both the municipality as well as the City into one that all stakeholders can be proud to live and work in is on-going with many having felt the wrath of the law over the past financial year.

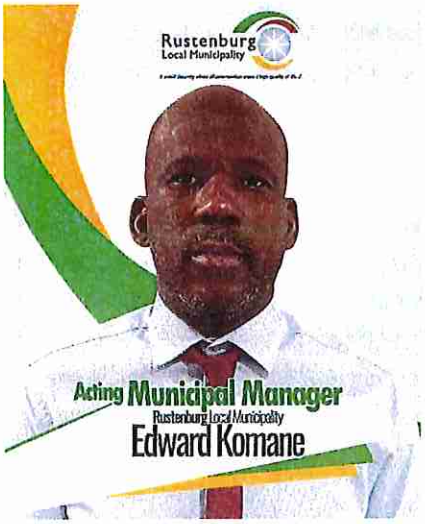
As per the call last year it is now more than ever critical that all stakeholders (both internal and external) continue to join hands, remain committed and undeterred in our mission of uplifting Rustenburg and the Vision of attaining a World Class City where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity. On our own there can be no great strides and as such we rely on all stakeholders to contribute to the betterment of our beloved City.

In the words of the late great President Nelson Mandela "***It always seems impossible until it is done***".

I thank you.

.....
CLR MPHO KHUNOU
EXECUTIVE MAYOR

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY



The municipality remains on the right track to achieve the vision of a World Class City where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity. This Vision can only be achieved through the efficient provision of quality basic services within a well-planned Spatial Structure, embarking on a new economic growth trajectory that focuses on developing a diversified local economy to create the much needed job opportunities, ensuring sustainable municipal financial viability and management of the affairs of the municipality through compliance with the legislative prescripts, policies and sound and transparent governance, ensuring the maintenance of a clean, green safe and healthy municipal environment for all, transforming and maintaining a vibrant and sustainable rural development, through upholding Good Governance and Public Participation Principles as well as driving an optimal institutional developmental, transformation and capacity building. Despite all the challenges we encounter in delivering on the mandate given to Council by the communities in 2016, the 2018/19 financial year has been another step forward in many fronts ensuring that we do not veer off from the vision.

It is with great humility and grace that once more, we have been able to engage our local communities through the public participation process that enabled us to put together and present a final draft of the revised 2019/20 Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The revised IDP is presented in compliance with Section 29(1)(b) and 16(1)(a)(i) of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000). Section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 states that the Municipal IDP must reflect the under-mentioned components:

a) the Municipal Council's Vision for long-term development with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical developments and internal transformation needs;
b) An assessment of existing land for development in the Municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic services;
c) the Council's development priorities and objectives for its elected term, including its local economic development aims and its internal transformation needs;
d) the Council's developmental strategies which must be aligned with any National or Provincial Sector plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation;
e) a spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality;
f) the Council's operational strategies;
g) applicable disaster management plans;
h) a financial plan, which must include a budget projection for at least the next three years; and

i) the key performance indicators and performance targets determined in terms of Section 41 of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000.

The structure of the revised Draft 2019/20 IDP is in line with the legislative provisions. The IDP highlights the Municipality's Vision, Priorities and Strategies, including key performance indicators and Performance Targets and Sector Plans as espoused therein.

Section 1

This Section contains the Introduction & Legislative Framework which establishes the basis of the IDP emanating from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, the White paper on Local Government, Local Government: Municipal System Act No. 32 of 2000 and various other pieces of legislation. The Long-term Municipal Developmental Vision Statement is clearly outlined in this chapter which is still remains to be the attainment of ***"A World Class City where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity"***. Section 1 further outlines the processes followed during the IDP review. The process plan was duly approved by Council within 60 days after the start of the financial year being August 2018.

The section further looks at both the National and Provincial Policy context to ensure that the IDP aligns with the National (National Development Plan) as well as the Provincial agenda (Bokone Bophirima Province Development Plan).

The IDP as detailed in this section sets out the Municipal Strategic agenda which includes the Vision, Mission, Municipal Values, Strategic Priorities/Thrusts as well as the Municipal Goals.

IDP Development and Key priorities: As detailed in section 1 the Rustenburg Local Municipality's developmental priorities are as follows:

1) Efficient Provision of quality Basic Services and Infrastructure within a well-planned Spatial Structure;
2) Drive diversified Economic growth and Job Creation;
3) Ensure Municipal Financial Viability and Management;
4) Maintain Clean, Green, Safe and Healthy Municipal Environment for all;
5) Transform and Maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development;
6) Uphold Good Governance and Public Participation Principles; and
7) Drive Optimal Institutional Development, Transformation and Capacity Building.

The document is duly aligned to the following national and provincial plans and programme: National Development Plan, Medium Term Strategic Framework, North West Development Plan, Back to Basics and National Outcomes.

Section 2

This Section contains the overall Municipal analysis and statistical assessment of the demographic profile for the entire Municipality. It also denotes the analysis of functions rendered by the municipality as stipulated in the Municipal Structures Act No. 117 of 1998, including Basic Services, Social and Community development matters, Financial analysis, Economic development and planning etc.

Community Developmental needs from all the 45 Wards of the Municipality were corroborated during the ward committee meetings are also summarized in this Section of the document.

Section 3

This Section deals with Sectoral Analysis and Strategies per Key Performance Areas (KPAs). The mandate of all eight (8) Directorates of the Municipality is unpacked in accordance with the ensuing developmental imperatives of the Municipality, emanating challenges and the proposed interventions thereto.

Section 4

This Section comprises the following components:

a) **Implementation Plan**, which is constituent of the Key Focus Areas, Developmental Strategies, Key Performance Areas (KPIs and pre-determined Performance Targets for the incumbent Financial Year.
b) **Rustenburg Local Municipality Prioritised Projects** over the 2019/20 MTREF
c) **Programmes and/or Projects** funded and implemented by the National and Provincial Departments and other Organs of the State within Rustenburg Local Municipality's jurisdictional area.
d) **Programmes and Projects** implemented by the Business Community through Social Labour Plans (SLPs) and Corporate Social Investments (CSIs) in fulfilment of the Legislative requirements for their operations within a specific area.

Section 5

The Integration Phase seeks to integrate various Sector Plans and Programs to avoid duplication of resources by National, Provincial and Local spheres of government. In compliance to the legislation, Rustenburg Local Municipality has the following plans and programme in place:

- Revenue Enhancement Programme/Financial Plan;
- Service Delivery Budget and Implementation Plan (SDBIP);
- Risk Based Audit plan;
- Water Service Development Plan;
- Local Economic Development Plan;
- Integrated Waste Management Plan;
- Disaster Management Plan;
- Performance Management Policy Framework;
- Integrated Transport Plan (ITP);
- City Development Strategy (CDS);
- Draft Spatial Development Framework (SDF);
- Draft Housing Sector Plan;
- Electricity Master Plan;
- Draft Human Resource Development Strategy;
- Draft Communication Strategy;
- HIV/Aids Plan; and
- Employment Equity Plan and Procurement Plan

Section 6

This Section is dedicated to the five (5) year Financial Plan which is aimed at ensuring that the Municipality is striving for sound Financial Management and Viability. Looking at the medium-term with regards to the ensuing developmental imperatives and related strategies, the plan seeks to address a number of aspects to achieve the desired outcomes within the five-year period. For the remainder of the 2017 – 2022 term of Council, the Municipality will focus on the following as a five year planning approach:

a) Financial Stability (Short-term, 1 – 2 years);
b) Financial Consolidation (medium-term, 3 years); and
c) Sustainability (long-term, 4 – 5 years)

Section 7

This Section outlines the Municipality's Performance Management and Monitoring processes, mechanisms and procedures, and how the Municipality plans to continuously improve on its Performance Management Processes, thereby attracting and building a high performing team for better service delivery.

As part of our long-term Developmental Vision is still the aspiration to deliver a Rustenburg Post-Mining. This means that we must be able to leverage the good fortunes of today's mining resources to massively contribute towards our envisioned future whilst focusing all the efforts towards the establishment of a Rustenburg University which will reposition Rustenburg as an Education Hub.

No matter the challenges as management we are not discouraged and will continue the journey of delivering of our promise of a World Class City. The challenges we face are nothing compared to the rewards that await. Through perseverance and a commitment to continue to work diligently and smartly I now more than ever am determined to drive the institution and the City to new heights.

We trust that the community will continue to be our sounding board as to where we show success and especially in areas where we need to improve. We remain committed to continue to serve the people of Rustenburg in all that we do. We continue to commit to self-reflect and correct in our ambition to uphold the Batho Pele principles.

Together we can do more.

Thank you

Edward Komane
ACTING MUNICIPAL MANAGER

CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE MAYOR'S FOREWORD ii

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY v

1. INTRODUCTION 1

1.1 LEGAL BACKGROUND 1

1.2 IDP REVIEW PROCESS 3

1.3 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL POLICY CONTEXT 3

1.3.1 CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA 108 OF 1996 3

1.3.2 National Development Plan 4

1.3.3 Medium Term Strategic Framework 2014-2019 5

1.3.4 Bokone Bophirima Province Development Plan 6

1.4 MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC AGENDA 11

2. MUNICIPAL OVERVIEW 15

2.1 PROVINCIAL AND REGIONAL CONTEXT 15

2.2 LOCAL SPATIAL FEATURES 15

2.2.1 Structuring Elements 15

2.2.2 Settlement Patterns 16

2.2.3 Open Space and Protected Areas 18

2.2.4 Agriculture 19

2.2.5 Mining 20

2.2.6 Tourism 21

2.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROFILE 21

2.3.1 Total Population 22

Population projections 23

Population by population group, Gender and Age 25

Population Pyramids 26

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP 28

HIV+ AND AIDS ESTIMATES 31

2.3.2 Economy 33

GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT BY REGION (GDP-R) 34

Economic Growth Forecast 36
GROSS VALUE ADDED BY REGION (GVA-R) 38
istorical Economic Growth 40
Tress Index 46
LOCATION QUOTIENT 47
2.3.3 Labour 48
ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE POPULATION (EAP) 51
Labour Force participation rate 52
TOTAL EMPLOYMENT 54
FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT 56
UNEMPLOYMENT 58
2.3.4 Income and Expenditure 61
NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY INCOME CATEGORY 61
ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME 63
ANNUAL PER CAPITA INCOME 65
INDEX OF BUYING POWER 67
2.3.5 Development 69
HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) 69
GINI COEFFICIENT 71
POVERTY 73
EDUCATION 77
FUNCTIONAL LITERACY 80
POPULATION DENSITY 83
2.3.6 Crime 86
IHS COMPOSITE CRIME INDEX 86
2.3.7 Household Infrastructure 89
HOUSEHOLD BY DWELLING TYPE 89
HOUSEHOLD BY TYPE OF SANITATION 92
HOUSEHOLDS BY ACCESS TO WATER 94
HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF ELECTRICITY 96
HOUSEHOLDS BY REFUSE DISPOSAL 98

2.3.8 Tourism 101
TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIPS 101
ORIGIN OF TOURISTS 102
TOURISM SPENDING 105
2.3.9 International Trade 108
RELATIVE IMPORTANCE OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE 108
2.4 COMMUNITY NEEDS PER WARD 111
2.5 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL STRENGTHS, WEAKNESSES, OPPORTUNITIES & THREATS 122
3. SECTORAL ANALYSIS AND STRATEGIES 123
3.1 CORPORATE SUPPORT 123
3.1.1 Powers, Duties and Functions 123
3.1.2 Political Leadership and Governance Structures 124
3.1.3 Inter-Governmental Relations 127
3.1.4 Rustenburg Administration and Operational Governance Structure 128
3.1.5 Workforce Numbers and Allocation 130
3.1.6 Employment Equity 132
3.1.7 Skills Development within RLM 133
3.1.8 Information and Communication Technology Enhancement 135
3.1.9 Policy Framework, By-Laws and sector plans 140
3.2 BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE 141
3.3 PLANNING AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT 146
3.3.1 Spatial Planning 146
3.3.2 RLM SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (2019) 147
3.3.3 Human Settlement 153
3.4 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT 161
3.4.1 Mandate and Purpose of the LED Directorate 161
3.4.2 Local Economic Development Opportunities 162
3.4.3 Five Year Implementation Plan 167
3.5 TECHNICAL AND INFRASTRUCTURE SERVICES 170
3.5.1 Water Services 170

3.5.2 Sanitation Services 175
3.5.3 Electricity Services 178
3.5.4 Electricity Services 182
3.5.5 Roads and Transport Directorate 185
3.6 COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT 196
3.6.1 CIVIL FACILITIES MANAGEMENT 196
3.6.2 COMMUNITY FACILITIES 197
3.6.3 LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SERVICES 212
3.6.4 INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT 212
3.7 PUBLIC SAFETY 248
3.7.1 Crime Prevention 248
3.7.2 Disaster Management 255
3.7.3 Traffic SERVICES 258
3.7.4 Licensing and Testing 260
4. IMPLEMENTATION PLAN AND PROJECTS 262
4.1 IMPLEMENTATION PLAN, PROGRAMMES AND/ OR PROJECTS 262
4.2 RLM PRIORITY PROJECTS FOR 2018/19 IMPLEMENTATION PLAN 275
4.3 NATIONAL, PROVINCIAL AND PARASTATAL PROJECTS 292
4.4 BUSINESS COMMUNITY PROJECTS 313
5. INTEGRATION 320
5.1 SECTOR PLAN ALIGNMENT WITH IDP 320
6. FINANCIAL PLAN 341
6.1 INTRODUCTION 341
6.1.1 Financial analysis 342
6.2 OPERATING AND CAPITAL BUDGETS 347
6.2.1 Budget Assumptions 347
6.2.2 Capital Budget 347
6.3 FINANCIAL STRATEGY FRAMEWORK 348
6.3.1 Revenue Management and Tariff Setting 349
6.3.2 Cash/Liquidity Position 350
6.3.3 Sustainability 351

6.3.4 Effective and Efficient Use of Resources 353
6.3.5 Accountability, Transparency and Good Governance 353
6.3.6 Equity and Redistribution 353
6.3.7 Development and Investment 354
6.3.8 Macro-Economic Investment 354
6.3.9 Borrowing 354
6.4 STRATEGIES 355
6.4.1 Revenue Raising Strategies 355
6.4.2 Asset Management Strategies 356
6.4.3 Financial Management Strategies 357
6.4.4 Capital Financing Strategies 358
6.4.5 Operational Financing Strategies 359
6.5 PROGRAMMES 362
6.5.1 Billing Programme 362
6.5.2 Customer Care Service Improvement Programme 362
6.6 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMMES 363
6.6.1 To Ensure Revenue Adequacy 363
6.6.2 Reduce the Debt Owed to the Municipality 363
6.6.3 Implementation of the Municipal Property Rates Act 364
6.6.4 Seek Alternative Sources of Funding 364
6.6.5 Maximise the Revenue from Properties Owned by Council 364
6.6.6 Value for Money Expenditure 364
6.6.7 Investment Management 364
6.6.8 Creditors management 364
7. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND MONITORING 365

List of Figures

Figure 1: North West SDF
Figure 2: Bojanala SDF
Figure 3: Land Use
Figure 4: Ward Boundaries (2016)
Figure 5: Rustenburg LM SDF Review
Figure 6: Informal Settlements

List of Tables

Table 7: RLM Priority Community Needs per Ward 112
Table 8: RLM SWOT Analysis 122
Table 9: Allocated Powers, Duties and Functions of RLM 123
Table 10: Party-political representation of Councillors 125
Table 11: RLM Workforce Totals on 2018/12/31 130
Table 14: Skills Programmes 133
Table 15: Learning Intervention 134
Table 16: High Level Summary of the Top Five (5) Risks 143
Table 17: SDF Criteria 149
Table 18: Information Pertaining Informal Settlements 153
Table 19: Projects to be included in project pipeline 159
Table 20: Agricultural potential for the Rustenburg LM 163
Table 21: Summary of opportunities identified for the mining sector 163
Table 22: Summary of identified opportunities for the manufacturing sector 164
Table 23: Summary of Projects Identified for the General Government Services Sector 166
Table 24: Opportunities 167
Table 25: Historic Spending Profile 192
Table 27: Summary of Challenges 251
Table 28: Crime Prevention Strategy and Plan 254
Table 29: Sector Plan Alignment with the IDP 321

List of Diagrams

Diagram 1: RLM Strategic Agenda
Diagram 2: Demography Profile Summary
Diagram 3: Economic Profile Summary
Diagram 4: Labour / Income and Expenditure Profile
Diagram 5: Household Infrastructure Profile
Diagram 6: Tourism Profile
Diagram 7: Top Macro Organisational Structure of Rustenburg Local Municipality
Diagram 8: Rustenburg Informal Settlement Upgrading Policy
Diagram 9: Informal Settlements Categorisation Model

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Acronym	Detail
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
CCTV	Closed Circuit Television
DLG&HS	Department of Local Governance and Human settlements
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
CPI	Consumer Price Index
DPME	Department: Monitoring and Evaluation
DPLG	Department of Provincial and Local Government
DTI	Department of Trade and Industry
EEP	Employment Equity Plan
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
GIS	Geographic information system
HH	Households
HIV/AIDS	Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection/Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome
HRD	Human Resource Development
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
IT	Information Technology
WAN	Wireless Area Network
LAN	Local Area Network
IRPTN	Integrated Rapid Public Transport Network
RRT	Rustenburg Rapid Transport
KPI	Key performance Indicator
LED	Local Economic Development
MFMA	Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act 56 of 2003
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MM	Municipal Manager
MPRA	Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act 6 of 2004
MSA	Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000
MTREF	Medium- term Revenue and Expenditure Framework
NDP	National Development Plan
NGO	Non-government Organisation
PIP	Performance Improvement Plan
PMS	Performance Management System
PMU	Project Management Unit
PR	Proportional Representation
SEDA	Small Enterprise Development Agency
SETA	Sectoral Education Training Authority
SMMEs:	Small, Micro and Medium Enterprises

SEO	Search Engine Optimization
SCM	Supply Chain Management
SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SLA	Service Level Agreement
SHI	Social Housing Institutions
WSP	Workplace Skills Plan

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 LEGAL BACKGROUND

The objectives of Local Government are based on a co-operative government framework that encourages participation of all Municipal Councils as well as the Provincial and National spheres of Government in public policy setting, development planning and the delivery of services.

The Constitutional Mandate for Municipalities is that they strive, within their Financial and Administrative capacity, to achieve these objectives and carry out the developmental duties assigned to Local Government. Municipal Councils therefore take charge of the following principal responsibilities:

- The provision of democratic and accountable government without favour of prejudice;
- Encouraging the involvement of the local community;
- Providing all members of the local community with equitable access to the municipal services that they are entitled to;
- Planning at the local and regional levels for the development and future requirements of the area;
- Monitoring the performance of the Municipality by carefully evaluating Budget Reports and Annual Performance Reports to avoid financial difficulties, and if necessary, to identify causes and remedial measures for the identified Financial and Administrative challenges;
- Providing services, facilities and financial capacity within the guidelines provided by the Constitution and Legislative Authority.

Against this backdrop, Integrated Development Planning is a process through which a Municipality, various national, provincial and parastatal service providers, and private interested and affected parties come together to identify development needs, and to outline clear objectives and strategies which serve to guide the allocation and management of financial, human and infrastructure resources within the Municipality's jurisdictional area.

From this planning process emanates the Municipal Integrated Development Plan (IDP), with its main objective being the improvement of coordination and integration of planning, budgeting and development within the Municipal area. As a five (5) year budgeting, decision-making, strategic planning and development tool, the IDP is used by the Municipality to fulfil its role of *'developmental local governance'*. Central to this are the overarching objectives and strategies encapsulated in the plan, which guide the Municipality in the realm of:

- Municipal Budgeting;

- Institutional Restructuring in order to realise the strategic intent of the plan;
- Integrating various sectors in the form of Infrastructure, Land Use, Economic, Social and Ecological dimensions; and
- Performance Management.

In addition to the legal requirement for every Municipality to compile an Integrated Development Plan as referred to above, the Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000 (MSA) also requires that:

- The IDP be implemented;
- The Municipality monitors the implementation of the IDP;
- The Municipality evaluates its performance with regard to the implementation of the IDP; and
- The IDP be reviewed annually to effect improvements where necessary.

Section 34 of the Act deals with the Review and Amendment of the IDP and states that:

"The Municipal Council:

a) Must review its Integrated Development Plan
   i) annually in accordance with an assessment of its performance measures in terms of Section 41 and;
   ii) to the extent that changing circumstances so demand and;

b) May amend its Integrated Development Plan in accordance with the prescribed process".

The annual review process thus relates to the assessment of the Municipality's performance against organisational objectives as well as implementation delivery, and also takes into cognisance any new information or change in circumstances that might have arisen subsequent to the adoption of the previous IDP. The review and amendment process must also adhere to the requirements for public participation as articulated in Chapter 4 of the MSA (2000).

The IDP process described above represents a continuous cycle of planning, implementation, monitoring and review. Implementation commences after the Municipal Council adopts the Final Draft IDP and Budget for the subsequent financial year and implementation feeds into the Performance Management System of the municipality. Public Participation remains pivotal throughout the process of the IDP.

In line with the above directives this document represents the Draft Revised Integrated Development Plan as prepared by the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) as part of its 2019/20 IDP Review process. It is submitted and prepared in fulfilment of the Municipality's legal obligation in terms of Section 34 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (MSA Act 32 of 2000).

1.2 IDP REVIEW PROCESS

The Rustenburg Municipality Council adopted and approved a Process Plan for the drafting of the 2019/20 to 2023/24 review within its area of jurisdiction. This plan was adopted in accordance with Section 27 of the MSA relevant legal prescripts and have dictated the process followed in reviewing this IDP.

During the review cycle, changes to the IDP process and content have been necessitated due to:

- Institutional Issues;
- Amendments in response to changing circumstances;
- Needs to improve the IDP process and content.

Organisational arrangements were put in place as per the Process Plan and all legislative prescripts were adhered to. Of particular note have been the effective launching and subsequent operations of all the necessary structures such as the IDP Representative Forum, and other IGR Fora.

These have executed their mandates in terms of the adopted Process Plan and ensured the achievement of key milestones and deliverables in the process.

1.3 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL POLICY CONTEXT

Development in South Africa is broadly guided and directed by a wide range of legislation. Some legislation is sector specific e.g. housing, transport and environment, while others are more generic in nature, focusing on planning processes, alignment of planning processes and proposals, and the legal requirements pertaining to sector plans to be compiled.

The following section briefly deals with each of these, and highlights the most salient aspects emanating from the aforementioned policies/ plans.

1.3.1 CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA 108 OF 1996

The Constitution of South Africa, contained in Act 108 of 1996, is the supreme law of South Africa. Amongst other things, it prescribes different functions to different tiers of government to ensure the equitable and functional distribution of roles, responsibilities and duties. Accordingly, it has assigned specific functional areas to national, provincial and local government.

In terms of the Constitution, the Rustenburg Local Municipality is legally obliged to:

- Structure and manage its administration, budgeting and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community, and to promote the social and economic development of the community; and
- Participate in national and provincial development programmes.

1.3.2 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN

The National Development Plan envisages an economy that serves the needs of all South Africans – rich and poor, black and white, skilled and unskilled, those with capital and those without, urban and rural, women and men. The Vision is that by 2030 the economy should be close to full employment, equip people with the skills they need; ensure that ownership of production is less concentrated and more diverse (where black people and women own a significant share of productive assets); and be able to grow rapidly while providing the resources to pay for investment in human and physical capital.

Subsequently, the National Development Plan proposes to create 11 million jobs by 2030 by:

- Realising an environment for sustainable employment and inclusive economic growth;
- Promoting employment in labour-absorbing industries;
- Raising exports and competitiveness;
- Strengthening government's capacity to give leadership to economic development;
- Mobilising all sectors of society around a national vision.

Proposals to increase employment and growth include the following:

- Raise exports, focusing on those areas where South Africa already has the endowments and comparative advantage, such as mining, construction, mid-skill manufacturing, agriculture and agro-processing, tourism and business services;
- Increase the size and effectiveness of the innovation system, and ensure closer alignment with companies that operate in sectors consistent with the growth strategy;
- Improve the functioning of the labour market to help the economy absorb more labour, through reforms and specific proposals concerning dispute resolution and discipline;
- Support small businesses through better coordination of activities in small business agencies, development finance institutions, and public and private incubators;
- Improve the skills base through better education and vocational training;
- Increase investment in social and economic infrastructure to lower costs, raise productivity and bring more people into the mainstream of the economy;
- Reduce the regulatory burden in sectors where the private sector is the main investor, such as broadband internet connectivity, to achieve greater capacity and lower prices;

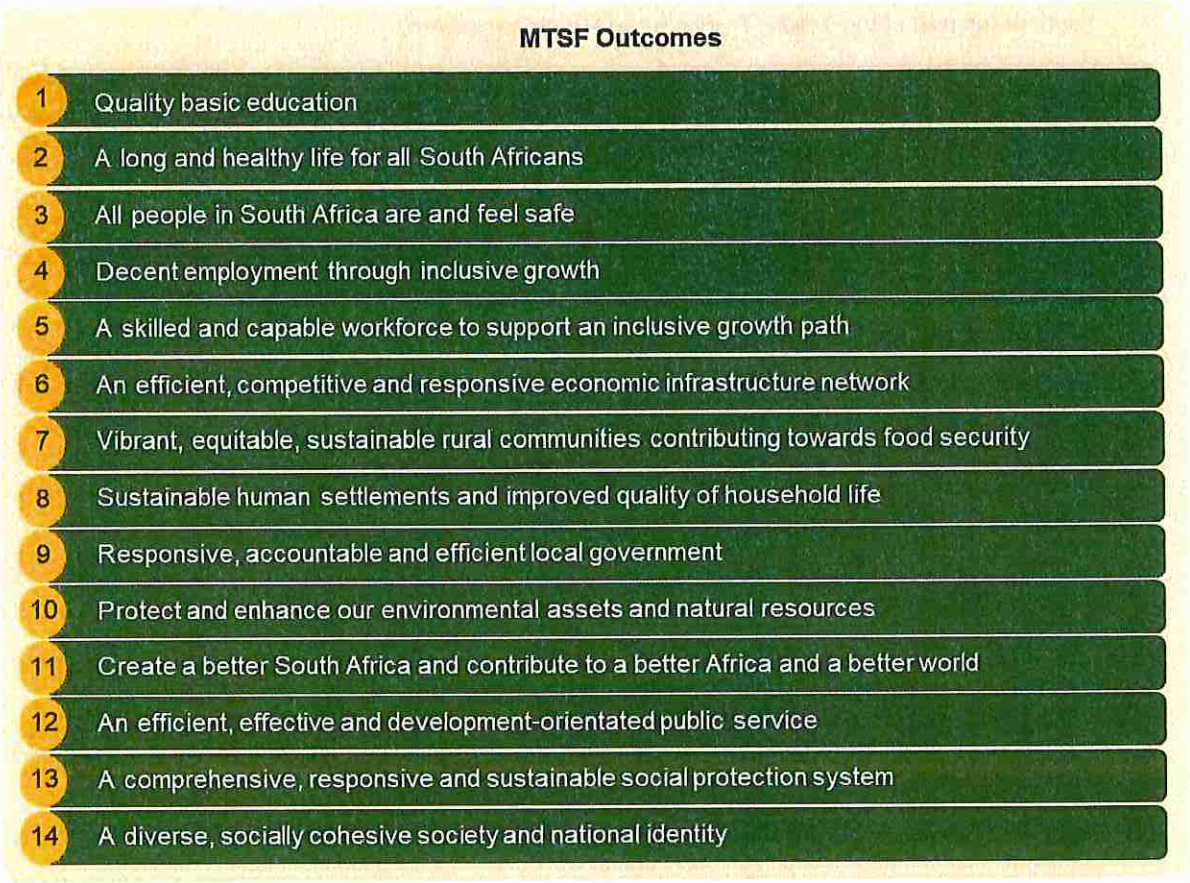
- Improve the capacity to the state to effectively implement economic policy;
- The upgrading of informal settlements;
- Public transport infrastructure and systems, including the renewal of the commuter rail fleet, supported by station and facilities upgrades to enhance links with road-based services;
- Producing about 20 000 MW of renewable electricity by 2030, importing electricity from the region, decommissioning 11 000 MW of aging coal-fired power stations, and accelerated investments in demand-side savings, including technologies such as solar water heating;
- To create a million jobs through agricultural development based on effective land production;
- Ensuring food security and the empowerment of farm workers, and promote industries such as agro-processing, tourism, fisheries and small enterprises in rural areas where potential exists.

1.3.3 MEDIUM TERM STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK 2014-2019

The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) is Government's strategic plan for the 2014-2019 electoral term. It reflects the commitments made in the election manifesto of the governing party, including the commitment to implement the NDP. The MTSF sets out the actions Government will take and targets to be achieved and focuses on the following priorities:

- Radical economic transformation, rapid economic growth and job creation;
- Rural development, land and agrarian reform and food security;
- Ensuring access to adequate human settlements and quality basic services;
- Improving the quality of and expanding access to education and training;
- Ensuring quality health care and social security for all citizens;
- Contributing to a better Africa and a better world;
- Social cohesion and nation building.

Below is a summary of the priority national outcomes set out in the MTSF:



1.3.4 BOKONE BOPHIRIMA PROVINCE DEVELOPMENT PLAN

The Bokone Bophirima Provincial Development Plan (PDP) is predominantly based on the National Development Plan (NDP) and attempts to align with the vision, objectives and priorities of a united South Africa by 2030.

The chosen development priorities with which the Province intends to align to the National Development Plan (NDP) are the following:

Provincial Priority Area 1: Economy and Employment

The provincial economy needs to become more productive, more competitive and more diversified. Prioritised sectors are identified as such for their potential to encourage or drive growth and or for their ability to create employment. The sectors identified include:

- Agriculture
- Mining
- Construction and infrastructure
- Specific manufacturing sub-sectors with special reference to renewal energy manufacturing

- Tourism (as part of the Trade, Transport and Finance sectors)
- Overarching strategic priorities: Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises (SMME) development and financial sector inclusion and development (SMMEs are located in all sectors of the economy)

Provincial Priority Area 2: Economic Infrastructure

- Develop and improve water infrastructure (the focus being on re-use, conservation and maintenance)
- Develop energy infrastructure and services provision
- Expand renewable energy with special reference to solar power (solar power heaters and solar photovoltaic technologies)
- Develop (provide, upgrade and maintain) transport infrastructure
- Improve public transport and mobility in rural areas
- Accelerate deployment of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) infrastructure and increase utilisation

Provincial Priority Area 3: An Integrated and Inclusive Rural Economy

- Agriculture production needs to be expanded with emphasis on well-supported small-scale farming, communal farmers, commercial farmers and cooperatives.
- Rural economies will be activated through improved infrastructure and service delivery, a review of land tenure, services to small and micro farmers, a review of mining industry commitments to social investment, and tourism investments.

Provincial Priority Area 4: Human Settlement and Spatial Transformation

- Ensure that the delivery of housing contributes to the restructuring of towns and cities and strengthens the livelihood prospects of households
- Active citizenship in spatial development should be supported through properly funded interventions that encompass citizen-led neighbourhood vision and planning processes; and the introduction of social compacts
- Settlement planning should ensure the creation of spaces that are liveable, equitable, sustainable, resilient and efficient, and that support economic opportunities and social cohesion

Provincial Priority Area 5: Improving Education, Training and Innovation

- Strong Early Childhood Development (ECD), basic education, further and higher education systems are critical to the development of the province
- Improve basic education learning outcomes and eradicate infrastructure backlogs
- Enhance Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in schools
- Align higher education skills development with economic growth sectors and clusters

- Strengthen and expand the number of Further Education and Training (FET) colleges so that the participation rate can grow to 25 per cent
- Promote distance education and Information and Communication Technology (ICT)

Provincial Priority Area 6: Environmental Sustainability

- Investment in skills, technology and institutional capacity is crucial in all aspects regarding a sustainable society and low-carbon economy
- Commitment to the protection of biodiversity
- Resource Critical Areas must be identified and protected through a 'spatial contract' binding on all spheres of government and relevant role-players
- Waste management must be effective and focus on recycling and re-use and value of the waste as a resource for socio-economic upliftment
- Prepare for climate change and other environmental pressures through coordinated planning
- The protection of the freshwater eco-system and Water Critical Biodiversity Areas

Provincial Priority Area 7: Social Protection

- Social support should go beyond relieving poverty through promoting self-reliant sustainable development.
- Social support should be provided in such a manner that once the support is removed the individual, household or community can be self-sustainable.
- Social protection must be approached holistically. The needs, realities, conditions and livelihoods of individuals, households and communities do not stand isolated from the broader environment in which they operate

Provincial Priority Area 8: Improving Health

- The social determinants of health need to be addressed, including promoting healthy behaviours and lifestyles
- Households need information and incentives to change their behaviour toward healthy and active lifestyles
- Strengthening the health care system and improving its management
- Combat HIV and Aids and decrease the burden of disease from TB. Broaden coverage of antiretroviral (ARV) treatment to all HIV-positive people
- Improve human resources within the health sector

Provincial Priority Area 9: Building Safer Communities

- Demilitarise the police and improve professionalism throughout the police service. The police should at all times act professional, impartial, responsive and competent

- An integrated approach is needed to build safer sustainable communities. Coordination is required between a variety of departments, the private sector and community bodies
- All vulnerable groups including women, children and rural communities should enjoy equal protection through effective, coordinated responses of the police, business, and civil society

Provincial Priority Area 10: Building a Capable and Development State

- Build a skilled, professional public service performing a developmental and transformative role
- Improve inter-departmental coordination and cooperation and proactively improve relationships with national and local government

Provincial Priority Area 11: Fighting Corruption

- Build a resilient anti-corruption system providing mechanisms for effective and safe reporting
- Develop and encourage a societal approach to fighting corruption
- Improve accountability and transparency, including increased public awareness and access to information

Provincial Priority Area 12: Transforming Society and Uniting the Province

- The values provided in the Constitution and in the Bill of Responsibilities provide the basis for human dignity that should be taught to and accepted by each member of the provincial population
- Through sports, art and culture in the Province, human well-being will be enhanced and stimulated, and social cohesion will be promoted

Following from the above, the fifth administration's position on the **Rebranding, Repositioning** and **Renewal** course championed by the Premier is anchored on the following five concretes:

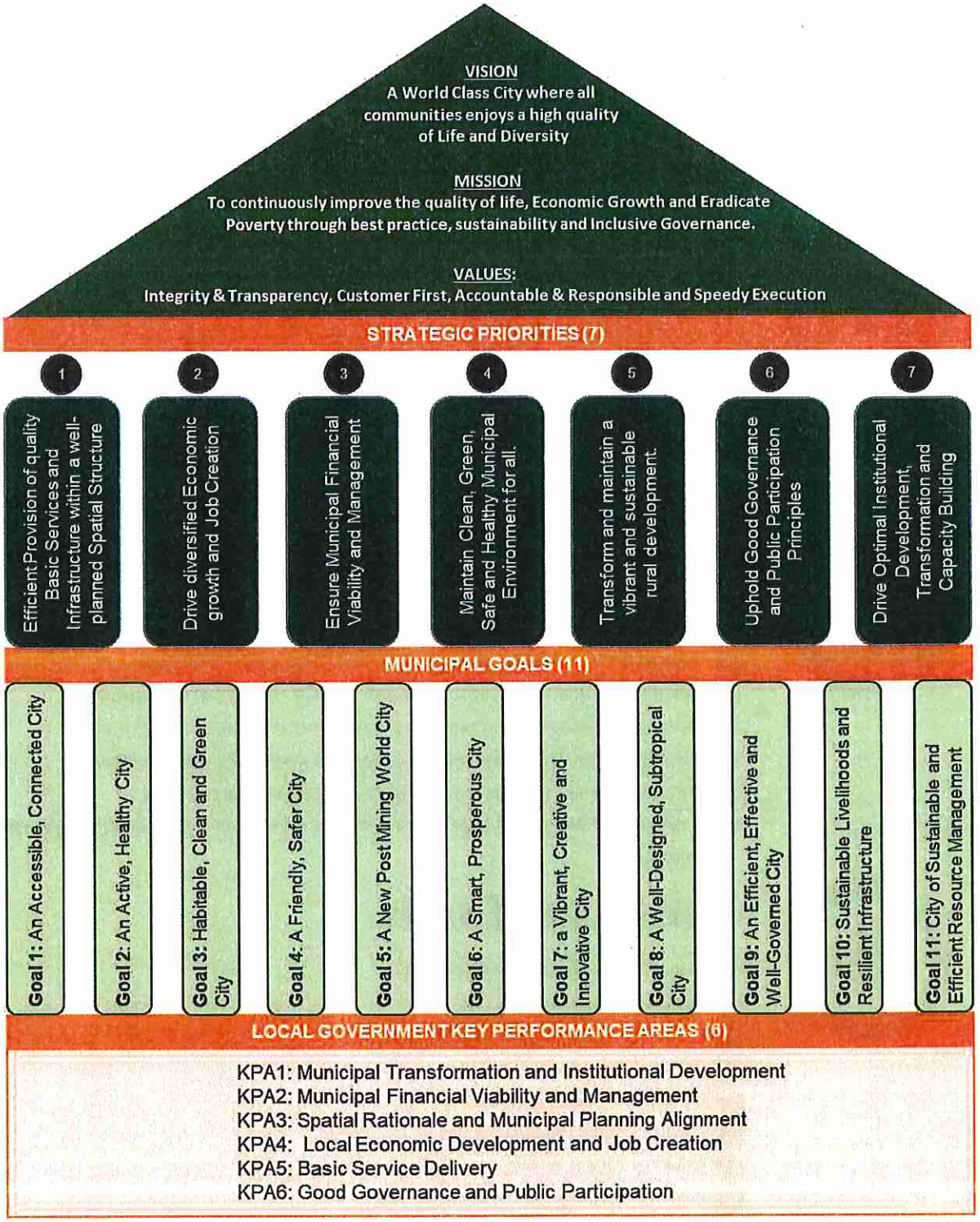
- **ACT (Agriculture, Culture and Tourism)**: The ACT concrete focuses on poverty inequality and unemployment generally in the Province, and Villages, Towns and Small Dorpies (VTSD areas) in particular with a focus on promoting Agriculture, Culture and Tourism in these areas. Tributary sectors of the economy such as mining, manufacturing and retail are also to remain critical economic pillars in the development of the province.
- **VTSD (Villages, Townships and Small Dorpies)**: the strategy focuses, amongst others, on growing the VTSD economies, investing in basic infrastructure such as water, energy and sanitation, redirecting government expenditure to VTSD areas (minimum 70%) and ensuring that communities' partner with the state and private sector and other areas of the economy.
- **RHR (Reconciliation, Healing and Renewal)**: Through this concrete the Province facilitates the healing of the divisions of the past as well as the establishment of a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights as espoused in our founding constitution.
- **Setsokotsane (comprehensive and integrated service delivery campaign)**: Setsokotsane is a quick service delivery intervention mechanism to deal with service delivery challenges across the Province in partnership with National Government, Municipalities, Private Sector, Non-Government Organisation, Traditional Leaders and Communities. The activities to be implemented under the campaigns include the following:
    - Bua le Puso Monthly Community Meetings at all Wards;

- Cleaning and environmental activism;
- VTSD Entrepreneurship Development Initiative;
- Healthy living life styles campaign;
- Roads and street light fixing;
- Payment of rates and taxes;
- Education Enhancement;
- Greed, Crime and Corruption Prevention/ Combating;
- Saamwerk-Saamtrek in the Reconciliation, Healing and Renewal initiative;
- Human Settlement Upgrading and Water and Sanitation Services Enhancement.

1.4 MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC AGENDA

In line with the national and provincial Vision directives noted above, the Rustenburg Local Municipality Strategic Agenda which includes a Vision, Mission, Municipal Values, Strategic Priorities/ Thrusts and Municipal Goals are reflected in **Diagram 1** below and are graphically summarised on the next few pages:

Diagram 1: RLM Strategic Agenda



Vision

A world class city where communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity

Mission

To continuously improve the quality of life, economic growth and eradicate poverty through the best practice, sustainable and inclusive government

Municipal Values

- **Customer First**: We shall at all times be loyal to our customers/clients and surpass their needs through living the Batho Pele Principle
- **Integrity and Transparency**: We shall consistently and diligently uphold ethical behaviour and honesty communicate truthfully amongst ourselves, our stakeholders and our clients
- **Accountable and Responsible**: We shall create and adhere to a performance enabling culture; empowering each other so together we realise our world class city
- **Speedy Execution**: We shall make prompt decisions, take appropriate actions and execution of our functions as informed by our strategic priorities

Strategic Priorities

- **Priority 1:** Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment
- **Priority 2**: Drive a vibrant diversified economic growth and job creation
- **Priority 3:** Ensure a sustainable municipal financial viability and management
- **Priority 4:** Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all
- **Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development
- **Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles
- **Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building

Municipal Goals

- **Goal 1:** An Accessible, Connected City
- **Goal 2**: An Active, Healthy City
- **Goal 3:** Habitable, Clean and Green City
- **Goal 4**: A Friendly, Safer City
- **Goal 5:** A New Post Mining World City
- **Goal 6**: A Smart, Prosperous City
- **Goal 7**: a Vibrant, Creative and Innovative City
- **Goal 8**: A Well-Designed, Subtropical City
- **Goal 9:** An Efficient, Effective and Well-Governed City
- **Goal 10:** Sustainable Livelihoods and Resilient Infrastructure
- **Goal 11:** City of Sustainable and Efficient Resource Management

The above RLM Strategic Agenda should be implemented in pursuance of the following six Key Performance Areas for Local Government as contained in the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations (2006) as promulgated by National Government:

KPA1: Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development

To have a representative and motivated municipal work force with high ethical standards empowered to render optimal services.

KPA2: Municipal Financial Viability and Management

To manage the Municipality's finances to ensure a financially viable Municipality able to meet all financial obligations.

KPA3: Spatial Rationale and Municipal Planning Alignment

To ensure that all development within the municipality is based on a coherent Spatial Rationale as defined in the Municipal Spatial Development Framework and that all sector plans are aligned to this rationale.

KPA4: Local Economic Development and Job Creation

To facilitate and implement local economic development initiatives and processes to promote sustainable economic growth for the municipal area.

KPA5: Basic Service Delivery

To render cost effective and sustainable services to the entire community with diligence and empathy.

KPA6: Good Governance and Public Participation

To ensure service delivery in accordance with "Batho-Pele" principles and legislative requirements and through extensive consultative processes with local stakeholders/ communities.

2. MUNICIPAL OVERVIEW AND SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

2.1 PROVINCIAL AND REGIONAL CONTEXT

Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of 21 local municipalities in North West Province and forms part of the Bojanala District Municipality. It represents the core part of platinum mining in South Africa, and the N4 Platinum Development Corridor runs from east to west through the municipal area.

The RLM accommodates about 16% of the provincial population, and it is estimated that it will in future experience significant population growth (up to 32.9% of the provincial population growth). At present it also represents about 18% of the provincial housing backlog (± 60 000 units).

As illustrated on **Figure 1**, Rustenburg Town is classified as one of five primary nodes in the provincial SDF, but it also comprises a large number of Villages, Towns and Small Dorpies (second, third and fourth order nodes).

In the context of the Bojanala District (**Figure 2**) it is clear that the bulk of platinum mining activity is located in the RLM area. From here it extends northwards towards Moses Kotane LM (west of the Pilanesberg) and eastwards past Marikana towards Madibeng LM. The platinum mining belt runs parallel to the north of the Magalies Mountain which extends from the Pilanesberg right up to the City of Tshwane to the far east. Also evident is the concentration of informal settlements along the mining belt.

Another prominent feature is the large number of rural villages and small towns located in the northern extents of the District, and more specifically in Moses Kotane, northern parts of Rustenburg, Madibeng and the Moretele municipalities. Most of these areas are under traditional leadership.

The regional road and railway network traversing the district provides good accessibility to the majority of areas in the district and surrounding provinces (Limpopo and Gauteng). Most notable in this regard is the N4 Development Corridor.

2.2 LOCAL SPATIAL FEATURES

2.2.1 STRUCTURING ELEMENTS

From **Figure 3** it is evident that four major elements have shaped the historical development of the settlement patterns in the RLM area:

- **Rustenburg town** represents the centre of population concentration, employment opportunities and shopping opportunities. This attracted urban development towards the town.
- The **Magalies Mountain Range** traverses the municipal area south of Rustenburg Town and inhibited urban expansion in a south westerly direction. Hence, urban expansion was forced in a northern and north-easterly direction.
- The **Provincial Roads** that cross the Rustenburg Municipal Area have had a profound impact on the shape of urban development within the municipal area. Two provincial roads traversing the municipal area can be distinguished as having the largest impact on urban development in the region. These roads are the Rustenburg/Sun City road (R565) that links Rasimone, Luka and Phokeng to Rustenburg; and the Rustenburg/Thabazimbi road (R510) that links Tlaseng, Kanana and Boitekong to Rustenburg.
- The **Platinum Mines,** running parallel to the north of the Magaliesberg mountain range, have dramatically shaped the settlement pattern in the municipal area. On the one hand, it fragmented urban development by creating physical barriers such as transport facilities, pipelines, infrastructure and surface mining infrastructure between Rustenburg and the settlements located north of the mining belt, (e.g. Boitekong). On the other hand, it also led to the development of isolated towns such as Luka, Kanana, Thekwane and Photsaneng in close proximity to mining activities (job opportunities).

2.2.2 SETTLEMENT PATTERNS

Four broad types of settlements can be distinguished in the RLM:

- **Formal Urban Settlements** have a formal (proclaimed) layout plan with registered erven and erf numbers; are serviced with a full range of municipal services; and the households can obtain security of tenure. These include areas such as Rustenburg, Tlhabane, Boitekong, Phatsima, Hartbeesfontein, Kroondal and Marikana.
- **Tribal Settlements** are mainly located on Bafokeng tribal land and the households living in these settlements are considered Bafokeng citizens. Although these households do not own title deeds, they have security of tenure (permission to occupy) through their association with the tribe and are characterised by varying levels of service. Settlements that fall within this category include areas such as Phokeng, Kanana, Luka, Chaneng, Tlaseng, Rankelenyane, Thekwane and Photsaneng.
- **Rural Settlements** are settlements that are similar in nature to the tribal settlements with regard to the residential densities and functions, but they are not located on Bafokeng tribal land.
- **Informal Settlements** have mainly developed along the mining belt and close to mine shafts. These include areas such as Wonderkoppies, Nkaneng, Zakhele, Popo Molefe and Freedom Park. The 24 informal settlements in the RLM area are characterised by a lack of security of tenure and a lack of basic municipal services. Collectively these areas represent at least 24 000 households. The

total number of households residing in informal structures (including backyard units and informal units in traditional authority areas) in the RLM municipal area is about 68 800 units.

2.2.3 OPEN SPACE AND PROTECTED AREAS

The natural landscape of Rustenburg is primarily defined by its mountain ranges and water sources which comprises the prominent topographic features in the municipal area (refer to Figure 3). Certain areas within the Rustenburg Municipal Area are protected by environmental legislation including:

- *Kgaswane Game Reserve*

Located south-west of Rustenburg, this 4000-hectare reserve is located against the northern slopes of the Magaliesberg. A unique feature of this reserve is an extensive valley basin which lies between the ridges of the Magaliesberg. To the west of this basin lies a large plateau. The plateau and the basin form a catchment area that drains into ravines, most of which have water for at least part of the year. The Magaliesberg ridges are characterised by giant quartsite boulders and rocky mountain slopes.

- *Vaalkop Dam Nature Reserve*

The Vaalkop Dam Nature Reserve lies near Beestekraal, north-east of Rustenburg. An 800ha section of the reserve has been set aside as a bird sanctuary, which is not open to the general public. The reserve hosts over 340 species of birds. In addition, the reserve is stocked with a variety of bushveld game species and the dam is stocked with many fish species. A section of the dam has been set aside for water sports.

- *Magaliesburg Protected Environment*

Although not a formal proclaimed nature reserve it is protected in terms of a previous Administrators notice, as well as the recently completed Environmental Management Framework for the Magaliesberg Protected Environment.

The recently listed **Magaliesberg Biosphere** stretches from Rustenburg Local Municipality in North West Province up to the City of Tshwane in Gauteng Province. It comprises three functional areas:

a) a legally constituted core area devoted to long term protection, according to the conservation objectives of the Biosphere Reserve, and of sufficient size to meet these objectives;
b) A buffer zone or zones clearly identified and surrounding or contiguous to the core areas, where only activities compatible with the conservation objectives can take place;
c) An outer transition area where sustainable resource management practices are promoted and developed.

The Magaliesberg Biosphere reserve has three core areas viz: Kgaswane Mountain Reserve (North West Province); Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site (Gauteng Province) and the Magaliesberg Protected Environment, which straddles both Gauteng and North West Provinces.

The Rustenburg Environmental Management Framework defined four Environmental Management Zones in the RLM area:

- **The Conservation Management Zone**

The conversation management zone comprises conservation areas such as open spaces, proclaimed and non-proclaimed protected areas (i.e. heritage sites and tourism areas). These areas are characterised by their biodiversity, ecological, cultural and recreational importance. Conservation areas in this context refer to areas of high biodiversity and ecological status, which are not necessarily in proclaimed areas.

- **Aquatic Systems Management Zone**

This zone represents all aquatic systems in RLM and they include rivers or watercourses, streams, dams and wetlands. These systems are under severe pressure of pollution and degradation due to unmonitored activities that occur near them, hence these areas need specific strategic management interventions.

- **Agricultural Management Zone**

RLM is mainly characterised by commercial farming that ranges from citrus to vegetable farming. Furthermore, some rural parts of RLM also practice subsistence farming of maize, sunflower and vegetables. Historically, agriculture used to be the main RLM GDP contributor. However, due to trade-offs to other activities such as mining and development, agriculture has turned into a less preferred source of income resulting in loss of high potential agricultural land. The agricultural management zone also includes agricultural holding land that must be saved for current/ future agricultural activities.

- **Built up Management Zone**

Built up areas refer to areas with existing urban activities/ land use development.

2.2.4 AGRICULTURE

The majority of agricultural activities take the form of commercial dry-land farming which is mainly concentrated in the extreme southern parts of the municipality. There are also notable areas of commercial agriculture in the central parts immediately north and south of the N4 between Kroondal and the eastern boundary of the municipality, as well as in the north-western parts along the foothills of the Magaliesberg mountain range in the vicinity of Boschoek. Agricultural activities in the central and north eastern parts of the municipality are very limited.

The occurrence of irrigated agriculture is mainly based in the extreme south eastern parts of the municipality as well as in the areas south and south west of Kroondal. The occurrence of cultivated small holdings is extensive in the central parts of the municipality, especially around the Kroondal node. From a climatic perspective, the municipal area is marginal for dry land cultivation with the mean annual rainfall in the central and southern parts being between 600mm and 800mm and between 400mm and 600mm in the northern parts. In addition, high evaporation rates, especially in summer, mean that any drought period in the growing season can easily lead to moisture stress for crops.

The main source of income derived from agricultural products in the Rustenburg area is from animals (46.6%), field crops (25.1%) and animal products (23.9%). The income from animal products in the Rustenburg area is the most prominent of all municipalities in North-West Province accounting for 22.2% of total income derived from this source within the province. In the case of animals, horticulture and field crops, the extent of production in the Rustenburg area represents 12.1%, 5.0%, and 4.8% of the provincial total respectively.

2.2.5 MINING

The economic, social and physical characteristics of Rustenburg have been largely determined by the presence of mining activities within the Municipal Area. Mining activities are mainly concentrated along a geological belt, known as the Bushveld Complex. This part of the Bushveld Complex is one of the most heavily mineralised districts in the world and the platinum mines in this region are the largest producers of platinum in the world. The Merensky Reef and the UG2 chromite layers are renowned for their Platinum Group Metal (PGM) content and together they form the world's largest depository of PGMs.

Apart from chrome and platinum, other minerals mined in the region are tin, lead, marble, granite and slate. Underground mining predominates, although open cast mining also exists. The Platinum-Group Metals (PGM) constitute a family of six chemically similar elements. Their excellent catalytic qualities, resistance to corrosion, chemical inertness and high melting points render them most suitable for a number of specialist applications.

Rustenburg Platinum Mines (RPM), which belongs to the Anglo-American Platinum Corporation Limited (Anglo Platinum), is the largest single producer, and operates three geographically separate sections: Rustenburg, Union and Amandelbult Sections, all on the western limb. The other mines on the western limb are Impala Platinum Holdings Limited's Impala Platinum and Crocodile River (through Barplats Investments Limited) mines; Lonmin Platinum's Eastern Platinum, Western Platinum and Karee mines; Northam Platinum Limited's Northam Mine, and Aquarius Platinum's Kroondal and Marikana mines.

2.2.6 TOURISM

The main local tourism attractions the region has to offer, are closely linked to the comparative advantages the area has to offer with regard to its natural assets, the occurrence of many heritage sites relating to iron/stone age, Anglo-boer history and indigenous tribes such as the Tswana and Ndebele, and the variety of minerals and mining activities found in the area.

Most of the tourism and accommodation establishments are located in the immediate Rustenburg area (71%) with the remainder being in the Buffelspoort/ Mooinooi/ Maanhaarand area (16%), at Vaalkop dam (5%), at Boshoek (4%) or near Magaliesburg (4%).

Tourism plays an increasingly important role within the Rustenburg Municipal Area. The typical Bushveld climate and vegetation of the Municipal Area, as well as the unique topography of the Magaliesberg, offer several opportunities for tourism. These include opportunities for eco-tourism, as well as tourism associated with the variety of historical and cultural interests found within the municipal area. Primary tourism areas and facilities located within the municipal area are as follows:

- Rustenburg Town;
- Kgaswane Game Reserve;
- Vaalkop Dam Nature Reserve;
- Kroondal;
- Bafokeng Sport Palace; and
- Buffelspoort Dam.

Despite the above mentioned tourist attractions, the most prominent regional tourist destination are not located within the RLM area itself, but on its borders. The broader region has some of the finest game parks, cultural and archaeological sites and entertainment resorts in South Africa, including:

- Pilanesberg National Park;
- Madikwe Game Reserve;
- Sun City and Lost City Resort; and
- Cradle of Humankind.

2.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC PROFILE[1]

"Demographics", or "population characteristics", includes analysis of the population of a region. Distributions of values within a demographic variable, and across households, as well as trends over time are of interest.

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Rustenburg Local Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, North-West Province and South Africa as a whole.

2.3.1 TOTAL POPULATION

Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

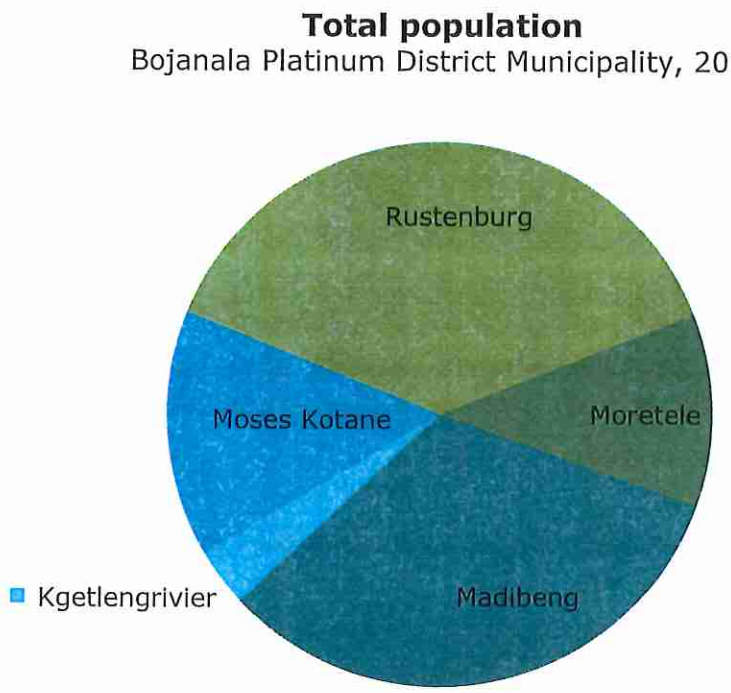
TOTAL POPULATION - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2007	478,000	1,350,000	3,260,000	48,400,000	*35.4%*	*14.6%*	*0.99%*
2008	494,000	1,390,000	3,310,000	49,100,000	*35.6%*	*14.9%*	*1.01%*
2009	510,000	1,420,000	3,360,000	49,800,000	*35.9%*	*15.2%*	*1.02%*
2010	529,000	1,460,000	3,430,000	50,700,000	*36.2%*	*15.4%*	*1.04%*
2011	549,000	1,500,000	3,490,000	51,500,000	*36.5%*	*15.7%*	*1.06%*
2012	567,000	1,540,000	3,550,000	52,400,000	*36.8%*	*16.0%*	*1.08%*
2013	585,000	1,580,000	3,610,000	53,200,000	*37.1%*	*16.2%*	*1.10%*
2014	601,000	1,610,000	3,670,000	54,100,000	*37.4%*	*16.4%*	*1.11%*
2015	617,000	1,640,000	3,730,000	54,900,000	*37.6%*	*16.5%*	*1.12%*
2016	631,000	1,670,000	3,790,000	55,700,000	*37.7%*	*16.7%*	*1.13%*
2017	645,000	1,700,000	3,850,000	56,500,000	*37.9%*	*16.8%*	*1.14%*
Average Annual growth							
2007-2017	***3.05%***	***2.34%***	***1.66%***	***1.56%***			

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

With 645 000 people, the Rustenburg Local Municipality housed 1.1% of South Africa's total population in 2017. Between 2007 and 2017 the population growth averaged 3.05% per annum which is about double than the growth rate of South Africa as a whole (1.56%). Compared to Bojanala Platinum's average annual growth rate (2.34%), the growth rate in Rustenburg's population at 3.05% was slightly higher than that of the district municipality.

Total Population - Rustenburg And The Rest Of Bojanala Platinum, 2017 [Percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When compared to other regions, the Rustenburg Local Municipality accounts for a total population of 645,000, or 37.9% of the total population in the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, which is the most populous region in the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality for 2017. The ranking in terms of the size of Rustenburg compared to the other regions remained the same between 2007 and 2017. In terms of its share the Rustenburg Local Municipality was significantly larger in 2017 (37.9%) compared to what it was in 2007 (35.4%).When looking at the average annual growth rate, it is noted that Rustenburg ranked third (relative to its peers in terms of growth) with an average annual growth rate of 3.0% between 2007 and 2017.

POPULATION PROJECTIONS

Based on the present age-gender structure and the present fertility, mortality and migration rates, Rustenburg's population is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.7% from 645 000 in 2017 to 700 000 in 2022.

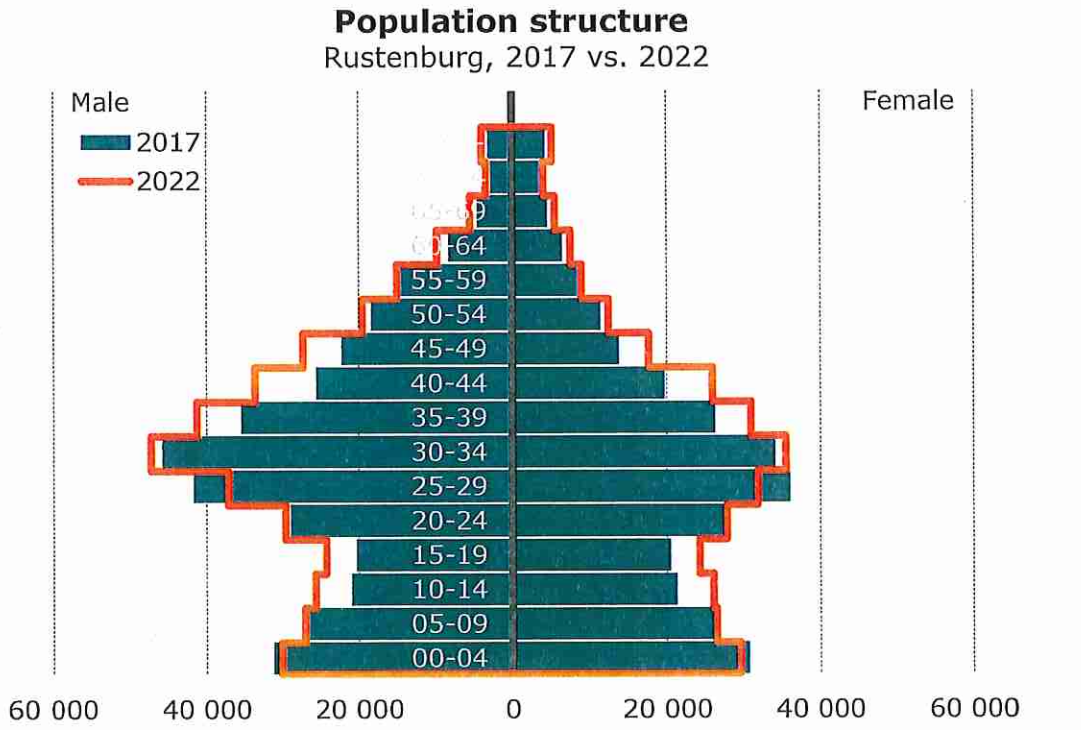
POPULATION PROJECTIONS - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017-2022 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2017	645,000	1,700,000	3,850,000	56,500,000	*37.9%*	*16.8%*	*1.14%*
2018	658,000	1,730,000	3,900,000	57,400,000	*38.0%*	*16.9%*	*1.15%*
2019	670,000	1,760,000	3,960,000	58,100,000	*38.1%*	*16.9%*	*1.15%*
2020	681,000	1,780,000	4,010,000	58,900,000	*38.2%*	*17.0%*	*1.16%*
2021	691,000	1,810,000	4,060,000	59,600,000	*38.3%*	*17.0%*	*1.16%*
2022	700,000	1,830,000	4,110,000	60,400,000	*38.3%*	*17.1%*	*1.16%*
Average Annual growth							
2017-2022	***1.66%***	***1.43%***	***1.32%***	***1.32%***			

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The population projection of Rustenburg Local Municipality shows an estimated average annual growth rate of 1.7% between 2017 and 2022. The average annual growth rate in the population over the projection period for Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, North-West Province and South Africa is 1.4%, 1.3% and 1.3% respectively and is lower than that the average annual growth in the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

POPULATION PYRAMID - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 VS. 2022 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The population pyramid reflects a projected change in the structure of the population from 2017 and 2022. The differences can be explained as follows:

- In 2017, there is a significantly larger share of young working age people between 20 and 34 (33.2%), compared to what is estimated in 2022 (29.9%).
- This age category of young working age population will decrease over time.
- The fertility rate in 2022 is estimated to be slightly higher compared to that experienced in 2017. The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is projected to be slightly smaller (23.6%) in 2022 when compared to 2017 (24.3%).
- In 2017, the female population for the 20 to 34 years age group amounts to 15.2% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounts to 18.0% of the total male population. In 2022, the male working age population at 16.2% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 13.6%, although both are at a lower level compared to 2017.

POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE

The total population of a region is the total number of people within that region measured in the middle of the year. Total population can be categorised according to the population group, as well as the sub-categories of age and gender. The population groups include African, White, Coloured and Asian, where the Asian group includes all people originating from Asia, India and China. The age subcategory divides the population into 5-year cohorts, e.g. 0-4, 5-9, 10-13, etc.

POPULATION BY GENDER - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [NUMBER].

	Male	Female	Total
Rustenburg	350,000	295,000	645,000
Moretele	94,700	101,000	195,000
Madibeng	294,000	260,000	554,000
Kgetlengrivier	31,400	28,000	59,500
Moses Kotane	124,000	126,000	249,000
Bojanala Platinum	**894,000**	**809,000**	**1,700,000**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality's male/female split in population was 118.4 males per 100 females in 2017. The Rustenburg Local Municipality has significantly more males (54.21%) relative to South Africa (48.95%), and what is typically seen in a stable population. This is usually because of physical labour intensive industries such as mining. In total there were 295 000 (45.79%) females and 350 000 (54.21%) males. This distribution holds for Bojanala Platinum as a whole where the female population counted 809 000 which constitutes 47.52% of the total population of 1.7 million.

POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [NUMBER].

	African		White		Coloured		Asian	
	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male
00-04	28,200	28,600	2,020	2,120	305	316	198	204
05-09	23,700	23,900	1,980	2,110	281	222	208	251
10-14	19,400	19,000	1,560	1,550	180	175	171	153
15-19	18,800	18,400	1,420	1,550	171	184	102	114
20-24	25,500	26,900	1,570	1,720	243	275	141	89
25-29	33,300	38,700	2,310	2,400	275	331	191	193
30-34	31,500	42,600	2,070	2,490	330	386	292	211
35-39	23,800	32,800	2,020	2,040	221	287	290	319
40-44	17,300	22,900	2,010	2,000	174	266	344	325
45-49	11,500	19,400	1,980	2,220	148	228	209	271
50-54	9,360	16,100	1,880	1,940	133	144	108	136
55-59	6,720	12,500	1,550	1,710	106	116	105	101
60-64	5,090	6,890	1,210	1,180	79	53	166	82
65-69	3,260	3,540	1,040	822	62	40	218	41
70-74	2,500	2,150	799	597	38	21	190	71
75+	2,930	2,370	1,220	631	39	24	104	56
Total	**263,000**	**317,000**	**26,600**	**27,100**	**2,780**	**3,070**	**3,040**	**2,620**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the Rustenburg Local Municipality's population consisted of 89.89% African (580 000), 8.33% White (53 700), 0.91% Coloured (5 850) and 0.88% Asian (5 660) people.

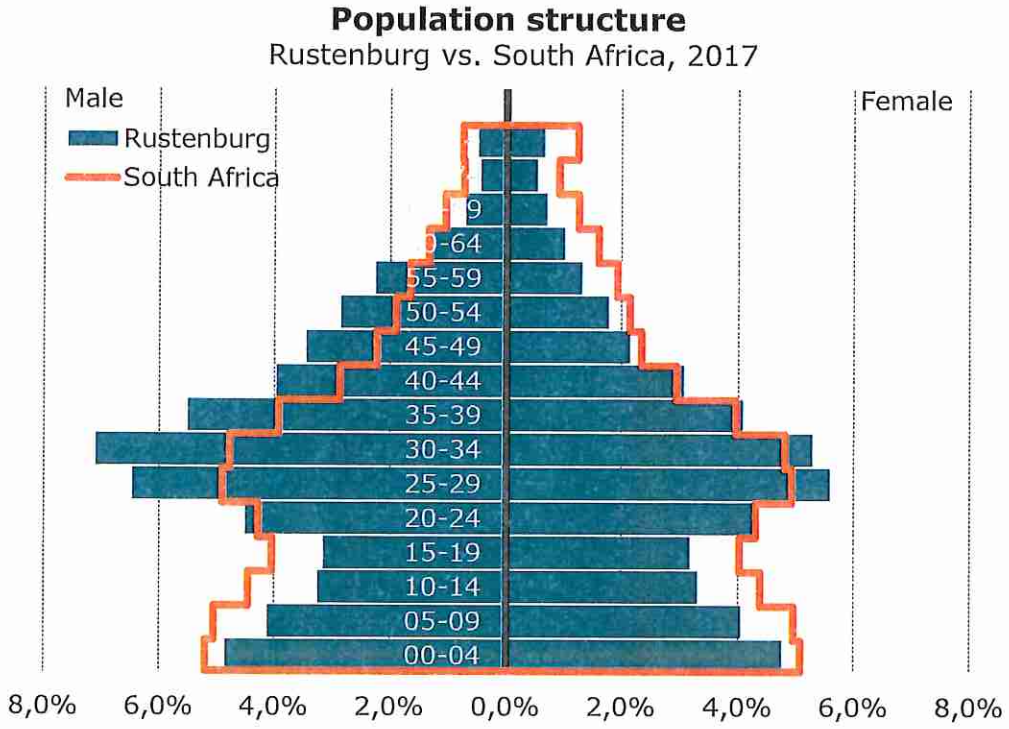
The largest share of population is within the young working age (25-44 years) age category with a total number of 265 000 or 41.1% of the total population. The age category with the second largest number of people is the babies and kids (0-14 years) age category with a total share of 24.3%, followed by the older working age (45-64 years) age category with 104 000 people. The age category with the least number of people is the retired / old age (65 years and older) age category with only 22 700 people, as reflected in the population pyramids below.

POPULATION PYRAMIDS

A population pyramid is a graphic representation of the population categorised by gender and age, for a specific year and region. The horizontal axis depicts the share of people, where the male population is charted on the left-hand side and the female population on the right-hand side of the vertical axis. The vertical axis is divided in 5-year age categories.

With the African population group representing 89.9%of the Rustenburg Local Municipality's total population, the overall population pyramid for the region will mostly reflect that of the African population group. The chart below compares Rustenburg's population structure of 2017 to that of South Africa.

Population pyramid - Rustenburg Local Municipality vs. South Africa, 2017 [Percentage]

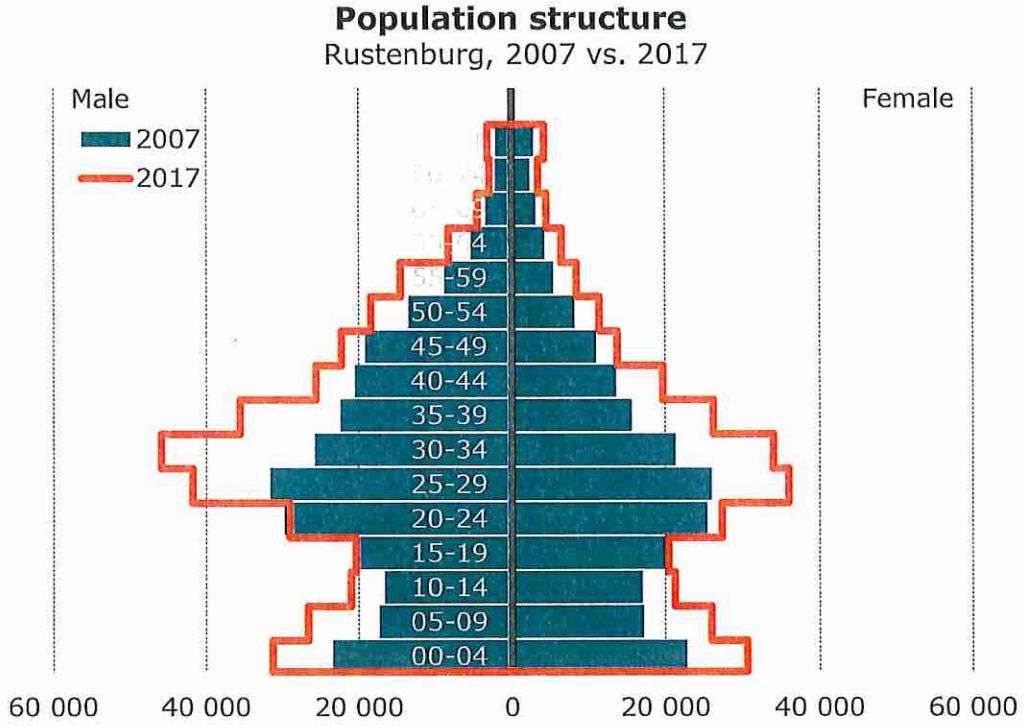


Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

By comparing the population pyramid of the Rustenburg Local Municipality with the national age structure, the most significant differences are:

- There is a significantly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (33.2%) - in Rustenburg, compared to the national picture (28.0%).
- The area appears to be a migrant receiving area, with many of people migrating into Rustenburg, either from abroad, or from the more rural areas in the country looking for better opportunities.
- Fertility in Rustenburg is slightly lower compared to South Africa as a whole.
- Spatial policies changed since 1994.
- The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is significant smaller (24.3%) in Rustenburg compared to South Africa (29.1%). Demand for expenditure on schooling as percentage of total budget within Rustenburg Local Municipality will therefore be lower than that of South Africa.

Population pyramid - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2007 vs. 2017 [Percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When comparing the 2007 population pyramid with the 2017 pyramid for the Rustenburg Local Municipality, some interesting differences are visible:

- In 2007, there were a slightly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (33.5%) - compared to 2017 (33.2%).
- Fertility in 2007 was very similar compared to that of 2017.
- The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is slightly smaller in 2007 (23.9%) compared to 2017 (24.3%).
- Life expectancy is increasing.
- In 2017, the female population for the 20 to 34 years age group amounted to 15.3% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounted to 18.2% of the total male population. In 2007 the male working age population at 18.0% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 15.2%.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP

A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. An individual is considered

part of a household if he/she spends at least four nights a week within the household. To categorise a household according to population group, the population group to which the head of the household belongs, is used.

If the number of households is growing at a faster rate than that of the population it means that the average household size is decreasing, and vice versa. In 2017, the Rustenburg Local Municipality comprised of 213 000 households. This equates to an average annual growth rate of 3.65% in the number of households from 2007 to 2017. With an average annual growth rate of 3.05% in the total population, the average household size in the Rustenburg Local Municipality is by implication decreasing. This is confirmed by the data where the average household size in 2007 decreased from approximately 3.2 individuals per household to 3 persons per household in 2017.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

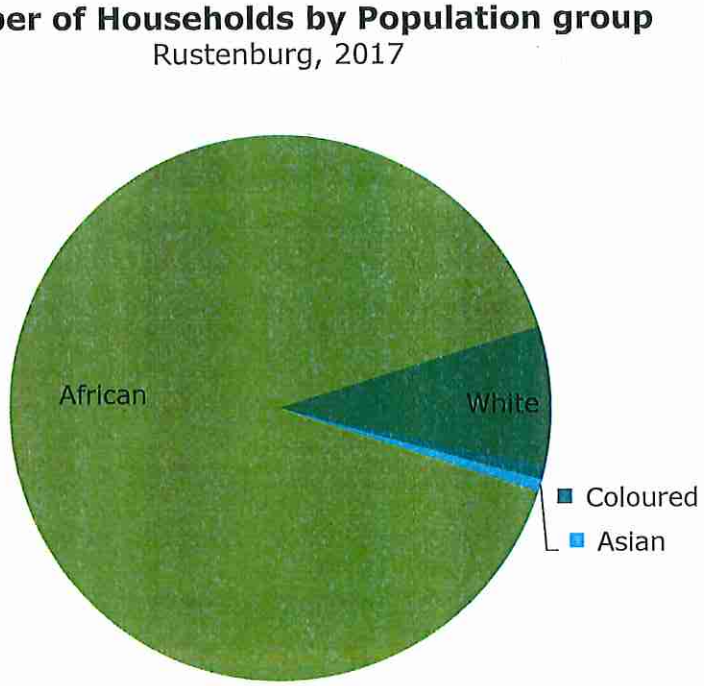
	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2007	149,000	398,000	904,000	13,100,000	*37.3%*	*16.4%*	*1.13%*
2008	157,000	420,000	939,000	13,400,000	*37.5%*	*16.8%*	*1.18%*
2009	168,000	444,000	980,000	13,700,000	*37.7%*	*17.1%*	*1.22%*
2010	175,000	461,000	1,000,000	13,900,000	*38.0%*	*17.4%*	*1.26%*
2011	182,000	475,000	1,030,000	14,200,000	*38.3%*	*17.7%*	*1.28%*
2012	188,000	489,000	1,050,000	14,500,000	*38.5%*	*18.0%*	*1.30%*
2013	194,000	501,000	1,070,000	14,700,000	*38.7%*	*18.2%*	*1.32%*
2014	199,000	511,000	1,080,000	15,000,000	*38.8%*	*18.3%*	*1.32%*
2015	205,000	526,000	1,110,000	15,400,000	*39.0%*	*18.5%*	*1.33%*
2016	211,000	539,000	1,130,000	15,700,000	*39.1%*	*18.6%*	*1.34%*
2017	213,000	544,000	1,140,000	16,100,000	*39.1%*	*18.6%*	*1.32%*
Average Annual growth							
2007-2017	***3.65%***	***3.17%***	***2.36%***	***2.02%***			

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Relative to the district municipality, the Rustenburg Local Municipality had a higher average annual growth rate of 3.65% from 2007 to 2017. In contrast, the province had an average annual growth rate of 2.36% from 2007. The South Africa as a whole had a total of 16.1 million households, with a growth rate of 2.02%, thus growing at a lower rate than the Rustenburg.

The composition of the households by population group consists of 90.2% which is ascribed to the African population group with the largest amount of households by population group. The White population group had a total composition of 8.3% (ranking second). The Coloured population group had a total composition of 0.8% of the total households. The smallest population group by households is the Asian population group with only 0.7% in 2017.

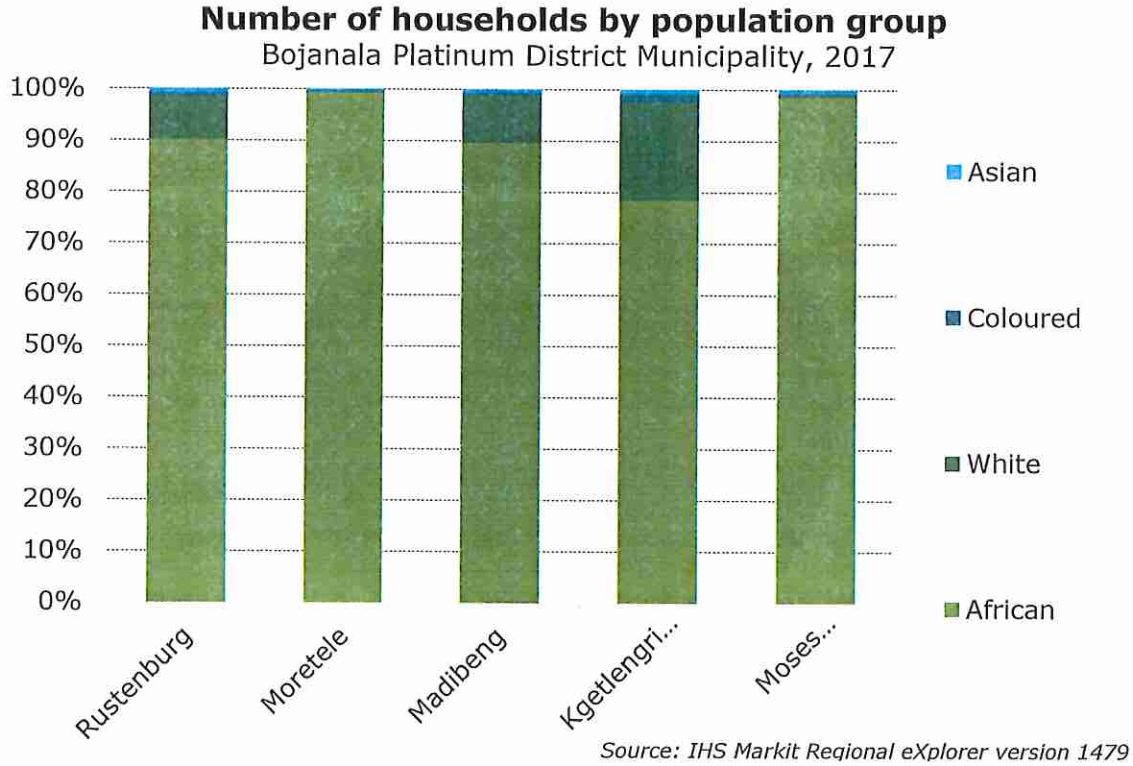
Number of households by population group - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017 [Percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 3.99% per annum between 2007 and 2017, which translates in the number of households increasing by 62 100 in the period. Although the Asian population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2007 and 2017 at 6.78%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for all the other population groups has increased with 3.63%.

Number of households by population group - Rustenburg Local Municipality and the rest of Bojanala Platinum, 2017 [percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

HIV+ AND AIDS ESTIMATES

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; the mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people that are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.
HIV+ and AIDS estimates are defined as follows:

The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates on a provincial level. IHS slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2008 data to more accurately reflect the national HIV Prevalence rate per population group as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary data sets, in particular the HIV/AIDS surveys

conducted by the Department of Health and the Antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

NUMBER OF HIV+ PEOPLE - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE]

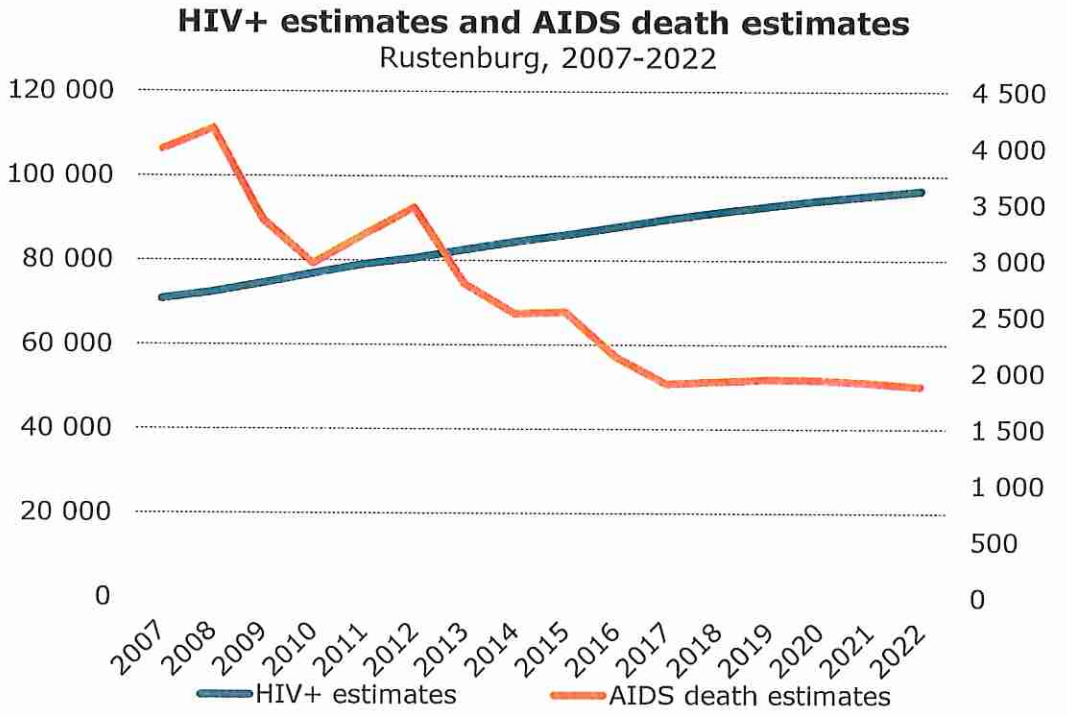
	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2007	70,900	189,000	422,000	5,370,000	*37.5%*	*16.8%*	*1.32%*
2008	72,500	192,000	423,000	5,400,000	*37.8%*	*17.1%*	*1.34%*
2009	74,600	196,000	428,000	5,480,000	*38.0%*	*17.4%*	*1.36%*
2010	76,900	201,000	435,000	5,590,000	*38.3%*	*17.7%*	*1.38%*
2011	79,100	205,000	441,000	5,680,000	*38.6%*	*17.9%*	*1.39%*
2012	80,500	207,000	443,000	5,760,000	*38.8%*	*18.2%*	*1.40%*
2013	82,600	211,000	450,000	5,880,000	*39.0%*	*18.3%*	*1.41%*
2014	84,500	215,000	457,000	6,010,000	*39.2%*	*18.5%*	*1.41%*
2015	86,100	219,000	463,000	6,130,000	*39.3%*	*18.6%*	*1.40%*
2016	87,900	223,000	470,000	6,280,000	*39.4%*	*18.7%*	*1.40%*
2017	89,800	227,000	479,000	6,430,000	*39.5%*	*18.7%*	*1.40%*
Average Annual growth							
2007-2017	***2.40%***	***1.87%***	***1.29%***	***1.83%***			

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, 89 800 people in the Rustenburg Local Municipality were infected with HIV. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 2.40% since 2007, and in 2017 represented 13.92% of the local municipality's total population. The Bojanala Platinum District Municipality had an average annual growth rate of 1.87% from 2007 to 2017 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Rustenburg Local Municipality. The number of infections in the North-West Province increased from 422,000 in 2007 to 479,000 in 2017. When looking at the South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2007 to 2017 with an average annual growth rate of 1.83%.

The lifespan of people that are HIV+ could be prolonged with modern ARV treatments. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV can live for 10 years and longer before they reach the final AIDS stage of the disease.

AIDS PROFILE AND FORECAST - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2022 [NUMBERS]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 3990 in 2007 and 1910 for 2017. This number denotes an decrease from 2007 to 2017 with a high average annual rate of -7.12% (or -2080 people). For the year 2017, they represented 0.30% of the total population of the entire local municipality.

2.3.2 ECONOMY

The economic state of Rustenburg Local Municipality is put in perspective by comparing it on a spatial level with its neighbouring locals, Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, North-West Province and South Africa.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality does not function in isolation from Bojanala Platinum, North-West Province, South Africa and the world and now, more than ever, it is crucial to have reliable information on its economy for effective planning. Information is needed that will empower the municipality to plan and implement policies that will encourage the social development and economic growth of the people and industries in the municipality respectively.

GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT BY REGION (GDP-R)

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP), an important indicator of economic performance, is used to compare economies and economic states. Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R) represents the value of all goods and services produced within a region, over a period of one year, plus taxes and minus subsidies. GDP-R can be measured using either current or constant prices, where the current prices measures the economy in actual Rand, and constant prices measures the economy by removing the effect of inflation, and therefore captures the real growth in volumes, as if prices were fixed in a given base year.

1. ***GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]***

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2007	28.0	60.9	120.7	2,109.5	*46.0%*	*23.2%*	*1.33%*
2008	32.0	72.1	138.8	2,369.1	*44.3%*	*23.0%*	*1.35%*
2009	33.9	77.6	147.9	2,507.7	*43.7%*	*22.9%*	*1.35%*
2010	37.7	87.6	164.5	2,748.0	*43.1%*	*22.9%*	*1.37%*
2011	41.8	98.4	185.8	3,023.7	*42.5%*	*22.5%*	*1.38%*
2012	39.1	97.4	191.0	3,253.9	*40.1%*	*20.5%*	*1.20%*
2013	48.8	117.7	222.2	3,540.0	*41.5%*	*22.0%*	*1.38%*
2014	48.6	119.1	226.5	3,805.3	*40.8%*	*21.5%*	*1.28%*
2015	51.1	127.0	243.0	4,051.4	*40.2%*	*21.0%*	*1.26%*
2016	53.0	132.8	255.8	4,350.3	*39.9%*	*20.7%*	*1.22%*
2017	57.4	143.1	273.2	4,651.8	*40.1%*	*21.0%*	*1.23%*

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

With a GDP of R 57.4 billion in 2017 (up from R 28 billion in 2007), the Rustenburg Local Municipality contributed 40.10% to the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality GDP of R 143 billion in 2017 increasing in the share of the Bojanala Platinum from 45.98% in 2007. The Rustenburg Local Municipality contributes 21.01% to the GDP of North-West Province and 1.23% the GDP of South Africa which had a total GDP of R 4.65 trillion in 2017 (as measured in nominal or current prices). It's contribution to the national economy stayed similar in importance from 2007 when it contributed 1.33% to South Africa, but it is lower than the peak of 1.38% in 2011.

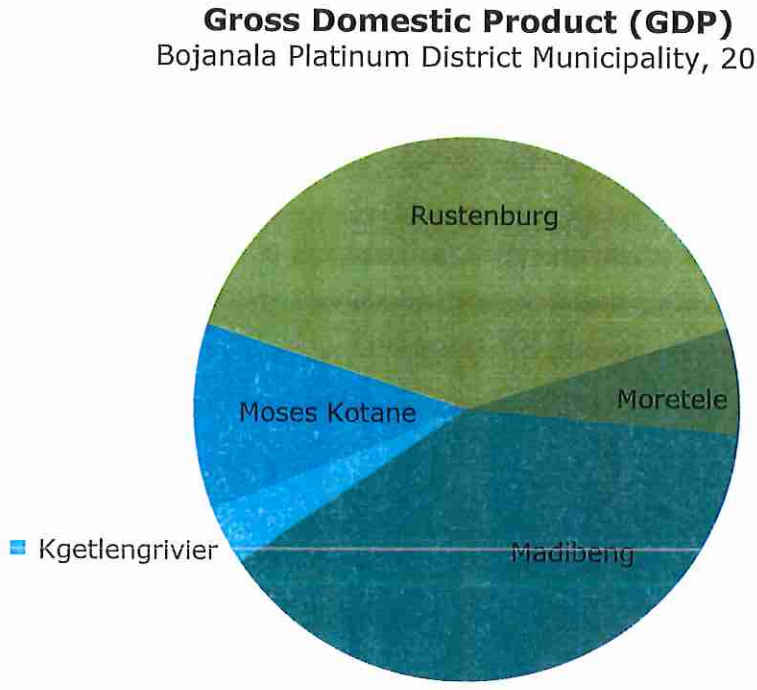
Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2017 [Annual percentage change, Constant 2010 prices]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	0.0%	5.1%	4.5%	5.4%
2008	-7.7%	0.7%	2.3%	3.2%
2009	0.6%	0.3%	-2.3%	-1.5%
2010	5.9%	7.0%	3.9%	3.0%
2011	-0.3%	2.3%	3.0%	3.3%
2012	-4.3%	-1.5%	-1.2%	2.2%
2013	4.6%	4.0%	3.2%	2.5%
2014	-9.2%	-5.7%	-3.5%	1.8%
2015	14.0%	9.4%	5.0%	1.3%
2016	-9.5%	-6.2%	-3.7%	0.6%
2017	1.8%	1.9%	1.4%	1.3%
Average Annual growth 2007-2017	*-0.65%*	*1.11%*	*0.76%*	*1.76%*

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the Rustenburg Local Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of 1.80% which is a slightly higher GDP growth than the North-West Province's 1.41%, but is higher than that of South Africa, where the 2017 GDP growth rate was 1.32%. Contrary to the short-term growth rate of 2017, the longer-term average growth rate for Rustenburg (-0.65%) is significant lower than that of South Africa (1.76%). The economic growth in Rustenburg peaked in 2015 at 14.00%.

Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Rustenburg Local Municipality and the rest of Bojanala Platinum, 2017 [Percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total GDP of R 57.4 billion and in terms of total contribution towards Bojanala Platinum District Municipality the Rustenburg Local Municipality ranked highest relative to all the regional economies to total Bojanala Platinum District Municipality GDP. This ranking in terms of size compared to other regions of Rustenburg remained the same since 2007. In terms of its share, it was in 2017 (40.1%) significant smaller compared to what it was in 2007 (46.0%). For the period 2007 to 2017, the average annual growth rate of -0.7% of Rustenburg was the lowest relative to its peers in terms of growth in constant 2010 prices.

Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, 2007 to 2017, share and growth

	2017 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2007 (Constant prices)	2017 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Rustenburg	57.40	*40.10%*	37.50	35.12	***-0.65%***
Moretele	9.04	*6.31%*	5.04	5.76	***1.35%***
Madibeng	55.86	*39.02%*	25.48	36.68	***3.71%***
Kgetlengrivier	5.05	*3.52%*	3.29	3.09	***-0.61%***
Moses Kotane	15.80	*11.04%*	9.70	9.81	***0.12%***

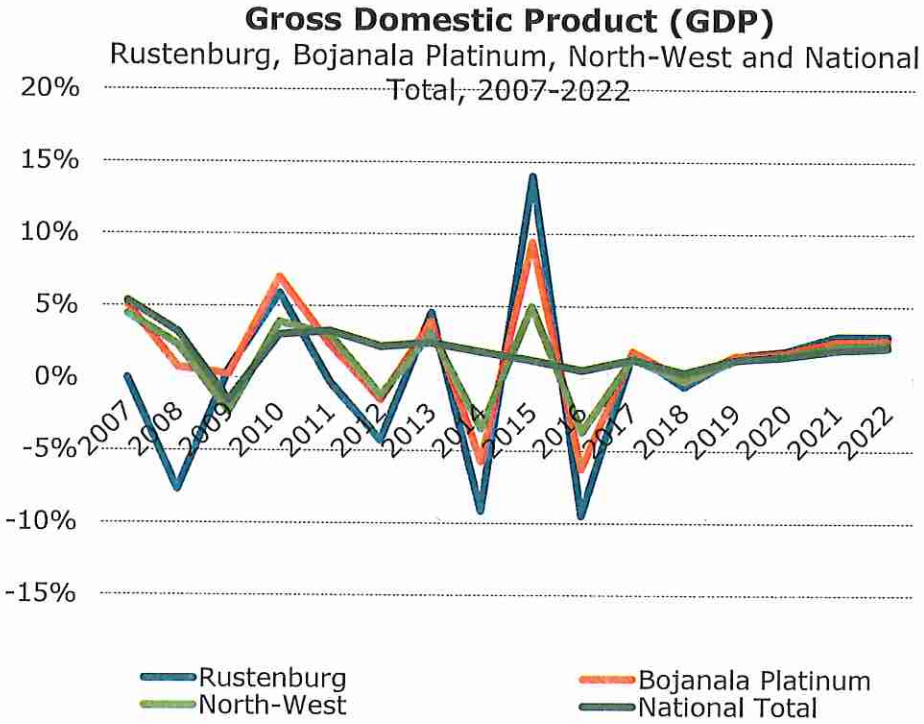
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Madibeng had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 3.71% between 2007 and 2017, when compared to the rest of the regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The Moretele Local Municipality had the second highest average annual growth rate of 1.35%. Rustenburg Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of -0.65% between 2007 and 2017.

ECONOMIC GROWTH FORECAST

It is expected that Rustenburg Local Municipality will grow at an average annual rate of 1.74% from 2017 to 2022. The average annual growth rate in the GDP of Bojanala Platinum District Municipality and North-West Province is expected to be 1.70% and 1.45% respectively. South Africa is forecasted to grow at an average annual growth rate of 1.48%, which is lower than that of the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2022 [Average annual growth rate, constant 2010 prices]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2022, Rustenburg's forecasted GDP will be an estimated R 38.3 billion (constant 2010 prices) or 38.9% of the total GDP of Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The ranking in terms of size of the Rustenburg Local Municipality will remain the same between 2017 and 2022, with a contribution to the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality GDP of 38.9% in 2022 compared to the 38.8% in 2017. At a 1.74% average annual GDP growth rate between 2017 and 2022, Rustenburg ranked the second compared to the other regional economies.

Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, 2007 to 2022, share and growth

	2022 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2007 (Constant prices)	2022 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Rustenburg	72.03	*37.68%*	37.50	38.29	***0.14%***
Moretele	13.30	*6.96%*	5.04	6.20	***1.39%***
Madibeng	78.48	*41.05%*	25.48	40.00	***3.05%***
Kgetlengrivier	6.29	*3.29%*	3.29	3.35	***0.13%***
Moses Kotane	21.07	*11.02%*	9.70	10.58	***0.59%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

GROSS VALUE ADDED BY REGION (GVA-R)

The Rustenburg Local Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy.

Gross Value Added (GVA) is a measure of output (total production) of a region in terms of the value that was created within that region. GVA can be broken down into various production sectors. The summary table below puts the Gross Value Added (GVA) of all the regions in perspective to that of the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

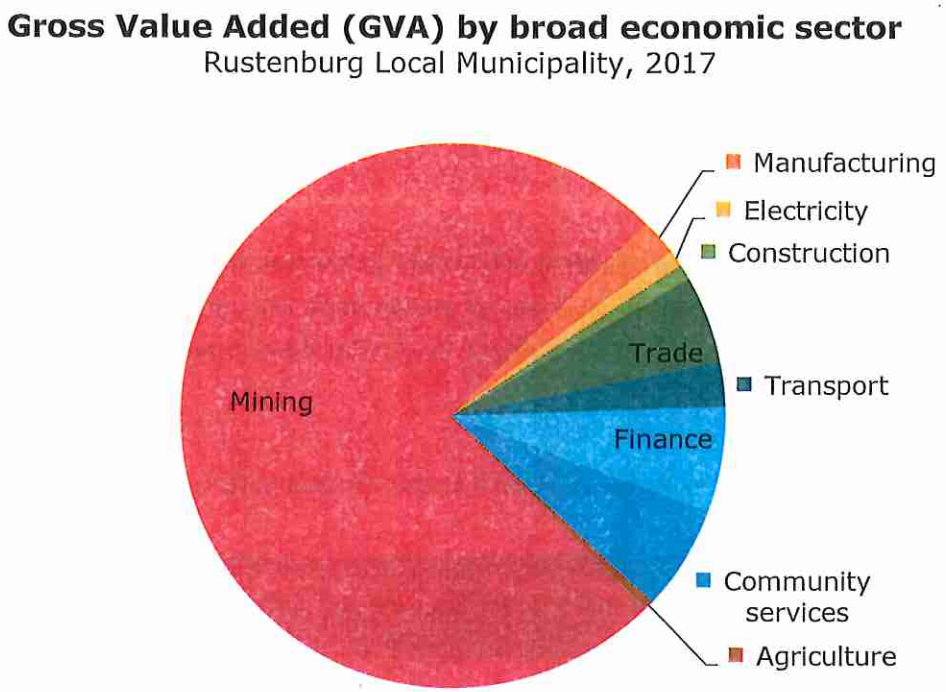
Gross Value Added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017 [R billions, current prices]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
Agriculture	0.3	1.6	7.3	106.4	*19.6%*	*4.2%*	*0.29%*
Mining	40.5	66.3	79.2	334.7	*61.1%*	*51.1%*	*12.10%*
Manufacturing	1.2	7.4	13.0	551.6	*16.0%*	*9.1%*	*0.21%*
Electricity	0.5	3.3	8.5	155.2	*15.8%*	*6.2%*	*0.34%*
Construction	0.5	2.3	6.0	163.3	*21.4%*	*8.3%*	*0.30%*
Trade	2.8	12.2	28.6	626.8	*23.1%*	*9.9%*	*0.45%*
Transport	1.4	6.5	16.0	411.5	*21.5%*	*8.8%*	*0.34%*
Finance	3.4	13.5	32.0	840.7	*25.4%*	*10.7%*	*0.41%*
Community services	3.3	16.9	52.5	981.6	*19.7%*	*6.4%*	*0.34%*
Total Industries	**54.0**	**130.0**	**243.1**	**4,171.7**	***41.5%***	***22.2%***	***1.29%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the mining sector is the largest within Rustenburg Local Municipality accounting for R 40.5 billion or 75.0% of the total GVA in the local municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Rustenburg Local Municipality is the finance sector at 6.3%, followed by the community services sector with 6.2%. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Rustenburg Local Municipality is the agriculture sector with a contribution of R 305 million or 0.57% of the total GVA.

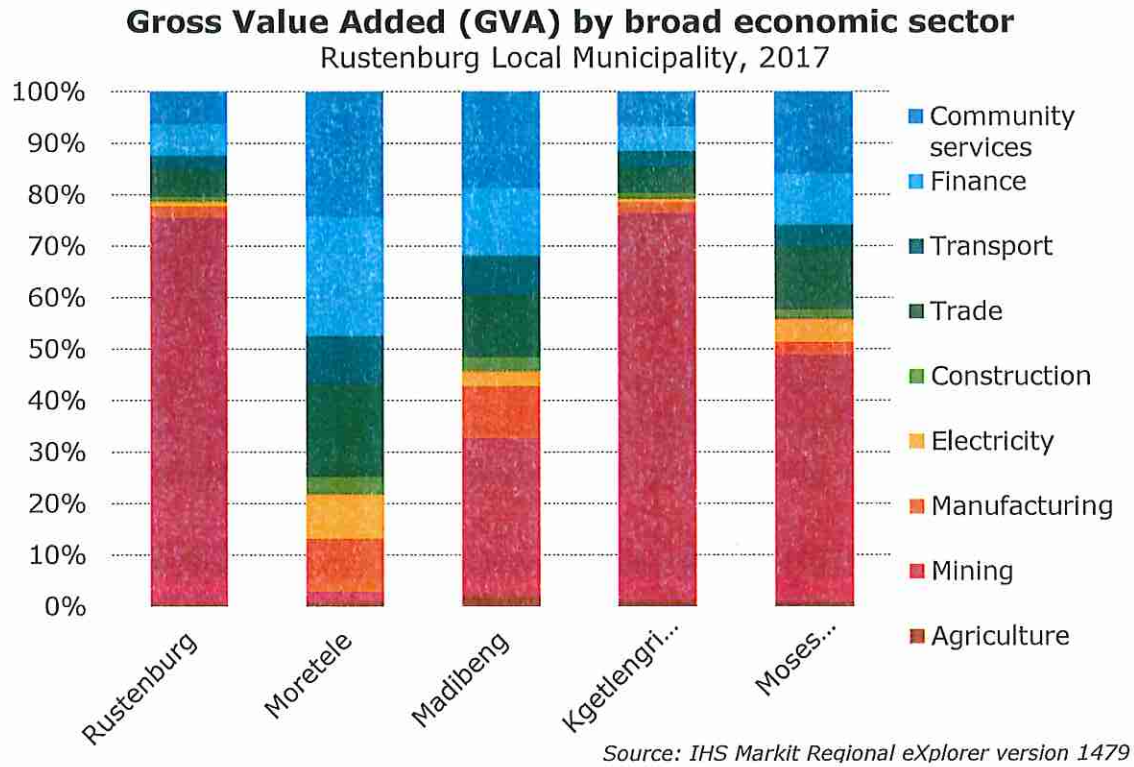
Gross Value Added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017 [percentage composition]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA. When looking at all the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, it is clear that the Madibeng contributes the most community services towards its own GVA, with 53.90%, relative to the other regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The Madibeng contributed R 49.1 billion or 37.77% to the GVA of Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The region within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality that contributes the most to the GVA of the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality was the Moses Kotane with a total of R 14.4 billion or 11.09%.

Gross Value Added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Rustenburg, Moretele, Madibeng, Kgetlengrivier and Moses Kotane, 2017 [percentage composition]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

ISTORICAL ECONOMIC GROWTH

For the period 2017 and 2007, the GVA in the agriculture sector had the highest average annual growth rate in Rustenburg at 1.34%. The industry with the second highest average annual growth rate is the finance sector averaging at 1.20% per year. The manufacturing sector had an average annual growth rate of -1.64%, while the electricity sector had the lowest average annual growth of -1.92%. Overall a positive growth existed for all the industries in 2017 with an annual growth rate of 1.83% since 2016.

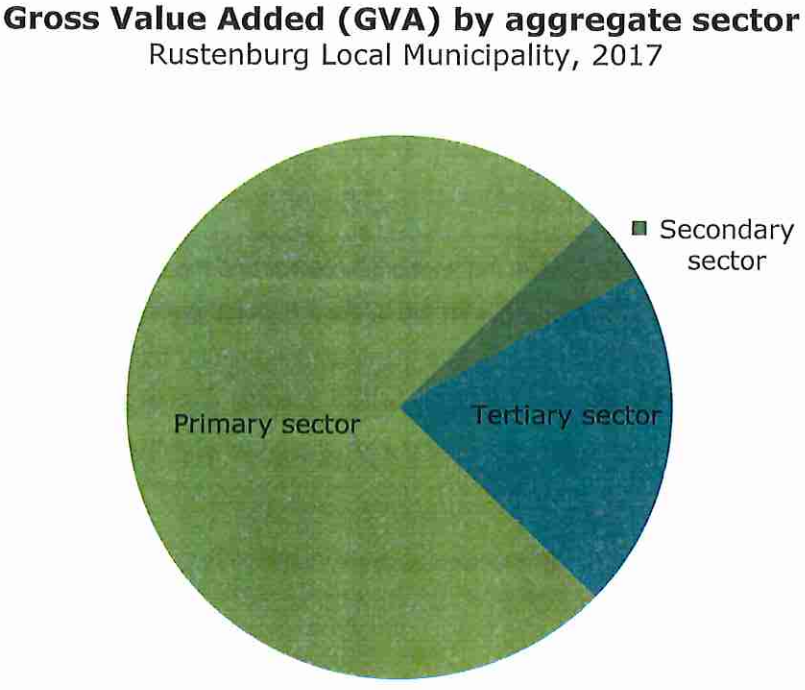
Gross Value Added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2007, 2012 and 2017 [R billions, 2010 constant prices]

	2007	2012	2017	Average growth	Annual
Agriculture	0.16	0.17	0.18	*1.34%*	
Mining	26.97	24.58	24.41	*-0.99%*	
Manufacturing	0.99	0.89	0.84	*-1.64%*	
Electricity	0.25	0.23	0.21	*-1.92%*	
Construction	0.36	0.37	0.38	*0.37%*	
Trade	1.92	1.83	1.87	*-0.24%*	
Transport	0.78	0.76	0.79	*0.15%*	
Finance	2.15	2.32	2.42	*1.20%*	
Community services	2.04	2.15	2.27	*1.07%*	
Total Industries	**35.62**	**33.30**	**33.37**	*-0.65%*	

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The primary sector contributes the most to the Gross Value Added within the Rustenburg Local Municipality at 75.6%. This is significantly higher than the national economy (10.6%). The tertiary sector contributed a total of 20.4% (ranking second), while the secondary sector contributed the least at 4.1%.

Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregate economic sector - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017 [percentage]



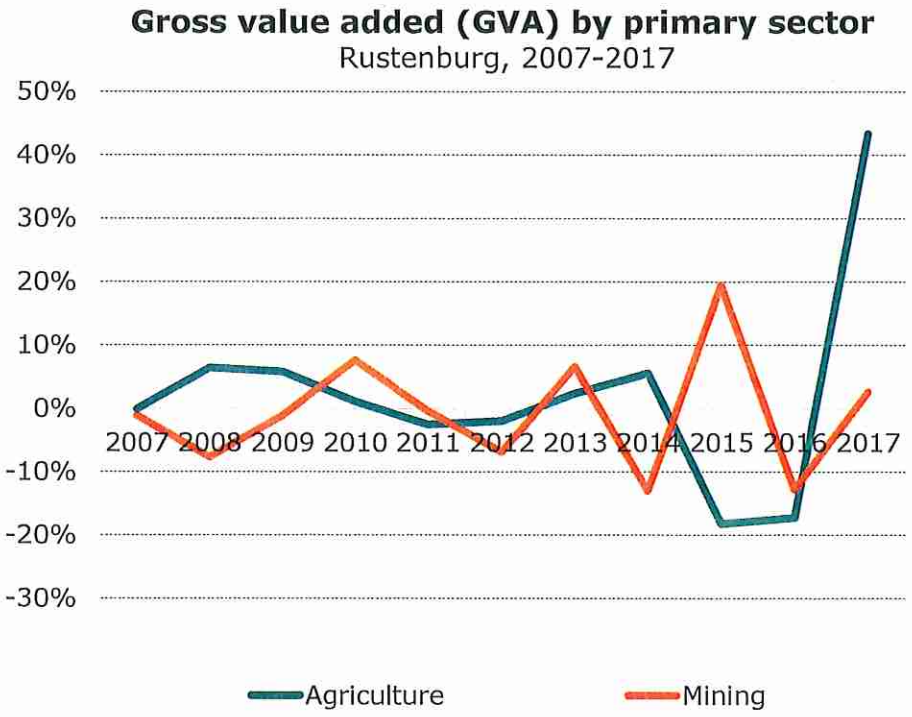
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The following is a breakdown of the Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregated sector:

Primary Sector

The primary sector consists of two broad economic sectors namely the mining and the agricultural sector. The following chart represents the average growth rate in the GVA for both of these sectors in Rustenburg Local Municipality from 2007 to 2017.

Gross Value Added (GVA) by primary sector - Rustenburg, 2007-2017 [Annual percentage change]



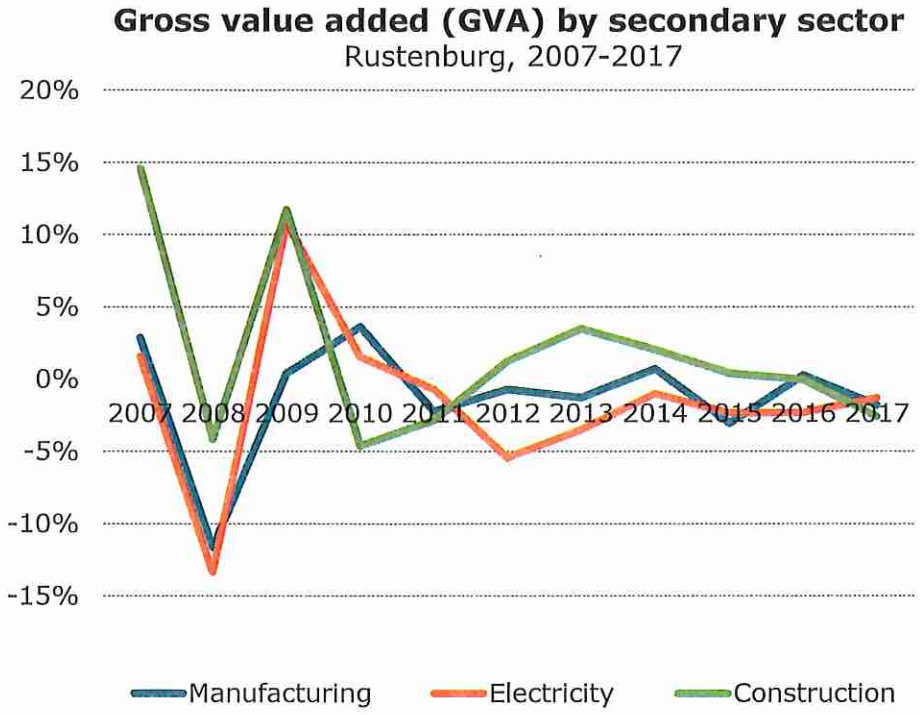
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Between 2007 and 2017, the agriculture sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2017 with an average growth rate of 43.3%. The mining sector reached its highest point of growth of 19.5% in 2015. The agricultural sector experienced the lowest growth for the period during 2015 at -18.2%, while the mining sector reaching its lowest point of growth in 2014 at -13.0%. Both the agriculture and mining sectors are generally characterised by volatility in growth over the period.

Secondary Sector

The secondary sector consists of three broad economic sectors namely the manufacturing, electricity and the construction sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Rustenburg Local Municipality from 2007 to 2017.

Gross Value Added (GVA) by secondary sector - Rustenburg, 2007-2017 [Annual percentage change]



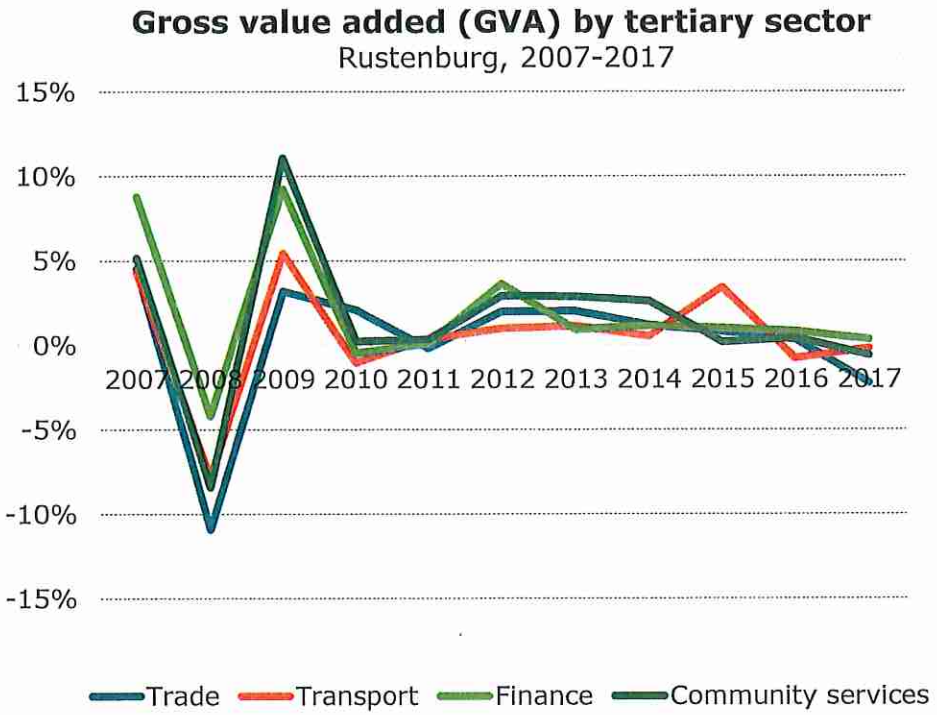
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Between 2007 and 2017, the manufacturing sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2010 with a growth rate of 3.6%. The construction sector reached its highest growth in 2007 at 14.6%. The manufacturing sector experienced its lowest growth in 2010 of -11.6%, while construction sector reached its lowest point of growth in 2010 a with -4.6% growth rate. The electricity sector experienced the highest growth in 2009 at 10.9%, while it recorded the lowest growth of -13.4% in 2008.

Tertiary Sector

The tertiary sector consists of four broad economic sectors namely the trade, transport, finance and the community services sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Rustenburg Local Municipality from 2007 to 2017.

Gross Value Added (GVA) by tertiary sector - Rustenburg, 2007-2017 [Annual percentage change]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The trade sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2007 with a growth rate of 4.5%. The transport sector reached its highest point of growth in 2009 at 5.4%. The finance sector experienced the highest growth rate in 2009 when it grew by 9.2% and recorded the lowest growth rate in 2008 at -4.2%. The Trade sector also had the lowest growth rate in 2008 at -10.9%. The community services sector, which largely consists of government, experienced its highest positive growth in 2009 with 11.1% and the lowest growth rate in 2008 with -8.4%.

Sector Growth forecast

The GVA forecasts are based on forecasted growth rates derived from two sources: historical growth rate estimates and national level industry forecasts. The projections are therefore partly based on the notion that regions that have performed well in the recent past are likely to continue performing well (and vice versa) and partly on the notion that those regions that have prominent sectors that are forecast to grow rapidly in the national economy (e.g. finance and telecommunications) are likely to perform well (and vice versa). As the target year moves further from the base year (2010) so the emphasis moves from historical growth rates to national-level industry growth rates.

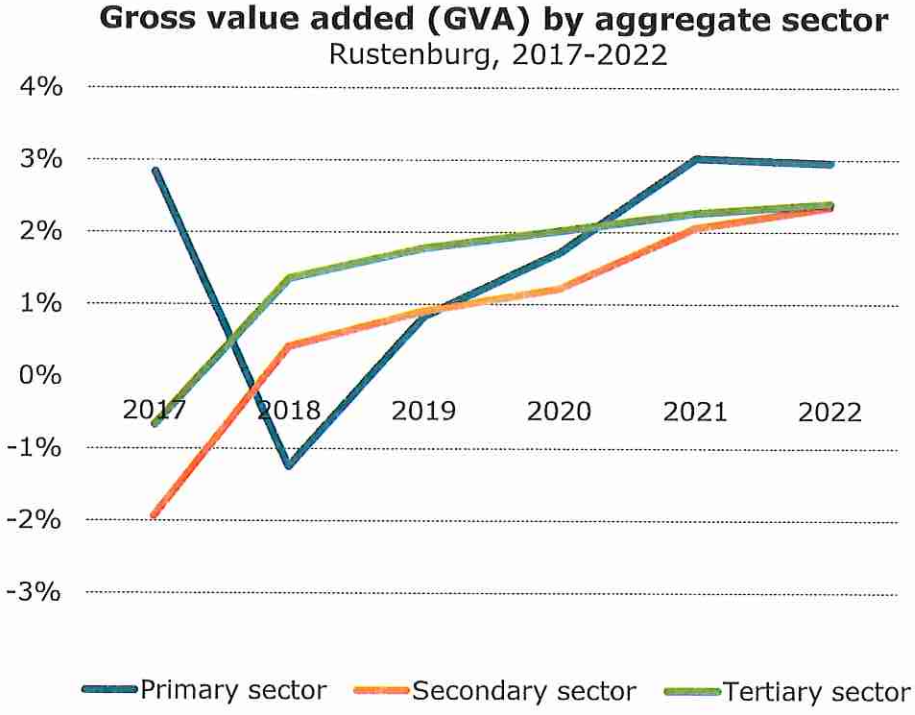
Gross value added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017-2022 [R billions, constant 2010 prices]

	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	Average Annual growth
Agriculture	0.18	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.18	0.18	*0.27%*
Mining	24.41	24.12	24.32	24.74	25.49	26.24	*1.45%*
Manufacturing	0.84	0.85	0.85	0.86	0.87	0.89	*1.12%*
Electricity	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.23	*2.45%*
Construction	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.40	*1.37%*
Trade	1.87	1.89	1.93	1.97	2.02	2.08	*2.10%*
Transport	0.79	0.80	0.83	0.86	0.89	0.92	*3.10%*
Finance	2.42	2.45	2.52	2.60	2.67	2.75	*2.61%*
Community services	2.27	2.31	2.31	2.32	2.33	2.35	*0.71%*
Total Industries	**33.37**	**33.17**	**33.52**	**34.11**	**35.07**	**36.05**	*1.56%*

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The transport sector is expected to grow fastest at an average of 3.10% annually from R 789 million in Rustenburg Local Municipality to R 919 million in 2022. The mining sector is estimated to be the largest sector within the Rustenburg Local Municipality in 2022, with a total share of 72.8% of the total GVA (as measured in current prices), growing at an average annual rate of 1.5%. The sector that is estimated to grow the slowest is the agriculture sector with an average annual growth rate of 0.27%.

Gross value added (GVA) by aggregate economic sector - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017-2022 [Annual growth rate, constant 2010 prices]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

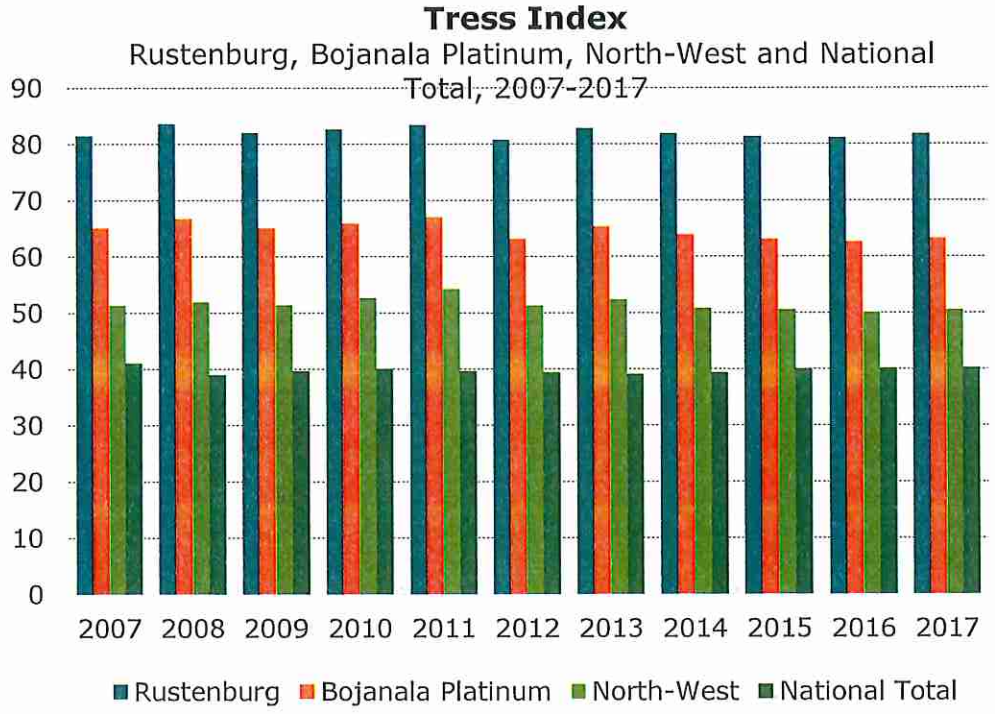
The Primary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.44% between 2017 and 2022, with the Secondary sector growing at 1.38% on average annually. The Tertiary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.96% for the same period.

Based on the typical profile of a developing country, we can expect faster growth in the secondary and tertiary sectors when compared to the primary sector. Also remember that the agricultural sector is prone to very high volatility as a result of uncertain weather conditions, pests and other natural causes - and the forecasts presented here is merely a long-term trend rather than trying to forecast the unpredictable weather conditions.

TRESS INDEX

The Tress index measures the degree of concentration of an area's economy on a sector basis. A Tress index value of 0 means that all economic sectors in the region contribute equally to GVA, whereas a Tress index of 100 means that only one economic sector makes up the whole GVA of the region.

Tress index - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2017 [Number]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, Rustenburg's Tress Index was estimated at 81.9 which are higher than the 63.2 of the district municipality and higher than the 63.2 of the province. This implies that - on average - Rustenburg Local Municipality is less diversified in terms of its economic activity spread than the province's economy as a whole.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality has a very high concentrated mining sector.

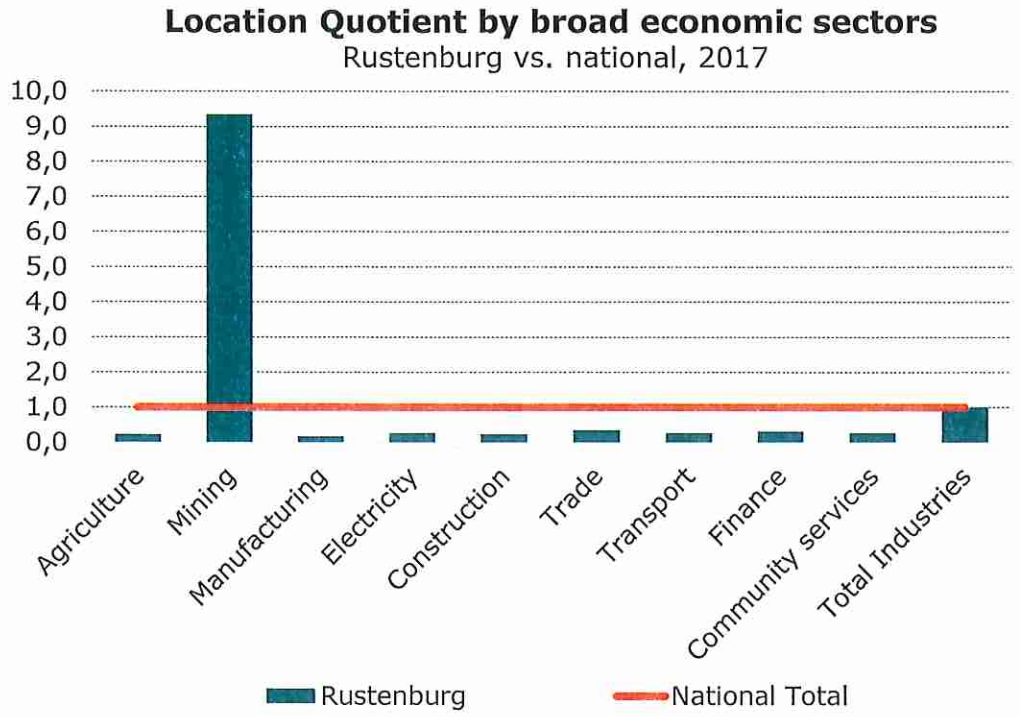
The more diverse an economy is, the more likely it is to create employment opportunities across all skills levels (and not only - for instance - employment opportunities that cater for highly skilled labourers), and maintain a healthy balance between labour-intensive and capital-intensive industries. If both economic growth and the alleviation of unemployment are of concern, clearly there need to be industries that are growing fast and also creating jobs in particular the lower skilled categories. Unfortunately, in practice many industries that are growing fast are not those that create many employment opportunities for unskilled labourers (and alleviate unemployment).

LOCATION QUOTIENT

A specific regional economy has a comparative advantage over other regional economies if it can more efficiently produce the same good. The location quotient is one way of measuring this comparative advantage.

If the location quotient is larger than one for a specified sector within a region, then that region has a comparative advantage in that sector. This is because the share of that sector of the specified regional economy is greater than the same sector in the national economy. The location quotient is usually computed by taking the percentage share of the sector in the regional economy divided by the percentage share of that same sector in the national economy.

Location quotient by broad economic sectors - Rustenburg Local Municipality and South Africa, 2017 [Number]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

For 2017 Rustenburg Local Municipality has a very large comparative advantage in the mining sector. The Rustenburg Local Municipality has a comparative disadvantage when it comes to the manufacturing and agriculture sector which has a very large comparative disadvantage. In general mining is a very concentrated economic sector. The entire Rustenburg Local Municipality-economy is centred around the mines in the area, with an LQ of 9.35. There are no other sectors except for the mining sector with a comparative advantage. All other sectors have a disadvantage - with the manufacturing sector reporting the lowest score at 0.166.

2.3.3 LABOUR

The labour force of a country consists of everyone of working age (above a certain age and below retirement) that are participating as workers, i.e. people who are actively employed or seeking employment. This is also called the economically active population (EAP). People not included are students, retired people, stay-at-home parents, people in prisons or similar institutions, people employed in jobs or professions with unreported income, as well as discouraged workers who cannot find work.

WORKING AGE POPULATION IN RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007 AND 2017 [NUMBER]

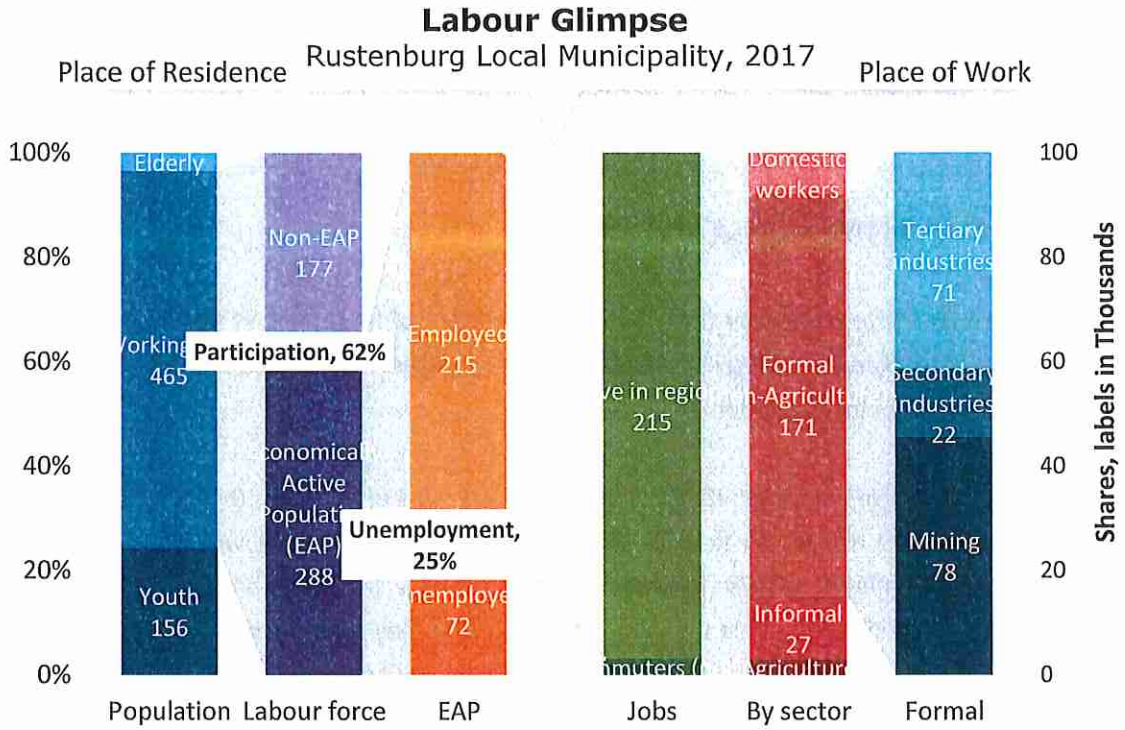
	Rustenburg		Bojanala Platinum		North-West		National Total	
	2007	2017	2007	2017	2007	2017	2007	2017
15-19	40,400	40,700	133,000	117,000	353,000	296,000	5,240,000	4,560,000
20-24	55,200	56,500	152,000	145,000	352,000	301,000	5,350,000	4,860,000
25-29	57,600	77,800	145,000	185,000	311,000	352,000	4,720,000	5,560,000
30-34	47,100	79,900	113,000	185,000	245,000	353,000	3,690,000	5,420,000
35-39	38,000	61,800	89,800	149,000	199,000	305,000	2,970,000	4,460,000
40-44	34,100	45,300	81,100	105,000	183,000	228,000	2,610,000	3,280,000
45-49	30,100	36,000	75,200	81,500	170,000	178,000	2,320,000	2,590,000
50-54	21,600	29,800	59,600	73,200	140,000	162,000	1,920,000	2,290,000
55-59	14,200	22,900	45,000	66,400	109,000	151,000	1,560,000	2,030,000
60-64	9,560	14,700	35,300	52,000	87,900	123,000	1,210,000	1,660,000
Total	**347,784**	**465,419**	**929,310**	**1,159,094**	**2,151,355**	**2,449,076**	**31,597,274**	**36,711,715**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The working age population in Rustenburg in 2017 was 465 000, increasing at an average annual rate of 2.96% since 2007. For the same period the working age population for Bojanala Platinum District Municipality increased at 2.23% annually, while that of North-West Province increased at 1.30% annually. South Africa's working age population has increased annually by 1.51% from 31.6 million in 2007 to 36.7 million in 2017.

The graph below combines all the facets of the labour force in the Rustenburg Local Municipality into one compact view. The chart is divided into "place of residence" on the left, which is measured from the population side, and "place of work" on the right, which is measured from the business side.

Labour Glimpse - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2017



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Reading the chart from the left-most bar, breaking down the total population of the Rustenburg Local Municipality (645 000) into working age and non-working age, the number of people that are of working age is about 465 000. As per definition, those that are of age 0 - 19 (youth) or age 65 and up (pensioners) are part of the non-working age population. Out of the working age group, 61.9% are participating in the labour force, meaning 288 000 residents of the local municipality forms currently part of the economically active population (EAP). Comparing this with the non-economically active population (NEAP) of the local municipality: fulltime students at tertiary institutions, disabled people, and those choosing not to work, sum to 177 000 people. Out of the economically active population, there are 72 200 that are unemployed, or when expressed as a percentage, an unemployment rate of 25.1%. Up to here all the statistics are measured at the place of residence.

On the far right we have the formal non-Agriculture jobs in Rustenburg, broken down by the primary (mining), secondary and tertiary industries. The majority of the formal employment lies in the Primary industry, with 84 300 jobs. When including the informal, agricultural and domestic workers, we have a total number of 223 000 jobs in the area. Formal jobs make up 77.1% of all jobs in the Rustenburg Local Municipality. The difference between the employment measured at the place of work, and the people employed living in the area can be explained by the net commuters that commute every day into the local municipality.

In theory, a higher or increasing population dividend is supposed to provide additional stimulus to economic growth. People of working age tend to uphold higher consumption patterns (Final Consumption Expenditure, FCE), and a more dense concentration of working age people is supposed to decrease dependency ratios - given that the additional labour which is offered to the market, is absorbed.

ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE POPULATION (EAP)

The economically active population (EAP) is a good indicator of how many of the total working age population are in reality participating in the labour market of a region. If a person is economically active, he or she forms part of the labour force.

The economically active population (EAP) is defined as the number of people (between the age of 15 and 65) who are able and willing to work, and who are actively looking for work. It includes both employed and unemployed people. People, who recently have not taken any active steps to find employment, are not included in the measure. These people may (or may not) consider themselves unemployed. Regardless, they are counted as discouraged work seekers, and thus form part of the non-economically active population.

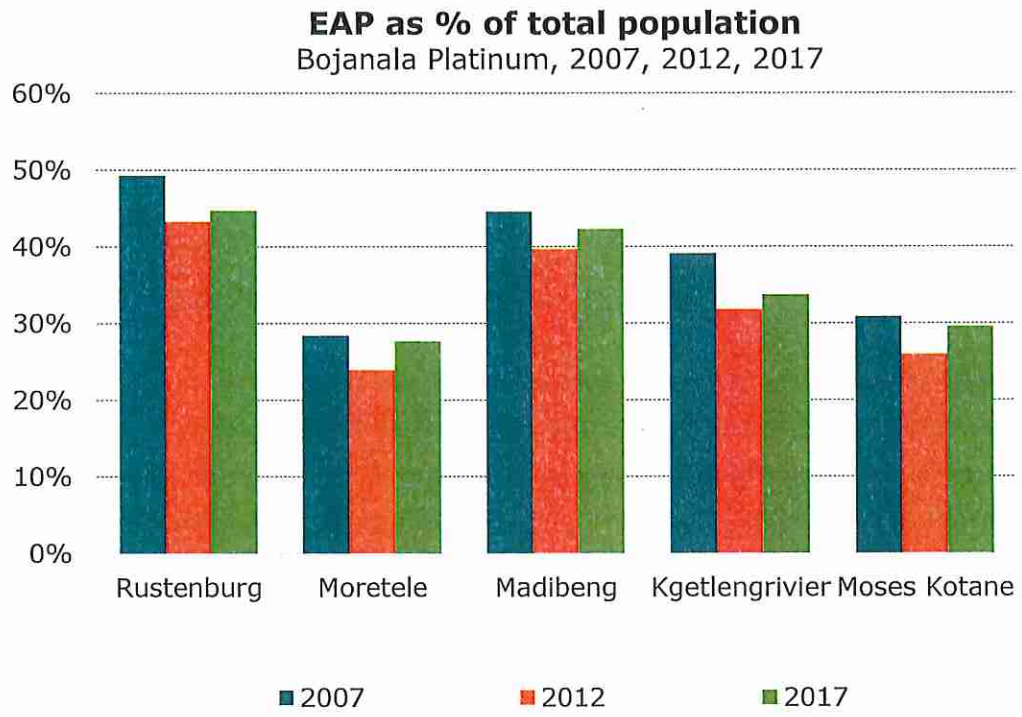
Economically active population (EAP) - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2017 [number, percentage]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2007	236,000	560,000	1,140,000	18,000,000	*42.1%*	*20.6%*	*1.31%*
2008	242,000	574,000	1,160,000	18,400,000	*42.2%*	*21.0%*	*1.32%*
2009	242,000	570,000	1,130,000	18,300,000	*42.5%*	*21.5%*	*1.32%*
2010	237,000	553,000	1,070,000	18,100,000	*42.9%*	*22.1%*	*1.31%*
2011	238,000	550,000	1,050,000	18,300,000	*43.3%*	*22.6%*	*1.30%*
2012	245,000	564,000	1,060,000	18,700,000	*43.5%*	*23.0%*	*1.31%*
2013	255,000	588,000	1,120,000	19,300,000	*43.3%*	*22.8%*	*1.32%*
2014	267,000	619,000	1,180,000	20,100,000	*43.2%*	*22.6%*	*1.33%*
2015	277,000	643,000	1,230,000	20,800,000	*43.1%*	*22.6%*	*1.34%*
2016	282,000	655,000	1,250,000	21,300,000	*43.0%*	*22.5%*	*1.32%*
2017	288,000	670,000	1,280,000	21,800,000	*43.0%*	*22.4%*	*1.32%*
Average Annual growth							
2007-2017	***2.04%***	***1.81%***	***1.17%***	***1.94%***			

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality's EAP was 288 000 in 2017, which is 44.67% of its total population of 645 000, and roughly 43.02% of the total EAP of the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. From 2007 to 2017, the average annual increase in the EAP in the Rustenburg Local Municipality was 2.04%, which is 0.227 percentage points higher than the growth in the EAP of Bojanala Platinum's for the same period.

EAP as % of total population - Rustenburg and the rest of Bojanala Platinum, 2007, 2012, 2017 [percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2007, 49.3% of the total population in Rustenburg Local Municipality were classified as economically active which decreased to 44.7% in 2017. Compared to the other regions in Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Rustenburg Local Municipality had the highest EAP as a percentage of the total population within its own region relative to the other regions. On the other hand, Moretele Local Municipality had the lowest EAP with 27.7% people classified as economically active population in 2017.

LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE

The labour force participation rate (LFPR) is the Economically Active Population (EAP) expressed as a percentage of the total working age population. The following is the labour participation rate of the Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total as a whole.

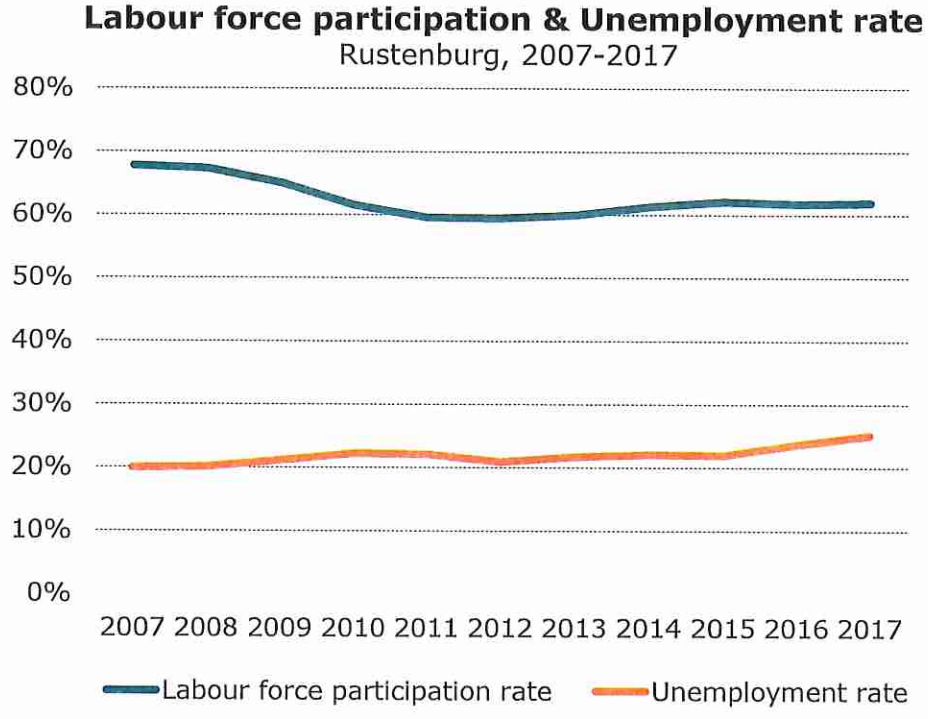
The labour force participation rate - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2017 [percentage]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	67.7%	60.2%	53.1%	57.0%
2008	67.3%	60.2%	53.1%	57.4%
2009	65.0%	58.2%	51.1%	56.2%
2010	61.5%	55.0%	47.9%	54.5%
2011	59.6%	53.3%	46.3%	54.3%
2012	59.5%	53.4%	46.3%	54.7%
2013	60.0%	54.5%	47.8%	55.7%
2014	61.3%	56.2%	50.0%	57.1%
2015	62.1%	57.3%	51.3%	58.1%
2016	61.8%	57.4%	51.8%	58.9%
2017	61.9%	57.8%	52.4%	59.5%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The Rustenburg Local Municipality's labour force participation rate decreased from 67.72% to 61.90% which is a decrease of -5.8 percentage points. The Bojanala Platinum District Municipality decreased from 60.25% to 57.78%, North-West Province decreased from 53.14% to 52.42% and South Africa increased from 56.99% to 59.47% from 2007 to 2017.The Rustenburg Local Municipality labour force participation rate exhibited a lower percentage point change compared to the North-West Province from 2007 to 2017. The Rustenburg Local Municipality had a higher labour force participation rate when compared to South Africa in 2017.

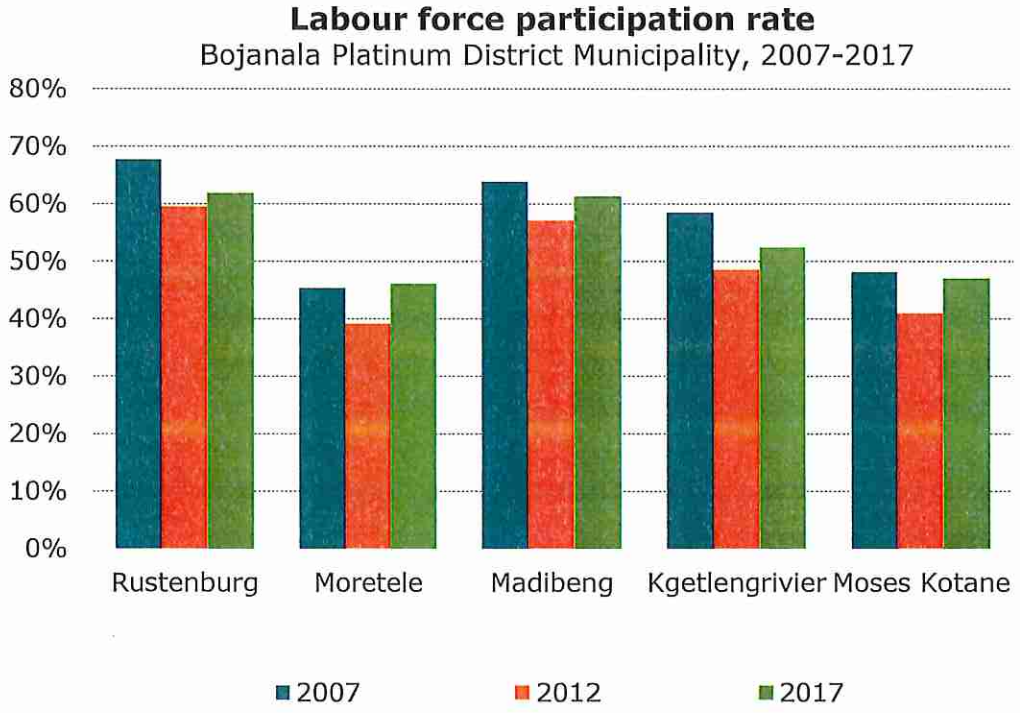
The labour force participation rate - Rustenburg Local Municipality, 2007-2017 [percentage]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017 the labour force participation rate for Rustenburg was at 61.9% which is slightly lower when compared to the 67.7% in 2007. The unemployment rate is an efficient indicator that measures the success rate of the labour force relative to employment. In 2007, the unemployment rate for Rustenburg was 19.9% and increased overtime to 25.1% in 2017. The gap between the labour force participation rate and the unemployment rate increased which indicates a positive outlook for the employment within Rustenburg Local Municipality.

THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE, 2007, 2012 AND 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had the highest labour force participation rate with 61.9% in 2017 decreasing from 67.7% in 2007. Moretele Local Municipality had the lowest labour force participation rate of 46.1% in 2017, this increased from 45.3% in 2007.

TOTAL EMPLOYMENT

Employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. Employment data is also used in the calculation of productivity, earnings per worker, and other economic indicators.

Total employment consists of two parts: employment in the formal sector, and employment in the informal sector

TOTAL EMPLOYMENT - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [NUMBERS]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	195,000	387,000	782,000	13,500,000
2008	199,000	397,000	794,000	14,100,000
2009	194,000	389,000	767,000	14,000,000
2010	186,000	373,000	722,000	13,600,000
2011	189,000	376,000	714,000	13,800,000
2012	196,000	388,000	727,000	14,000,000
2013	200,000	399,000	757,000	14,500,000
2014	210,000	419,000	799,000	15,100,000
2015	219,000	436,000	827,000	15,500,000
2016	217,000	437,000	840,000	15,700,000
2017	223,000	447,000	858,000	15,900,000
Average Annual growth				
2007-2017	***1.31%***	***1.47%***	***0.93%***	***1.61%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, Rustenburg employed 223 000 people which is 49.78% of the total employment in Bojanala Platinum District Municipality (447 000), 25.94% of total employment in North-West Province (858 000), and 1.40% of the total employment of 15.9 million in South Africa. Employment within Rustenburg increased annually at an average rate of 1.31% from 2007 to 2017.

TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [NUMBERS]

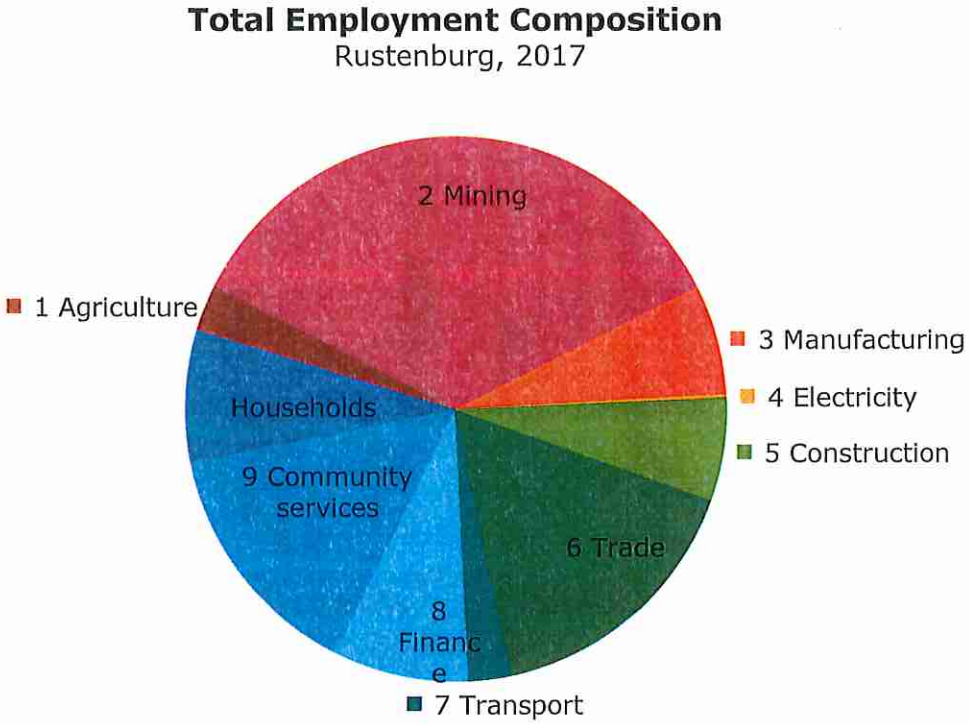
	Rustenburg	Moretele	Madibeng	Kgetlengrivier	Moses Kotane	Total Bojanala Platinum
Agriculture	6,110	782	5,390	1,950	1,440	15,664
Mining	78,200	2,640	22,900	3,800	15,300	122,891
Manufacturing	14,600	2,410	10,700	1,470	3,780	32,979
Electricity	463	81	327	31	292	1,193
Construction	13,600	1,610	8,660	1,240	2,520	27,659
Trade	36,200	4,800	25,900	4,180	9,340	80,421
Transport	5,610	904	4,590	571	1,440	13,122
Finance	18,100	3,090	15,800	1,530	3,140	41,613
Community services	32,300	4,550	27,800	2,950	9,620	77,204
Households	17,500	1,800	10,200	1,970	3,130	34,656
Total	**223,000**	**22,700**	**132,000**	**19,700**	**50,000**	**447,403**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality employs a total number of 223 000 people within its local municipality. Rustenburg Local Municipality also employs the highest number of people within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The local municipality that employs the lowest number of people relative to the other regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality is Kgetlengrivier local municipality with a total number of 19 700 employed people.

In Rustenburg Local Municipality the economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employment in 2017 were the mining sector with a total of 78 200 employed people or 35.1% of total employment in the local municipality. The trade sector with a total of 36 200 (16.3%) employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 463 (0.2%) is the sector that employs the least number of people in Rustenburg Local Municipality, followed by the transport sector with 5 610 (2.5%) people employed.

TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

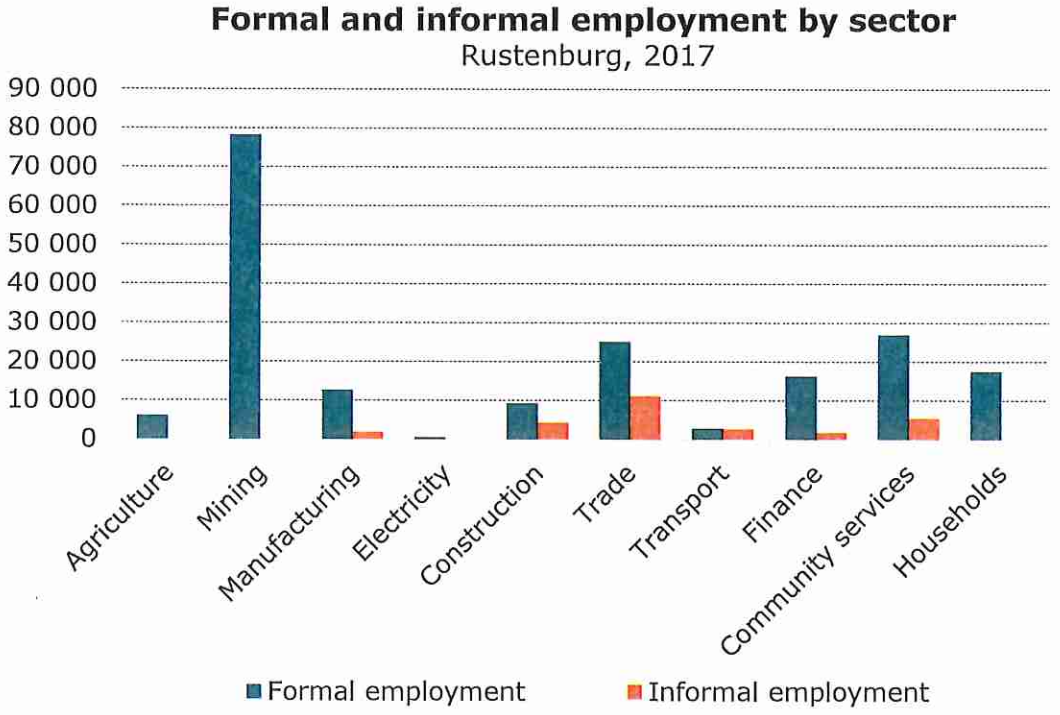
FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT

Total employment can be broken down into formal and informal sector employment. Formal sector employment is measured from the formal business side, and the informal employment is measured from the household side where formal businesses have not been established.

Formal employment is much more stable than informal employment. Informal employment is much harder to measure and manage, simply because it cannot be tracked through the formal business side of the economy. Informal employment is however a reality in South Africa and cannot be ignored.

The number of formally employed people in Rustenburg Local Municipality counted 195 000 in 2017, which is about 87.70% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 27 400 or 12.30% of the total employment. Informal employment in Rustenburg increased from 21 800 in 2007 to an estimated 27 400 in 2017.

FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [NUMBERS]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Some of the economic sectors have little or no informal employment:
Mining industry, due to well-regulated mining safety policies, and the strict registration of a mine, has little or no informal employment. The Electricity sector is also well regulated, making it difficult to get information on informal employment. Domestic Workers and employment in the Agriculture sector is typically counted under a separate heading.

In 2017 the Trade sector recorded the highest number of informally employed, with a total of 11 200 employees or 40.71% of the total informal employment. This can be expected as the barriers to enter the Trade sector in terms of capital and skills required is less than with most of the other sectors. The Finance sector has the lowest informal employment with 1 830 and only contributes 6.67% to total informal employment.

FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [NUMBERS]

	Formal employment	Informal employment
Agriculture	6,110	N/A
Mining	78,200	N/A
Manufacturing	12,700	1,920
Electricity	463	N/A
Construction	9,260	4,350
Trade	25,100	11,200
Transport	2,860	2,750
Finance	16,300	1,830
Community services	26,900	5,380
Households	17,500	N/A

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The informal sector is vital for the areas with very high unemployment and very low labour participation rates. Unemployed people see participating in the informal sector as a survival strategy. The most desirable situation would be to get a stable formal job. But because the formal economy is not growing fast enough to generate adequate jobs, the informal sector is used as a survival mechanism.

UNEMPLOYMENT

The unemployed includes all persons between 15 and 65 who are currently not working, but who are actively looking for work. It therefore excludes people who are not actively seeking work (referred to as discouraged work seekers).

The choice of definition for what constitutes being unemployed has a large impact on the final estimates for all measured labour force variables. The following definition was adopted by the Thirteenth International Conference of Labour Statisticians (Geneva, 1982): The "unemployed" comprise all persons above a specified age who during the reference period were:

- "Without work", i.e. not in paid employment or self-employment;
- "Currently available for work", i.e. were available for paid employment or self-employment during the reference period; and
- "Seeking work", i.e. had taken specific steps in a specified reference period to seek paid employment or self-employment. The specific steps may include registration at a public or private employment exchange; application to employers; checking at worksites, farms, factory gates, market or other assembly places; placing or answering newspaper advertisements; seeking assistance of friends or relatives; looking for land.

UNEMPLOYMENT (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
2007	46,900	138,000	296,000	4,460,000	*33.9%*	*15.8%*	*1.05%*
2008	48,600	141,000	297,000	4,350,000	*34.4%*	*16.4%*	*1.12%*
2009	51,000	145,000	298,000	4,370,000	*35.2%*	*17.1%*	*1.17%*
2010	52,700	146,000	292,000	4,490,000	*36.2%*	*18.0%*	*1.17%*
2011	52,600	142,000	280,000	4,570,000	*36.9%*	*18.8%*	*1.15%*
2012	51,200	138,000	281,000	4,690,000	*37.0%*	*18.2%*	*1.09%*
2013	55,200	147,000	296,000	4,850,000	*37.6%*	*18.6%*	*1.14%*
2014	58,900	156,000	315,000	5,060,000	*37.8%*	*18.7%*	*1.16%*
2015	60,900	161,000	328,000	5,290,000	*37.9%*	*18.6%*	*1.15%*
2016	66,600	171,000	341,000	5,630,000	*39.0%*	*19.5%*	*1.18%*
2017	72,200	183,000	364,000	5,940,000	*39.4%*	*19.8%*	*1.21%*
Average Annual growth							
2007-2017	***4.40%***	***2.85%***	***2.08%***	***2.91%***			

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, there were a total number of 72 200 people unemployed in Rustenburg, which is an increase of 25 300 from 46 900 in 2007. The total number of unemployed people within Rustenburg constitutes 39.37% of the total number of unemployed people in Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The Rustenburg Local Municipality experienced an average annual increase of 4.40% in the number of unemployed people, which is worse than that of the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality which had an average annual increase in unemployment of 2.85%.

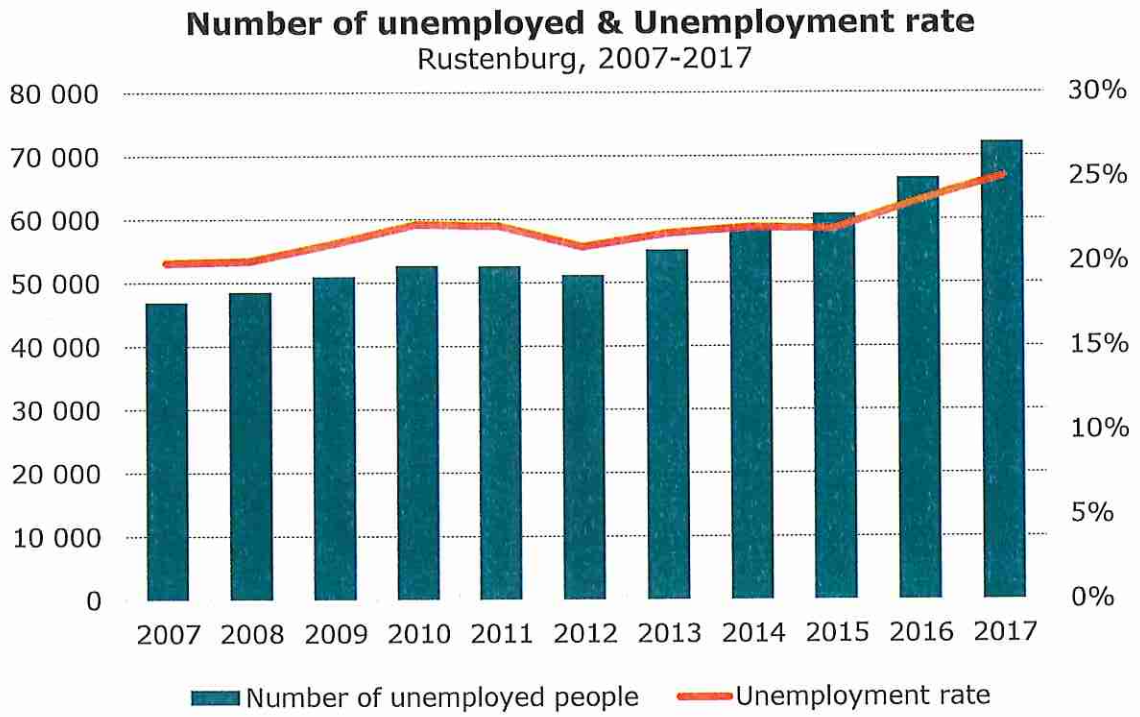
UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [PERCENTAGE]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	19.9%	24.7%	25.9%	24.8%
2008	20.0%	24.6%	25.7%	23.6%
2009	21.1%	25.4%	26.4%	23.8%
2010	22.2%	26.3%	27.2%	24.8%
2011	22.1%	25.9%	26.7%	24.9%
2012	20.9%	24.5%	26.4%	25.0%
2013	21.7%	25.0%	26.6%	25.1%
2014	22.0%	25.1%	26.6%	25.1%
2015	21.9%	25.0%	26.8%	25.5%
2016	23.6%	26.0%	27.2%	26.4%
2017	25.1%	27.4%	28.4%	27.2%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the unemployment rate in Rustenburg Local Municipality (based on the official definition of unemployment) was 25.05%, which is an increase of 5.13 percentage points. The unemployment rate in Rustenburg Local Municipality is lower than that of Bojanala Platinum. Comparing to the North-West Province it can be seen that the unemployment rate for Rustenburg Local Municipality was lower than that of North-West which was 28.38%. The unemployment rate for South Africa was 27.21% in 2017, which is a increase of -2.44 percentage points from 24.77% in 2007.

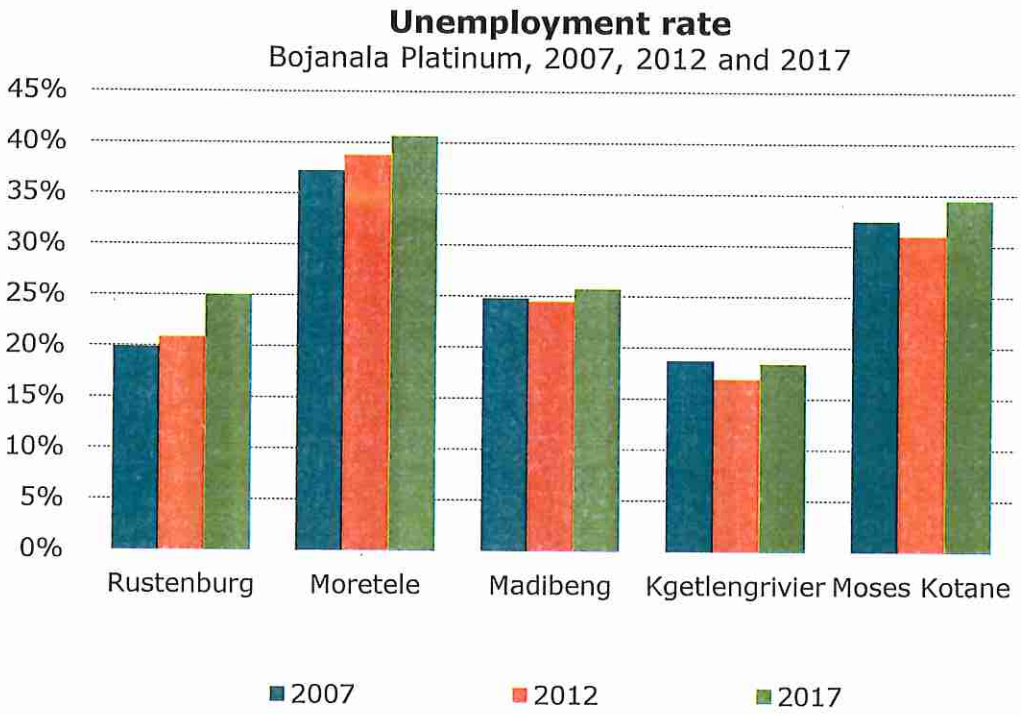
UNEMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When comparing unemployment rates among regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Moretele Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 40.6%, which has increased from 37.2% in 2007. It can be seen that the Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 18.4% in 2017, this decreased from 18.7% in 2007.

UNEMPLOYMENT RATE - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE, 2007, 2012 AND 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

2.3.4 INCOME AND EXPENDITURE

In a growing economy among which production factors are increasing, most of the household incomes are spent on purchasing goods and services. Therefore, the measuring of the income and expenditure of households is a major indicator of a number of economic trends. It is also a good marker of growth as well as consumer tendencies.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY INCOME CATEGORY

The number of households is grouped according to predefined income categories or brackets, where income is calculated as the sum of all household gross disposable income: payments in kind, gifts, homemade goods sold, old age pensions, income from informal sector activities, subsistence income, etc.). Note that income tax is included in the income distribution.

Income categories start at R0 - R2,400 per annum and go up to R2,400,000+ per annum. A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. These income brackets do not take

into account inflation creep: over time, movement of households "up" the brackets is natural, even if they are not earning any more in real terms.

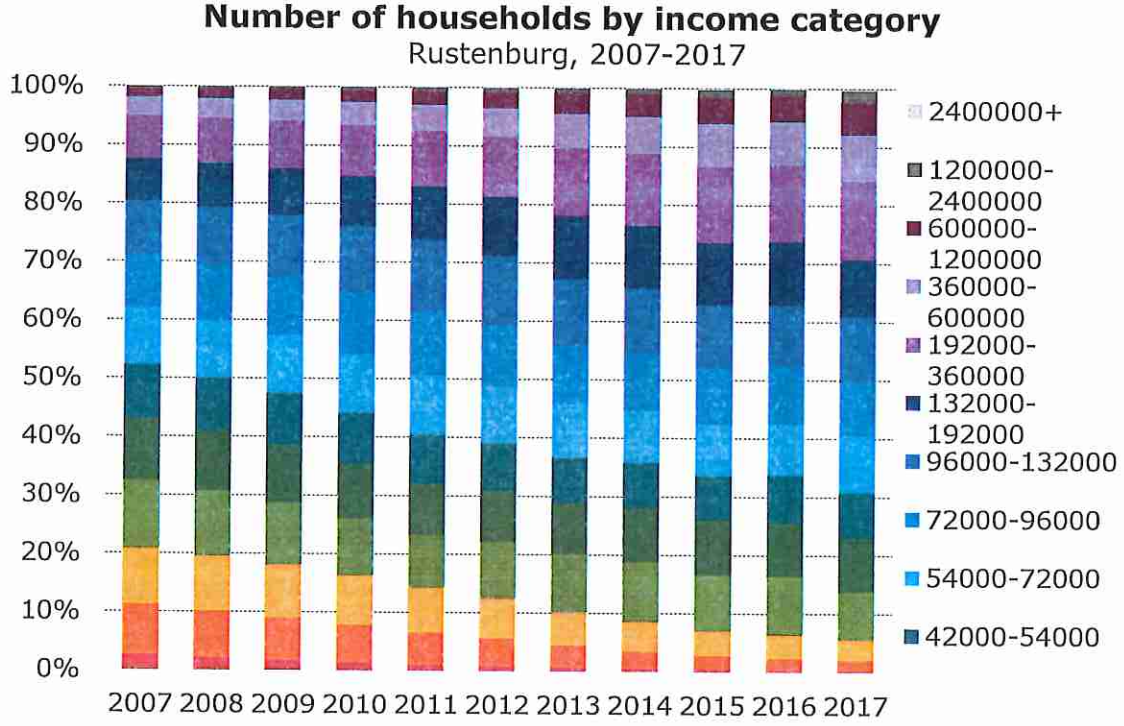
HOUSEHOLDS BY INCOME CATEGORY - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
0-2400	27	64	125	1,650	*42.6%*	*21.8%*	*1.65%*
2400-6000	453	1,110	2,230	32,500	*40.8%*	*20.3%*	*1.40%*
6000-12000	4,120	10,600	22,000	315,000	*38.7%*	*18.8%*	*1.31%*
12000-18000	8,210	21,500	44,800	626,000	*38.2%*	*18.3%*	*1.31%*
18000-30000	18,200	52,300	120,000	1,730,000	*34.8%*	*15.1%*	*1.05%*
30000-42000	20,800	59,000	130,000	1,750,000	*35.2%*	*16.0%*	*1.19%*
42000-54000	17,600	49,400	112,000	1,550,000	*35.6%*	*15.7%*	*1.14%*
54000-72000	21,800	58,600	126,000	1,670,000	*37.2%*	*17.3%*	*1.30%*
72000-96000	20,900	55,600	116,000	1,520,000	*37.6%*	*18.0%*	*1.37%*
96000-132000	25,200	59,400	114,000	1,430,000	*42.5%*	*22.1%*	*1.76%*
132000-192000	21,900	50,600	99,300	1,370,000	*43.4%*	*22.1%*	*1.60%*
192000-360000	30,200	62,500	121,000	1,760,000	*48.3%*	*24.9%*	*1.71%*
360000-600000	18,200	36,700	70,100	1,160,000	*49.7%*	*26.0%*	*1.58%*
600000-1200000	12,500	25,200	46,300	840,000	*49.7%*	*27.0%*	*1.49%*
1200000-2400000	4,260	8,680	15,300	266,000	*49.0%*	*27.8%*	*1.60%*
2400000+	693	1,390	2,270	42,000	*49.7%*	*30.5%*	*1.65%*
Total	**225,000**	**553,000**	**1,140,000**	**16,100,000**	***40.7%***	***19.7%***	***1.40%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

It was estimated that in 2017 13.77% of all the households in the Rustenburg Local Municipality, were living on R30,000 or less per annum. In comparison with 2007's 32.57%, the number is close to half. The 192000-360000 income category has the highest number of households with a total number of 30 200, followed by the 96000-132000 income category with 25 200 households. Only 27 households fall within the 0-2400 income category.

HOUSEHOLDS BY INCOME BRACKET - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

For the period 2007 to 2017 the number of households earning more than R30,000 per annum has increased from 67.43% to 86.23%. It can be seen that the number of households with income equal to or lower than R6,000 per year has decreased by a significant amount.

ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME

Personal income is an even broader concept than labour remuneration. Personal income includes profits, income from property, net current transfers and net social benefits.

Annual total personal income is the sum of the total personal income for all households in a specific region. The definition of income is the same as used in the income brackets (Number of Households by Income Category), also including the income tax. For this variable, current prices are used, meaning that inflation has not been taken into account.

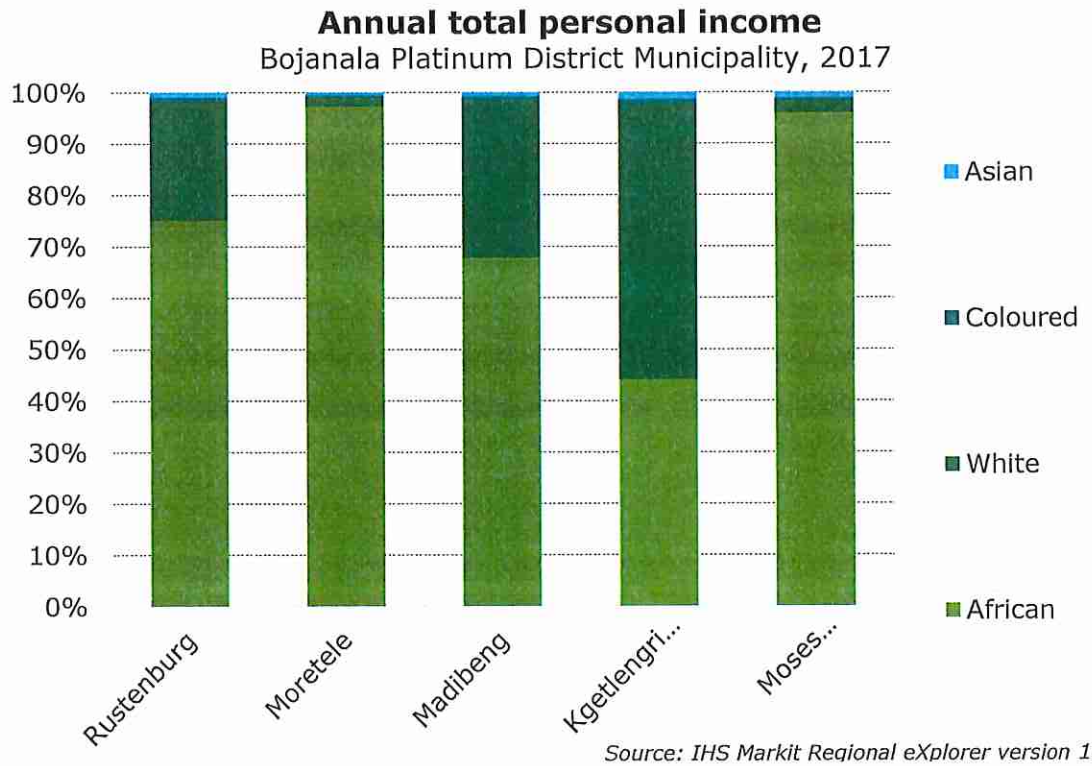
ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL[CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	16.3	34.9	75.9	1,432.2
2008	18.7	40.1	85.7	1,587.9
2009	20.6	44.1	92.9	1,695.1
2010	23.0	48.9	101.6	1,843.3
2011	25.9	54.7	112.4	2,033.0
2012	28.8	60.9	125.1	2,226.5
2013	33.3	70.2	141.6	2,412.1
2014	35.7	75.9	151.5	2,590.6
2015	40.9	86.7	167.6	2,778.6
2016	41.3	91.0	175.9	3,009.7
2017	50.3	107.7	205.1	3,238.9
Average Annual growth				
2007-2017	***11.91%***	***11.91%***	***10.45%***	***8.50%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality recorded an average annual growth rate of 11.91% (from R 16.3 billion to R 50.3 billion) from 2007 to 2017, which is less than Bojanala Platinum's (11.91%), but more than North-West Province's (10.45%) average annual growth rates. South Africa had an average annual growth rate of 8.50% (from R 1.43 trillion to R 3.24 trillion) which is less than the growth rate in Rustenburg Local Municipality.

ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM [CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The total personal income of Rustenburg Local Municipality amounted to approximately R 50.3 billion in 2017. The African population group earned R 37.8 billion, or 75.20% of total personal income, while the White population group earned R 11.5 billion, or 22.89% of the total personal income. The Asian and the Coloured population groups only had a share of 1.02% and 0.88% of total personal income respectively.

ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE[CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]

	Rustenburg	Moretele	Madibeng	Kgetlengrivier	Moses Kotane
2007	16.32	2.33	11.00	1.17	4.13
2008	18.72	2.59	12.82	1.33	4.61
2009	20.65	2.78	14.29	1.43	4.97
2010	23.00	2.97	15.99	1.57	5.35
2011	25.94	3.21	17.99	1.72	5.84
2012	28.82	3.64	19.90	1.92	6.60
2013	33.29	4.09	22.81	2.28	7.69
2014	35.67	4.50	24.76	2.50	8.46
2015	40.85	5.10	27.92	2.93	9.85
2016	41.35	5.67	30.17	3.17	10.65
2017	50.26	6.39	35.38	3.49	12.20
Average Annual growth					
2007-2017	***11.91%***	***10.62%***	***12.39%***	***11.57%***	***11.43%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

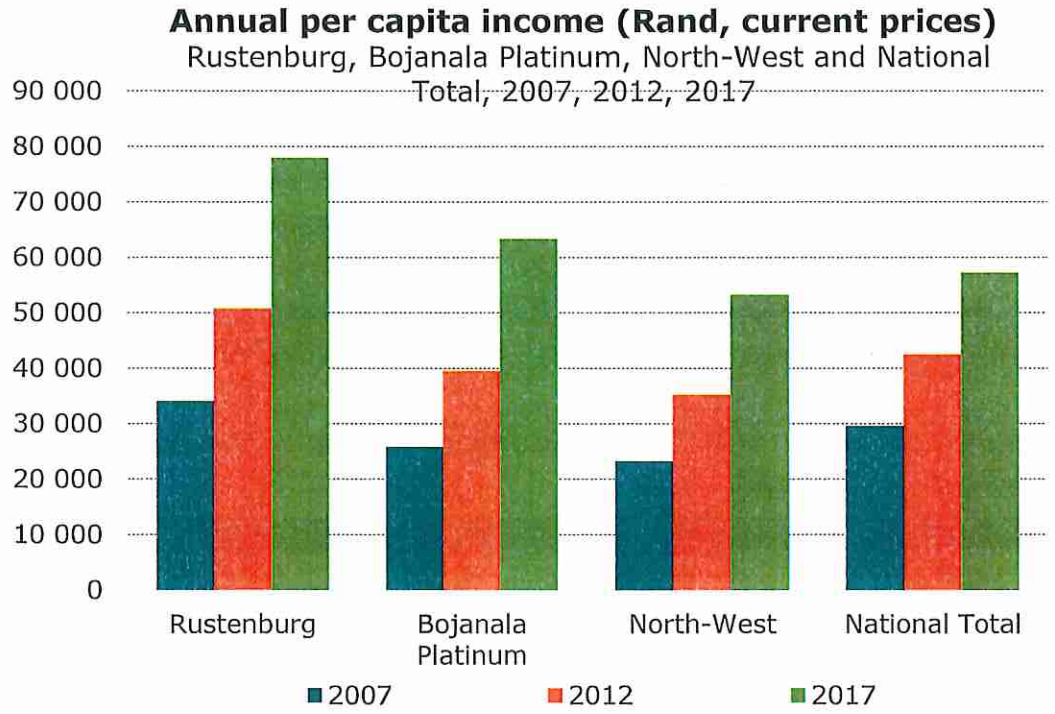
When looking at the annual total personal income for the regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality it can be seen that the Rustenburg Local Municipality had the highest total personal income with R 50.3 billion which increased from R 16.3 billion recorded in 2007. It can be seen that the Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality had the lowest total personal income of R 3.49 billion in 2017, this increased from R 1.17 billion in 2007.

ANNUAL PER CAPITA INCOME

Per capita income refers to the income per person. Thus, it takes the total personal income per annum and divides it equally among the population.

Per capita income is often used as a measure of wealth particularly when comparing economies or population groups. Rising per capita income usually indicates a likely swell in demand for consumption.

PER CAPITA INCOME - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The per capita income in Rustenburg Local Municipality in 2017 is R 77,900 which is higher than both the North-West (R 53,300) and of the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality (R 63,300) per capita income. The per capita income for Rustenburg Local Municipality (R 77,900) is higher than that of the South Africa as a whole which is R 57,300.

PER CAPITA INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]

	African	White	Coloured	Asian
Rustenburg	65,200	214,000	76,100	90,700
Moretele	32,000	N/A	N/A	N/A
Madibeng	48,500	220,000	55,700	96,400
Kgetlengrivier	31,900	192,000	36,700	N/A
Moses Kotane	47,700	195,000	N/A	98,500

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality has the highest per capita income with a total of R 77,900. Local Municipality of Madibeng had the second highest per capita income at R 64,100, whereas Moretele Local Municipality had the lowest per capita income at R 32,700. In Rustenburg Local Municipality, the White population group has the highest per capita income, with R 214,000, relative to the other population groups. The population group with the second highest per capita income within Rustenburg

Local Municipality is the Asian population group (R 90,700), where the Coloured and the African population groups had a per capita income of R 76,000 and R 65,200 respectively.

INDEX OF BUYING POWER

The Index of Buying Power (IBP) is a measure of a region's overall capacity to absorb products and/or services. The index is useful when comparing two regions in terms of their capacity to buy products. Values range from 0 to 1 (where the national index equals 1), and can be interpreted as the percentage of national buying power attributable to the specific region. Regions' buying power usually depends on three factors: the size of the population; the ability of the population to spend (measured by total income); and the willingness of the population to spend (measured by total retail sales).

INDEX OF BUYING POWER - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [NUMBER]

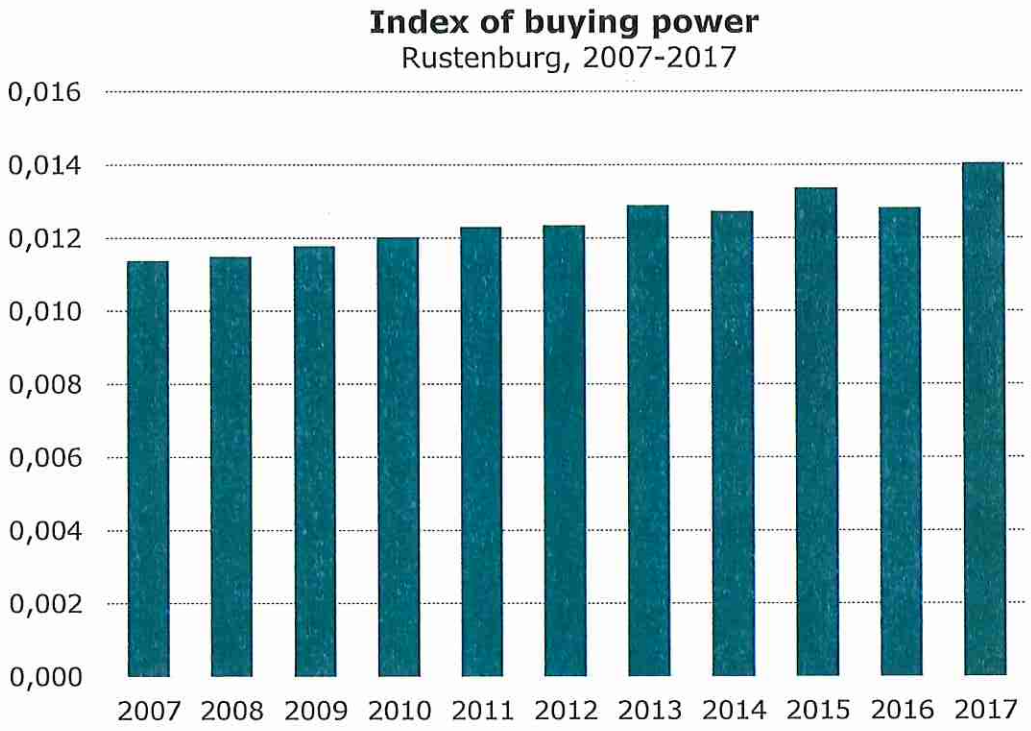
	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
Population	644,844	1,700,898	3,845,627	56,548,694
Population - share of national total	1.1%	3.0%	6.8%	100.0%
Income	50,260	107,721	205,096	3,238,901
Income - share of national total	1.6%	3.3%	6.3%	100.0%
Retail	12,015,212	24,661,673	47,979,340	1,003,552,000
Retail - share of national total	1.2%	2.5%	4.8%	100.0%
Index	0.01	0.03	0.06	1.00

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality has a 1.1% share of the national population, 1.6% share of the total national income and a 1.2% share in the total national retail, this all equates to an IBP index value of 0.014 relative to South Africa as a whole. Bojanala Platinum has an IBP of 0.03, were North-West Province has and IBP index value of 0.059 and South Africa a value of 1 relative to South Africa as a whole.

The considerable low index of buying power of the Rustenburg Local Municipality suggests that the local municipality has access to only a small percentage of the goods and services available in all of the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. Its residents are most likely spending some of their income in neighbouring areas.

INDEX OF BUYING POWER RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Between 2007 and 2017, the index of buying power within Rustenburg Local Municipality increased to its highest level in 2017 (0.01404) from its lowest in 2007 (0.01137).It can be seen that the IBP experienced a positive average annual growth between 2007 and 2017. Although the buying power within Rustenburg Local Municipality is relatively small compared to other regions, the IBP increased at an average annual growth rate of 2.13%.

2.3.5 DEVELOPMENT

Indicators of development, like the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini Coefficient (income inequality), poverty and the poverty gap, and education, are used to estimate the level of development of a given region in South Africa relative to the rest of the country.

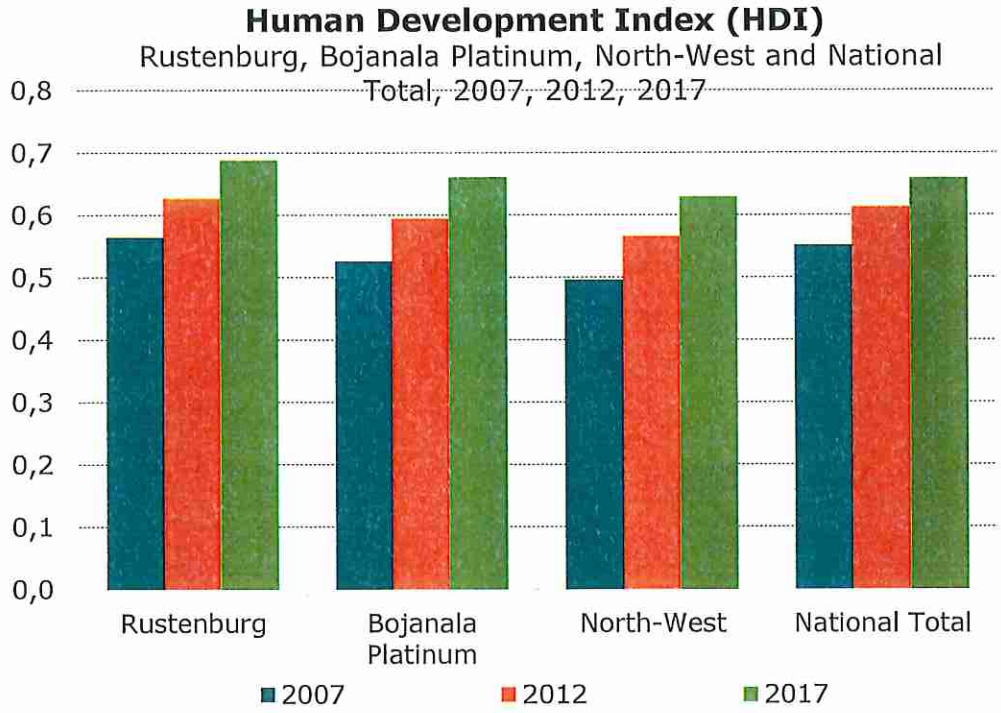
Another indicator that is widely used is the number (or percentage) of people living in poverty. Poverty is defined as the deprivation of those things that determine the quality of life, including food, clothing, shelter and safe drinking water. More than that, other "intangibles" is also included such as the opportunity to learn, and the privilege to enjoy the respect of fellow citizens. Curbing poverty and alleviating the effects thereof should be a premise in the compilation of all policies that aspire towards a better life for all.

HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI)

The Human Development Index (HDI) is a composite relative index used to compare human development across population groups or regions.

HDI is the combination of three basic dimensions of human development: A long and healthy life, knowledge and a decent standard of living. A long and healthy life is typically measured using life expectancy at birth. Knowledge is normally based on adult literacy and / or the combination of enrolment in primary, secondary and tertiary schools. In order to gauge a decent standard of living, we make use of GDP per capita. On a technical note, the HDI can have a maximum value of 1, indicating a very high level of human development, while the minimum value is 0, indicating no human development.

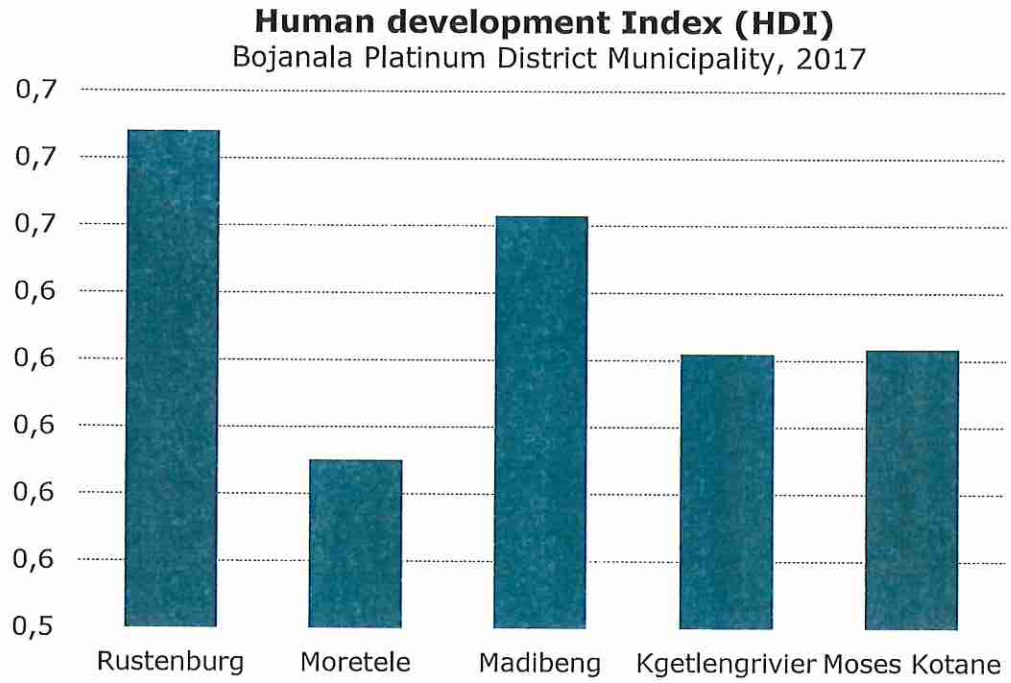
HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007, 2012, 2017 [NUMBER]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017 Rustenburg Local Municipality had an HDI of 0.688 compared to the Bojanala Platinum with a HDI of 0.66, 0.629 of North-West and 0.659 of National Total as a whole. Seeing that South Africa recorded a lower HDI in 2017 when compared to Rustenburg Local Municipality which translates to better human development for Rustenburg Local Municipality compared to South Africa. South Africa's HDI increased at an average annual growth rate of 1.80% and this increase is lower than that of Rustenburg Local Municipality (2.00%).

HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE, 2017 [NUMBER]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

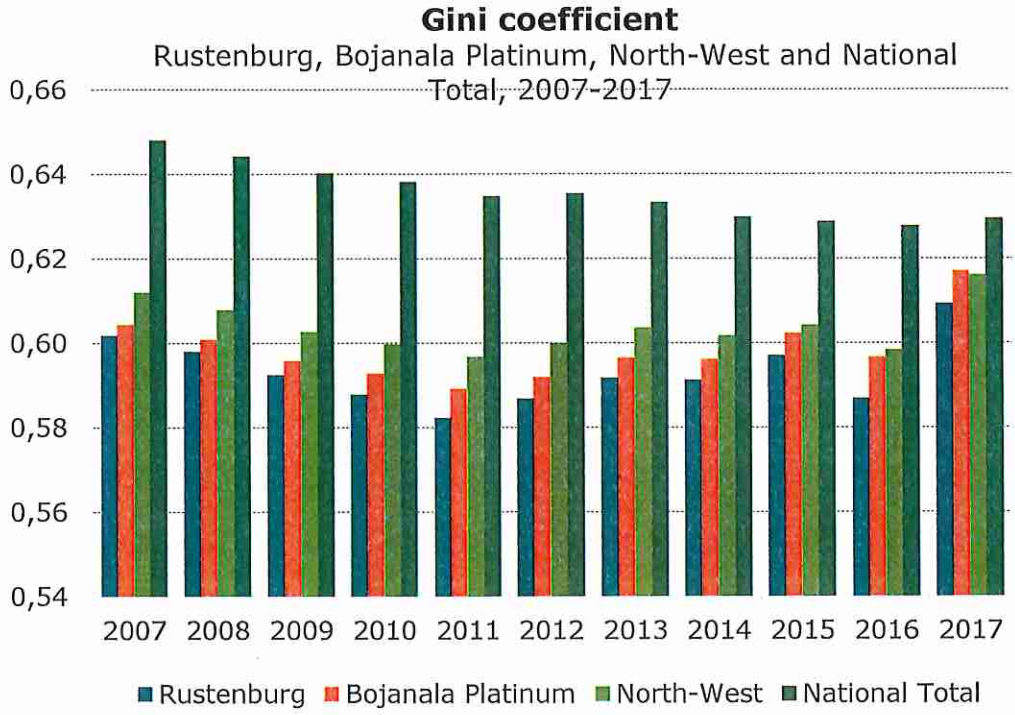
In terms of the HDI for each the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Rustenburg Local Municipality has the highest HDI, with an index value of 0.688. The lowest can be observed in the Moretele Local Municipality with an index value of 0.59.

GINI COEFFICIENT

The Gini coefficient is a summary statistic of income inequality. It varies from 0 to 1.

If the Gini coefficient is equal to zero, income is distributed in a perfectly equal manner, in other words there is no variance between the high and low income earners within the population. In contrast, if the Gini coefficient equals 1, income is completely inequitable, i.e. one individual in the population is earning all the income and the rest has no income. Generally this coefficient lies in the range between 0.25 and 0.70.

GINI COEFFICIENT - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [NUMBER]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the Gini coefficient in Rustenburg Local Municipality was at 0.609, which reflects a marginal increase in the number over the ten-year period from 2007 to 2017. The Bojanala Platinum District Municipality and the North-West Province, both had a more unequal spread of income amongst their residents (at 0.617 and 0.616 respectively) when compared to Rustenburg Local Municipality.

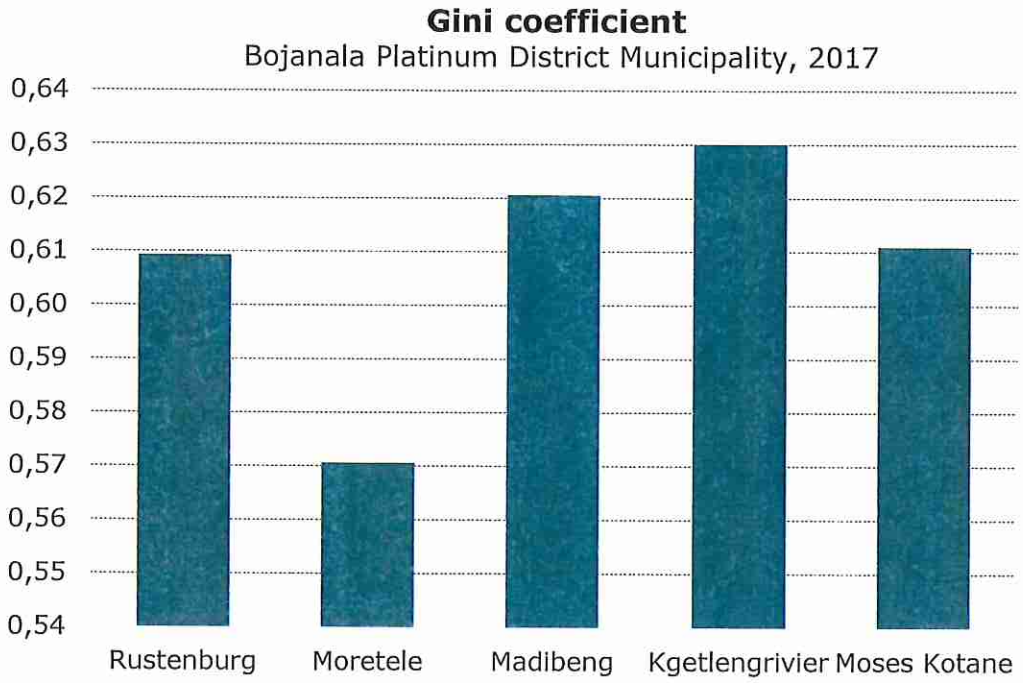
GINI COEFFICIENT BY POPULATION GROUP - RUSTENBURG, 2007, 2017 [NUMBER]

	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2007	0.55	0.45	0.61	0.61
2017	0.59	0.45	0.57	0.48
Average Annual growth				
2007-2017	***0.77%***	***-0.10%***	***-0.60%***	***-2.46%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When segmenting the Rustenburg Local Municipality into population groups, it can be seen that the Gini coefficient for the African population group increased the most amongst the population groups with an average annual growth rate of 0.77%. The Gini coefficient for the Asian population group decreased the most with an average annual growth rate of -2.46%.

GINI COEFFICIENT - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE, 2017 [NUMBER]



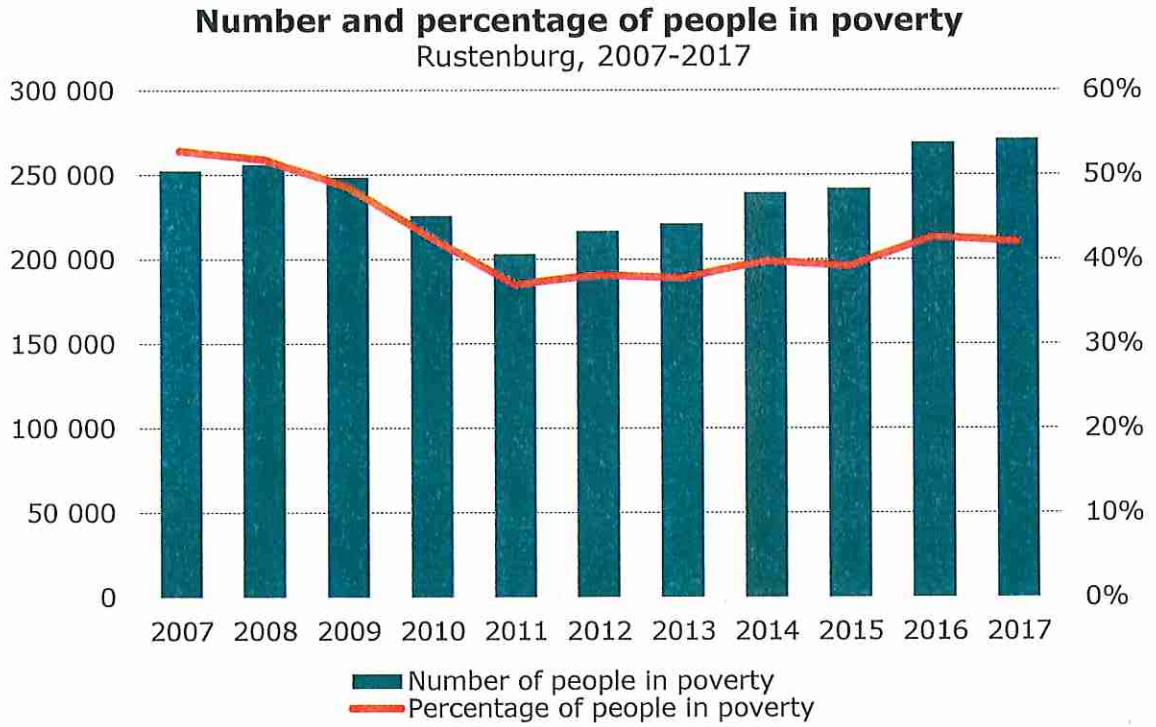
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In terms of the Gini coefficient for each of the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality has the highest Gini coefficient, with an index value of 0.63. The lowest Gini coefficient can be observed in the Moretele Local Municipality with an index value of 0.571.

POVERTY

The upper poverty line is defined by StatsSA as the level of consumption at which individuals are able to purchase both sufficient food and non-food items without sacrificing one for the other. This variable measures the number of individuals living below that particular level of consumption for the given area, and is balanced directly to the official upper poverty rate as measured by StatsSA.

NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, there were 271 000 people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition, across Rustenburg Local Municipality - this is 7.40% higher than the 253 000 in 2007. The percentage of people living in poverty has decreased from 52.82% in 2007 to 42.07% in 2017, which indicates a decrease of 10.7 percentage points.

2. ***PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY BY POPULATION GROUP - RUSTENBURG, 2007-2017 [PERCENTAGE]***

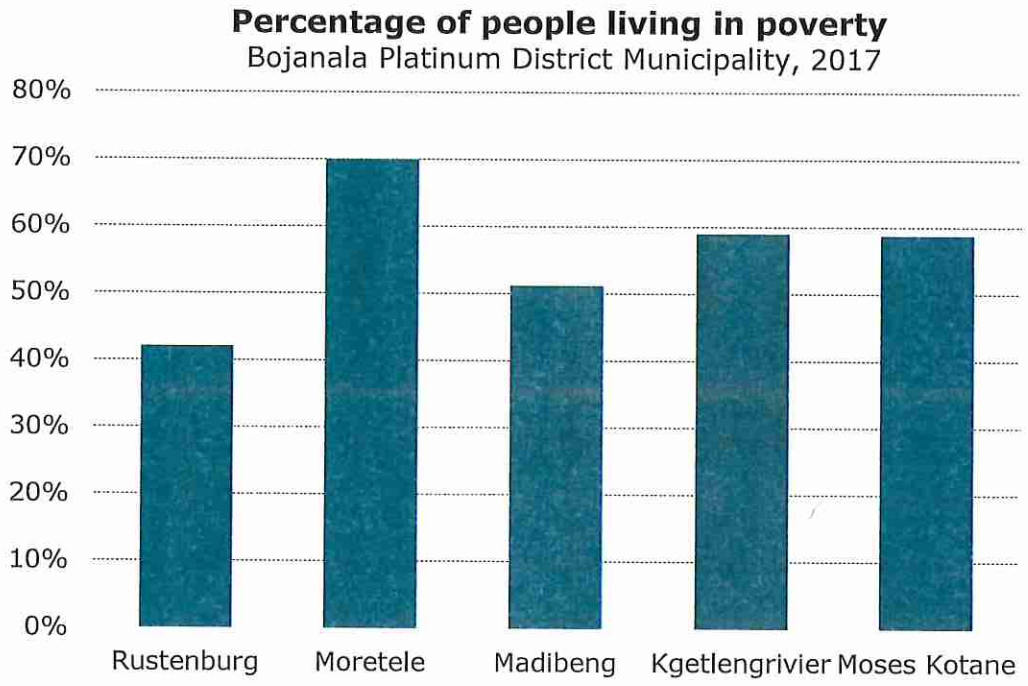
	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2007	59.6%	1.9%	47.6%	21.8%
2008	58.2%	2.3%	45.0%	19.1%
2009	54.3%	2.8%	41.2%	15.5%
2010	47.4%	2.6%	36.9%	12.1%
2011	41.1%	2.0%	32.6%	8.3%
2012	42.3%	2.1%	34.7%	8.6%
2013	41.7%	2.3%	35.3%	8.3%
2014	43.8%	3.2%	37.6%	8.0%
2015	43.0%	4.2%	37.1%	7.6%
2016	46.6%	4.9%	39.1%	11.4%
2017	45.8%	4.8%	37.3%	13.1%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the population group with the highest percentage of people living in poverty was the African population group with a total of 59.6% people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition.

The proportion of the African population group, living in poverty, decreased by 13.7 percentage points, as can be seen by the change from 59.57% in 2007 to 45.85% in 2017. In 2017 4.84% of the White population group lived in poverty, as compared to the 1.90% in 2007. The Coloured and the Asian population group saw a decrease in the percentage of people living in poverty, with a decrease of 10.4 and 8.66 percentage points respectively.

PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE,2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In terms of the percentage of people living in poverty for each of the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Moretele Local Municipality has the highest percentage of people living in poverty, with a total of 70.0%. The lowest percentage of people living in poverty can be observed in the Rustenburg Local Municipality with a total of 42.1% living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition.

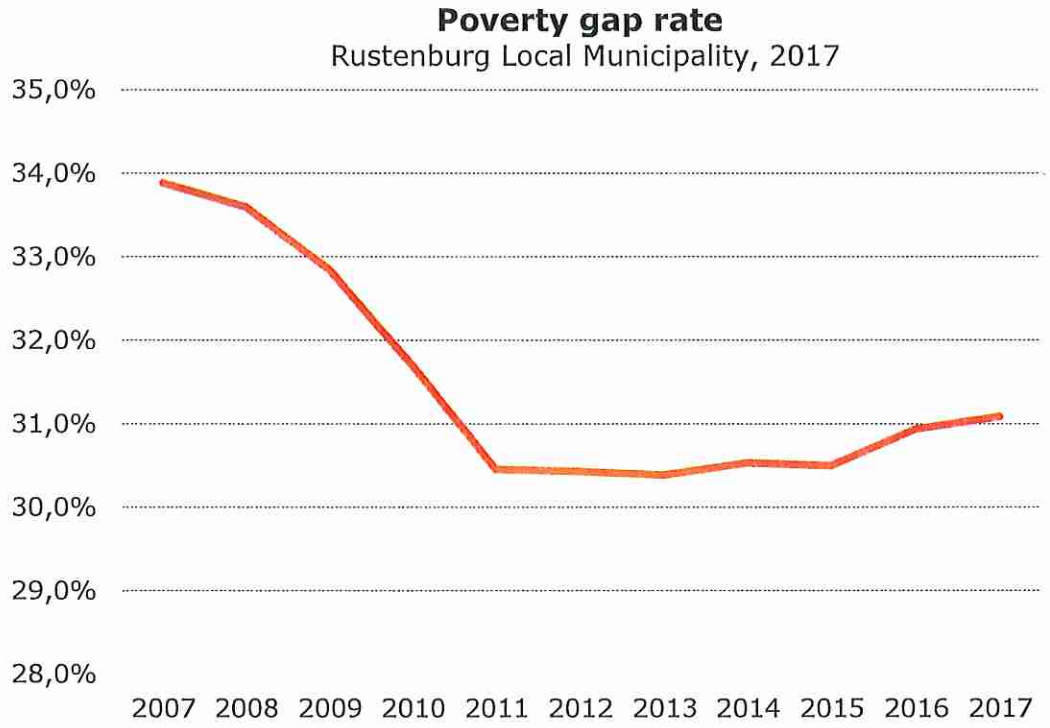
Poverty Gap Rate

The poverty gap is used as an indicator to measure the depth of poverty. The gap measures the average distance of the population from the poverty line and is expressed as a percentage of the upper bound poverty line, as defined by StatsSA. The Poverty Gap deals with a major shortcoming of the poverty rate, which does not give any indication of the depth, of poverty. The upper poverty line is defined by

StatsSA as the level of consumption at which individuals are able to purchase both sufficient food and non-food items without sacrificing one for the other.

It is estimated that the poverty gap rate in Rustenburg Local Municipality amounted to 31.1% in 2017 - the rate needed to bring all poor households up to the poverty line and out of poverty.

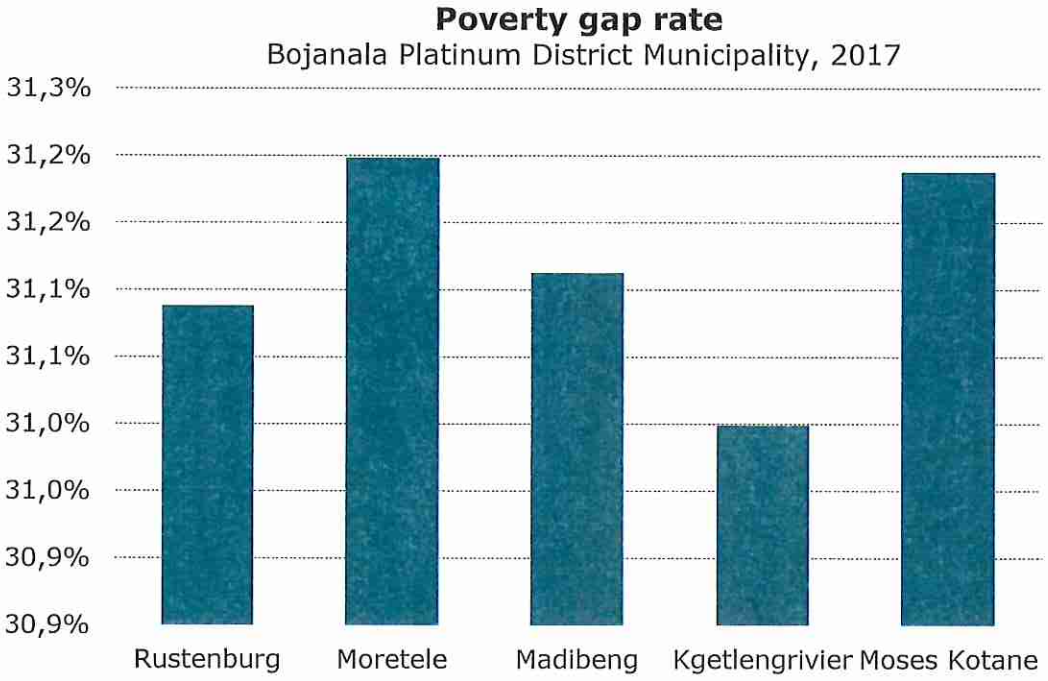
POVERTY GAP RATE BY POPULATION GROUP - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, the poverty gap rate was 31.1% and in 2007 the poverty gap rate was 33.9%,it can be seen that the poverty gap rate decreased from 2007 to 2017, which means that there were improvements in terms of the depth of the poverty within Rustenburg Local Municipality.

POVERTY GAP RATE - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE,2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

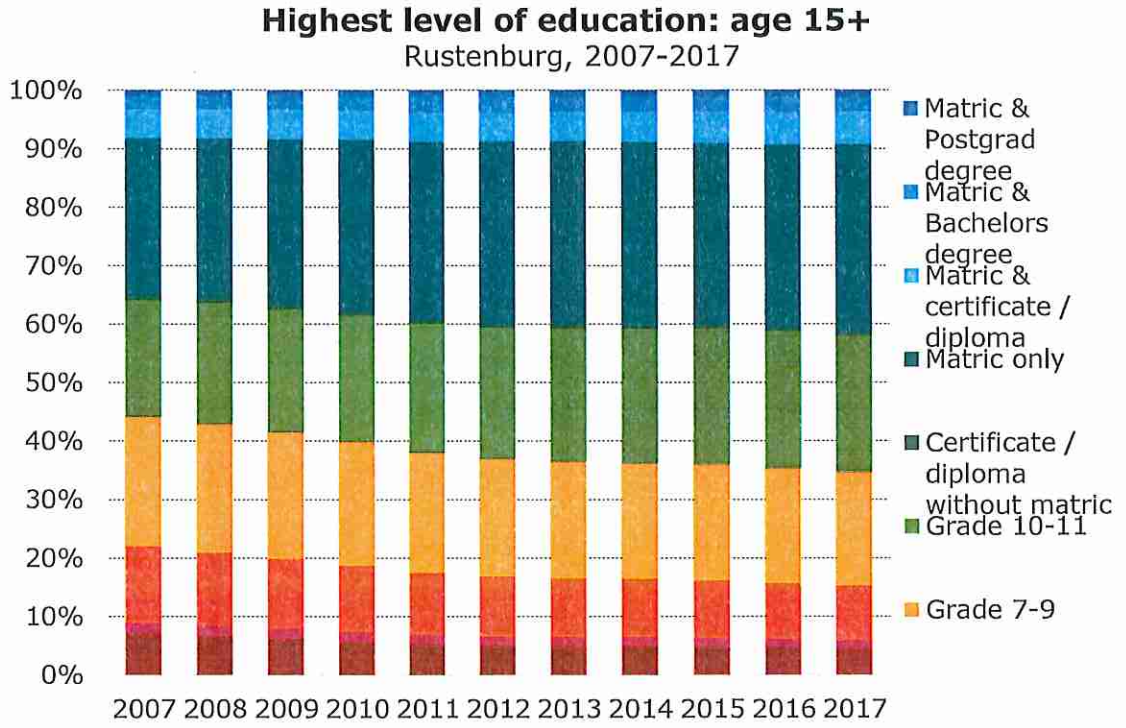
In terms of the poverty gap rate for each of the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Moretele Local Municipality had the highest poverty gap rate, with a rand value of 31.2%. The lowest poverty gap rate can be observed in the Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with a total of 31.0%.

EDUCATION

Educating is important to the economic growth in a country and the development of its industries, providing a trained workforce and skilled professionals required.

The education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older. IHS uses this cut-off point to allow for cross-country comparisons. Furthermore, the age of 15 is also the legal age at which children may leave school in South Africa).

HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Within Rustenburg Local Municipality, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2007 to 2017 with an average annual rate of -1.24%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 86,600 to 144,000. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 4.80%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 4.25%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

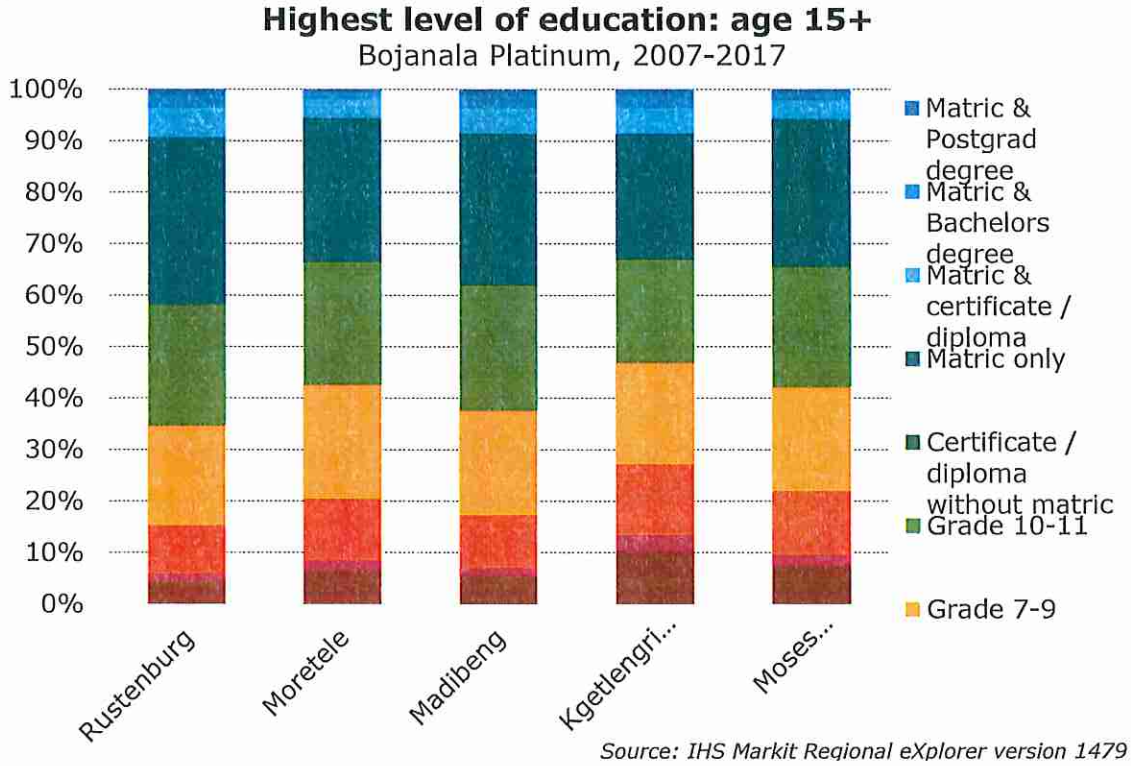
HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [NUMBERS]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total	Rustenburg as % of district municipality	Rustenburg as % of province	Rustenburg as % of national
No schooling	19,800	63,600	210,000	2,270,000	*31.2%*	*9.4%*	*0.88%*
Grade 0-2	6,650	19,900	56,600	684,000	*33.4%*	*11.7%*	*0.97%*
Grade 3-6	41,800	119,000	274,000	3,110,000	*35.2%*	*15.3%*	*1.35%*
Grade 7-9	87,100	229,000	463,000	6,030,000	*38.0%*	*18.8%*	*1.44%*
Grade 10-11	104,000	267,000	526,000	8,390,000	*39.0%*	*19.8%*	*1.24%*
Certificate / diploma without matric	1,660	3,670	8,000	191,000	*45.2%*	*20.7%*	*0.87%*
Matric only	144,000	341,000	648,000	10,400,000	*42.3%*	*22.2%*	*1.38%*
Matric certificate / diploma	25,900	56,200	111,000	2,160,000	*46.1%*	*23.3%*	*1.20%*
Matric Bachelors degree	10,800	25,200	63,000	1,530,000	*42.8%*	*17.1%*	*0.70%*
Matric Postgrad degree	5,290	11,700	30,300	749,000	*45.3%*	*17.5%*	*0.71%*

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The number of people without any schooling in Rustenburg Local Municipality accounts for 31.18% of the number of people without schooling in the district municipality, 9.44% of the province and 0.88% of the national. In 2017, the number of people in Rustenburg Local Municipality with a matric only was 144,000 which is a share of 42.25% of the district municipality's total number of people that has obtained a matric. The number of people with a matric and a Postgrad degree constitutes 42.76% of the district municipality, 17.10% of the province and 0.70% of the national.

HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+, RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

FUNCTIONAL LITERACY

For the purpose of this report, IHS defines functional literacy as the number of people in a region that are 20 years and older and have completed at least their primary education (i.e. grade 7).

Functional literacy describes the reading and writing skills that are adequate for an individual to cope with the demands of everyday life - including the demands posed in the workplace. This is contrasted with illiteracy in the strictest sense, meaning the inability to read or write. Functional literacy enables individuals to enter the labour market and contribute towards economic growth thereby reducing poverty.

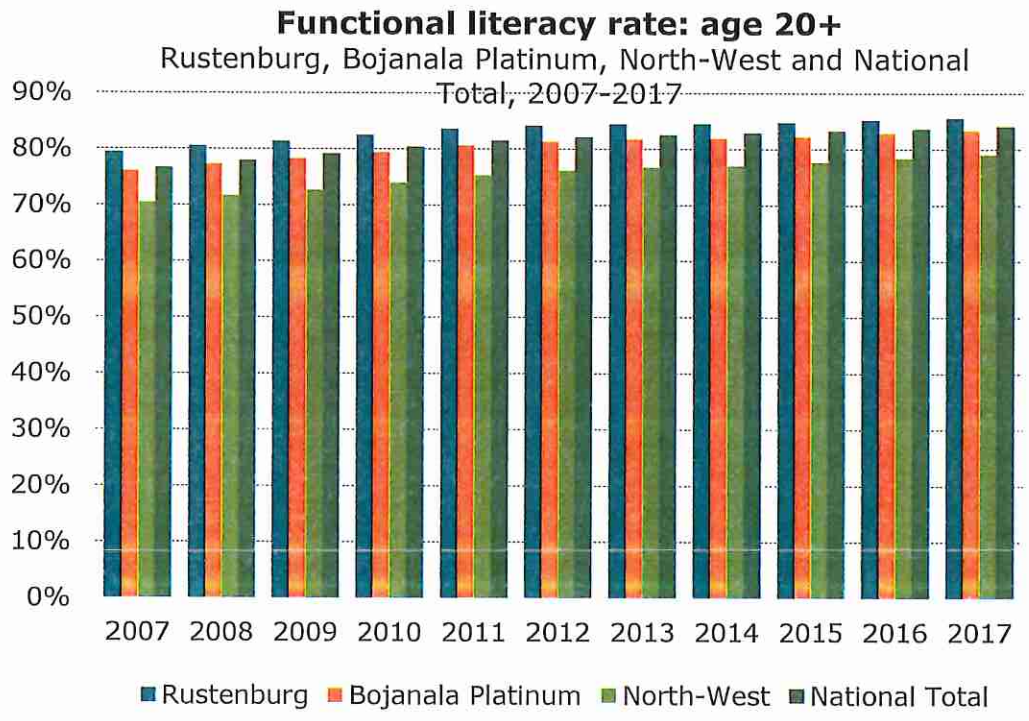
FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

	Illiterate	Literate	%
2007	74,839	289,093	79.4%
2008	73,462	303,254	80.5%
2009	72,426	317,424	81.4%
2010	70,682	333,567	82.5%
2011	68,428	349,778	83.6%
2012	68,191	363,230	84.2%
2013	69,004	375,386	84.5%
2014	70,728	385,775	84.5%
2015	71,454	396,099	84.7%
2016	70,757	407,303	85.2%
2017	70,366	417,270	85.6%
Average Annual growth			
2007-2017	***-0.61%***	***3.74%***	***0.75%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

A total of 417 000 individuals in Rustenburg Local Municipality were considered functionally literate in 2017, while 70 400 people were considered to be illiterate. Expressed as a rate, this amounts to 85.57% of the population, which is an increase of 0.061 percentage points since 2007 (79.44%). The number of illiterate individuals decreased on average by -0.61% annually from 2007 to 2017, with the number of functional literate people increasing at 3.74% annually.

Functional literacy: age 20+, completed grade 7 or higher - Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2017 [Percentage]

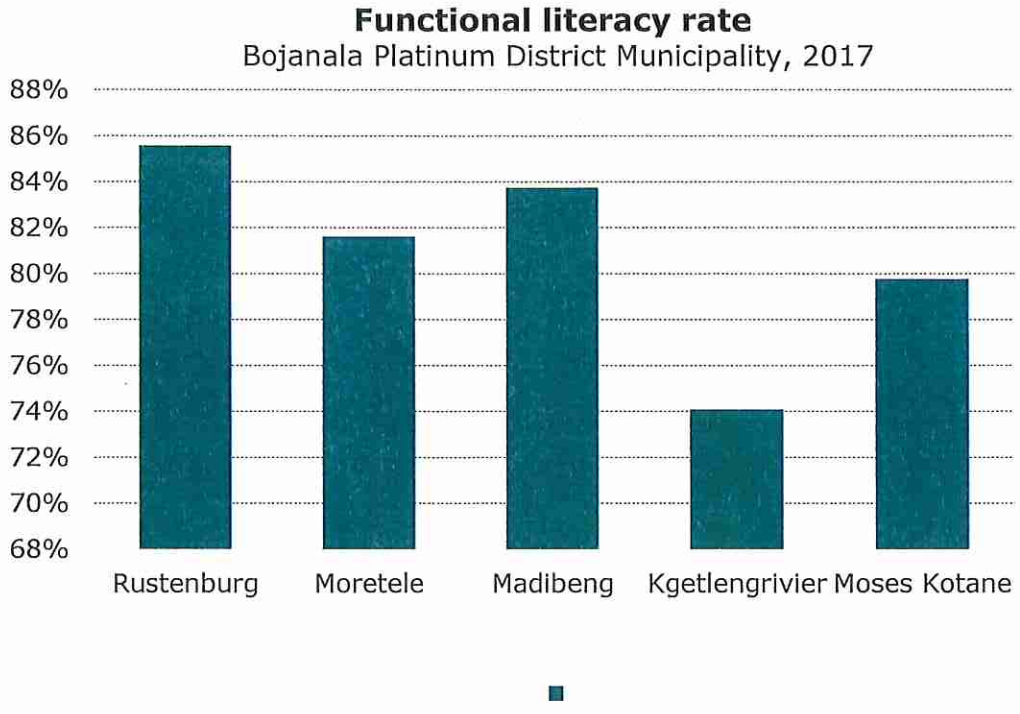


Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality's functional literacy rate of 85.57% in 2017 is higher than that of Bojanala Platinum at 83.34%, and is higher than the province rate of 79.04%. When comparing to National Total as whole, which has a functional literacy rate of 84.14%, it can be seen that the functional literacy rate is lower than that of the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

A higher literacy rate is often associated with higher levels of urbanization, for instance where access to schools is less of a problem, and where there are economies of scale. From a spatial breakdown of the literacy rates in South Africa, it is perceived that the districts with larger cities normally have higher literacy rates.

LITERACY RATE - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



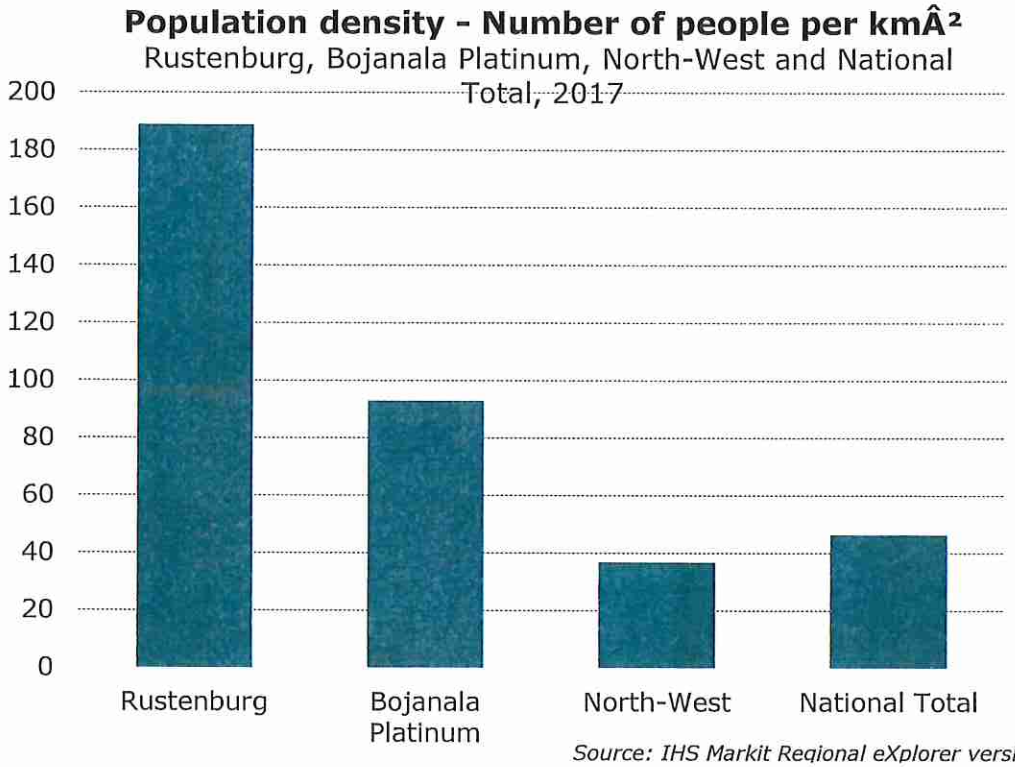
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In terms of the literacy rate for each of the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Rustenburg Local Municipality had the highest literacy rate, with a total of 85.6%. The lowest literacy rate can be observed in the Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with a total of 74.1%.

POPULATION DENSITY

Population density measures the concentration of people in a region. To calculate this, the population of a region is divided by the area size of that region. The output is presented as the number of people per square kilometre.

POPULATION DENSITY - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, with an average of 189 people per square kilometre, Rustenburg Local Municipality had a higher population density than Bojanala Platinum (92.9 people per square kilometre). Compared to North-West Province (36.7 per square kilometre) it can be seen that there are more people living per square kilometre in Rustenburg Local Municipality than in North-West Province.

POPULATION DENSITY - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2007-2017
[NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM]

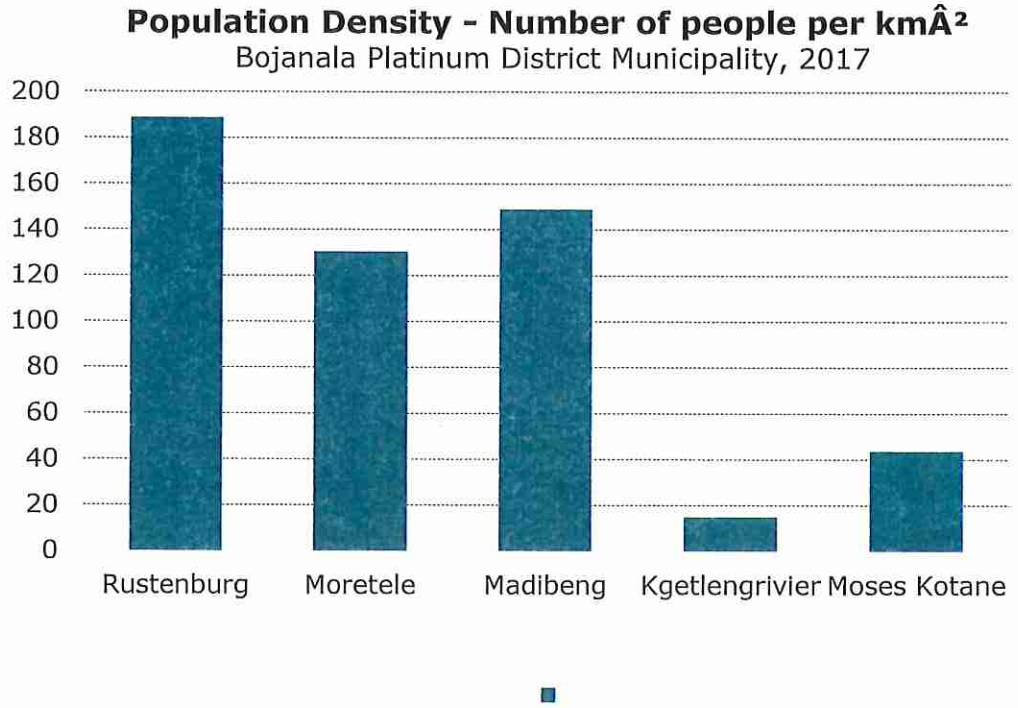
	Rustenburg	Moretele	Madibeng	Kgetlengrivier	Moses Kotane
2007	139.85	123.74	109.21	11.04	41.60
2008	144.50	123.77	113.80	11.47	41.61
2009	149.43	123.91	118.57	11.92	41.66
2010	154.97	124.47	123.28	12.36	41.86
2011	160.58	125.06	127.62	12.78	42.05
2012	165.97	125.62	131.66	13.18	42.23
2013	171.16	126.40	135.56	13.56	42.46
2014	176.02	127.29	139.22	13.94	42.71
2015	180.51	128.21	142.60	14.29	42.97
2016	184.77	129.27	145.80	14.64	43.26
2017	188.79	130.41	148.81	14.97	43.57
Average Annual growth					
2007-2017	***3.05%***	***0.53%***	***3.14%***	***3.09%***	***0.46%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, Rustenburg Local Municipality had a population density of 189 per square kilometre and it ranked highest amongst its piers. In terms of growth, Rustenburg Local Municipality had an average annual growth in its population density of 3.05% per square kilometre per annum. The region with the highest growth rate in the population density per square kilometre was Madibeng with an average annual growth rate of 3.14% per square kilometre. In 2017, the region with the lowest population density within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality was Kgetlengrivier with 15 people per square kilometre. The region with the lowest average annual growth rate was the Moses Kotane with an average annual growth rate of 0.46% people per square kilometre over the period under discussion.

Using population density instead of the total number of people creates a better basis for comparing different regions or economies. A higher population density influences the provision of household infrastructure, quality of services, and access to resources like medical care, schools, sewage treatment, community centres, etc.

POPULATION DENSITY - RUSTENBURG, MORETELE, MADIBENG, KGETLENGRIVIER AND MOSES KOTANE,2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In terms of the population density for each of the regions within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Rustenburg Local Municipality had the highest density, with 189 people per square kilometre. The lowest population density can be observed in the Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with a total of 15 people per square kilometre.

2.3.6 CRIME

The state of crime in South Africa has been the topic of many media articles and papers in the past years, and although many would acknowledge that the country has a crime problem, very little research has been done on the relative level of crime. The media often tend to focus on more negative or sensational information, while the progress made in combating crime is neglected.

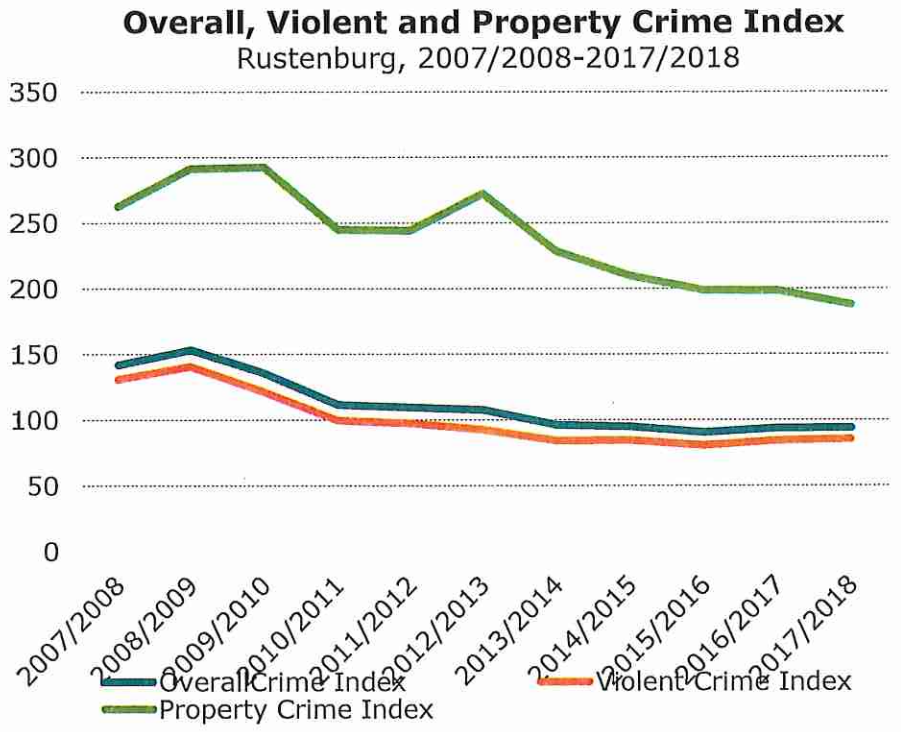
IHS COMPOSITE CRIME INDEX

The IHS Composite Crime Index makes use of the official SAPS data, which is reported in 27 crime categories (ranging from murder to crime injuries). These 27 categories are divided into two groups according to the nature of the crime: i.e. violent crimes and property crimes. IHS uses the (a) Length-of-sentence and the (b) Cost-of-crime in order to apply a weight to each category.

2.1.1 Overall crime index

The crime index is a composite, weighted index which measures crime. The higher the index number, the higher the level of crime for that specific year in a particular region. The index is best used by looking at the change over time, or comparing the crime levels across regions.

IHS CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007/2008-2017/2018 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

For the period 2007/2008 to 2017/2018 overall crime has decrease at an average annual rate of 4.04% within the Rustenburg Local Municipality. Violent crime decreased by 4.19% since 2007/2008, while property crimes decreased by 3.29% between the 2007/2008 and 2017/2018 financial years.

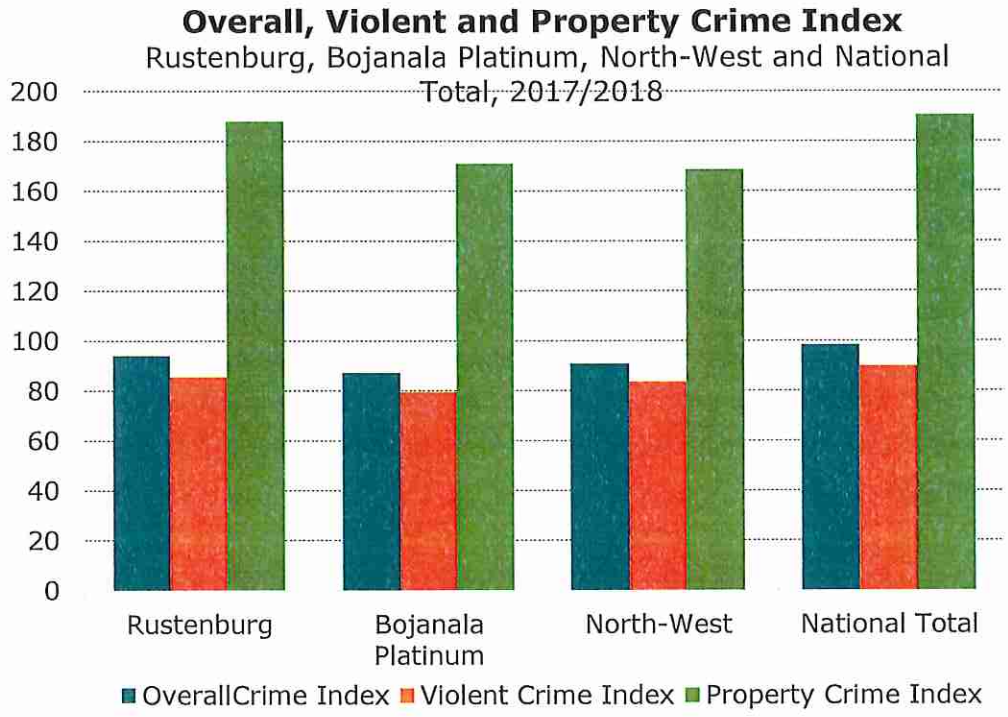
OVERALL CRIME INDEX - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2007/2008-2017/2018 [INDEX VALUE]

	Rustenburg	Moretele	Madibeng	Kgetlengrivier	Moses Kotane
2007/2008	141.92	85.67	125.47	115.93	70.33
2008/2009	153.24	89.19	131.82	97.79	75.85
2009/2010	135.59	92.03	139.20	97.08	74.35
2010/2011	111.65	85.51	127.35	89.28	73.31
2011/2012	109.62	84.55	119.35	76.92	76.50
2012/2013	107.61	77.48	112.50	78.98	69.30
2013/2014	96.31	80.28	102.25	66.53	65.78
2014/2015	94.97	82.24	100.17	73.84	71.55
2015/2016	90.50	86.97	97.56	67.10	72.28
2016/2017	93.77	78.30	96.91	66.22	68.63
2017/2018	93.94	78.33	92.83	76.96	65.29
Average Annual growth					
2007/2008-2017/2018	***-4.04%***	***-0.89%***	***-2.97%***	***-4.01%***	***-0.74%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017/2018, the Rustenburg Local Municipality has the highest overall crime rate of the sub-regions within the overall Bojanala Platinum District Municipality with an index value of 93.9. Local Municipality of Madibeng has the second highest overall crime index at 92.8, with Moretele Local Municipality having the third highest overall crime index of 78.3. It is clear that all the crime is decreasing overtime for all the regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality has the second lowest overall crime index of 77 and the Moses Kotane Local Municipality has the lowest overall crime rate of 65.3. It is clear that crime is decreasing overtime for all the regions within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The region that decreased the most in overall crime since 2007/2008 was Rustenburg Local Municipality with an average annual decrease of 4.0% followed by Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with an average annual decrease of 4.0%.

IHS CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017/2018 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

From the chart above it is evident that property crime is a major problem for all the regions relative to violent crime. It is evident that the property crime is a major problem for all the regions relative to rest crime indices.

Property crimes comprise of crimes that are classified as less violent in nature and involve acts against property. The crimes included in this index are as follows: arson, malicious damage to property, crimen injuria, burglary at residential premises, burglary at business premises, theft of motor vehicle and motorcycle, theft out of or from motor vehicle, stock-theft, illegal possession of firearms and ammunition, drug-related crime, driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs, all theft not mentioned elsewhere, commercial crime and shoplifting.

2.3.7 HOUSEHOLD INFRASTRUCTURE

Drawing on the household infrastructure data of a region is of essential value in economic planning and social development. Assessing household infrastructure involves the measurement of four indicators:

Access to dwelling units
Access to proper sanitation
Access to running water
Access to refuse removal
Access to electricity

A household is considered "serviced" if it has access to all four of these basic services. If not, the household is considered to be part of the backlog. The way access to a given service is defined (and how to accurately measure that specific Definition over time) gives rise to some distinct problems. IHS has therefore developed a unique model to capture the number of households and their level of access to the four basic services.

A household is defined as a group of persons who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or a single person who lives alone.

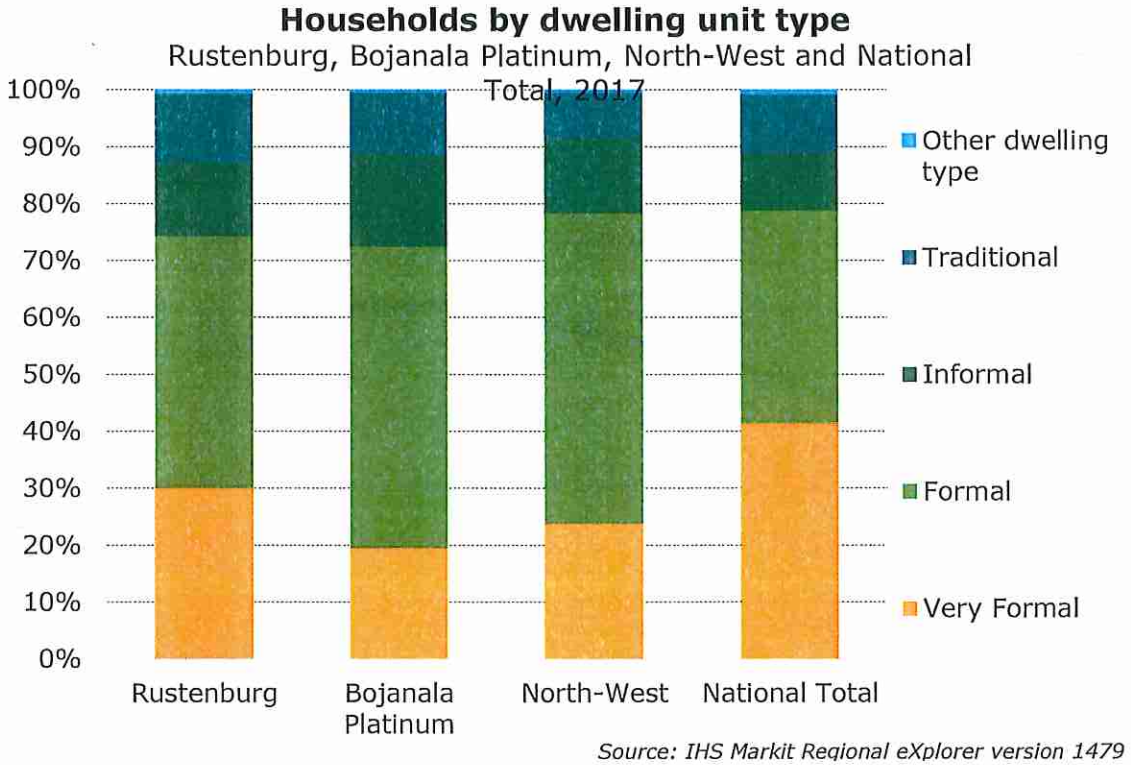
The next few sections offer an overview of the household infrastructure of the Rustenburg Local Municipality between 2017 and 2007.

HOUSEHOLD BY DWELLING TYPE

Using the StatsSA definition of a household and a dwelling unit, households can be categorised according to type of dwelling. The categories are:

- **Very formal dwellings** - structures built according to approved plans, e.g. houses on a separate stand, flats or apartments, townhouses, rooms in backyards that also have running water and flush toilets within the dwelling. .
- **Formal dwellings** - structures built according to approved plans, i.e. house on a separate stand, flat or apartment, townhouse, room in backyard, rooms or flatlet elsewhere etc, but without running water or without a flush toilet within the dwelling.
- **Informal dwellings** - shacks or shanties in informal settlements, serviced stands, or proclaimed townships, as well as shacks in the backyards of other dwelling types.
- **Traditional dwellings** - structures made of clay, mud, reeds, or other locally available material.
- **Other dwelling units** - tents, ships, caravans, etc.

HOUSEHOLDS BY DWELLING UNIT TYPE - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total number of 67 800 (30.15% of total households) very formal dwelling units, a total of 99 300 (44.12% of total households) formal dwelling units and a total number of 28 800 (12.78% of total households) informal dwelling units.

3. ***HOUSEHOLDS BY DWELLING UNIT TYPE - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [NUMBER]***

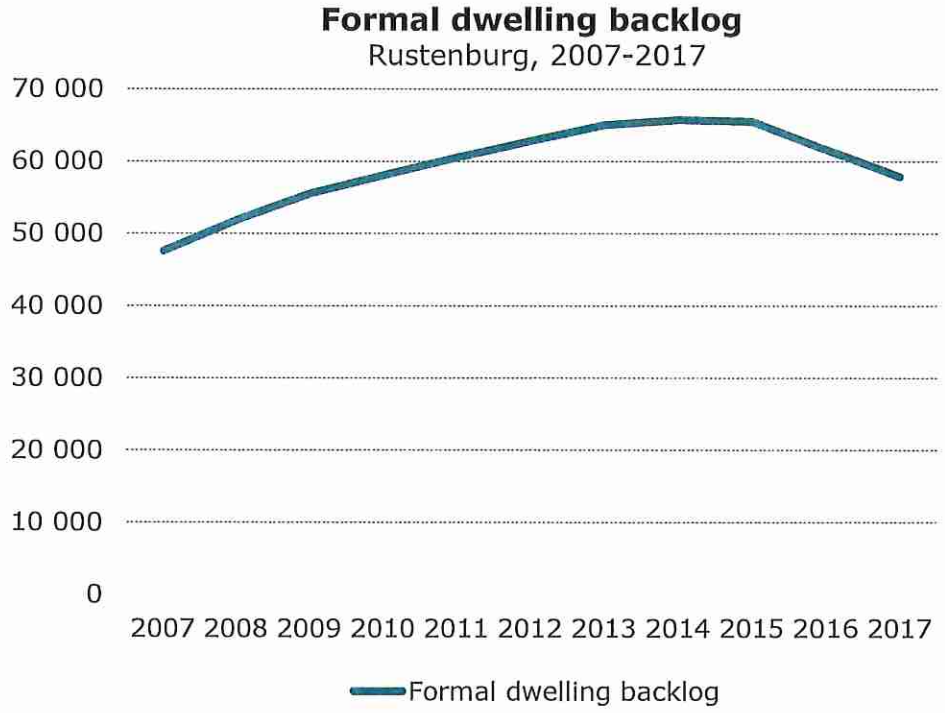
	Very Formal	Formal	Informal	Traditional	Other dwelling type	Total
Rustenburg	67,900	99,300	28,800	27,200	1,910	225,000
Moretele	1,170	45,600	4,830	1,760	86	53,400
Madibeng	28,600	83,000	44,700	24,600	634	182,000
Kgetlengrivier	4,560	7,580	2,540	2,130	144	17,000
Moses Kotane	6,040	56,400	9,390	3,170	525	75,600
Total Bojanala Platinum	**108,262**	**291,938**	**90,206**	**58,911**	**3,295**	**552,612**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The region within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality with the highest number of very formal dwelling units is Rustenburg Local Municipality with 67 800 or a share of 62.68% of the total very formal dwelling units within Bojanala Platinum. The region with the lowest number of very formal dwelling units

is Moretele Local Municipality with a total of 1 170 or a share of 1.08% of the total very formal dwelling units within Bojanala Platinum.

FORMAL DWELLING BACKLOG - NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS NOT LIVING IN A FORMAL DWELLING - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When looking at the formal dwelling unit backlog (number of households not living in a formal dwelling) over time, it can be seen that in 2007 the number of households not living in a formal dwelling were 47 600 within Rustenburg Local Municipality. From 2007 this number increased annually at 1.99% to 57 900 in 2017.

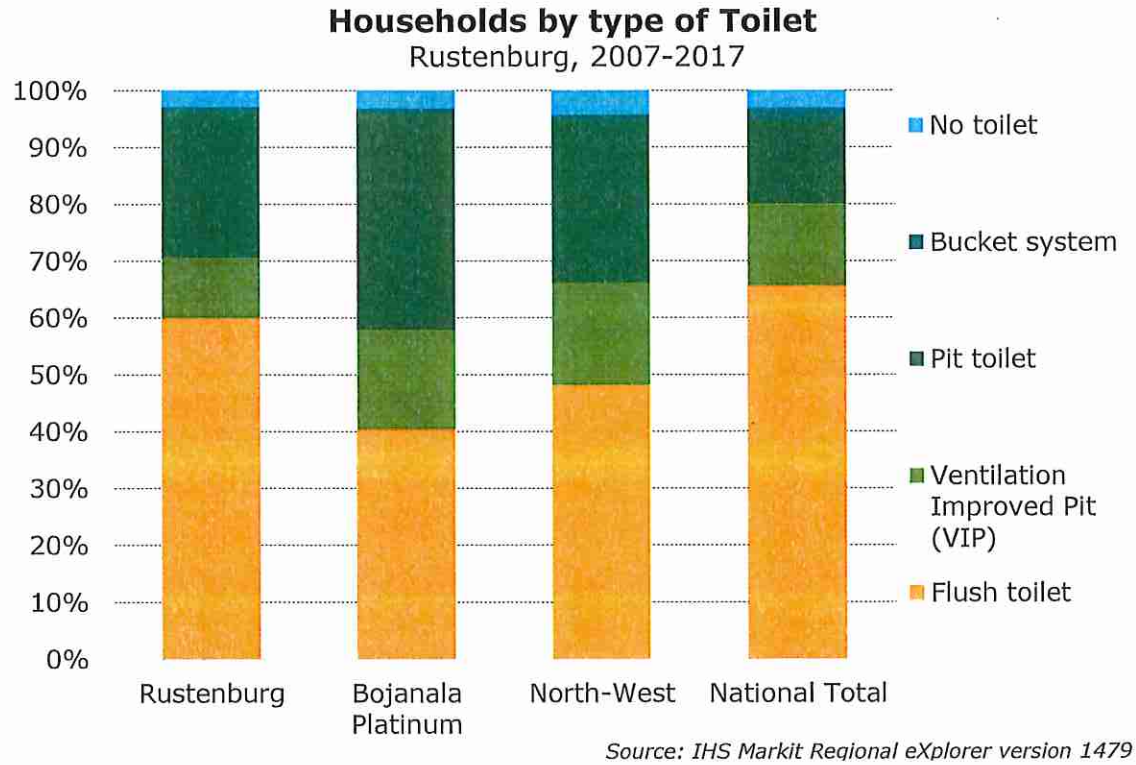
The total number of households within Rustenburg Local Municipality increased at an average annual rate of 3.65% from 2007 to 2017, which is higher than the annual increase of 2.02% in the number of households in South Africa. With high in-migration into a region, the number of households increased, putting additional strain on household infrastructure. In the short to medium term this can result in an increase in the number of households not living in a formal dwelling, as the provision of household infrastructure usually takes time to deliver.

HOUSEHOLD BY TYPE OF SANITATION

Sanitation can be divided into specific types of sanitation to which a household has access. We use the following categories:

- **No toilet** - No access to any of the toilet systems explained below.
- **Bucket system** - A top structure with a seat over a bucket. The bucket is periodically removed and the contents disposed of. (Note: this system is widely used but poses health risks to the collectors. Most authorities are actively attempting to discontinue the use of these buckets in their local regions).
- **Pit toilet** - A top structure over a pit.
- **Ventilation improved pit** - A pit toilet but with a fly screen and vented by a pipe. Depending on soil conditions, the pit may be lined.
- **Flush toilet** - Waste is flushed into an enclosed tank, thus preventing the waste to flow into the surrounding environment. The tanks need to be emptied or the contents pumped elsewhere.

HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF SANITATION - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total number of 135 000 flush toilets (60.01% of total households), 23 900 Ventilation Improved Pit (VIP) (10.64% of total households) and 58 300 (25.89%) of total households pit toilets.

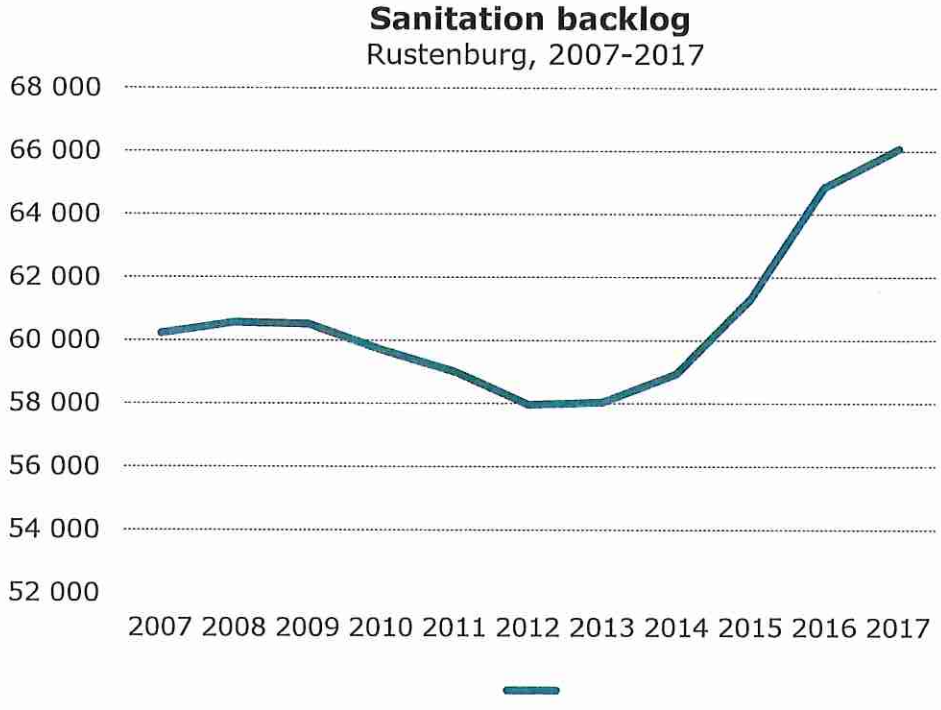
HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF SANITATION - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [NUMBER]

	Flush toilet	Ventilation Improved Pit (VIP)	Pit toilet	Bucket system	No toilet	Total
Rustenburg	135,000	23,900	58,300	1,280	6,510	225,000
Moretele	4,130	28,000	20,200	437	682	53,400
Madibeng	59,700	25,300	88,300	2,330	5,920	182,000
Kgetlengrivier	13,000	813	879	261	2,040	17,000
Moses Kotane	11,600	18,900	42,400	496	2,210	75,600
Total Bojanala Platinum	**223,403**	**96,981**	**210,065**	**4,814**	**17,351**	**552,612**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The region within Bojanala Platinum with the highest number of flush toilets is Rustenburg Local Municipality with 135 000 or a share of 60.47% of the flush toilets within Bojanala Platinum. The region with the lowest number of flush toilets is Moretele Local Municipality with a total of 4 130 or a share of 1.85% of the total flush toilets within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality.

SANITATION BACKLOG - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITHOUT HYGIENIC TOILETS]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

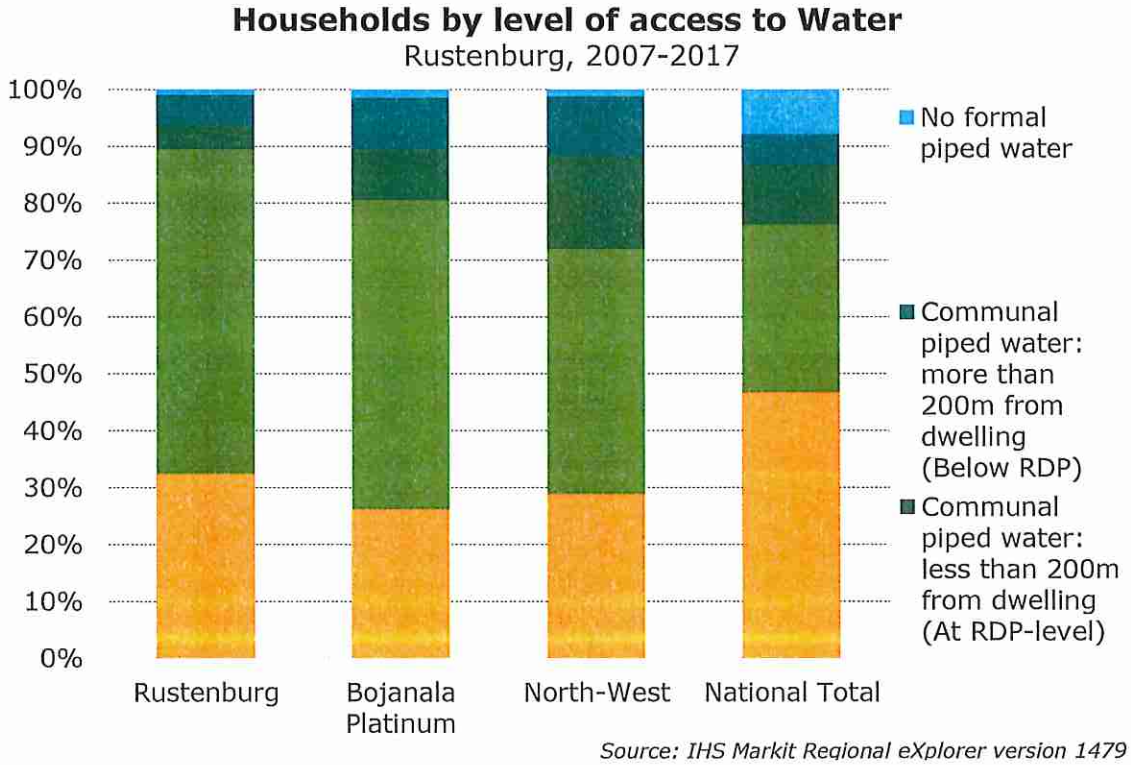
When looking at the sanitation backlog (number of households without hygienic toilets) over time, it can be seen that in 2007 the number of Households without any hygienic toilets in Rustenburg Local Municipality was 60 200, this increased annually at a rate of 0.93% to 66 100 in 2017.

The total number of households within Rustenburg Local Municipality increased at an average annual rate of 3.65% from 2007 to 2017, which is higher than the annual increase of 2.02% in the number of households in South Africa. With high in-migration into a region, the number of households increases, putting additional strain on household infrastructure. In the short to medium term this can result in an increase in the number of households not living in a formal dwelling, as the provision of household infrastructure usually takes time to deliver.

HOUSEHOLDS BY ACCESS TO WATER

A household is categorised according to its main access to water, as follows: Regional/local water scheme, Borehole and spring, Water tank, Dam/pool/stagnant water, River/stream and other main access to water methods. No formal piped water includes households that obtain water via water carriers and tankers, rain water, boreholes, dams, rivers and springs.

HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF WATER ACCESS - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total number of 73 100 (or 32.49%) households with piped water inside the dwelling, a total of 128 000 (57.00%) households had piped water inside the yard and a total number of 2 190 (0.97%) households had no formal piped water.

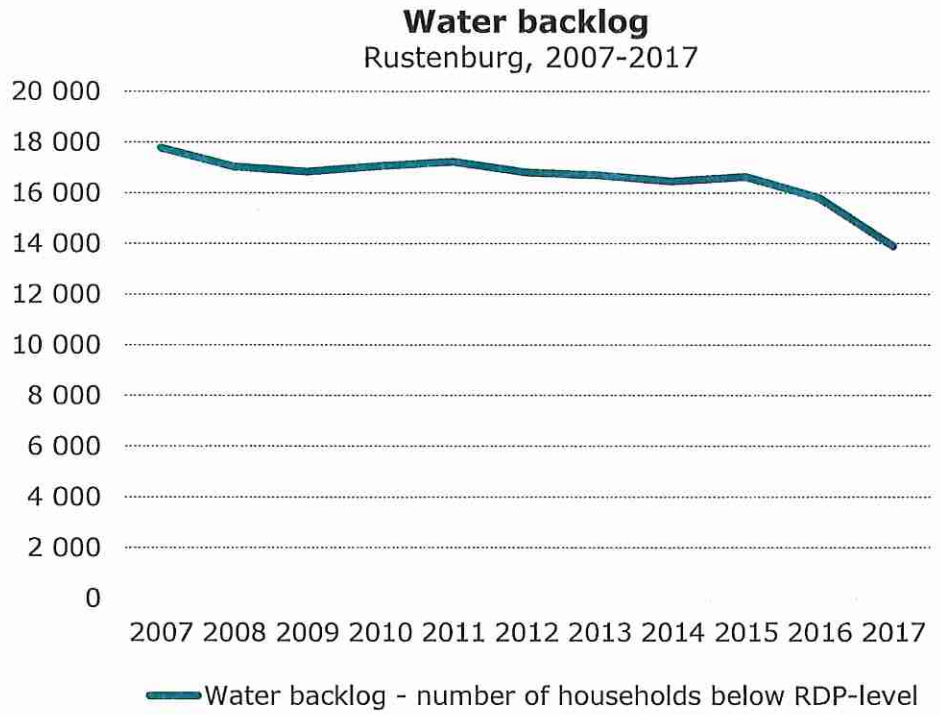
HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF WATER ACCESS - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [NUMBER]

	Piped water inside dwelling	Piped water in yard	Communal piped water: less than 200m from dwelling (At RDP-level)	Communal piped water: more than 200m from dwelling (Below RDP)	No formal piped water	Total
Rustenburg	73,100	128,000	9,760	11,700	2,190	225,000
Moretele	6,620	32,100	6,580	7,580	553	53,400
Madibeng	46,500	106,000	9,470	15,500	4,550	182,000
Kgetlengrivier	6,100	8,380	1,640	707	126	17,000
Moses Kotane	13,300	25,000	22,800	13,800	668	75,600
Total Bojanala Platinum	**145,655**	**299,324**	**50,270**	**49,277**	**8,085**	**552,612**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The region within the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality with the highest number of households that have piped water inside the dwelling is the Rustenburg Local Municipality with 73 100 or 50.20% of the households. The region with the lowest number of households that have piped water inside the dwelling is the Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with a total of 6 100 or 4.19% of the households.

WATER BACKLOG - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BELOW RDP-LEVEL]



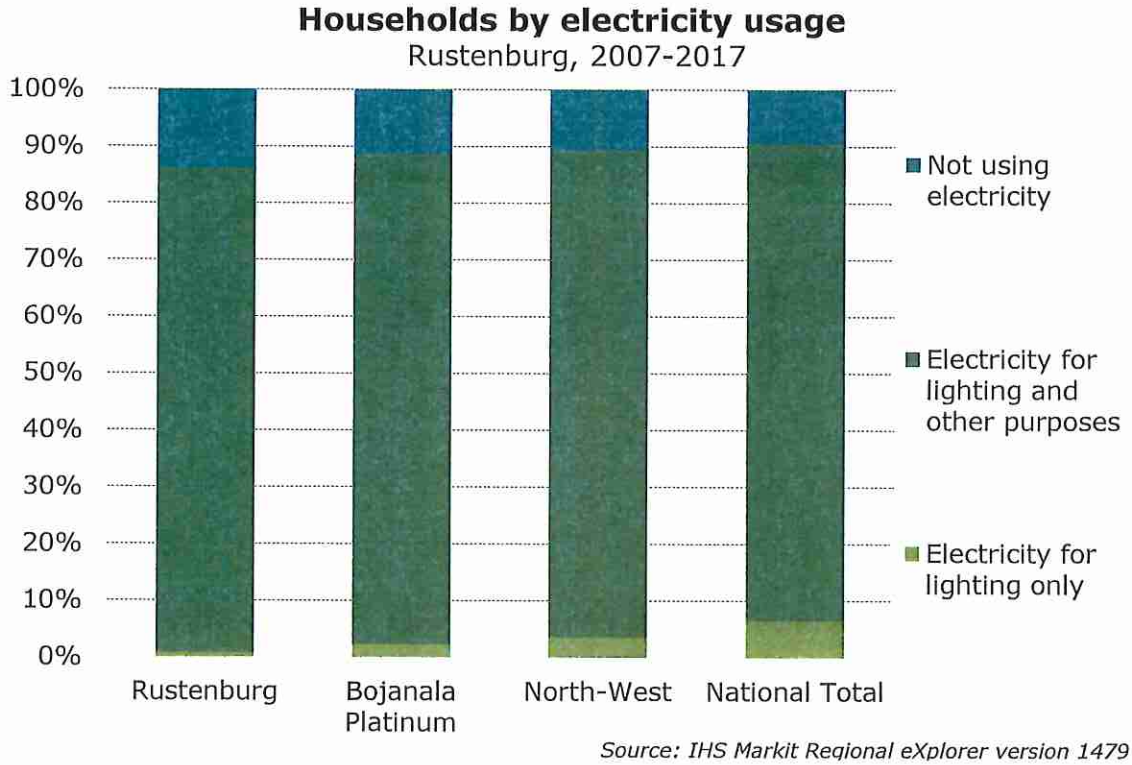
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When looking at the water backlog (number of households below RDP-level) over time, it can be seen that in 2007 the number of households below the RDP-level were 17 800 within Rustenburg Local Municipality, this decreased annually at -2.43% per annum to 13 900 in 2017.

HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF ELECTRICITY

Households are distributed into 3 electricity usage categories: Households using electricity for cooking, Households using electricity for heating, households using electricity for lighting. Household using solar power are included as part of households with an electrical connection. This time series categorises households in a region according to their access to electricity (electrical connection).

HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF ELECTRICAL CONNECTION - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total number of 1 790 (0.79%) households with electricity for lighting only, a total of 192 000 (85.39%) households had electricity for lighting and other purposes and a total number of 31 100 (13.81%) households did not use electricity.

HOUSEHOLDS BY TYPE OF ELECTRICAL CONNECTION - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [NUMBER]

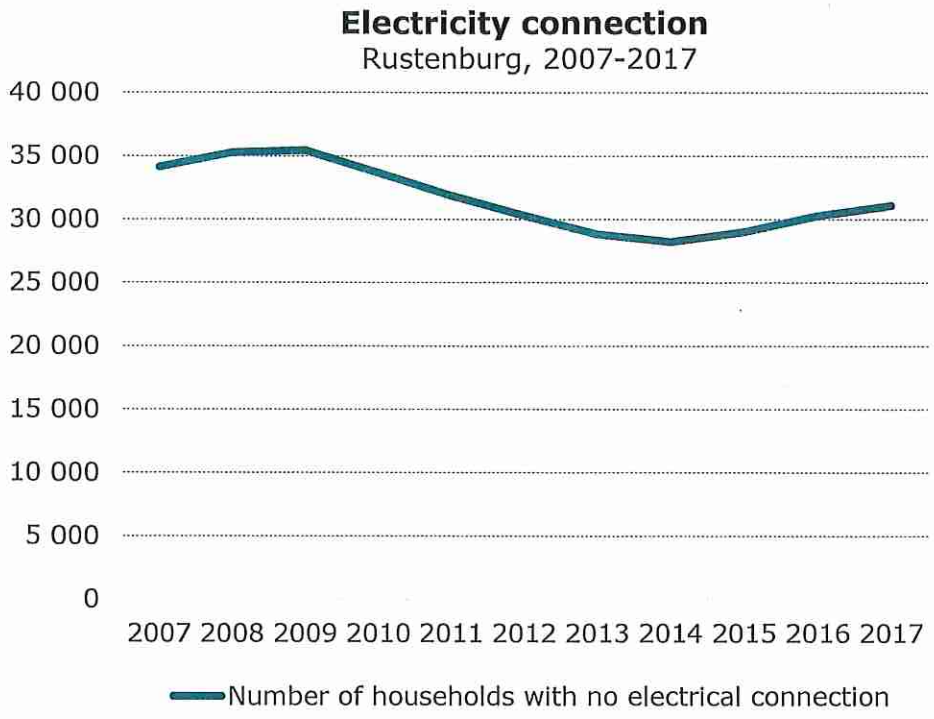
	Electricity for lighting only	Electricity for lighting and other purposes	Not using electricity	Total
Rustenburg	1,790	192,000	31,100	225,000
Moretele	3,230	48,900	1,310	53,400
Madibeng	2,360	156,000	23,100	182,000
Kgetlengrivier	1,180	14,400	1,420	17,000
Moses Kotane	4,240	65,200	6,180	75,600
Total Bojanala Platinum	**12,791**	**476,702**	**63,119**	**552,612**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The region within Bojanala Platinum with the highest number of households with electricity for lighting and other purposes is Rustenburg Local Municipality with 192 000 or a share of 40.32% of the households with electricity for lighting and other purposes within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The region with the lowest number of households with electricity for lighting and other purposes is

Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with a total of 14 400 or a share of 3.01% of the total households with electricity for lighting and other purposes within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality.

ELECTRICITY CONNECTION - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITH NO ELECTRICAL CONNECTION]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

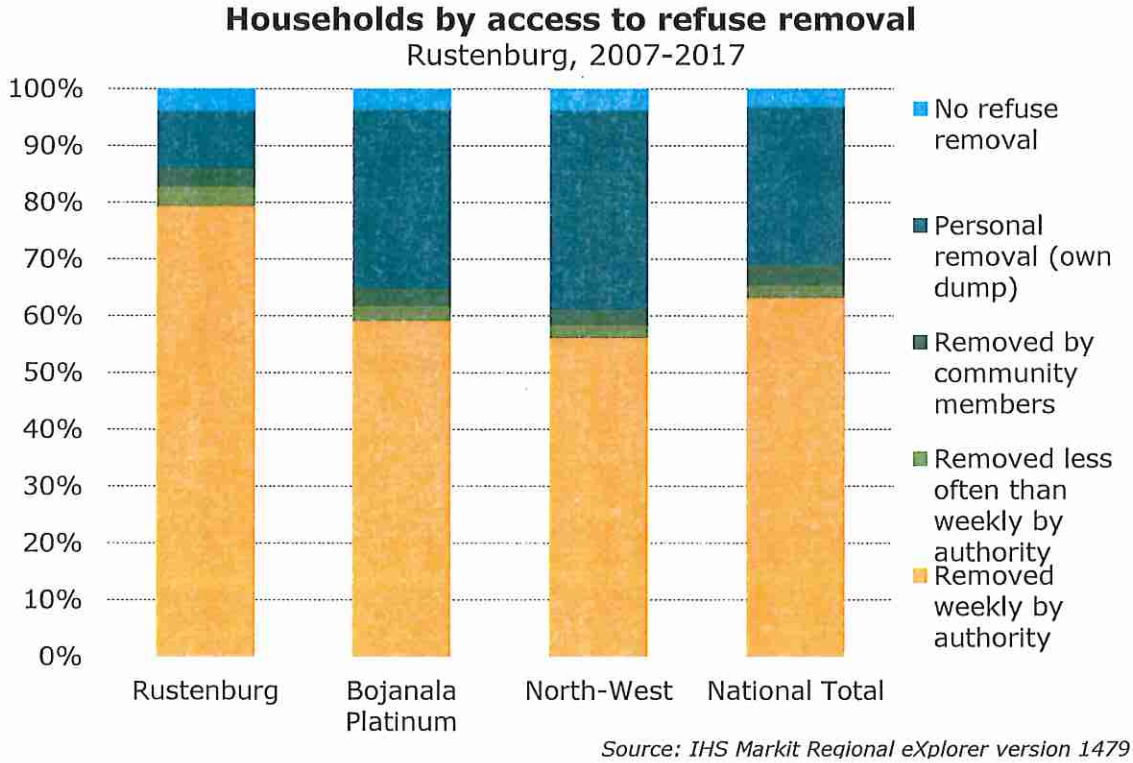
When looking at the number of households with no electrical connection over time, it can be seen that in 2007 the households without an electrical connection in Rustenburg Local Municipality was 34 100, this decreased annually at -0.93% per annum to 31 100 in 2017.

HOUSEHOLDS BY REFUSE DISPOSAL

A distinction is made between formal and informal refuse removal. When refuse is removed by the local authorities, it is referred to as formal refuse removal. Informal refuse removal is where either the household or the community disposes of the waste, or where there is no refuse removal at all. A further breakdown is used in terms of the frequency by which the refuge is taken away, thus leading to the following categories:

Removed weekly by authority
Removed less often than weekly by authority
Removed by community members
Personal removal / (own dump)
No refuse removal

HOUSEHOLDS BY REFUSE DISPOSAL - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total number of 179 000 (79.36%) households which had their refuse removed weekly by the authority, a total of 7 570 (3.36%) households had their refuse removed less often than weekly by the authority and a total number of 22 600 (10.05%) households which had to remove their refuse personally (own dump).

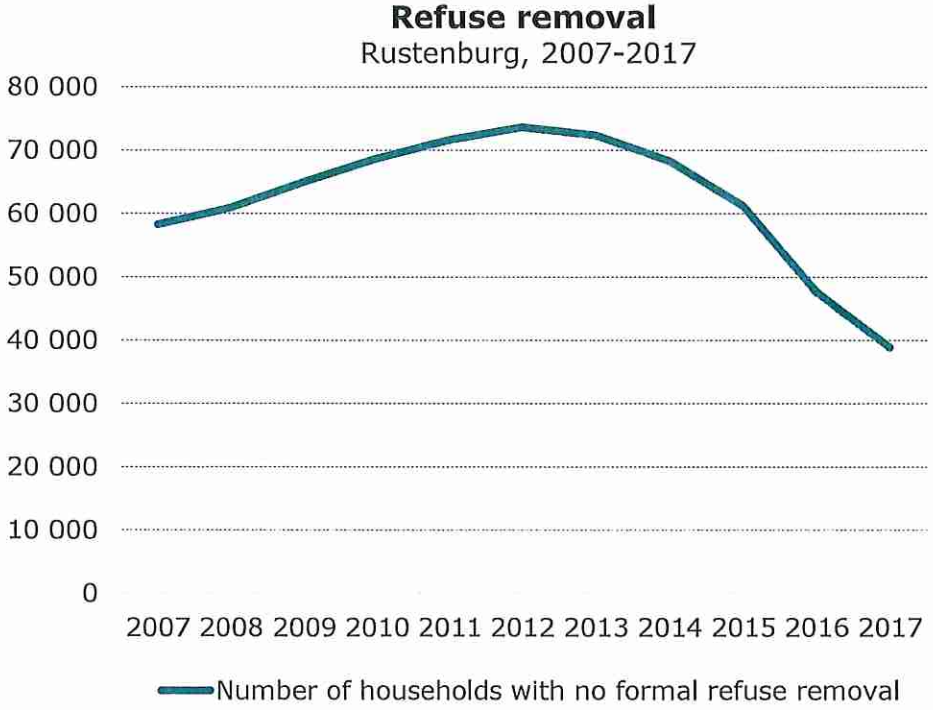
HOUSEHOLDS BY REFUSE DISPOSAL - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [NUMBER]

	Removed weekly by authority	Removed less often than weekly by authority	Removed by community members	Personal removal (own dump)	No refuse removal	Total
Rustenburg	179,000	7,570	7,250	22,600	9,020	225,000
Moretele	13,700	256	1,390	36,000	2,050	53,400
Madibeng	61,100	4,110	7,320	101,000	7,500	182,000
Kgetlengrivier	5,860	33	445	9,430	1,190	17,000
Moses Kotane	67,500	2,490	260	4,760	584	75,600
Total Bojanala Platinum	**326,831**	**14,464**	**16,661**	**174,317**	**20,339**	**552,612**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The region within Bojanala Platinum with the highest number of households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority is Rustenburg Local Municipality with 179 000 or a share of 54.66% of the households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority within Bojanala Platinum. The region with the lowest number of households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority is Kgetlengrivier Local Municipality with a total of 5 860 or a share of 1.79% of the total households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority within the district municipality.

REFUSE REMOVAL - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITH NO FORMAL REFUSE REMOVAL]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When looking at the number of households with no formal refuse removal, it can be seen that in 2007 the households with no formal refuse removal in Rustenburg Local Municipality was 58 300, this decreased annually at -3.97% per annum to 38 900 in 2017.

2.3.8 TOURISM

Tourism can be defined as the non-commercial organisation plus operation of vacations and visits to a place of interest. Whether you visit a relative or friend, travel for business purposes, go on holiday or on medical and religious trips - these are all included in tourism.

TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIPS

As defined by the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UN WTO), a trip refers to travel, by a person, from the time they leave their usual residence until they return to that residence. This is usually referred to as a round trip. IHS likes to narrow this definition down to overnight trips only, and only those made by adult visitors (over 18 years). Also note that the number of "person" trips are measured, not household or "party trips".

The main purpose for an overnight trip is grouped into these categories:

Leisure / Holiday
Business
Visits to friends and relatives
Other (Medical, Religious, etc.)

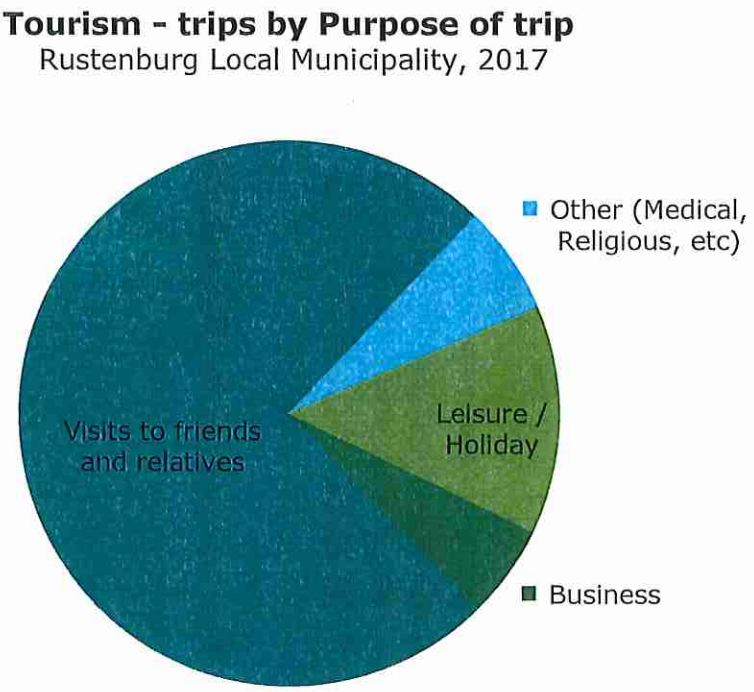
4. ***NUMBER OF TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIPS - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]***

	Leisure / Holiday	Business	Visits to friends and relatives	Other (Medical, Religious, etc)	Total
2007	66,600	34,400	305,000	29,300	435,000
2008	74,900	34,300	327,000	27,400	463,000
2009	81,500	34,400	348,000	29,900	494,000
2010	92,800	37,800	383,000	34,800	548,000
2011	98,600	38,100	414,000	36,700	587,000
2012	101,000	38,800	442,000	38,300	620,000
2013	110,000	40,000	488,000	40,300	678,000
2014	105,000	37,500	482,000	38,900	663,000
2015	98,300	35,900	482,000	38,900	656,000
2016	95,100	38,500	494,000	41,300	669,000
2017	89,600	37,200	492,000	43,300	662,000
Average Annual growth					
2007-2017	***3.02%***	***0.80%***	***4.90%***	***3.99%***	***4.29%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In Rustenburg Local Municipality, the Visits to friends and relatives, relative to the other tourism, recorded the highest average annual growth rate from 2007 (305 000) to 2017 (492 000) at 4.90%. The type of tourism with the highest volume of tourists was also the Visits to friends and relatives tourism with a total number of 492 000 annual tourist and had an average annual growth rate of 4.90%. The tourism type that recorded the lowest growth was Business tourism with an average annual growth rate of 0.80% from 2007 (34 400) to 2017 (37 200).

TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIP - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The Visits to friends and relatives at 74.29% has largest share the total tourism within Rustenburg Local Municipality. Leisure / Holiday tourism had the second highest share at 13.54%, followed by Other (Medical, Religious, etc) tourism at 6.55% and the Business tourism with the smallest share of 5.62% of the total tourism within Rustenburg Local Municipality.

ORIGIN OF TOURISTS

In the following table, the number of tourists that visited Rustenburg Local Municipality from both domestic origins, as well as those coming from international places, are listed.

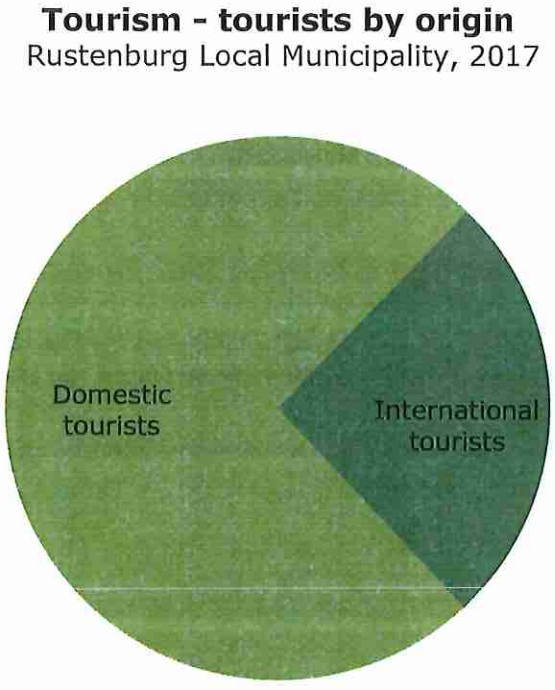
5. ***TOTAL NUMBER OF TRIPS BY ORIGIN TOURISTS - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER]***

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2007	362,000	72,800	435,000
2008	386,000	77,000	463,000
2009	414,000	80,400	494,000
2010	455,000	93,400	548,000
2011	492,000	95,200	587,000
2012	514,000	106,000	620,000
2013	559,000	119,000	678,000
2014	530,000	133,000	663,000
2015	520,000	135,000	656,000
2016	506,000	163,000	669,000
2017	490,000	172,000	662,000
Average Annual growth			
2007-2017	***3.08%***	***8.95%***	***4.29%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The number of trips by tourists visiting Rustenburg Local Municipality from other regions in South Africa has increased at an average annual rate of 3.08% from 2007 (362 000) to 2017 (490 000). The tourists visiting from other countries increased at a relatively high average annual growth rate of 8.95% (from 72 800 in 2007 to 172 000). International tourists constitute 25.91% of the total number of trips, with domestic tourism representing the balance of 74.09%.

TOURISTS BY ORIGIN - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

5.1.1 Bednights by origin of tourist

A bed night is the tourism industry measurement of one night away from home on a single person trip. The following is a summary of the number of bed nights spent by domestic and international tourist within Rustenburg Local Municipality between 2007 and 2017.

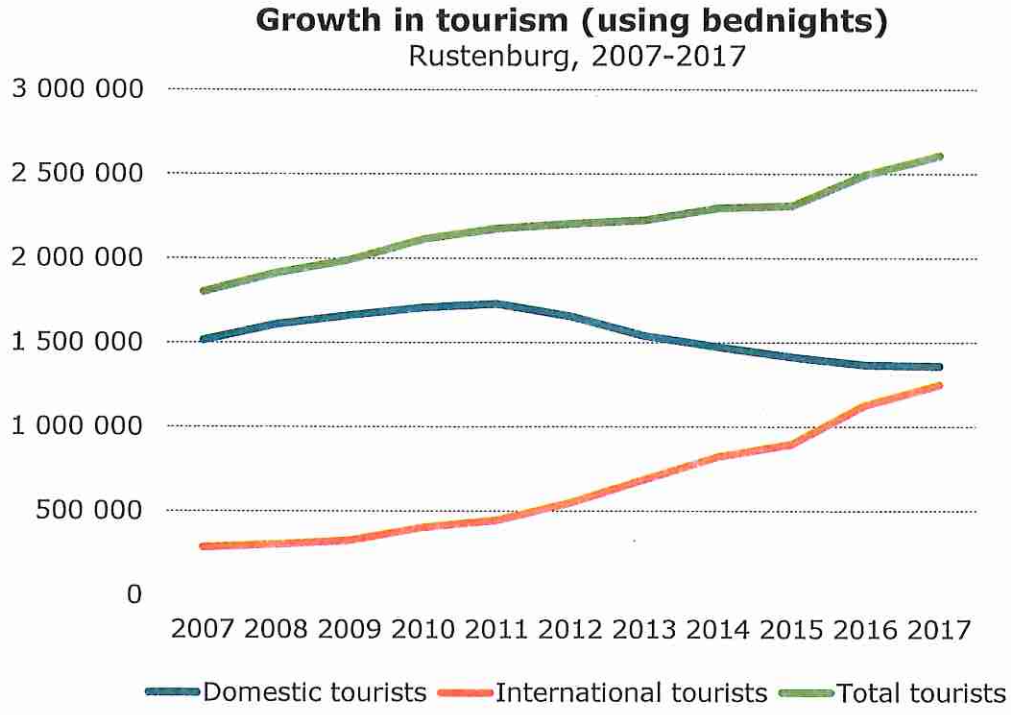
BEDNIGHTS BY ORIGIN OF TOURIST - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER]

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2007	1,510,000	288,000	1,800,000
2008	1,610,000	304,000	1,910,000
2009	1,660,000	327,000	1,990,000
2010	1,710,000	406,000	2,110,000
2011	1,730,000	447,000	2,180,000
2012	1,650,000	551,000	2,210,000
2013	1,540,000	688,000	2,230,000
2014	1,470,000	823,000	2,300,000
2015	1,410,000	897,000	2,310,000
2016	1,370,000	1,130,000	2,500,000
2017	1,360,000	1,250,000	2,610,000
Average Annual growth			
2007-2017	***-1.08%***	***15.81%***	***3.77%***

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

From 2007 to 2017, the number of bed nights spent by domestic tourists has decreased at an average annual rate of -1.08%, while in the same period the international tourists had an average annual increase of 15.81%. The total number of bed nights spent by tourists increased at an average annual growth rate of 3.77% from 1.8 million in 2007 to 2.61 million in 2017.

GROWTH IN TOURISM (USING BEDNIGHTS) BY ORIGIN - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [NUMBER]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

TOURISM SPENDING

In their Tourism Satellite Account, StatsSA defines tourism spending as all expenditure by visitors for their trip to the particular region. This excludes capital expenditure as well as the shopping expenditure of traders (called shuttle trade). The amounts are presented in current prices, meaning that inflation has not been taken into account.

It is important to note that this type of spending differs from the concept of contribution to GDP. Tourism spending merely represents a nominal spend of trips made to each region.

TOTAL TOURISM SPENDING - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	1.3	4.2	7.7	138.7
2008	1.5	4.7	8.3	152.5
2009	1.6	4.8	8.3	153.4
2010	1.8	5.3	9.0	167.2
2011	1.9	5.5	9.2	174.6
2012	2.2	6.3	10.4	199.9
2013	2.5	7.2	11.5	218.3
2014	2.8	8.3	13.0	240.7
2015	3.0	8.8	13.7	249.7
2016	3.2	9.5	14.7	265.8
2017	3.3	9.9	15.2	276.5
Average Annual growth				
2007-2017	***9.62%***	***8.85%***	***7.06%***	***7.14%***

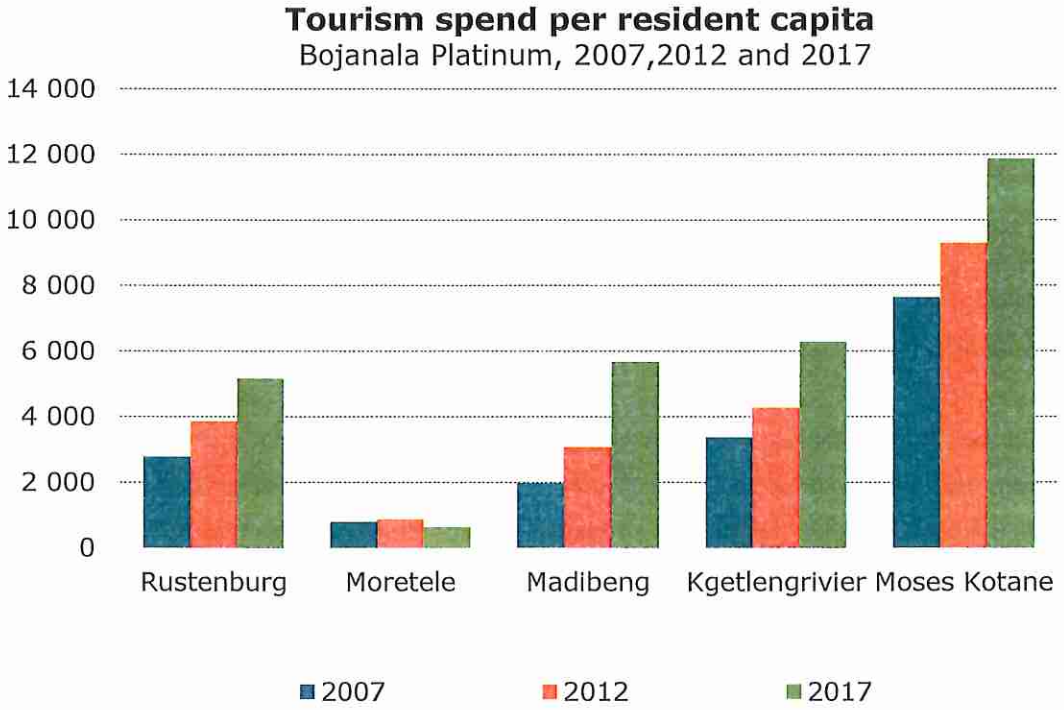
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Rustenburg Local Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 3.33 billion in 2017 with an average annual growth rate of 9.6% since 2007 (R 1.33 billion). Bojanala Platinum District Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 9.91 billion in 2017 and an average annual growth rate of 8.8% over the period. Total spending in North-West Province increased from R 7.7 billion in 2007 to R 15.2 billion in 2017 at an average annual rate of 7.1%. South Africa as whole had an average annual rate of 7.1% and increased from R 139 billion in 2007 to R 277 billion in 2017.

Tourism Spend per Resident Capita

Another interesting topic to look at is tourism spending per resident capita. To calculate this, the total amount of tourism spending in the region is divided by the number of residents living within that region. This gives a relative indication of how important tourism is for a particular area.

TOURISM SPEND PER RESIDENT CAPITA - RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2007,2012 AND 2017 [R THOUSANDS]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In 2017, Rustenburg Local Municipality had a tourism spend per capita of R 5,160 and an average annual growth rate of 6.39%, Rustenburg Local Municipality ranked fourth amongst all the regions within Bojanala Platinum in terms of tourism spend per capita. The region within Bojanala Platinum District Municipality that ranked first in terms of tourism spend per capita is Moses Kotane Local Municipality with a total per capita spending of R 11,900 which reflects an average annual increase of 4.50% from 2007. The local municipality that ranked lowest in terms of tourism spend per capita is Moretele with a total of R 631 which reflects an decrease at an average annual rate of -2.23% from 2007.

Tourism Spend as a Share of GDP

This measure presents tourism spending as a percentage of the GDP of a region. It provides a gauge of how important tourism is to the local economy. An important note about this variable is that it does not reflect what is spent in the tourism industry of that region, but only what is spent by tourists visiting that region as their main destination.

TOTAL SPENDING AS % SHARE OF GDP - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2007-2017 [PERCENTAGE]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
2007	4.7%	7.0%	6.4%	6.6%
2008	4.7%	6.5%	6.0%	6.4%
2009	4.7%	6.1%	5.6%	6.1%
2010	4.8%	6.0%	5.4%	6.1%
2011	4.6%	5.6%	5.0%	5.8%
2012	5.6%	6.5%	5.4%	6.1%
2013	5.0%	6.1%	5.2%	6.2%
2014	5.7%	7.0%	5.7%	6.3%
2015	5.8%	6.9%	5.6%	6.2%
2016	6.0%	7.2%	5.7%	6.1%
2017	5.8%	6.9%	5.6%	5.9%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

In Rustenburg Local Municipality the tourism spending as a percentage of GDP in 2017 was 5.80%. Tourism spending as a percentage of GDP for 2017 was 6.93% in Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, 5.57% in North-West Province. Looking at South Africa as a whole, it can be seen that total tourism spending had a total percentage share of GDP of 5.94%.

2.3.9 INTERNATIONAL TRADE

Trade is defined as the act of buying and selling, with international trade referring to buying and selling across international border, more generally called importing and exporting. The Trade Balance is calculated by subtracting imports from exports.

RELATIVE IMPORTANCE OF INTERNATIONAL TRADE

In the table below, the Rustenburg Local Municipality is compared to Bojanala Platinum, North-West Province and South Africa, in terms of actual imports and exports, the Trade Balance, as well the contribution to GDP and the region's contribution to total national exports and imports.

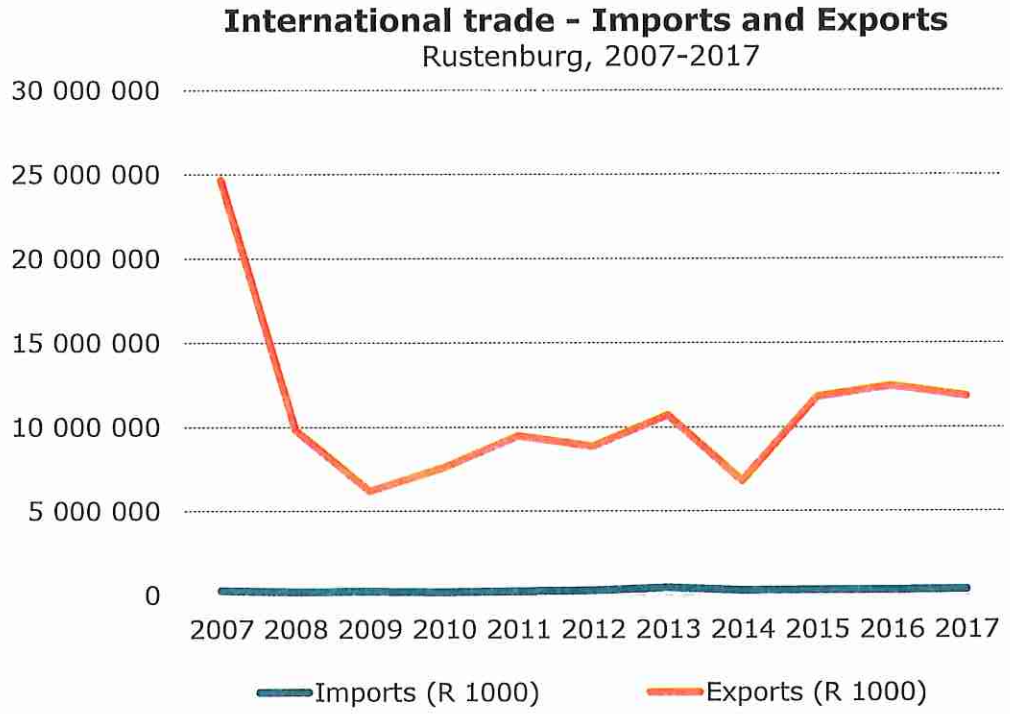
MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017 [R 1000, CURRENT PRICES]

	Rustenburg	Bojanala Platinum	North-West	National Total
Exports (R 1000)	11,849,945	21,309,361	24,259,997	1,191,658,171
Imports (R 1000)	353,927	2,387,554	6,623,924	1,094,510,375
Total Trade (R 1000)	12,203,871	23,696,915	30,883,921	2,286,168,546
Trade Balance (R 1000)	11,496,018	18,921,808	17,636,073	97,147,796
Exports as % of GDP	20.6%	14.9%	8.9%	25.6%
Total trade as % of GDP	21.3%	16.6%	11.3%	49.1%
Regional share - Exports	1.0%	1.8%	2.0%	100.0%
Regional share - Imports	0.0%	0.2%	0.6%	100.0%
Regional share - Total Trade	**0.5%**	**1.0%**	**1.4%**	**100.0%**

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

The merchandise export from Rustenburg Local Municipality amounts to R 11.8 billion and as a percentage of total national exports constitutes about 0.99%. The exports from Rustenburg Local Municipality constitute 20.64% of total Rustenburg Local Municipality's GDP. Merchandise imports of R 354 million constitute about 0.03% of the national imports. Total trade within Rustenburg is about 0.53% of total national trade. Rustenburg Local Municipality had a positive trade balance in 2017 to the value of R 11.5 billion.

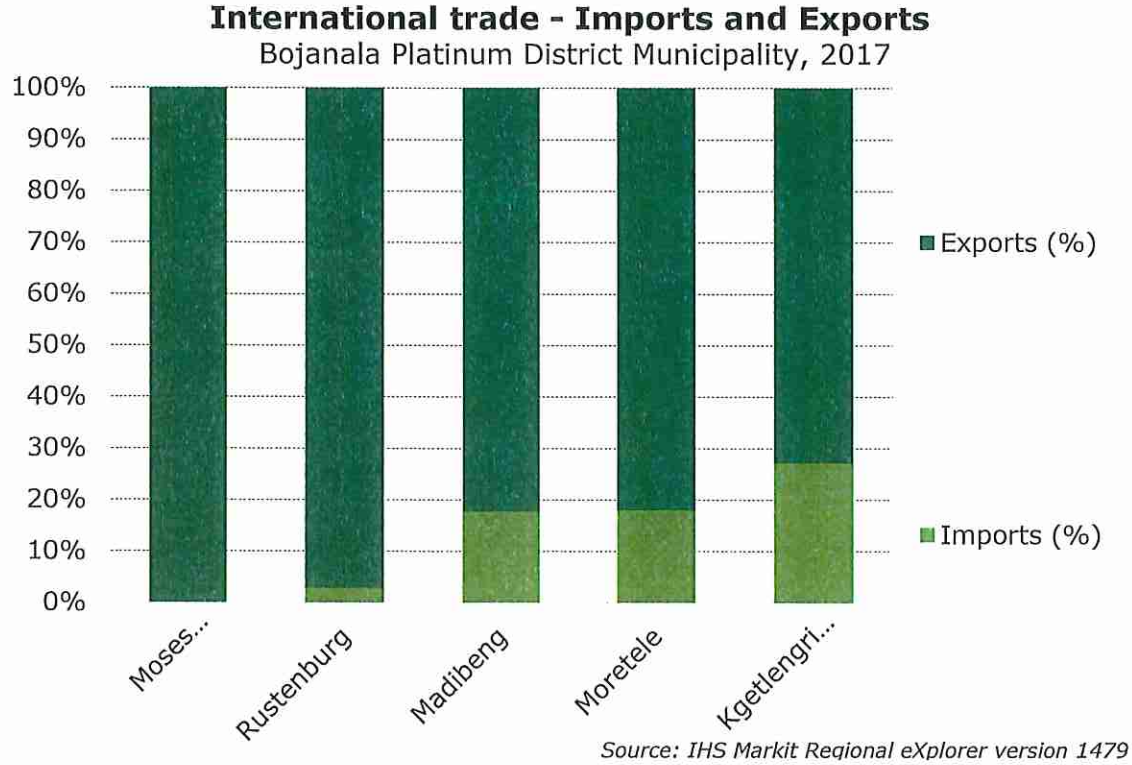
IMPORT AND EXPORTS IN RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2007-2017 [R 1000]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

Analysing the trade movements over time, total trade decreased from 2007 to 2017 at an average annual growth rate of -6.90%. Merchandise exports decreased at an average annual rate of -7.07%, with the highest level of exports of R 24.7 billion experienced in 2007. Merchandise imports increased at an average annual growth rate of 2.93% between 2007 and 2017, with the lowest level of imports experienced in 2010

MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - RUSTENBURG AND THE REST OF BOJANALA PLATINUM, 2017 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

When comparing the Rustenburg Local Municipality with the other regions in the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, Rustenburg has the biggest amount of international trade (when aggregating imports and exports, in absolute terms) with a total of R 12.2 billion. This is also true for exports - with a total of R 11.8 billion in 2017. Kgetlengrivier had the lowest total trade figure at R 11.5 million. The Kgetlengrivier also had the lowest exports in terms of currency value with a total of R 8.38 million exports.

2.4 COMMUNITY NEEDS PER WARD

Through the IDP consultative processes the RLM has built up an inventory of priority community needs in different wards within the RLM area of jurisdiction. These inputs provided by local stakeholders are of critical importance as they provide insight into how residents experience day to day life in the municipal area. The priority needs are summarised in **Table 7** below while the respective wards are illustrated on **Figure 4** for geographic reference purposes.

Table 1: RLM Priority Community Needs per Ward

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
01	Provision of water (Phatsima Ext. 3 and Boshoek)	Sanitation: • VIP Toilets (Boshoek) • Upgrading to sewer system (Phatsima)	Housing	Land be made available for human settlement	Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads and storm-water drainage - Upgrading of Phatsima Bridge - Maintenance of main road from Ledig to Phatsima and cutting of over-grown grass along the road	Electricity: • Electrification of houses • Provision of street lights/ high mast lights • Maintenance of high mast lights	Graveyard/ cemetery: Provision; extension of existing cemetery; access to existing cemetery and maintenance including fencing of cemeteries	Community hall: New and extension of existing structure	Operationilisation of Phatsima fire station	Provision of: • Grants pay-point • Primary school • Clinic
02	Housing	Roads: • Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads • Provision of storm-water drainage systems • Installation of speed humps	Sanitation: • VIP Toilets Upgrading to sewer system	Electricity: Need for upgrading of power lines to reduce power outages occurring regularly	Purification of drinking water	Community hall/multi-purpose community centre: • Upgrading • Construction • Supply of +200 chairs • Establishment of a youth centre	Upgrading of a sports facility	Education: Provision of additional classrooms to alleviate crowding in classes Free education	Satellite Police Station	- Upgrading of Post Office - Development of a Taxi rank
03	Water provision	Roads: • Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads • Provision of storm-water	Electricity: • Electrification of houses • Provision of street lights/ highmast lights	Sanitation: • VIP Toilets Upgrading to sewer system	Low cost housing	Mobile clinic service	Community Library	Ward offices	Parks and recreational facilities Sports Facilities	Satellite Police Station

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
		drainage systems Installation of speed humps	Maintenance of highmast lights							
04	Construction of sewer system	High mast lights	RDP Houses	Construction/ upgrading and Maintenance of Internal Roads • Stop signs in national road (Sun City road)	Need for shopping complex	Rural Development: • Assistance with community projects, e.g. poultry, crop production, etc. • High rate of unemployment	Address issue of environmental impact by the mines.	Multipurpose community centre with community Library and youth centre	Taxi rank	Upgrading of post office
05	Housing especially low-cost	Sewer System	Roads: - Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads; - Maintenance of side-walks - Cutting of grass along the roads - Construction of a bridge between residential area and school (Punodung)	Street lights/ high mast lights	Maintenance of cemeteries	Multi-purpose community centre/ community hall	Development of parks in open spaces	Electrification of houses	Upgrading to sewer pipelines and system	High rate of unemployment
06	Low cost housing	Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads	High mast lights	De-bushing of over-grown areas	Supply of medicines in the clinic	24 hrs visible policing by South Africa Police Service in	VIP Toilets	Electrification of houses	Upgrading to sewer pipelines and system	High rate of unemployment

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
						conjunction with Royal Bafokeng Reaction Force in greater Phokeng				
07	RDP Houses	Maintenance of Streets lights Construction of high mast lights	Sewage Reticulation Construction including connections to their VIP toilets	Roads: • Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads • Incomplete Paving Road should be complete • Cleaning of Roads • Speed humps: Pule; Kwena and Mogotsi streets; Matlhatsi-Marwane Section	• Improvement of Waste Collection • Signage of no illegal Dumping •	• Construction of a sports centre • Maintenance and upgrading of existing sports facilities	Multipurpose Community Centre/Service Point for payment of services Community Library	Clinic and HIV/AIDS Awareness Campaigns	SMME support to reduce unemployment	Education: • Secondary School • Request for Scholar Patrols • Upgrading of passage near Lekwakwa Primary School •
08	Electricity: • Street Lights at Hedeira Street and Dr. Moroka Drive • High mast light next to Telkom •	Roads and Storm-water Maintenance of internal roads – prevent soil erosion	Multi-purpose Hall for Tlhabane West	Additional primary school	Empty plots be developed to reduce illegal dumping All open spaces be sold or owners be identified for sites to be kept clean	Mobile Clinic	Satellite Police Station	Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads	Improvement of Waste Collection	Sports Ground

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
09	High mast light at Cnr. Reuben Monareng, Mokale and Segaole Streets	• Erection of two (2) speed humps behind the stadium along the Eskom road • Provision of road signs for disabilities,	• Two Apollo lights, one at the cemetery and the other behind old public works building	Creation of Employment for Disabled.	• Development of open space in front of the Old Tlhabane Shopping centre into hawkers stalls • Development of all open spaces	• Multipurpose indoor sports centre at Tlhabane Stadium	• Mobile clinic especially for Yizo-Yizo residents • Provision and supply of ambulances and medicines at Tlhabane health centres.	• High unemployment rate – needs skills development	Request for appointment of caretaker at Tlhabane Library.	• Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads
10	High mast lights at Tlhabane old cemetery	Old Cemetery at Moraka Street be secured with a brick wall	Old clinic building and NRD building at BTH street be availed for utilization by the community for projects	Connect Moraka Street to Rametsi Street (where illegal dumping occurs)	Convert Mmabana site to a gym park	Upgrading of sewer system in Tlhabane.	Skill Tlhabane RCC staff for indigent registration Request for appointment of caretaker at Tlhabane Library.	Additional resources (e.g. computers) at the Youth Advisory Centre	Continuous grass cutting between Foxlake and Rustenburg North	• Continuous patrols by the SAPS to curb crime • Toll-free number for ESKOM complaints) • Business/Market centre at open space near McGregor (Mmabana Site)
11	Construction of a wall at Tlhabane cemetery	Removal of illegal immigrants and revamping of the old government building to be used for skills and youth development programmes	Furnishing of Tlhabane stadium project to address recreational facility's needs.	Construction of a museum at corner Mokgatle and Senqi street	Creation of Employment for Disabled	Provision and supply of ambulances and medicines at Tlhabane health centres.	Financial support for the community projects known as aquapholic farming	Provision of road signs for disabilities	Renovation of tennis courts and construction of Olympic size swimming pool next to Tlhabane Stadium	Development of Yizo-Yizo into a proper human settlement with the following: - Housing - Sanitation - Roads - Water and - Electricity
12	Upgrading Sewer System	Electricity: - Upgrading of street lights	RDP House & Stands	- Roads & Storm Water (Meriting Ext 4 & 5)	Mobile clinic	School at Ext 4 & 5	Prepaid meter	Permanent sports Field / Ground	Community Park	Footprint bridge – between Meriting Section 9 Ext 2

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
		- High mast light at Ext 4 & 5		- Installation of Road signs - Paving of sidewalks - Speed Humps						
13	Speed Humps	Road maintenance. And road markings -	Maintenance of streetlights in Rustenburg North	- High mast lights at Foxlake (Clinic Street)	Distribution of wheelie bins	Streets Name plates at Foxlake	Scholar Patrols (mainly at junctions: Fourways; Dr. Moroka and Scheiding street)	Reconstruction and maintenance of Noord Park.	Mobile Clinic	Sports ground
14	Maintenance and upgrading (widening) of roads, storm-water drainage	Maintenance of water infrastructure	Control of illegal occupation of land next to Grenswag High School,	Maintenance (de-bushing) of parks and sidewalks,	Speed humps in Van Belkum Street, Repair fence at the railway line	Greenifying the area	A number of EPWP Jobs need to be allocated to unemployment residents in Ward 16.	Maintenance of road and replacement of traffic signs	Refuse removal to all parts of the ward	Law Enforcement on drug dealings
15	Maintenance and upgrading (widening) of roads, storm-water drainage	Maintenance of water infrastructure	Control of illegal occupation of land next to Grenswag High School,	Maintenance (de-bushing) of parks and sidewalks,	Speed humps in Van Belkum Street, Repair fence at the railway line	Greenifying the area	A number of EPWP Jobs need to be allocated to unemployment residents in Ward 16.	Maintenance of road and replacement of traffic signs	Refuse removal to all parts of the ward	Law Enforcement on drug dealings
16	Urgent completion of the acquisition of land for the Rietvlei residents	Water and sanitation supplied to the new land for the Rietvlei residents	Continued grass cutting by local co-op to help combat crime	2 High-mast lights in the open space between Wisteria avenue and Dr. Moroka drive	3 High-mast lights in the Dorpspruit	Proper storm-water drainage in Tlhabane West	Enough spares for the electrical infrastructure in ward 16	Reconstruction of road in Tamerisk avenue	Urgent maintenance of the municipal flats in Kremetart street	No dumping signs and protection of the people found dumping
17	Maintenance and upgrading (widening) of	Maintenance of water infrastructure	Control of illegal occupation of land next to	Maintenance (de-bushing) of parks and sidewalks,	Speed humps in Van Belkum Street, Repair	Greenifying the area	A number of EPWP Jobs need to be allocated to	Maintenance of road and replacement of traffic signs	Refuse removal to all parts of the ward	Law Enforcement on drug dealings

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
	roads, storm-water drainage		Grenswag High School,		fence at the railway line		unemployment residents in Ward 16.			
18	Clinic and ambulance	Sports/recreation facility	Satellite police station,	Speed humps	Reduction of crime	Development of open spaces	Maintenance and upgrading (widening) of roads, storm-water drainage	Maintenance of water infrastructure	Maintenance of road and replacement of traffic signs	Refuse removal to all parts of the ward
19	Roads: Paardekraal Ext. 1 and 3 - Construction and maintenance of tarred roads - Storm water drainage - Speed humps - Completion of roads project - Side walks	Completion of existing park project	Refuse removal to all parts of the ward	- Electricity: High mast lights	Electrification of informal settlements	Sports and recreation facilities (Parks)	Upgrading of sewer system	Primary and high schools	Financial support of SMMEs	Financial support to NGOs
20	Upgrade of Sewer pipelines -	Upgrading and maintenance of internal Roads and Paving	RDP Houses	Cemetery	Multipurpose Community Centre	Free Wi-Fi	Development of a Community Park	Upgrading of Tsholofelo Collage	- Electricity: High mast lights	Unemployment Rate is too High
21	Prepaid water meters	Primary school	Youth development centre	Shopping complex	Additional RDP houses Roads:	Electricity vending machines	Filling station	Provision of land for a grave yard; Fencing of old Boitekong Cemetery (next to Paardekraal shaft)	Provision of business sites	Community residential Units
22	Provision of Water in informal settlements	Provision of Sanitation in informal settlements	Formalisation of informal settlements within the ward	Street names	Electricity: Electrification of informal settlements; Provision (Ext. 9; 10; 11) of	Clearing of Illegal dumping sites	Construction/ upgrading and maintenance of Roads	Housing: RDP Houses	Clinic	Community Hall.

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
					and maintenance of High Mast Lights					
23	RDP houses	Roads - Upgrading and maintenance of Internal roads - Maintenance of existing paved roads and speed humps - Construction of storm-water drainage systems Construction of temporary roads in the informal settlement	Temporary water supply	24 hrs clinic services	Cutting or debushing of trees and grasses	Fencing of grave yard	Refilling of open holes	Combat Unemployment by providing EPWP, CWP Animal Production Cooperatives and capital to start Businesses	Relocation of Chachalaza from RBA land	Mobile Clinic
24	Water yard connections	Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads and storm-water drainage system	Sports facilities	Community Library	Clinic/ health facility	RCC renovation	Police station and visibility of Police Officers	Community hall	Cemetery site	Parks and recreation
25	Water supply at the new stands	V.I.P toilets	RDP Houses	Electricity connections	Roads and Storm water drainage system	Staffing of personnel at the clinic	Street names Speed humps	Recreational facilities	Construction of a fully flashed Police Station	Library
26	RDP Houses	Water supply to alleviate the shortage	Sanitation Installation	Well-resourced mobile clinic	Roads and Storm-water Drainage - Phase 3	EPWP jobs	Bush clearing along the main road	Sports facilities	Home Affairs services be extended to the village	Post office (Micro Container)
27	Sewer Line	Roads: Tarring Paving	Bridge between Cuba and Fidel Castro; Slovo	RDP Houses	Toilet Structures	Recreational Park	Water Yard connections (Ext. 2 & 3)	Technical High School	Fire Station	Land Fill Site

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
			and Lethabong Ext 2 & 3							
28	RDP houses (2000 units for ward 27)	Sewer pipes & Toilet structures	Internal Roads Lethabong Gardens Ext	Fire Station	High Mass Lights	Graveyard fence and toilets	Community Hall	Sports Facilities	Mall/shopping complex	Youth Development Centre
29	Tyring of D1325: Marikana/Maumomg/Ramkelenyane D520: Makolokwe to Bethany Paving of internal roads & Storm water drainage system	Community Hall	Low cost housing (RDP)	Multi-Sports Facilities	VIP toilets Sewer line/improved sanitation system	Upgrading of Clinic to a Community Health Centre	Community library and Resource centre	Water Reservoir for the Makolokwe and Barseba areas	Shopping complex/mall	Fire station
30	Water Shortage - Finish incomplete water projects	Sanitation	Electrification of new stands and maintenance of existing high mast lights	Bridge and Road maintenance	Mobile clinic overcrowded Ambulance service and 24 hours clinic service/health centre	Internal roads not maintained	Fencing of road edges for safety of livestock & residents	Proper planning of the villages	SMME and youth development centre	Additional communal stand pipes (water)
31	Electrification of informal settlements: ward 31 - Mahumapelo	water supply at all areas	Roads and storm-water (RDP section) Low cost housing	Gravel roads all areas	Sanitation (VIP toilets) all areas	High-mast lights all areas	Public toilets (CBD)	Taxi rank (CBD)	Hawker's centre	Housing all areas
32	RDP Houses	Free water – for indigents & old aged	Electricity – Energising RDP Houses and High Mast Lights	Upgrading/Paving of internal roads	Operationalisation of the Traffic and Fire Station	Fencing of the Grave yard and toilets	Allocation of churches and crèches – stands	Construction of Speed humps & Road Marking	Construction of the Taxi Rank toilets	Issuing of title deeds to promote home ownership
33	Water provision	Proper Sanitation System	Proper housing	Proper Infrastructure	Learnerships and Bursaries	Buses for pupils as they travel miles before they reach their	Clinic	Employment	Sports facilities	Land for businesses

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
						respective schools				
34	Sanitation	RDP Houses	Roads	Highmast lights	Community hall	Sports grounds	Clinic & crèches	Schools	Bursaries, learnerships & internships	Employment
35	Water yard connections	Water borne sanitation	RDP Houses	Allocation of waste bins and refuse collection	Upgrading and maintenance of internal roads	Electricity reticulation	24 Hour clinic service	Primary School	Satellite Police Station and visibility of Police	Proper allocation of stands
36	Water and maintenance of water reservoir	VIP Toilets	RDP Houses	High Mast Lights	Refuse removal Dinie estate	Clinic	Primary and Secondary school at Dinie estate	Maintenance of and upgrading of internal roads	Cemetery development and fencing of Mathopestad cemetery	Recreational Facilities
37	More RDP Houses needed And allocation of stands	Maintenance & upgrading of interna roads	Satellite police station	Sports facilities and Community Hall	Proclamation of Lusikisiki	Constant sewer blockages be attended to. Upgrading of sewer network.	High mast lights in Seraleng and upgrading of electricity at Sondela.	Youth information centre	Food parcels for old people and poor people	Lack of job opportunities at the mines and RLM
38	Water	proper sanitation	Electricity	High Mast Lights	Houses and allocation of land	Construction of Roads (Access and Internal)	Mobile Clinic	Mobile Police Station	Provision of Schools	Unemployment rate is too high
39	Attend to Water Meters leakages	Maintenance of sanitation pipelines	Removal of Waste	RDP Houses;	Upgrading of Roads and Storm water (D3; D4 and Phase 2)	Upgrading and maintenance of Internal Roads and Speed Humps	Allocation of Stands Tsuname Section and Phase 2	Maintenance of High Mast Lights Upgrading of electricity transformer (C4 Section)	Clinic	High School
40	Provision of proper sanitation service to 450 house holds	RDP Houses including allocation of residential stands	Secondary School between Million Dollar; Ext. 23 and 16	High Unemployment rate of youth Lack of Job opportunities at the mines	Formalisation of informal settlements	Provision of church stands	Existing youth cultural dance groups need exposure	Alcohol & drug abuse needs attention	Assistance to register NPO	Sports facilities – community be given authorities to utilize sports

WARD NO.	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10
41	High mast lights – Boshfontein section and Seraleng	Tarred Roads Storm water drainage system	Community Library	Sports fields	Completion of primary school construction	Scholar subsidised transport	Maintenance and upgrading of internal road	Completion of the renovation of Boitekong clinic	Primary School	Community Hall
42	Accurate billing of accounts	Refurbishment of sewer infrastructure	Road and storm water maintenance	Replacement of traffic signs	Maintenance and upgrading of internal roads	Signage of no illegal Dumping	Greenifying the area	Law Enforcement	Parks	Unemployment Rate
43	Access to drinking water / stand pipes **Completed**	Access to sanitation **Completed**	Upgrading of sewerage network at **Karlienpark & Zinniaville**	General development of the informal settlement and access to subsidised housing/ services stands **Jabula and Donosa**	Upgrading and servicing of ring roads **Seraleng**	Servicing and maintenance of storm water drainage-water meters – sewer network **Karlienpark & Zinniaville**	High mast lights **Boschfontein/ Seraleng**	Refurbishment / replacement of old electric wiring **Karlienpark & Zinniaville**	Phasing out of the dumping site **Completed**	Access to subsidised housing / serviced stands **Karlienpark and Reutlwile**
44	Water: Proper drinking water supply	Sanitation: phase 3 Drain toilets	RDP Houses	• High mast lights • Electricity house connections	Waste collection	• Upgrading of internal road	Bridge to Lerutlhware Primary School	Community hall	High school extension of primary school	Satellite police station
45	VIP Toilets for Thekwane and Photsaneng	RDP Houses and Land allocation	Paved roads inside and outside Photsaneng and the entire ward	Land allocation site for soap factory in Photsaneng	Multi-purpose sports facility	Assistance for agriculture development projects	Early learning centre for Karee	Upgrading of parks in Thekwane and Photsaneng	Paved cemetery parking Thekwane and Photsaneng	Police station/satellite Police station for combating of High crime rate

These needs were further corroborated by members of the communities in the 45 Wards during the Public Participation process which ran in all the Wards within the Municipality During 2018.

2.5 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL STRENGTHS, WEAKNESSES, OPPORTUNITIES & THREATS

The following **Table 8** comprises a summary of the main strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats identified in the RLM area.

Table 2: RLM SWOT Analysis

STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
- Credible IDP - Council approved and adopted Sector Plans - By-laws and Policies in place. - All strategic positions are filled (Section 57 manager) (7 out of 9) - The municipality is functioning as both a Water Services Authority and Water Services Provider	- Outdated Spatial Development Framework (SDF) - Limited access to strategically located land - Uncontrolled land invasion and Informal Settlement - Contravention of Land Use Management Scheme - Poor maintenance and management of open spaces and heritage sites - Poor maintenance of municipal assets - High distribution losses in water and electricity - Negative audit opinion - Lack of cash reserves - Low revenue collection rate
OPPORTUNITIES	**THREATS**
- Municipality strategically located along the N4 corridor - Potential for agriculture, tourism and mining related sectors - Potential to increase revenue base - Private Public Partnerships, Mining industries to be engaged to assist in capital funding - The Municipality is classified as the Economic Hub of the province - Development of the integrated public transport network to enhance urban sustainability - Explore Green energy/ alternative sources of energy	- Declining mining economy - Service delivery protests - Insufficient budget for infrastructure development and maintenance - Ageing and failing infrastructure - Low levels of skills and education - High dependency rate (Growing indigent register) - Negative perception about municipality by the community - Illegal connection of services. (Unauthorised usage of municipal services) - Undiversified economy - High unemployment rate - Low levels of household income - Influx of migrant workers - Vandalism and theft of infrastructure network

3. SECTORAL ANALYSIS AND STRATEGIES PER KEY PERFORMANCE AREA (KPA)

MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT, GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

The following echelons of Administrative and Executive are responsible for implementation and oversight of functions under these KPAs:

- Corporate Support Services
- Office of the Municipal Manager
- All the Executive Offices

3.1 CORPORATE SUPPORT

The Rustenburg Local Municipality was established as a Category B municipality in terms of the provisions of the Municipal Demarcation Act 1998.

3.1.1 POWERS, DUTIES AND FUNCTIONS

In line with the provisions of the Municipal Structures Act (117 of 1998) the RLM has been assigned the following statutory Powers, Duties and Functions (**Table 9**).

Table 3: Allocated Powers, Duties and Functions of RLM

Directorate	Powers from the Allocated Carried out	Performed (P)/ Not Performed(NP)
Community Development	• Municipal Parks and Recreation	P
	• Cemeteries and Funeral Parlours	P
	• Local Amenities	P
	• Local Sports Facilities	P
	• Public Places	P
	• Cleansing	P
	• Municipal Abattoir	NP
	• Fencing and Fences	NP
Public Safety	• Control of Public Nuisance	P
	• Fire Fighting	P
	• Municipal Public Transport (only with regard to taxis)	P
	• Traffic and Parking	P
	• Noise Pollution	P
	• Public Places	P
	• Licensing of Dogs	NP
	• Municipal Airports	NP
	• Pounds	P

Directorate	Powers from the Allocated Carried out	Performed (P)/ Not Performed(NP)
Planning and Human Settlement	• Municipal Parks and Recreation	P
	• Air Pollution	P
	• Building Regulations	P
	• Public Places	P
Technical and Infrastructure Development	• Municipal Public Works	P
	• Water	P
	• Sanitation	P
	• Street Lighting	P
	• Refuse Removal	P
	• Solid Waste disposal	P
	• Municipal Roads	P
	• Electricity Regulations	P
	• Storm Water	P
	• Fencing and Fences	NP
	• Municipal Airports	NP
Local Economic Development	• Local Tourism	P
	• Street Trading	P
	• Licensing and control of undertakings that sells food to the public	P
	• Control of Undertakings that sells Liquor to the Public	NP
	• Trading Regulations	P
	• Billboards and display of Adverts	P
	• Municipal Airports	NP
	• Local amenities	P
	• Markets	P
		NP
Office of the Municipal Manager	• Municipal Planning	P

The Rustenburg Local Municipality consists of two interlinked organisational streams; one providing Political Leadership and Governance, and the other performing Operational and Administrative functions.

3.1.2 POLITICAL LEADERSHIP AND GOVERNANCE STRUCTURES

After the 2016 local government elections, 89 councillors were elected to the Rustenburg Council. Of the 89, 45 were directly elected in the 45 wards across the municipality and the remainder were elected proportionally.

Table 4: Party-political representation of Councillors

Political Party	Number Councillors	Gender Distribution Male	Female
African Independent Congress	1	-	1
African National Congress	43	32	11
Botho Community Movement	1	1	-
Democratic Alliance	14	8	6
Economic Freedom Fighters	24	9	15
Forum 4 Service Delivery	4	3	1
Freedom Front+	1	1	-
United Democratic Movement	1	-	1
TOTAL	**89**	**54**	**35**

a) Speaker

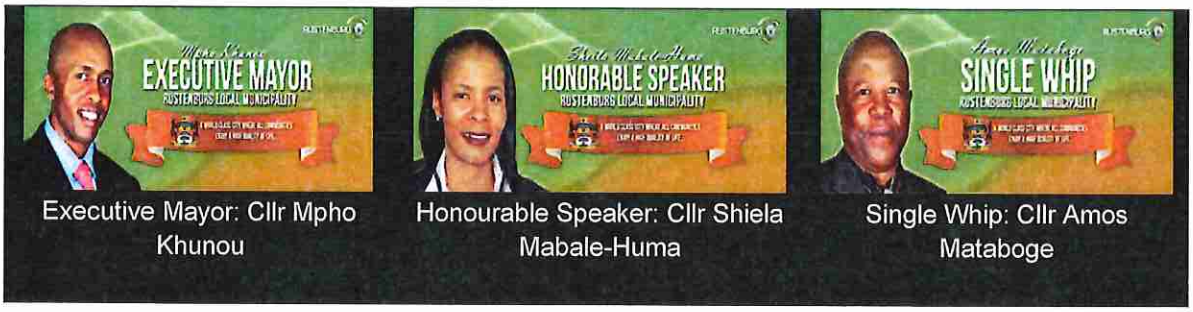
The Council elected the Speaker, **Cllr Shiela Mabale-Huma** in terms of section 36 of the Municipal Structures Act, Act 117 of 1998, to chair Council meetings and she is also responsible to capacitate Councillors and Ward Committees.

b) Executive Mayor

The municipality operates within an Executive Mayoral System under the leadership of Executive Mayor **Cllr. M E Khunou**, who was appointed as per section 55 of Municipal Structures Act, Act 117 of 1998.

c) Chief Whip

The Chief Whip **Cllr A.L Mataboge** was elected by Council per item 331(4) of 26 August 2016. He ensures proportional distribution of councilors to various committees of Council. He also maintains sound relations amongst the various political parties by attending to disputes and ensuring party discipline.



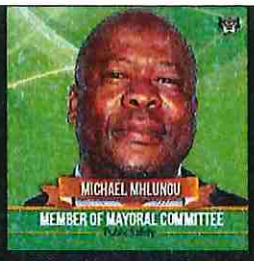
Executive Mayor: Cllr Mpho Khunou | Honourable Speaker: Cllr Shiela Mabale-Huma | Single Whip: Cllr Amos Mataboge

d) Mayoral Committee

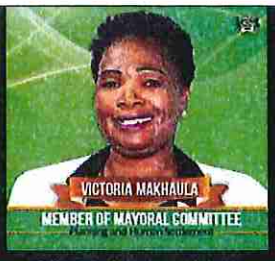
The Mayoral Committee consists of ten members, each of which heads a portfolio as listed below:

Section 80 Committees and Political Heads

Cllr Xatasi N
MMC Community Development



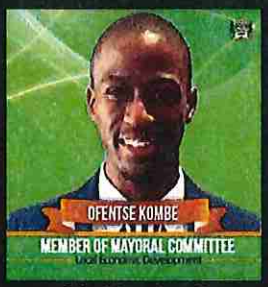
Cllr Mhlungu SBM
MMC Public Safety Services



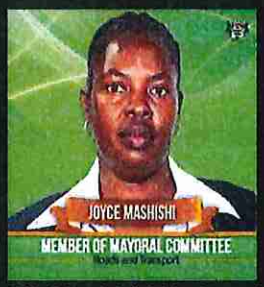
Cllr Makhaula V.N.
MMC Planning and Human Settlements

Cllr Molubi J
MMC Intergovernmental Relations, Youth, Women, Children and People living with Disability

Cllr Lekoro B
MMC: Budget & Treasury



Cllr Kombe O
MMC LED:



Cllr Mashishi-Ntsime J
MMC Roads & Transport

Cllr Babe N
MMC Corporate Support Services

Cllr Wolmarans S
MMC IDP, PMS & Legal

Cllr Kgaladi L
MMC Technical and Infrastructure Services

e) Council Committees

Council furthermore established the following committees in terms of Section 79 of Municipal Structures Act of 1998 to give political guidance and direction to the Municipal Council and specific technical issues:

- Performance Audit Committee;
- Local Labour Forum;
- Land Management Tribunal;
- Rules of Order Committee;
- Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC);
- Municipal Planning Tribunal;
- Risk Management Committee; and
- IDP/ Budget Steering Committee.

3.1.3 INTER-GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS

Proactive cooperation between all spheres of government is critical for efficient and effective service delivery. Each sphere of government has a role in development planning, prioritization and resource allocation, and management. The Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act (IGRFA) 2005 provides a framework for the cooperation among the three spheres of government.

The following intergovernmental structures exist in the RLM and Bojanala District:

a) District Intergovernmental Structures

Rustenburg Local Municipality is an active participant in the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality's Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) Forum through the following structures:

1. **Political IGR**: where mayors and other politicians discuss local and district service delivery issues of common interest, and challenges are resolved.
2. **Technical IGR**: Accounting officers and other senior managers meet on a quarterly basis to discuss progress on service delivery, barriers to policy implementation and how these could be escalated to the political forum for resolution.
3. **IDP Managers Forum**: These managers also meet on a quarterly basis to discuss progress in the implementation of each municipality's IDP and make recommendations to the Technical IGR for further processing.
4. **District IDP Forum**: The Bojanala District Municipality coordinates quarterly IGR meetings to discuss alignment of plans and projects implementation.

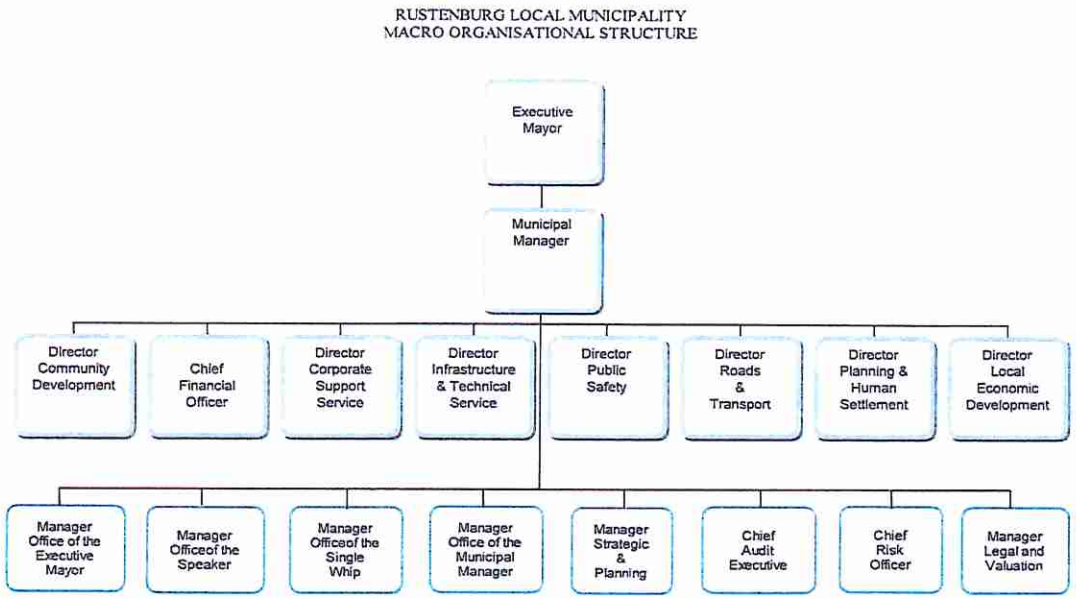
b) Provincial IDP Sectoral Engagements

A Provincial IDP engagement is conducted annually between the provincial sector departments and municipalities. The engagement provides a platform for provincial departments to provide feedback on the municipality's IDP and to ensure a coordinated and improved manner of projects implementation. The Provincial IDP engagement session addresses the challenge of how the three spheres of government can jointly respond to community issues (especially when communities during public consultation sessions raise issues that are not the competency of local government). The municipality uses the review process to address comments received from the provincial government during assessment of the IDP.

3.1.4 RUSTENBURG ADMINISTRATION AND OPERATIONAL GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

Diagram 7 overleaf depicts the macro organizational structure of the RLM. It is headed by the Municipal Manager which is appointed by Council in terms of Section 82 of the Municipal Structures Act. The Municipal Manager is the head of the Administration and Accounting Officer, and is supported by Line Function Directorates headed by Directors and Managers. The Municipal Manager together with her/ his team drives the implementation of the municipal strategy and its objectives as determined from the Powers, Duties and Functions assigned to it.

Diagram 7: Top Macro Organisational Structure of Rustenburg Local Municipality



3.1.5 WORKFORCE NUMBERS AND ALLOCATION

Table 11 summarizes the workforce totals and allocations to different directorates in the municipality as at 31st December 2018. As at 1st July 2018 the municipality budgeted for 206 vacant positions and was able to fill 69 posts by the 31st December 2018. The balance of 137 positions are planned to be filled by close of financial year 30 June 2019.

Table 5: RLM Workforce Totals on 2018/12/31

WORKFORCE TOTALS ON 2018/12/31			New structure	
Directorate	**Division**	**No of posts**	**No Employees**	**Vacancies**
Community Development	Director and Admin Support	6	4	2
	Community Facilities	590	262	328
	Libraries and Information Serv.	90	50	40
	Waste Management	316	164	152
	Integrated Environmental Mang	4	4	0
	Civil Facilities and Maintenance	33	29	4
	Sub-Total	**1039**	**513**	**526**
u Corporate Support Services	Director and Admin Support	5	4	1
	Human Resources	46	24	22
	Information Technology	26	11	15
	Admin Support Services	44	28	16
	Occupational Health and Safety	27	8	19
	Sub-Total	**148**	**75**	**73**
Infrastructure Service Services	Director and Admin Support	10	6	4
	Electrical Engineering	297	113	184
	Mechanical Engineering	72	36	36
	Water and Sanitation	500	162	338
	Sub-Total	**879**	**317**	**562**
Planning	Director and Admin Support	10	5	5
	Building Control and Regulations	16	11	5
	Development Planning	29	20	9
	Unit Housing	23	29	-6
	Estate Admin and Land Sales	15	7	8
	Sub-Total	**93**	**72**	**21**
Public Safety	Director and Admin Support	9	5	4
	Emergency and Disaster Mang.	325	60	265
	Licensing and Testing	107	63	44
	Traffic Services	362	97	265
	Law Enforcement	128	91	37
	Sub-Total	**931**	**316**	**615**
Budget and Treasury	CFO, Deputy CFO and Admin Sup	5	3	2
	Revenue and collection	87	31	56
	Billing	61	36	25

WORKFORCE TOTALS ON 2018/12/31			New structure	
Directorate	**Division**	**No of posts**	**No Employees**	**Vacancies**
	Financial Management	51	28	23
	Financial Control	23	16	7
	Intern National Treasury		8	
	Supply Chain Management	51	23	28
	Sub-Total	**278**	**145**	**133**
Local Economic Development	Director and Admin Support	3	2	1
	Rural Development	4	3	1
	Economic Research and Policy	5	4	1
	Enterprise Development	8	6	2
	Sub-Total	**20**	**15**	**5**
Office of the Municipal Manager	MM and Admin Support	10	7	3
	Strategy and Planning	9	4	5
	Project Management	25	9	16
	Legal and Valuation	10	6	4
	Auditing	8	6	2
	Risk Management	4	2	2
	Corporate Pool	3	0	3
	RCC Offices	39	21	18
	Customer Care	57	26	31
	Sub-Total	**165**	**81**	**84**
Rustenburg Roads and Transport	Director and Admin Support	10	4	6
	Roads and Storm water	228	173	55
	Intern RRT (3year contract)	10	0	10
	Sub-Total	**248**	**177**	**71**
Office of the Executive Mayor	Admin Support Services	14	11	3
	Mayoral Admin Officer	10	8	2
	Communication	5	5	0
	Intergovernmental Relations	3	3	0
	Special Projects	7	4	3
Office of Chief Whip	VIP Protection Services	4	2	2
	Monitoring and Evaluation	6	2	4
Office of the Speaker	Admin Support Services	9	2	7
	Sub-Total	**58**	**37**	**21**
	Sub-Total	22	12	10
	TOTAL	3904	1760	2144
According to the depiction above, the Municipal Vacancy Rate is at 55%. The Municipality is however progressively filling all the critical positions to enhance its capability to efficiently and effectively provide services to all communities within its jurisdiction, in pursuance of its long-term Developmental Vision.				

3.1.6 EMPLOYMENT EQUITY

The Municipality has approved an Employment Equity Plan during 2018 with intent to achieve proportional distribution of workforce in line with the Employment Equity Act 55 of 1998.

The table below represents the **current work distribution** by gender and race

Occupational Level	Male				Female						
	A	C	I	W	A	C	I	W	FN	PWD	TOTAL
TOP MANAGEMENT	4	0	0	0	5	1	0	0	0	0	10
SENIOR MANAGEMENT	37	0	1	3	21	1	0	0	0	0	63
MIDDLE MANAGEMENT	65	1	1	4	40	1	0	3	1	0	116
TOTAL	106	1	2	7	66	3	0	3	1	0	189

A: African
C: Coloured
I: Indian
FN: Foreign National
PWD: People Living with Disability
W: White

The table below represent the **ideal workforce distribution** in line with the Employment Equity plan approved by council.

Occupational Level	**Male**				**Female**						
	A	C	I	W	A	C	I	W	FN	PWD	TOTAL
TOP MANAGEMENT	4	1	0	1	3	1	0	1	0	0	11
SENIOR MANAGEMENT	24	3	1	4	21	3	1	3	0	1	61
MIDDLE MANAGEMENT	46	6	2	7	40	6	1	6	0	2	116
TOTAL	74	10	3	12	64	10	2	10	0	3	188

3.1.7 SKILLS DEVELOPMENT WITHIN RLM

The Rustenburg Local Municipality approved a Study Aid Policy to assist all permanent employees who wish to pursue part-time studies towards formal recognised tertiary qualifications.

The Municipality also complies with the Skills Development Act and Skills Development Levies Act by submitting the Workplace Skills Plan and Annual Training Report to LGSETA, and by paying a monthly skills levy of 1% of the salary bill to SARS. After compliance, RLM receives mandatory grants to be used for the implementation of the Skills Programmes and Discretionary Grants for implementation of learnerships Programme for both the employed and unemployed members of the community from LGSETA.

The Skills Development Strategy of the municipality links development of employees to employment equity and is focused on the following priory areas:

1. Infrastructure and Service delivery
2. Financial Viability
3. Community- based Participation and Planning
4. Management and Leadership
5. Adult Education and Training
6. Workplace Training Systems

The following Skills Programmes were implemented.

Table 6: Skills Programmes

TRAINING PROGRAMME	UNIT STANDARD	TRAINING PLANNED	DATE
1.Brick Laying	254055	15	04-08/12/2017
2. Project Management	119343	15	20-22/11/2017
3. Principle of Supervision	116380	15	29/11/-01/12/2017
4. Office Administration	123460	15	20-22/12/2017
5. Local Economic Dev Environment	110525	7	27-29/11/2017
6. End-User Computing	61591	15	27-28/11/2017
7. Customer Care	242901	15	04-06/12/2017
8. Asset Management	116362	15	27-29/11/2017
9. Ethics in Municipal Environment	116343	15	20-22/11/2017
10. Monitoring and Evaluation	336073	15	04-06/12/2017
11. Conflict Management	114226	15	04-06/12/2017
12. Basic Electricity	258967	15	04-08/12-2017
13. Basic Plumbing	119064	15	04-08-/12/2017

TRAINING PROGRAMME	UNIT STANDARD	TRAINING PLANNED	DATE
14. First Aid Level 1-2	12483	15	27-28/11/2017
15. First Aid Level 3	116534	15	29-30/11/2017
16. She Rep Training	12455 376981	110	20-21/11/2017
17. Prepare and Analyse Municipal Financial Reports	116363	15	22-24/11/2017
18. Legislative Regulatory Framework Governing the Public-Sector Management and Admirative Environment	119334	15	04-06/12/2017
TOTAL COST		**357**	

a) Implementation of Learnership Programmes

The RLM has claimed Discretionary Grants from LGSETA for the implementation of the following learnerships:

Table 7: Learning Intervention

Learning Intervention	Number of Employed	Number of Unemployed
National Certificate: Environmental Practice	20	20
Occupational Certificate: Plumbing	20	17
Horticulture	20	20
Water Reticulation	15	15
TOTAL 2017/18	**75**	**72**

b) Building of the Rustenburg City Training Academy

The Rustenburg City Training Academy aims to provide a broad, holistic and integrated theoretical and practical education in a relaxed, caring environment where an employee, a community member or learners are encouraged to develop a positive self-esteem, attitude and respect for others.

The Academy will give learners a wide range of work educational experiences towards the development of their skills, thereby building a strong foundation for the working environment in the organization.

The Academy will create an environment that encourages discipline, enthusiasm, creativity and innovation. It will be a Service Delivery Orientated Institution aiming at sensitising employees/learners on the importance of service delivery to the community. It will also offer structured learning through learnership programs, Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), Skills Programmes and Apprenticeships.

The total cost for the establishment of this institution is estimated at R25 million and scheduled for completion by 2021.

3.1.8 INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY ENHANCEMENT

Information and Communications Technology (ICT) has become a vital part of any organisation's capability. The defining character of modern times is the importance of gathering and dissemination of information, a phenomenon referred to as "Information Society" or the "Knowledge Age". What is seen is an unprecedented proliferation of ICT technologies to the point where all key processes of service delivery have information as a key core ingredient of execution. The rapidity and extensiveness of distribution of information as a key determinant of the effectiveness of organisations. This centrality of information calls for a strategic approach to the design and deployment of information systems in the RLM in order to achieve the following objectives:

- Improved customer relationship management
- Cost reduction
- Develop a high performance organisation
- Strategic use of business intelligence for decision support
- Effective and automated IT asset management system
- Creating a paperless environment (e-government)
- Enhance network security.

The following projects will be implemented as part of this strategy in the RLM:

- **Master Systems Plan and Enterprise Architecture:** Required to provide a long-term IT strategic plan for information systems and information technology. This will encompass the broadband strategy, IT governance framework, business continuity and disaster recovery plans and risk management.
- **Wireless network upgrade:** Municipal broadband wireless networks that allow access anywhere within the city allows employees who are traveling to meet with clients as they have access to company resources and email wherever they are, including connection to RCCs, waste management system and remote meter reading.
- **Office 365 Implementation:** Allows users to access their Microsoft office applications online
- **Smart City:** The Municipality, through internal capacity assessment, has identified key projects which, if successfully implemented, would help it realize its long-term objective of becoming a smart city resulting on increased revenue and reduction of operational expenditure

Scope of Projects

Safe City and Smart Building

The objective of the safe city is to enhance the safety of areas in the municipality by using intelligent video surveillance systems. The solution scope includes provision of the following services:

- CCTV surveillance cameras
- Intelligent command and dispatch
- Video Cloud and Video Analytics, including Facial recognition, Automatic Number Plate recognition, intelligent behaviour analytics to pro-actively prevent crime.
- Built-in video surveillance software that supports CCTV access, media scheduling, video storage, service management, storage management, device management, and system management on one integrated system.
- A video system that is compatible with surveillance video provided by multiple OEMs.
- An intelligent video surveillance system that is highly secured using AES256 to ensure video during transmitting is encrypted
- The CCTV sites installed in the city are compatible and adaptable to an integrated smart city deployment approach.

The objective of the smart building is improve buildings' energy whilst providing a safe, secure, controlled environment for RLM staff and customers. The smart building solution scope includes:

- CCTV surveillance cameras
- Video Surveillance
- Alarm System
- Access Control
- Attendance System
- Entry and Exist Control
- Parking System
- Visitor System
- Video Intercom

Intelligent Transport System

The objective of the intelligent transport system is to provide of an end to end integrated transport system offering the following services:

- Advanced Public Transport Management System (APTMS)
- Automatic Fare Collection (AFC)
- Passenger Information Systems and Display
- Operations and Maintenance support system

- Scheduling and Planning
- The solution is delivered with an integrated mobile app that could be used by the dispatcher in the terminal/depots to see the travelling schedule of each bus and dispatch on it. The mobile app should allow the dispatcher to perform functions such as add or delete trips.
- Issue a Co-branded open & closed loop VISA/MasterCard (or any card legal card association) universal card to Rustenburg Municipalities rate payers to be used for payments online, Rapid Bus Transport System and municipal services.
- Provide a capability to acquire all forms of payments transactions in line with the national payment system (NPS) regulations.
- Be a transaction acquirer across online, kiosk, ATMs and POS channels on municipalities assets
- Provide acquiring devices such as POS, contactless readers (Mifare, NFC etc.), Kiosk ATMs across all municipalities' access points and rapid bus transport systems.
- Introduce a hailing application (Uber like) to be rolled out in partnership with the transport industry and the RLM

Smart Payments Solution

The objective is to implement an integrated electronic payments capability across all the RLM acquiring channels. This includes:

- Development and deployment of an electronic bill presentment and payment engine enabling payments over ATM, 3rd Party channels, Kiosk, RLM mobile application.
- Deployment and development of kiosks, IVR (Interactive Voice Response), web portal and mobile application.
- Distribution of Electricity Vending Tokens generated by Electronic Connect's Smart Electricity vending system. Distribution of vending tokens will be across the RLM channels and 3rd party channels (e.g. Pick N Pay, Shoprite, EC distribution etc.)

Smart Applications

The objectives of smart applications is to digitise the RLM core business processes across multiple departments. This include deployment and development of the following services and application:

- Workforce management applications across all the RLM departments
- Consumer Response Management Solution
- Electronic Ticket fine issuing
- E-services to digitise all municipalities customer facing and internal processes

Network Services:

Network Services shall include private IOT network, Intelligent Operations Centre, Public Wi-Fi and Cloud Infrastructure.

The solution scope encompasses the deployment of a network to connect Rustenburg municipalities' devices and broadband infrastructure to connect all municipal building including the necessary IP network infrastructure. The network services scope includes the following:

- Application hosting of all operational and business support applications. This application includes but not limited to Email, ERP, CRM, Billing System.
- Physical and Virtual server hosting (on premise and cloud)
- Wide area network (WAN), including wireless and fixed connectivity to all municipality buildings
- LAN (including switches)
- IT security (firewalls and session boarder controllers)
- Voice (Fixed and Voice over IP)
- Internet (Local and international)

The funding model to deliver network services is funded by a combination of the RLM information technology and communication expenditure (discounted by 30% on the best available retail price) plus commercial revenue generated through street lights communication space rental and outdoor advertising on municipal infrastructure.

Smart Water

The objective of the Smart Water is to enhance billing accuracy and revenue collection through the implementation of the following services:

- Smart water metering with an integrated communication module to communicate with the RLM private IoT network to support residential, commercial and large water users.
- The water metering IoT module will support open loop power control to save power consumption.
- Deployment of full turnkey Advanced Water Metering Infrastructure (AMI) to support the following key functionality:
    - Real time metering
    - Water pipe network leakage management
    - Water load balancing
    - Pipe pressure monitoring
    - Pump station monitoring
    - Water quality monitoring
    - Sewage drainage monitoring
    - Intelligence to analyse measured data
    - Ability to perform hydrological data analysis
    - Support pro-active anti water stealing capability
    - Support online payments of water user
    - Support step-pricing

Smart Electricity

The objective of the Smart Electricity is to enhance billing accuracy and revenue collection through the implementation of the following services:

- Electricity water metering with an integrated communication module to communicate with the municipality private IoT network
- Deployment of full turnkey Advanced Metering Infrastructure (AMI) for electricity supporting the following minimum functionality:
    - Single Phase Smart Meters (Residential)
    - Three Phase Smart Meters (Light Commercial / Industrial)
    - Smart Meters for Large Power Users (LPUs)
    - Deployment of a system that support vending for STS prepayment meters in the same application.
    - Deployment of a system that support remote disconnection and re-connection of the meter load.
    - Deployment of a system support remote programming of meters
    - Deployment of a system that support deduction of fixed charges and /or debt recovery from credits applied.
    - Deployment of a system that has capacity to generate receipts and load STS tokens remotely.
    - Deployment of a system that must be able to manage remote disconnection and reconnection of customer's load.
    - Deployment of a system that will be able to query meter's data such as daily billing data, monthly billing data, load profile and energy consumption data.
    - The Smart meters provided will produce events and alarms and send them back to the operations office of Smart Prepayment system. The system must support the processing and management of events and alarms.
    - The system has the ability for an operator to monitor meter statuses i.e. tampered meters, online or offline meters etc., remotely.
    - The system is capable of sending time synchronization command to one specific meter as well as a batch of predefined meters and the time synchronization will be done automatically by the system at a predefined scheduled time.

Smart lighting

Smart lighting scope includes the designing, building, financing and commercialising the improvements on all existing streetlight systems including operating and maintenance of same. Electronic Connect Project Company will hand back the lighting system to the RLM at the end of the contract term. Electronic Connect will charge a fee per streetlight over 36 months, which includes the debt recovery

of the asset and service management. Additional revenues generated from MNO communication leasing and outdoor advertising will be used to cover the delivery of free / social Wi-Fi and contribution towards the debt recovery.

The following services will be commercialised during the contract period:

- Implementation of energy efficient LED street lighting. Savings realised from installation of efficient energy lighting will be used as anchor revenues to repay debt.
- Providing fixed (fibre) and wireless broadband to enable streaming of electronic billboards (outdoor advertising), Wi-Fi access points, installation of surveillance cameras and mobile network operator (MNO) communication equipment (4G & 5G).

Smart Parking

The objective of Smart Parking is to introduce an integrated, convenient, intelligent parking system that to assist the municipality by optimizing parking spaces in urban areas and collect parking revenue by making use of smart parking solutions.

The delivery model is based on the Electronic Connect project operating, maintaining and improving street parking meters in the RLM. The project company will have the right to collect and retain metered parking revenues and is compensated for the operation of metered parking spaces it operates and maintains on behalf of the RLM. The RLM retains responsibility for parking enforcement however the project company will issue parking tickets to assist the RLM in ticketing

3.1.9 POLICY FRAMEWORK, BY-LAWS AND SECTOR PLANS

The RLM has developed an extensive number of multi-sectoral policies, by-laws and sector plans over the years in order to enhance systems, processes and procedures.

Annexure A in this document comprises a list of such as well as the approval status thereof. There are, however, a number of policies that need to be compiled/ updated as determined from the RLM Strategic Planning Lekgotla held during March 2018. These include the following:

- Human Resources
- Record Keeping
- Standard Operating Procedures
- Preventative Maintenance
- Procurement Strategy/ Policy

MUNICIPAL FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Budget and Treasury Office, but collaboratively performed with all Directorates internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

3.2 BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE

The Budget and Treasury Office (BTO) of the Rustenburg Local Municipality is responsible for the financial management of the organisation as a whole. The mandate of BTO is to ensure that all directorates are provided with the resources to enable them to perform their functions. BTO is the face of the municipality to the public and it has to ensure that there are sufficient funds for all directorates to function properly.

In order to fulfil this mandate, BTO comprises the following five units each performing a specific function and which collectively seek to enhance the financial viability of the municipality:

- **Billing:** The billing unit is responsible for ensuring that the consumers of Rustenburg get billed for basic services, consumption, rates and taxes. This ensures that the municipality receives an income to deliver services to the community and run the administration of the municipality.
- **Financial Management:** The financial management unit is responsible for ensuring that the service providers of the municipality as well as its employees are paid. Financial management is also the custodian of the asset registers, investments, bank accounts and loans of the municipality.
- **Revenue:** The revenue unit is responsible for the collection of funds due to the municipality. This function includes the debt collection, credit control, client services and finalisation of accounts.
- **Supply Chain Management:** The supply chain management unit is responsible for ensuring that all goods and services procured by the municipality is in accordance with applicable legislations. The unit is also responsible for contract management including reporting on commitments and ensuring that new contracts are entered into to prevent irregular expenditure.
- **Budget and Reporting:** The budget and reporting unit is responsible for management of the municipality's budget, including the approved budget, virements and assisting with the adjustment budget. Reporting includes section 71 reports, section 72 reports, monthly and annual financial statements.

Municipality reviewed the organisational structure, which let to anticipated restructuring of the BTO to introduce the internal control function and expand the asset management function to cater for fleet management.

The following is a brief summary of the internal challenges experienced by the BTO which the Chief Financial Officer (CFO) is expected to address through a turnaround strategy:

- **BTO has a significant shortage of staff from lower levels up to senior management:** Various vacancies have been advertised. These positions should be filled with competent and motivated people. Positions of the Chief Financial Officer (CFO) is now filled and while the deputy CFO and two vacant unit manager positions will be filled by end of 201819 financial period to bring stability and accountability in the unit.
- **Adverse public perception of staff working in BTO.** The image of BTO staff is damaged and is in need of repair: Professionalism, social skills, human interaction etiquette, communication, Batho-Pele principles are a couple of examples of training and sessions that is required to ensure that staff is equipped with knowledge on how to work with clients.
- **Lack of communication and co-operation within the directorate:** The different units all work in silos.

The following have been identified as the major **operational issues** impacting on the financial sustainability of the Rustenburg Local Municipality:

- System and billing challenges
- Extensive deviations and section 32 appointments
- Lower cash flows (lack of reserves)
- Lack of technological advances within the directorate
- Inadequate budget monitoring.
- The quality of work from service providers
- Deteriorating debtors' collection rate
- Other directorates not being involved in the regularity audit
- Unrealistic budgets (Income) and excessive budgets (Expenditure) from other directorates which cannot be supported by the cash flow
- A lack of job descriptions which prevents performance management
- There is a lack of communication between BTO and other directorates

Free basic services:

- The municipality is keeping a register of all indigents. A total number of 3469 households have been registered on the indigents register. The current approach of letting persons walk in and register as indigents alone does not yield the necessary results. The number of the indigents registered has to justify the equitable share received from National Treasury. Other approaches have to be considered such as the segmentation of indigents and to embark on focus campaigns to have indigents register.

Critical Success Factors towards enhanced financial sustainability have been identified as follow:

- Competent and committed staff complement
- Increase in revenue base of the RLM (Income)
- Cost containment measures to curb spending on non-core services (Expenditure)
- Incurring of expenditure only in accordance with the approved budget
- Implement all phases and modules of the new financial system (MSCoA)
- Credit control will be intensified in order to improve cash flow
- Debt collectors will be monitored in order to improve cash flow and build up reserves.
- Short and Long term debt facilities considered for project funding in order to accelerate service delivery
- **Proposed Interventions: Medium term**

Unitization of debt collectors to collect long outstanding debts

- Capacitation of SCM unit
- **Proposed Interventions: Long term**
- Increase revenue base through introduction of catalytic projects
- Diversification of municipal revenue
- Automation of SCM processes

Risk Management: The Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003, section 62 (1) (c) (i) states that: "*the accounting Officer of the municipality is responsible for managing the financial administration of the municipality, and for this purpose take all responsible steps to ensure- that the municipality maintains an effective, efficient and transparent systems of financial and risk management and control*" for the achievement of the objectives of the municipality as contained in the IDP.

Municipality will strive to maintain effective risk management function through support of the existing structure and systems;

- Risk Management Committee properly constituted
- Annual review of the Risk Management Policy and Strategy
- Annual review of the Risk Management Implementation Plan and a Risk Committee Charter.

The municipality is in the process of developing a Fraud Prevention Strategy and Implementation Plan and conducting Fraud Risk Assessments to improve the management of risk and fraud in the municipality.

The following table presents a high-level summary of the top five (5) risks of the RLM.

Table 8: High Level Summary of the Top Five (5) Risks

No	Risk Description	Rating	IDP Priority	IDP Objective	Mitigation Strategies
1	Land grabbing	**25: Very High**	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure: **Planning**	1. To adopt a Rapid Land Release Strategy. 2. To Benchmark with other municipalities regarding land grabbing.
2	Backup Server not tested and is located within Rustenburg area	**25: Very High**	Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building	Develop and implement integrated internal systems and processes	1. To get the Disaster Recovery Plan approved 2. Relocation of backup server out of Rustenburg 3. To make funds available in the next financial year. 4. Servers technology: - Ensure all applications run on virtual servers. 5. Microsoft HyperV is the selected virtualization platform. 6. Standardize server builds and have snapshot backup regularly of all Virtual Machines using tape
3	Promis on a stand-alone server and running on a different Operating System (Linux)	**20: Very High**	Accelerate delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building (To promote Information Technology Governance)	1. Replacement of the Promis System 2. Ensure application integration 3. Implement business application framework
4	Non-payment of services by communities	**25: Very High**	Ensure municipal financial viability and management	Ensure municipal financial viability and management	1. To ensure Intervention by Councillors at Ward Level to encourage community members to pay for services. 2. To ensure that tariffs are cost reflective and affordable 3. Continuous awareness campaigns relating to culture of payment

No	Risk Description	Rating	IDP Priority	IDP Objective	Mitigation Strategies
5	Shortage of bulk water supply	**15: High**	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	4. To roll out pre-paid systems to other areas in the jurisdiction of the Rustenburg Local Municipality 1. Implementation of IMQS (Integrated Management Query System) a. Asset management b. Project control system c. Water Loss and Demand management 2. Installation of Prepaid meter reading. 3. Inter-dependency meetings with Planning directorate. 4. Encourage mines to use grey water for industrial usage.

SPATIAL ANALYSIS AND RATIONAL

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Directorate of Planning and Human Settlements, but collaboratively performed with DLED, DCD internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

3.3 PLANNING AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT

The mandate of the Directorate includes the following:

- Implementation of the RLM Spatial Development Framework
- Ensure compliance with the RLM Land Use Management Scheme (Monitoring of illegal land uses)
- Ensure compliance with the National Building Regulations
- Provision of sustainable human settlements
- Acquiring land for human settlements and disposal of non-functional municipal land

3.3.1 SPATIAL PLANNING

Land use and development planning and its relationship with the Land Use Management System in the RLM is guided by the Spatial Development Framework (SDF) and the Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS). The compilation and content of both these documents are guided by the provisions of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 2013 (SPLUMA), and the Municipal Systems Act (Chapter 5) identifies the SDF as one of the core components of a municipal Integrated Development Plan (IDP).

The main purpose of the SDF is to guide the form and location of the future physical development within a Municipal Area. The SDF should be flexible and be able to change its priorities, whereas the Land Use Management System (LUMS) should be tighter and only amended where required for a particular development. The SDF should inform the content of the LUMS, and does not act as a direct source of rights and control itself. In this regard, the SDF should:

- Act as a strategic, indicative and flexile forward planning tool to guide planning and decision on land development
- Develop a clear argument or approach for spatial development in the area of jurisdiction of the municipality
- Develop a spatial logic which guides private sector investments
- Ensure the social, economic and environmental sustainability of the area
- Establishment priorities for public sector development and investment
- Identify spatial development priorities and places.

The purpose of the SDF is not to infringe upon existing land use rights but to guide future land uses, and the maps should be used as a systematic representation of the desired spatial form to be achieved by the municipality.

Essentially it provides a tool which ensures development is sustainable. Proposals counteracts spatial problems and provides strategies for more desired land use patterns, direction of growth, special

development areas and areas which are to be conserved. The SDF is based on the vision of the municipal area, the development objectives and the strategies and outputs identified in the IDP.

3.3.2 RLM SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (2019)

The RLM Spatial Development Framework 2019 was compiled in line with Section 21 of SPLUMA as set out below:

21. *A municipal spatial development framework must—*
(a) give effect to the development principles and applicable norms and standards set out in Chapter 2;
(b) include a written and spatial representation of a five-year spatial development plan for the spatial form of the municipality;
(c) include a longer term spatial development vision statement for the municipal area which indicates a desired spatial growth and development pattern for the next 10 to 20 years;
(d) identify current and future significant structuring and restructuring elements of the spatial form of the municipality, including development corridors, activity spines and economic nodes where public and private investment will be prioritised and facilitated;
(e) include population growth estimates for the next five years;
(f) include estimates of the demand for housing units across different socioeconomic categories and the planned location and density of future housing developments;
(g) include estimates of economic activity and employment trends and locations in the municipal area for the next five years;
(h) identify, quantify and provide location requirements of engineering infrastructure and services provision for existing and future development needs for the next five years;
(i) identify the designated areas where a national or provincial inclusionary housing policy may be applicable;
(j) include a strategic assessment of the environmental pressures and opportunities within the municipal area, including the spatial location of environmental sensitivities, high potential agricultural land and coastal access strips, where applicable;
(k) identify the designation of areas in the municipality where incremental upgrading approaches to development and regulation will be applicable;
(l) ***identify the designation of areas in which—***
(i) ***more detailed local plans must be developed****; and*
(ii) ***shortened land use development procedures*** *may be applicable and* ***land use schemes may be so amended****;*
(m) provide the spatial expression of the coordination, alignment and integration of sectoral policies of all municipal departments;
(n) determine a capital expenditure framework for the municipality's development programmes, depicted spatially;

- *Give effect to the SPLUMA Development Principles including*
  - *i) Spatial Justice;*
  - *ii) Spatial Sustainability;*
  - *iii) Spatial Efficiency;*
  - *iv) Spatial Resilience; and*
  - *v) Good Administration.*

The 2019 RLM SDF Zones give spatial expression to the response to SDF guidelines and the concepts as described above. The development of the SDF Zones is based upon a matrix of criteria that have been developed in consultation with the client (refer to **Table 17 -see overleaf**).

The SDF spatial proposal consists of six zones, ie:

- Development Zone:
    - Core Area
    - Expansion Area
    - Mining Focus Area
- Environmental Protection Zone
- Mining Activity (outside of the Core Area)
- Agricultural Zone

The approach to the development of the SDF zones follows a spatial data processing methodology with all of the criteria being spatially referenced. The various input datasets represent the baseline of primary criteria such as the Environmental Management Framework, the economic analysis, agricultural potential analysis and future service areas (water and sanitation).

The differentiation of Zone 1 into a Core Area, Expansion Zone, and Mining Focus Area is based on the integration of the relevant input datasets and development of an aggregated weighting system to determine priority areas for development and investment. A further differentiation of Zone 1 into a Primary area is based on the indicative service areas for future water distribution and sewer drainage areas.

The GIS system is a key component of the SDF. Other than in the past where maps in the SDF document serve as the only spatial reference, the GIS that has been developed forms an integral part of the SDF product and should be used in conjunction with this report. This provides for the extraction of a multiple of queries, for example to single out all Zone 1 entities, as was done to determine the SDF Urban Edge.

Apart from the SDF zones as noted above, the RLM SDF 2019 also incorporated an urban edge, a settlement hierarchy, nodal hierarchy, and specialised activity areas which include business, high value added manufacturing, logistics, mining and tourism and conservation. Furthermore, it also addresses growth management and identified several development corridors in the municipal area as depicted on **Figure 5**.

Table 9: SDF Criteria

SDF ZONES		CRITERIA											DESCRIPTION	
		Economic Development Zone	RLM Cluster	EMF_AB	EMF_C	EMF_DE	EEC Weight	Future Water & Sanitation	Environ-mental Protection (EMF_FGH)	Existing Crop Fields	High Agric Potential	Urban Edge	Status	Uses allowed
ZONE 1	DEVELOPMENT ZONE													
	Core Area1	*	*	*			2	*	Override			*	Development & investment focus area within future Infrastructure Service Area	Housing, commercial & industrial
	Core Area2	*	*	*			2		Override			*	Development & investment focus area outside future Infrastructure Service Area	Housing, commercial & industrial
	Expansion Zone	*		*			1		Override			*	Future expansion & investment focus area	Housing, commercial & industrial
	Mining Focus	*	*		*				Override			*	Mining focus area inside the Core and the Expansion zone, with other mixed use where permitted	Mining, mixed use
ZONE 2	ENVIRONMNETAL PROTECTION								*				Environmental protection focus	
	Environmental protection								*				EMF (Zones F, G and H)	
ZONE 3	MINING ACTIVITY													
	Exclusive mining activity				*								Exclusive mining development	
ZONE 4	AGRICULTURAL ZONE					*								
	Protection zone									*			Existing agricultural fields	Primary agriculture
	Indicative High Agric Potential										*		Grazing and other agricultural activity	Agriculture, low intensity development

The 2019 RLM Spatial Development Framework also supports the priorities identified in the RLM Master Plan as listed below:

PRIORITY 1: Integrated Spatial Development Supported by the Required Bulk Infrastructure Development

- Promote a compact urban structure through urban infill and densification, specifically within the individual settlement clusters. Create a logical hierarchy of settlements to support effective service delivery
- Define an urban edge to contain urban sprawl
- Identify and strengthen gateways to Rustenburg through appropriate urban design, landscaping and development control
- Improve integration between social amenities, economic opportunities and places of residence;
- Increase residential densities in selected focus areas
- Improved connectivity with Gauteng City Region and surrounding municipalities.

PRIORITY 2: Accelerated and Shared Economic Growth Supported by Creation of Spatial Economic Opportunities

- Future urban development must take cognizance of the impact of existing and future mining operations and mining rights
- Development must be sensitive to the expected lifespan of large individual mining operations
- Integrate mining settlements within the greater Rustenburg urban structure to ensure its long term sustainability and visibility after mine or shaft closures
- Create a viable business node hierarchy linked to the proposed service delivery centres and business chambers.
- Identity and plan for the development of industrial/commercial areas linked to the Platinum SDI
- Identify and develop tourism nodes in line with the character of the surrounding environment
- Develop tourism in the Rustenburg Municipal Area as gateway facilities to the surrounding regional tourism destinations.

PRIORITY 3: Sustainable Use and Management of Natural Resources

- Protect ecologically sensitive natural areas
- Create an integrated municipal open space system, comprising of various habitats and ecological systems
- Only support urban development that is in line with the recommendations of the Rustenburg Environmental Management Framework (EMF).

PRIORITY 4: Integration of Land Use and Transport Development

- Develop transport infrastructure in accordance with the recommendations of the Rustenburg Integrated Transport Plan (ITP)
- Focus urban development along major public transportation routes to establish transport corridors
- Implement a reliable and affordable public transport system
- Align land use planning with the proposed Bus Rapid Transport System.

PRIORITY 5: Creation of Sustainable Settlement through Access to Appropriate Housing and Social Facilities

- Eradicate housing backlog and provide range of housing types
- Promote a greater mix of housing typologies by supporting the development of alternative housing typologies
- Locate new housing development within a rational urban structure and urban development boundary to ensure sustainable development
- Housing development must include the full range of community facilities to ensure viable and sustainable living environment
- Identity sufficient land for future housing development.

PRIORITY 6: Creation of Opportunities for Sustainable Rural Development

- Focus rural development around key rural settlement nodes
- Redirect the focus of rural settlement located close to water sources on intensive agriculture to lessen their dependence on the Rustenburg core area
- Strengthen rural centres as centres of service delivery
- Protect the intensive agricultural areas of Kroondal, Heldina, Boons and Boschhoek from urban development as far as possible
- Promote the development of agriculture at rural settlements located in proximity of major water sources as a primary income base for these rural settlements
- Promote the transfer of state owned farms into private or semi-private (co-ops) ownership to facilitate the development of these farms into commercial farming operations.

RLM SDF Priority Projects

The RLM SDF 2019 also confirmed the following priority projects to be initiated in the RLM area:

- **Project 1**: preparation of a detailed development plan, including road network hierarchy, for the Waterkloof/Waterval development areas south east of Rustenburg. During the SDF review process, it became clear that the individual developments are taking place in this area in an uncoordinated fashion and it is very difficult to plan a systematic road network hierarchy in this area.

- **Project 2**: the implementation of the detailed proposals for the Rustenburg core area will be dependent on a detailed traffic modeling study of the proposed Beyers Naude/Pres Mbeki one-way system as proposed in the Rustenburg integrated transport plan. The services capacities, and potential upgrading requirements associated with these land use proposals should also be analysed as part of this investigation prior to in-principle support for these proposals.
- **Project 3**: the implementation of the detailed proposals within Karlienpark, Tlhabane, Rustenburg North and Zinniaville will be dependent on the availability of services (water, electricity and sanitation) in the area. A service infrastructural study assessing the current capacity of services in these areas needs to be undertaken prior to densification being permitted.
- **Project 4**: the mixed land use precinct around the Waterfall node and N4 will form one of the primary commercial growth and development areas of Rustenburg in the future. It would be imperative to prepare a detailed precinct development plan for this mixed land use precinct in order to facilitate coordinated development and infrastructure investment.
- **Project 5**: the development of a mixed land use service delivery center in the Boitekong cluster remains a development priority. A detailed feasibility study is required to identify the most appropriate site for such development, the infrastructure and other development requirements associated therewith and identifying potential investors to support this initiative.
- **Project 6**: the proposed mining supply park is one of the anchor local economic development projects of the RLM. It is also identified as a priority project in the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy. The proposed location of this facility is identified in the spatial development framework proposals. A detailed feasibility study considering all relevant factors relating the implementation of this supply park should be completed as a matter of priority.
- **Projects 7**: a number of intensive urban agricultural focus areas have been identified in the local Spatial Development Framework. The feasibility of these areas should be investigated in more detail, taking cognisance of physical factors such as geology, soil conditions, availability of ground water, possibility of obtaining water for irrigation purposes and other relevant factors. Priority implementation areas should emanate from this investigation.
- **Projects 8**: the possibility of establishing a tertiary education facility in Rustenburg was under discussion for a period of time. A detailed feasibility analysis regarding the sustainability of such an initiative, as well as identifying a potential location thereof should be undertaken.
- **Projects 9**: the Rustenburg LM should develop, implement and maintain a GIS based land use information system to keep track of all development applications, and applications for land use changes within the municipal area. This system should be fully integrated with the day-to-day activities of the planning directorate and will significantly enhance the effectiveness and productivity of these functions within the municipality.

3.3.3 HUMAN SETTLEMENT

One of the most important aspects to be covered in the SDF is the designation of land areas for future human settlement (housing) purposes (refer to section (f), (i) and (k) of SPLUMA above.

According to the RLM Housing Sector Plan (2019) there is general consensus that the uncontrolled proliferation of informal settlements is one of the biggest risks in terms of the long-term sustainability of the Rustenburg municipality. At present there are 24 informal settlements located in the RLM as listed in **Table 18** and **Figure 6** below, representing a housing backlog of about 92 506 units:

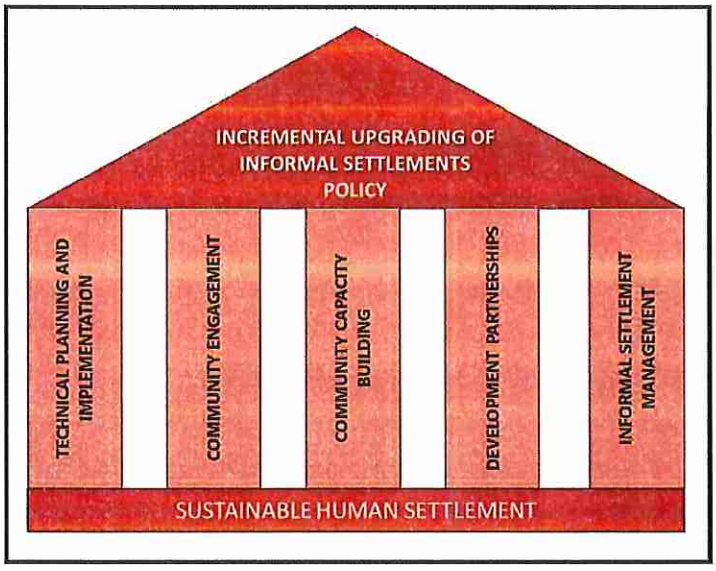
Table 10: Information Pertaining Informal Settlements

	Informal Settlement	Land Description	Areas in ha	Land Owner
1	Yizo Yizo(Tlhabane)	Industrial Area of Tlhabane	12,09	RBA
2	Ramochana (Rustenburg 13)	Rustenburg Town and Town lands 272 JQ	18,82	RLM
3	Mbeki Sun	Portion 45 of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ	30,43	RLM/Private
4	Zakhele	Klipgat 281 JQ	47,46	RBA
5	Mmaditlhokwa	Kafferskraal 342 JQ	30,66	Various private owners
6	Nkaneng	Portion 2 of the farm Klipfontein 300 JQ	124,50	RBA
7	Ikageng	Boschpoort 284 JQ	25,14	Unknown
8	Yizo Yizo (Boitekong Extension 8)	Portion 13 of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ	12,73	Private owned
9	Plot 14	Portion 71 of the farm Paardekraal 279 JQ	16,0	Private owned
10	Ikemeleng	Kroondal 304 JQ	132	Impala Platinum Mine & RBA
11	Freedom Park	Reinkoyalskraal 278 JQ	117	Impala Platinum Mine & RBA
12	Boitekong 13 Informal	Portion 3 of the farm Reinkoyalskraal 278 JQ	17	RBA
13	Popo Molefe	Paardekraal 279 JQ	56	RLM/Private
14	Stormhuis	Rooikoppies Ptn 86/297 JQ	8,15	Private owned
15	Sporong South	Rooikoppies Ptn 86/297 JQ	2,01	Private owned
16	Sporong North	Rooikoppies Ptn 86/297 JQ	3,37	Private owned
17	Jabula & Donosa	Rustenburg Town and Town lands 272 JQ	5,16	RLM
18	Chachalaza - Motlhabeng	Reinkoyalskraal 278 JQ	18,15	RBA
19	Mshenguville	Reinkoyalskraal 278 JQ	6,17	RBA
20	Phuane	Kroondal 304 JQ	9,46	Unknown
21	Group Five	Rooikoppies Ptn 26/297 JQ	9,94	Private owned
22	Brampies	Rooikoppies 297 JQ	11,12	Unknown
23	Skierlik	Rooikoppies Ptn 85/297 JQ	13	Municipality
24	Tshilong	Kafferskraal 342 JQ	4	Various Private Owners

This requires an interventionist approach to manage and address the incremental upgrading of informal settlements in the municipal area. This should be done in terms of an Informal Settlement Upgrading Policy for the municipality which is aligned to the directives contained in the National Development Plan and the Upgrading of Informal Settlements Programme of the National Housing Code. The policy should be based on the following key components (also refer to **Diagram 8**).

- **Technical Planning and Implementation:** To facilitate technical planning and implementation processes aimed at incremental upgrading of informal settlements in all parts of the municipality.
- **Community Engagement:** To ensure that all technical planning and implementation processes are conducted through processes of participatory planning with local communities.
- **Community Capacity Building:** To ensure that communities are sufficiently capacitated to participate meaningfully in all planning and implementation processes.
- **Development Partnerships:** To focus on the establishment of development partnerships with local stakeholders, NGO's, government departments and mining houses towards the incremental upgrading of informal settlements.
- **Informal Settlement Management:** To improve management of existing informal settlements through Upgrading Plans and Informal Settlement Monitoring Systems, and to pre-actively plan for future informal settlement demand by way of greenfields development (re-active vs pre-active management).

Diagram 8: Rustenburg Informal Settlement Upgrading Policy



HOUSING IMPLEMENTATION STRATEGIES

According to the RLM **Housing Sector Plan (2019)** the following strategies are meant to give effect to settlement and housing development intended for RLM.

Implementation Strategy 1: Accreditation of RLM

Action

RLM accreditation at Level 2 permits full authority to prepare, manage and implement its housing sector plan as approved in May 2013 by the National Minister of Human Settlement and confirmed by province on 16 June 2013 and yet the municipality may not perform the function as it is awaiting signing of the protocol by the province. RLM should pursue the signing of the protocol as a matter of urgency to enable them to implement the housing programme.

Failure to sign protocols inhibits RLM from developing and implementing a comprehensive housing programme as it is not authorized to source housing capital and therefor unable to support the provisions of the SDF to develop sustainable human settlements at well located strategic areas. This adds to shortage of a comprehensive housing package and affects the economy of the area as well as the intended inhabitants.

Furthermore, the municipality has established a credible team of paid officials to prepare and implement requisite housing development programmes. If protocols are not signed the municipality is unable to derive its objective of providing a sustainable housing programme in terms of its mandate.

Implementation Strategy 2: Housing Sector Planning

Action

Finalize a credible housing sector plan based on the following:

- Sound spatial planning and adoption of a single land use scheme;
- Sound data and data analysis;
- In-depth understanding of informal settlements and evidence on the upgrading approach/programme;
- Integration with other municipal, provincial and national frameworks and plans;
- Promotion of integrated spatial and socio economic development in compliance with SPLUMA;
- Demonstration of clarity relating to national housing programmes that are demand responsive and appropriate implementation agents;
- Evidence of measures taken to ensure achievement of human settlement outcomes, goals and targets informed by the following:
    - Identification and designation of appropriately located land for human settlements and acquisition of in collaboration with Housing Development Agency (HDA);

  - Ensuring access to basic services, health facilities, safety and security and government service centers;
  - Ensuring development of a range of housing typologies and different forms of tenure.
- A capital investment framework with clear budget linkages to the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) for the Human Settlement Development Grant (HSDG) and related funding;
- Intergovernmental and cross sectoral engagement and aligning during the formulation of the housing sector plan;
- Mechanisms to improve implementation and monitoring of outputs and outcomes;
- Adoption of the Human Settlements Plan (HSP) by council as part of the IDP and budget.

Implementation Strategy 3: Housing Management and Oversight

Action

Demonstrate good governance through:

- Regular executive and Council meetings;
- Compliance with legislation in terms of executive legislative and administrative roles;
- Response to community needs through well-functioning ward committees;
- Approved system of delegations;
- Appointment of senior management in compliance with legislated skills requirement;
- Senior management performance contracts, well-functioning internal audit capacity use
- Results of internal and external performance management assessments
- Compliance with legislated municipal performance reporting.

Implementation Strategy 4: Programme and Project Planning Development and Management

Action

- Identify and develop programmes;
- Identify and evaluate projects;
- Identify appropriately located land parcels;
- Undertake land acquisition, assembly and rehabilitation;
- Design and budget for projects;
- Select and approve projects and budgets;
- Register projects with National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC);
- Undertake transparent and efficient procurement;
- Undertake appropriate site layout;
- Promote human settlements through designating land for social and economic activities;
- Manage projects and contract management;
- Enforce technical quality control;

- Plan and implement catalytic projects;

Implementation Strategy 5: Beneficiary Management

Action

- Operate the Housing Subsidy System (HSS);
- Interface with the community and beneficiaries;
- Link to the national housing need demand database;
- Allocate subsidy fairly and transparently;
- Process title deeds and Permission to Occupy (PTOs);
- Enter into lease agreements.

Implementation Strategy 6: Subsidy Budget, Planning and Allocation

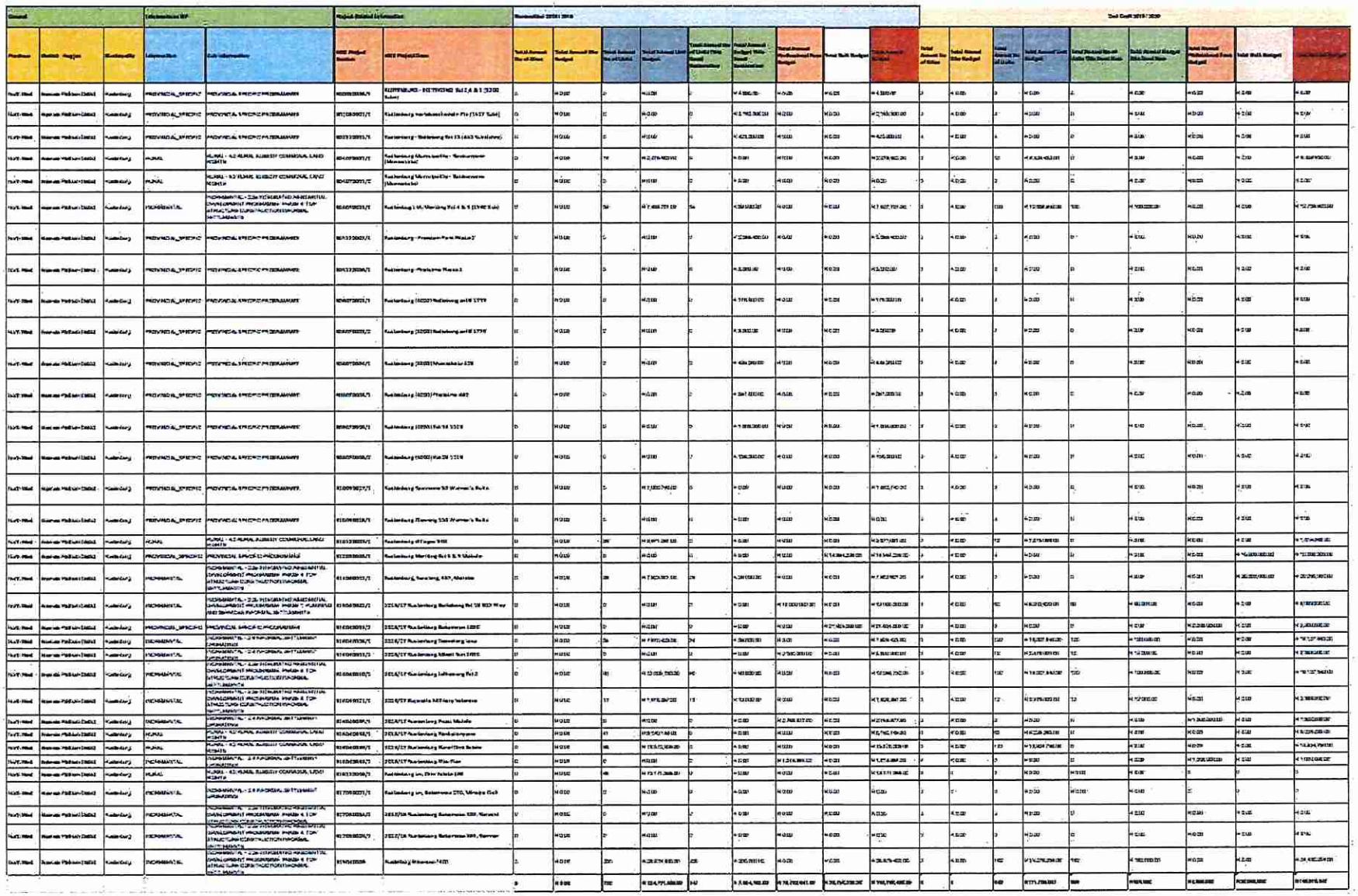
Action

- Operate a legally compliant management system;
- Delivery a positive audit outcome;
- Respond to internal and Auditor General (AG) audit queries;
- Comply with financial reporting in terms of Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and Division of Revenue Act (DoRA);
- Produce and adopt annual reports;
- Prepare a capital investment framework;
- Prepare a programme and budget and cash flow projections;
- Manage cash flow and expenditure;
- Undertake revenue and management;
- Management of grants.

IMPLEMENTATION PROGRAM

The following must be implemented according to the 2019 RLM Housing Sector Plan:

a) North West Housing Project Pipeline in RLM Up To the Year 2020



b) Omitted Projects

The following projects excluded from the current project pipeline be included in the current project pipeline in **Table 19** above:

Table 11: Projects to be included in project pipeline

	Sub-Programme	Project Number	Project Description
1.2 Housing (FLISP)-(R3,501 - R7,000)	B16040019/1	2016/17 Marikana Ext 2 Flisp	100
2.2b IRDP:Phase 1:Planning and Services IS	B16040018/1	2016/17 Marikana (7000-als Properties)	690
2.2b IRDP:Phase 1:Planning and Services IS	B16040022/1	2016/17 Mmadithokwa-1500	250
2.2e IRDP:Phase 4:Top Structure Construction (IS)	B170400	2017/18 Lethabong Ext 3 & 4	1,800
3.2b SH:Capital Grants for rental housing (Funded by NDoH)	B16040040/1	2016/17 Rustenburg Social Housing-2000	250

c) **Signing of the Protocol**

RLM should, as a matter of urgency re approach the North West Department of Local Government and Human Settlements to sign the protocol to enable RLM to be fully responsible for housing development.

d) **Implementation of the Housing Strategy**

RLM should soon after the signature of the protocol implement the housing strategy detailed in 8 above.

e) **Update the Housing Programme Annually**

RLM should annually update its housing programme to ensure its inclusion in the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) of the province.

f) **Identification of Housing Projects and Settlements**

RLM should desist from identifying housing settlement based on wards. Instead they should comply with the provisions of SPLUMA indicated in 6.4.3. (a)(b)(c)(d) and (e) above.

g) **Inclusion of the Housing Programme into Municipal IDP**

All projects identified as part of the housing sector plan must be included in the RLM IDP to ensure their implementation.

h) **Review of Informal Settlement Programme**

RLM should review the advisability of implementing the settlement programme identified in 2008.

Rental Stock Disposal: Amberboom Houses
Item 176 of the Council resolution of the 31st July 2018 and Item 220 of the Council resolution of the 25th September 2018 resolved on the disposal of the Amberboom rental housing stock. The resolutions indicated that the houses will be transferred to the those currently occupying the houses, as per the conditions stated on Item 176 of the Council resolution of the 31st July 2018. The category R0 – R7500, will get the houses for free, the R7501 – R15 000 will get 50% discount on the market value price; while the R15 001 and above income category will buy the houses at the full market valuation price (based on the valuation done by the Municipal Valuer).

Land Donation: Rustenburg Platinum Mine
The following portions of land were donated to the Municipality by Rustenburg Platinum Mine:
1. Portion of Portion 50 Paardekraal 279 JQ, Portion 197 Paardekraal 279 JQ (measuring 59.8 hectares)
The portion of land has been used to accommodate the residents of two informal settlements – Chachalaza 14 and Plot 14. Chachalaca 14 informal settlements, who were and are currently residing on Royal Bafokeng Administration land. RBA had gone to court and gotten an interim eviction order to have the residents evicted from the land. The Municipality has also accommodated the residents of the Plot 14 - Portion 67 Paardekraal 279 JQ, which is on privately owned land. The process of accommodating the residents on the portion of land has not been concluded but there are residents currently residing at Portion of Portion 50.
2. Remaining Extent of 26 Paardekraal 279 JQ (measuring 101 hectares) and Portion 109 Paadekraal 279 JQ (measuring 81,3 hectares)
These will be used for formalisation of Popo Molefe and Mbeki Sun informal settlements, although the donated portions are covering the land on which Popo Molefe Informal Settlement is. This is part of the Municipal programme of acquiring key portion of land to allow for the formalisation of the particular informal settlements. In that way be able to give residents security of tenure and access to acceptable service delivery standard. There are also key strategic parcels of land, on which the two informal settlements are located on, that are privately owned. The Municipality is in negotiation with the two owners who own, the key strategic parcels of land in the Popo Molefe and Mbeki Sun informal settlements. The municipality is further waiting for funding from HDA and/or the Provincial Government responsible for human settlements, to acquire those portions of land. Once the land has been acquired, formalization of the settlement will take place. It is the Directorate/Municipality's intent to ensure that the settlements that are planned will offer choice/options to residents, as well as give them access to uses, that contribute to the creation of an integrated human settlement

LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND JOB CREATION

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Directorate of Local Economic Development (LED), but collaboratively performed with all Directorates internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

3.4 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

3.4.1 MANDATE AND PURPOSE OF THE LED DIRECTORATE

The mandate of Local Economic Development Directorate is to lead, promote and facilitate economic growth and development, and economic transformation within the Rustenburg Local Municipality.

In terms of the National Development Plan (NDP), LED primary alignment to the NDP is through **Chapter 3: Economy and Employment** where the vision is to achieve full employment, and decent and sustainable livelihoods.

Five (5) strategic goals have been developed to enable the LED to effectively focus and prioritize in delivering on its mandate and strategic priorities:

1. Policy coherence and economic intelligence to drive socio-economic transformation and a world class local economy.
2. An enabling and conducive business environment to enhance RLM competitiveness as a destination of choice for tourism, investment and trade.
3. Accelerated and shared economic growth through skills development and enterprise development to promote an entrepreneurial culture that will contribute towards improving the livelihoods of the RLM communities.
4. Good cooperative governance that promotes public private partnerships in support of the socio-economic development programme of RLM.

These goals are to be achieved by focusing on the following strategic objectives:

- Develop vibrant and diversified world class local economy through high-value adding economic sectors
- Support Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment through the development of sustainable small medium and micro enterprises
- Create a conducive local business environment that supports rural economic development
- Establish and maintain strong stakeholder relations and public private partnerships with local industries in support of local economic development programmes

LED plays a central role in fighting the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment by striving to stimulate economic growth, development and transformation. In this case, LED is striving to develop Rustenburg local economy into a diversified and vibrant world class economy.

In partnership with all key role players, LED promotes and facilitates industrial development, enterprise development, skills development, economic transformation and poverty alleviation directed at five (5) focus areas:

- Enterprise Development
- Rural Development
- Economic Skills and Capacity Development
- Industrial Development and Investment Facilitation
- Knowledge Management

3.4.2 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES

The following sub-section provides an overview of the opportunities identified within the RLM. The opportunities are identified within their ability to develop the economy of the local municipality and improve the socio-economic conditions of residents within the municipality.

a) Agriculture

Table 20 presents the potential opportunities to develop the agricultural sector within the Rustenburg LM. The opportunities presented in Table 10 relate to the agricultural products and support required for agricultural development. Agro-processing opportunities are classified as manufacturing activities, thus whilst a number of agro-processing projects have been identified in this section it is included under the Manufacturing sector.

Table 12: Agricultural potential for the Rustenburg LM

Products	
• Diary outsourcing scheme	• Broiler outsourcing scheme
• Livestock production (cattle, goats and poultry)	• Aloe, rosemary and lavender production
• Small-scale production (livestock, vegetables, diary)	• Marula production
• Increased exports of citrus fruit and vegetables	• Bee-keeping
• Tobacco (Malawi, Mozambique and Tanzania)	• Spices
• Production of soya, maize and sunflower (specified areas)	• Poultry
• Large scale diary production	• Oranges
• Large scale broiler production	•
Support for Agricultural Development	
• Support for the informal/emerging farmers	• Urban agriculture
• Agricultural support centre	• Research and development
• Information dissemination	• Export promotion
• Memorandum of understanding between tribal authorities and Rustenburg LM	• Agri-skills succession plan

b) Mining

The mining opportunities listed in **Table 21**, do not include every single project identified in the Rustenburg LED. This is due to the fact that whilst these projects are mining related, they are categorised according to the specific economic sectors such as manufacturing and will thus be indicated under those economic sectors.

Table 13: Summary of opportunities identified for the mining sector

Opportunities identified for the mining sector
• Mining waste beneficiation (SMME's)
• Marketing and support for smaller mines
• Small-scale mining of construction related minerals
• Opportunities for greater support from mines involved in the reviewing of SLP's
• Establish partnership with Mintek to assist SMME's with innovative uses of existing minerals
• Establish Platinum Excellence Centre/form partnerships with existing research institutions
• Recycling/Rehabilitation of mines
• Facilitate the potential partnership between Impala and Xstrata to establish business support centres that do not result in the duplication of services
• Improve relationships with the mines

c) Manufacturing

The following manufacturing related opportunities have been identified within the Rustenburg LM:

Table 14: Summary of identified opportunities for the manufacturing sector

Opportunity	Description
Production of tools Establish a stainless-Steel Manufacturing Plant Recycling project Manufacturing of solar photovoltaic cells and solar water heaters Manufacturing of mining related inputs Manufacturing of white goods Auto-catalyst and diesel filter Attraction of fuel cell producers	Increased exports to SADC countries: o Agro-processing • Soya-bean oil (Mauritius, Malawi, Mozambique, Zambia and Botswana) • Tobacco (Malawi, Mozambique and Tanzania) • Cheese (Mauritius) • Meat (Mauritius) • Milk and cream powder (Mozambique, Botswana and Tanzania) • Vegetable fats and oils (Zambia and Tanzania) • Poultry (Lesotho) • Sunflower seed and sunflower oil (Mauritius and Mozambique) • Sausages (Mauritius) • Spices (Botswana) o Other manufactured products: • semi-product of iron/non-alloy steel, grinding balls for grinding mills, other articles of iron/steel, table kitchen articles off steel (Mauritius, Lesotho, Tanzania and Zambia) • Imitation jewelry (Mauritius) • Pipes, line, tubes from iron/steel (Mozambique and Botswana) • Iron and non-alloy steel primary forms or semi-products (Lesotho and Botswana) • Ceramic tableware, kitchen and bathroom sanitary ware (Lesotho, Mauritius) • Screws and bolts (Mauritius, Zambia and Mozambique) • Cooking appliances (Mauritius) • Locks (Mauritius) • Doors, windows and Frames (Botswana) • Hand tools (Mauritius)
Agro-processing • Flavouring extracts • Products within the chemicals, plastic and rubber industry • Animal fats • Cash crops	Import substitution • Balls, iron/steel, forged/stamped and cast for grinding mills that are used by the mining industry in order to extract PGM's. • Buttons • Plastic ware • Optical fibres, except for telecommunications

Opportunity	Description
• Essential oils • Citrus medication	• Porcelain • Products of stainless steel (including stainless steel cutlery, pipe fittings, cold rolled stainless steel, flanges, threaded elbows, bends and sleeves, table/kitchen articles, parts, stainless steel) • Television cameras, digital cameras and video camera recorders • Tools for drilling, bolts, screws, washers, other articles of steel, screwdriver bits and other interchangeable tools • Tools for working in the hand, pneumatic, hydraulic or with self-contained non-electric moto - with self-contained electric motor • Products of synthetic textile material • Rubber surgical gloves and syringes • Transmission apparatus for radio and TV's • Parts of taps, cocks, valves or similar appliances • Gloves other than surgical, of rubber • Vanadium oxides and hydroxides • Injection-moulding machines for rubber or plastic • Metal sawing or cutting-off machines
General increase in exports • Further preparation of raw hide • tobacco in a processed form • Alcoholic liquors • Juices • Dried egg yolk	

d) Utilities

Renewable energy generation (solar technologies and municipal waste) has been identified as a potential opportunity in the utilities sector for the local municipality.

e) Trade

The following opportunities have been identified for the trade sector within the Rustenburg LM:

- Business Retention and Expansion and crime reduction
- Retail facilities in rural area (utilising a franchise type model)
- SMME Development
- Mitigate challenges associated with the mining supply park.

f) Transport, Storage and Communication

The key opportunities identified for the transport, storage and communication sector for the Rustenburg LM include:

- Investigate the opportunity of free wireless internet in certain hotspots
- Recycle old computers
- Facilitating increased exports through partnerships with neighboring airports.

g) Finance

The opportunities identified for the finance sector in the Rustenburg LM are as follow:

- Create awareness regarding existing financial support and criteria that needs to be met
- Encouraging banks to locate within the local municipal area.

h) Community and Personal Services

The main opportunities identified for the Community and Personal Services sector is:

- Establishment of tertiary institutions;
- Provide services to the mines
- Partner with existing CSR initiatives.

i) General Government Services

The main opportunities identified for the general government services within the local municipality are listed as follows:

Table 15: Summary of Projects Identified for the General Government Services Sector

Project
• Improve public opinion on the government services
• Improve stakeholder access to information
• Use of technology to improve communication between stakeholders
• Improve inefficient labour market
• Mindset change
• Mentoring and volunteering by skilled personnel
• Skills development Programme

j) Tourism

Table 24 summarises the opportunities that have been identified based on the analysis of the tourism sector.

Table 16: Opportunities

Project
• Investigate the feasibility of routes and anchor projects identified previously
• Promote and support arts and culture
• Establish franchise programme
• Convention centre
• Improve information dissemination
• Recreational Park
• Tap into domestic market
• Develop breakaway packages
• Expand Rustenburg Show
• Establish tourism facilities along the N4
• Assist in grading tourism facilities
• Increase prominence of mining tours
• Decrease regulatory constraints on tourism development where possible
• Venues for events
• Marketing and promoting real villages as tourism attractions
• Cities of the world
• Museum (mining and natural science
• Old buildings (e.g. old police station) as monuments
• Optimise usage of stadiums

3.4.3 FIVE YEAR IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The following is a list of LED-Spatial Planning Projects to be implemented over the next five years, as well as a summary of progress made to date:

STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA	PLANNED TARGETS	PROGRESS TO DATE
Rustenburg Gateway Precinct - African Convention Centre & Hotel	Land acquisition / availability and investment promotion	Council resolution for a 5ha land at Civic Centre for a convention centre and a hotel.
Rustenburg Gateway Precinct Trade and Investment Promotions Development Centre	Trade and investment promotional products identified and ring-fenced	LED one-stop-office for implementation of catalytic projects and enterprise development: office refurbishment underway in partnership with ABSA and Sibanye Mine. To be completed during 2019
Rustenburg Gateway Precinct – Flea Market	Construction of flea market	Flea market construction underway at the Visitors Information Centre to be completed and operational during 2019

STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA	PLANNED TARGETS	PROGRESS TO DATE
Rustenburg Gateway Precinct – Rustenburg Showgrounds	Public participation and expression of interest	Potential Investor identified through the RFP process for the Revitalisation of the Rustenburg showgrounds – Project at contractual stage for the long-term lease proposal.
Industrial Park (SEZ) including Fresh Produce Market and Aerodrome	Proclamation, re-zoning and investment promotion	Township Establishment underway for the development of the Waterval Industrial Park
CBD Regeneration and Precinct Plans	Final plans with National Treasury	Rustenburg ext.30 development approved and is expected to commence construction during 2019
Education Hub – University of Technology & Centre of Excellence in Mining	Land availability, investment promotion and recruitment of higher learning institution	Council resolution for the Municipality to explore the feasibility of a university precinct. Request for proposals issued to attract potential investors.
Medical Hub	Land availability and investment promotion	Medical hub promoted as part of the catalytic projects promotion campaign done through various platforms including promotional articles on business publications.
Theme Park	Land availability and investment promotion	Royal Bafokeng Platinum engaging with stakeholders and RLM exploring possible partnerships for a theme park development with other tourist attraction activities.
Masterplan Committees	Council approval for committee set-up, Set-up working committees	Masterplan Sub-committee on planning and LED established
Packaged Projects	Feasibility studies and bankable business plans for 6 projects	Catalytic projects promoted through various platforms including promotional articles on business publications
Stakeholder Mobilization	Masterplan campaign	Done as part of the investment promotion campaigns and other stakeholder engagement activities
Investment Summit	Development of concept, funding and hosting of summit	Rustenburg Investment seminar / summit planned as part of ongoing investment campaigns – Rustenburg Investment Business Breakfast, SA Investment Breakfast, and Manufacturing Indaba identified as potential platforms for RLM participation during 2019
Annual Review of Investment Incentives	Annual review of investment incentives	Draft incentive policy guidelines developed and public participation done.
Exhibitions, Inward & Outward trade Missions	Collate calendar of events for exhibitions, including inward & outward missions	Rustenburg Investment seminar / summit planned as part of ongoing investment campaigns – Rustenburg Investment Business Breakfast, SA Investment Breakfast, and Manufacturing Indaba

STRATEGIC GOAL AND FOCUS AREA	PLANNED TARGETS	PROGRESS TO DATE
		identified as potential platforms for RLM participation during 2019
Market Development for SMMEs (links to masterplan projects)	Identification and packaging of market opportunities from the municipality and the mines	Panel of local contractors with CIDB 1-4 established. Signed MOA with ABSA and collaboration with Sibanye and Rhovan mines for general enterprise development support for local SMMEs and Cooperatives.
Identification and Profiling of SMMEs	Acquire SMME database and register SMMEs and job seekers across all wards	SMME Portal developed, to be activated as part of the one-stop-office for enterprise development – www.rustenburgbusinessconnect.co.za
Number of SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions	200	Directorate conducting enterprise day and cooperatives development workshops across all Wards. Collaboration with key stakeholders for local SMMEs to access support.
Number of jobs created through SMME & Cooperatives development, tourism, agriculture, industrial, and, infrastructure projects	500	LED and other Directorates capital projects identified to create job opportunities.
City Branding	Finalise city branding and link to masterplan	Need to secure budget to develop and implement city branding.
Agriculture and Agro-processing	Ensure participation in Agri-Parks and launch Marikana Agri-Hub	Agriculture Development Support Programme approved by Council during 2018. Local SMMEs, Cooperatives and interested community members have been made aware of the support programme which is implemented in collaboration with other stakeholders including the Bojanala District Municipality, Rhovan mine, Sibanye mine and other interested private sector stakeholders

BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

Functions performed under this KPA are led by the Directorate of Technical Services and Infrastructure (DTIS), but collaborately performed with RRT, DCD and DPS internally and other Social Partners of the Municipality externally.

3.5 TECHNICAL AND INFRASTRUCTURE SERVICES

In general, it should be stated that the following four Strategies need to be put in place to facilitate continued provision of water, sanitation, and electricity in the RLM area.

i) Lifecycle Management

Further work is required in this area to finalize a definitive inventory of Infrastructure Assets.

ii) Operation and Maintenance Strategy

The operating and management strategy are to provide the service of the highest quality on a cost effective basis. The municipality has developed the service delivery programme termed #redirelasechaba which feeds into the preventative maintenance plans for repetitive work to ensure that unexpected infrastructure failures are kept to a minimum. The necessary resource structure and manpower is considered at all times.

iii) Renewal and Replacement Strategy

Condition monitoring techniques and strategic risk profiles are considered to determine when to replace aged infrastructure. The aged mini substations are currently identified for replacement. There are various capital projects for replacement of asbestos cement for water and sewer reticulation networks.

iv) New, Upgrade and Disposal Strategy (Capital Investment)

The council does not have a current documented Operation and Maintenance Strategy. This Strategy will need to be developed as part of future revisions of the services Master Plans.

3.5.1 WATER SERVICES

The Directorate Technical and Infrastructure Services is established to ensure that the municipality complies to the following obligations:

- Basic water services by all communities;
- Basic sanitation services;
- Basic electricity services; and
- Providing strong support to all other functions of RLM by ensuring availability, management and maintenance of the municipal fleet.

a) WSA and WSP

Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) is a Water Service Authority (WSA) and Water Service Provider (WSP) according to Water Services Act and delegation by provincial Department of Water and Sanitation.

The municipal functions as a WSA are to:

- Ensure access to efficient, affordable, economical and sustainable access to water services to all consumers.
- Prepare water services development plan
- Makes and ensure compliance on bylaws
- Decide on mechanisms for water services provision.
- Ensure compliance to the legislative requirements
- Ensure protection of natural water sources and provision of safe and compliant water and quality

The Municipal functions as a WSP are to:

- Ensure provision of portable water supply and sanitation services within the municipal jurisdiction, to all consumers and industries.
- Abstracting water raw water from the Dams or other different sources
- Water purification
- Storage and distribution of portable through municipal network
- Installation and maintenance of water meters
- Collection of sewer effluent through municipal sewer network
- Treatment of sewage effluent

b) Water Schemes

Rustenburg still has borehole water scheme systems in Rankelenyane, Molote City and Mathopestad where potable water provisioning is dependent on ground water. The boreholes are operated by the Tribal Authorities (Rankelenyane and Mathopestad) and the CPA (Molote City).

RLM also acquired R20.7m Drought Relief Grant (2018/19 FY) from DWS to drill boreholes in the following areas:

- Lekgalong
- Berseba
- Modikwe
- Bethanie
- Dinnie Estate
- Vlakdrift

- Rietvlei
- Nkaneng
- Boshoek

Underground Water Sources of the RLM can be divided into two aquifer types. Rustenburg Layered Suite to the north of the Magaliesberg and Magaliesburg Formation to the south. Generally, the area has a poor ground water yield due to various reasons including clay soils with low permeability.

Rustenburg still has borehole water scheme systems in Rankelenyane, Molote City and Mathopestad where potable water provisioning is dependent on ground water. The boreholes are operated by the Tribal Authorities (Rankelenyane and Mathopestad) and the CPA (Molote City).

The Rustenburg Local Municipality is supplied from three different water supply schemes.

No	Water Scheme	Daily Average Water Supply to RLM (ML/day)
1	Magalies	3 ML/Day
2	Rand Water	90 ML/Day
3	Trust	10.3 ML/Day

c) Water Network

The municipality has water network of approximately 1 246 km of pipelines and 32 bulk reservoirs including steel tanks with 14 pump stations. The network is made of approximately 35% asbestos cement pipes which results into a high number of pipe burst and high water losses. There is an average of approximately 15 to 20 pipe burst/leaks that are reported daily and only able to respond to an average 10 pipe burst/leaks.

RLM receives water from Rand Water and Magalies Water. Services provided include provision of new water and sewer services, operation and maintenance thereof. The unit is responsible for the operation of 20 potable water reservoir services, which service an area with 12 pump stations; three borehole water scheme systems in Rankelenyane, Molote City and Mathopestad; treated effluent system for irrigation in the CBD and Marikana Sewer Pump station.

d) Blue Drop Status (BDS)

Year	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016
Score (%)	95	93	92	N/A	86	N/A	N/A

N/A = Not Assessed

The Department of Water Affairs initiated the drinking water quality regulation programme in 2005. The objective of the programme is to ensure that improvement of tap water quality by means of compliance monitoring of all Water Services Authority (WSA). WSA's that scored 95% and more received the Blue Drop Certification. In the North-West Province only three municipalities attained the certification whereas the Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of them.

e) Water Challenges

- Non-compliance with Blue Drop Assessment;
- Dilapidated and failing bulk water and sanitation infrastructure;
- High water distribution losses
- Vandalism of the infrastructure
- Reactive maintenance approach instead of preventative
- Illegal connections

f) Objectives

No	Priority Issue	Problem Statement	Goals	Strategies
1	**Portable and Clean Water Supply** *'Water is life'*	o Inadequate water supply	o Have alternative supply of portable water.	**Strategy A:** Utilise the water from mining reclamation plants to strike a balance between demand and supply. Install Jojo Tanks at strategic points for farm & informal settlement areas.
		o Prolonged water supply disruption	o Improve on the reliability of the pressures of the network system and improved turnaround time	**Strategy B:** Re-zone the network and cluster the areas to be able to regulate pressures.
		o High distribution losses	o Reduce the distribution losses to at least below 25%	**Strategy C:** Implement Water Conservation and Water Demand Strategy. Replace the asbestos pipes, install bulk and household water meters
		o Poor aesthetic quality of water (Taste & Odour)	o Improve on the quality of water supplied	**Strategy D:** Equip and employ qualified staff for the on-site laboratory to operate 24hrs for water quality monitoring. Outsource the monitoring to also independent/private laboratory for water quality analysis.

No	Priority Issue	Problem Statement	Goals	Strategies
		o Average Blue Drop Rating Status	o Improve on the Blue Drop status rating at least to be above 90%	**Strategy D:** Ensure operations are done in line with compliance to Blue Drop Assessment Systems

g) 5 Year Plan 2018-2023

STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022	2022/2023	Potential funders
Ensure manageable distribution zone for improved water balance calculations	Rustenburg Rezoning and Pressure Management Implementation	Rustenburg Rezoning and Pressure Management Implementation	Rustenburg Rezoning and Pressure Management Implementation			Department of Water and Sanitation
Water losses	Reduction to 30%	Reduction to 20%	Reduction to 15%			Department of Water and Sanitation; Randwater; Magalies Water, Rustenburg Water Services Trust
Water leakages	Water meter backlogs reduced to 0					MIG; Own funding
WATER Conservation Awareness campaign design and executed	Awareness Campaign	Awareness Campaign	Awareness Campaign	Awareness Campaign	Awareness Campaign	Partner with Randwater and Magalies Water
Planned AC pipes replacements	80% AC pipe replaced	90% AC pipe replaced	100% AC pipe replaced			MIG; Own funding
Eradication of backlog of water services	88% Access to Water	90% Access to Water	90% Access to Water	90% Access to Water	90% Access to Water	MIG; Own funding
Drinking water quality	100% compliance with SANS 241 standards	100% compliance with SANS 241 standards	100% compliance with SANS 241 standards	100% compliance with SANS 241 standards	100% compliance with SANS 241 standards	Own funding

3.5.2 SANITATION SERVICES

a) Waste Water Treatment Works

The directorate is responsible for the provision of waste water and sanitation services to all customers in the municipality. The Municipality through the Rustenburg Water Services Trust operate with 4 Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW):

b) Sewer Network

The municipality has sewer network of approximately 00 km of pipelines with 00 pump stations within the network. The majority of the network is made of old clay and asbestos pipes which results into a high volume of sewer blockages. There is an average of approximately 40 sewer blockages that are reported daily and only average of 20 blockages are attended to daily resulting in a series of sewer environmental contraventions. Sewer spillages are frequent due to misuse of the waterborne sewer system by inserting foreign substances that also contribute negatively to the environment impact.

Major blockages on bulk sewer outfalls have adverse effects on the efficiency of the Waste Water Treatment Works due to inconsistence inflows and this situation directly affect the industrial water supply which is also serve as revenue base for the Municipality.

c) Septic Tanks

There are areas which are still using septic tanks within the municipality averaging number of 12 580 units.

d) Pit Toilets

All the rural areas and informal settlement use pit latrines estimates at 63 027 units. The Pit latrines in the informal settlement pose high health risk as many pits are full. Since pit toilets are not properly built (not lined) the environment is negatively affected as ground water is at risk of contamination. These situations also mean in those areas you cannot drill boreholes to serve as alternative water source.

e) Green Drop System

RLM has not been performing well on the previous Green Drop assessments (refer to the table below):

Year	2009	2011	2013	2014	2016/17
Rustenburg WWTW	74%	78%	61.23%	56% RR	48% RR
Boitekong WWTW	41%	69.5%	75.25%	55% RR	64% RR
Lethabong WWTW	30%	48.1%	46.7%	53% RR	41% RR
Monakato WWTW	30%	44.8%	47.6%	71% RR	59% RR

As per the assessment outcome above mentioned under performance was a result of the following:

- Incompetent Process Controllers
- Ineffective effluent quality monitoring

- Unavailability and none implementation of Risk Abetment Plan
- Ineffective asset management system

f) Sanitation Challenges

- Non-compliance with Drop Green Assessment;
- Non-compliance with NO Drop Assessment;
- Non-existence of Operation and Maintenance Procedures (OPR) or Standard Operating Procedures (SOP);
- Dilapidated and failing bulk water and sanitation infrastructure;
- Inadequate fleet
- Insufficient funding allocation for O&M
- Vandalism of the infrastructure
- Reactive maintenance approach instead of preventative
- Misuse of sewer system by introduction of foreign substances

g) Objectives

No	Priority Issue	Problem Statement	Goals	Strategies
1	**Sanitation Services** *'Sanitation is dignity'*	o Low rating of the Green Drop Status	o Improve on the Green Drop status rating at least to medium risk rating (50%)	**Strategy A:** Ensure operations are done in line with compliance to Green Drop Assessment Systems
		o Over capacitated sewer plants	o Operate the sewer plant at optimal capacity	**Strategy B:** Upgrade &Refurbish.
		o Prolonged turnaround time to address sewer problems from the network	o Reduce the turn-around time for responding to sewer blockages to at least 5 hrs.	**Strategy C:** Re-zone areas of operation and have each with dedicated team to respond and reduce long travelling trips.
		o Backlogs in household connections	o Connect new households	**Strategy D:** Ensure that all township establishment when are approved before settlement they must have all basic services connections. Upgrade water borne sewerage

No	Priority Issue	Problem Statement	Goals	Strategies
		o Full Pit latrines at informal settlements	o To have treated pit latrine	systems as adequate bulk water becomes available **Strategy E:** Deploy use of biological eco-friendly chemicals to treat the toilet an also carryout awareness campaigns to the community about the use of pit latrines.

h) 5 Year Plan 2018-2023

STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022	2022/2023	Potential funders
Access to basic sanitation services	78%	85%	90%	95%	98%	MIG, DWS, MINE HOUSES, DBSA
Eradication of Sanitation backlog	22%	15%	10%	5%	2%	MIG, SWIG, MINE HOUSES, DBSA
Refurbishment of Sewer pump stations	1	2	4	0	0	DWS
Upgrading of WWTW	2	0	1			MIG

3.5.3 ELECTRICITY SERVICES

The Municipality is a licensed distributor of electricity through a license issued by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA). The unit: Electrical Engineering Services is responsible for the safe, effective and efficient provision of electricity to residents, businesses including mines and also ensuring public lighting. The units' core functions:

- Is to purchasing, distribution and sale of electricity.
- Planning and construction of networks i.e. major/minor upgrades, new connections etc.
- Repair and maintenance of networks
- Installations and maintenance of public lighting

a) Large Intakes Points

The municipal electrical network taps from Eskom grid with the following intake points:

No	Intake Point	Designed Capacity / Installed Capacity	Notified Maximum Demand (NMD)	Average Peak Demand (last 12 months)
1	Industries Substation	160 MVA	140 MVA	116 MVA
2	Voltaire Substation	40 MVA	28 MVA	25,7 MVA
3	Marble Lime/Kroondal Substation	20 MVA	20 MVA	14,8 MVA
4	Smelters Substation	240 MVA - Exclusive for Glencore Smelter	190 MVA	172 MVA
5	Waterkloof Substation	180 MVA -new intake	180 MVA (future)	0 MVA

Three of the substations are over 30 years in operation without any major refurbishment viz. Industries, Voltaire and Marble Lime are in dire need of upgrades in terms of ageing equipment i.e. bulk transformers, medium voltage (MV) switchgears, battery units etc. if this situations is not addressed it will lead to failures resulting in black-out in those areas.

b) Network Assessment

The electricity network or/and infrastructure of RLM has aged (mainly the rural areas) and most parts of the protection scheme tend to malfunction which results in a lot of unplanned outages. This scenario leads to key components or/and equipment of the network being susceptible to damage and also posing a risk to operational teams, which might lead to fatalities. The infrastructure has exceeded its life span with old technology on it; as such the municipality is spending too much on repairs, reactive maintenance and overtime expenditure.

Key to addressing this challenge is to:

- Reduce the average age of the distribution network where it is in access of 30 years through refurbishment or/upgrade and replacement of obsolete or/and unreliable equipment for which spares are no longer available.
- Undertaking of routine maintenance on critical plant i.e. bulk transformers and 33/11kV switchgears in main distribution substation.
- Performing condition monitoring of critical equipment and its associated components through both infrared and ultrasonic scanning i.e. cable terminations, medium voltage terminations on overhead lines and transformer terminations.
- Addressing and improving safety on the network i.e. replacement of high risk equipment (oil switches and transformers) and provision of relevant PPE to personnel.

c) Some of the challenges faced by the unit: Electrical Engineering Services

- Densification of stands leading to a network exceeding firm capacity and in some worst scenario reaching or/and over shooting its installed capacity.
- Extension of the distribution network in support of new developments (for both commercial and industrial sectors) including electrification of historically disadvantage areas.
- Increased economic activity which will lead to increased demand on our network.
- Dramatic increase in the cost of key resources i.e. labour and material (excluding bulk purchases)
- Increased backlog due to uncontrolled or/and unplanned growth (land invasion) and insufficient capital or/and budget.
- Overloaded feeder cables from main substations.
- Dilapidated and aged electrical and mechanical infrastructure.
- Outdated technology.
- High electrical distribution losses.
- Illegal connections and unmetered installations.
- Vandalism and theft adversely affect the integrity of distribution networks to deliver sustainable electricity supply.

Key to addressing these challenges is to:

- Reduce the average age of the distribution network where it is in access of 30 years through refurbishment or/ upgrade and replacement of obsolete or/ and unreliable equipment for which spares are no longer available.
- Undertaking of routing maintenance on critical plant i.e. bulk transformers and 33/11kV switchgears in main distribution substation.
- Performing condition monitoring of critical equipment and its associated components through both infrared and ultrasonic scanning i.e. cable terminations, medium voltage terminations on overhead lines and transformer terminations.

d) Objectives

No	Priority Issue	Problem Statement	Goals	Strategies
1	**Energy Supply** 'Power'	o High distribution losses	o Reduced the distribution loses to be below 20%	**Strategy A:** Install bulk meters and household meters
		o Illegal connections	o Removed illegal connections	**Strategy B:** Have regular operation to remove illegal connections. Re-zone areas for operation and have each with dedicated team.
		o High number of cases of copper cable theft	o Reduced number of cases of cable theft	**Strategy C:** Carryout awareness campaigns
		o Fatal accidents resulting from electrocution	o Reduced number of reported electrocution fatalities	**Strategy C:** Carryout awareness campaigns to communities
		o Lack of alternative energy source	o Reduced dependency on the Eskom grid	**Strategy D:** explore alternative energy sources like solar energy and waste energy systems
		o Overloaded Substations	o Outages	**Strategy E:** Upgrade the substations.

e) 5 Year Plan 2018-2023

STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022	2022/2023	Potential funders
Refurbishment & upgrading of substations	2	3	2	2	4	RLM DoE
Refurbishment & upgrading of overhead lines and cable network feeders.	3	3	4	3	2	DoE
Installation of SCADA system & Advanced metering infrastructure	3	3	3	4	3	RLM

3.5.4 ELECTRICITY SERVICES

The Municipality is a licensed distributor of electricity through a license issued by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA). The unit: Electrical Engineering Services is responsible for the safe, effective and efficient provision of electricity to residents, businesses including mines and also ensuring public lighting. The units' core functions:

- Is to purchasing, distribution and sale of electricity.
- Planning and construction of networks i.e. major/minor upgrades, new connections etc.
- Repair and maintenance of networks
- Installations and maintenance of public lighting

f) Large Intakes Points

The municipal electrical network taps from Eskom grid with the following intake points:

No	Intake Point	Designed Capacity / Installed Capacity	Notified Maximum Demand (NMD)	Average Peak Demand (last 12 months)
1	Industries Substation	160 MVA	140 MVA	116 MVA
2	Voltaire Substation	40 MVA	28 MVA	25,7 MVA
3	Marble Lime/Kroondal Substation	20 MVA	20 MVA	14,8 MVA
4	Smelters Substation	240 MVA - Exclusive for Glencore Smelter	190 MVA	172 MVA
5	Waterkloof Substation	180 MVA -new intake	180 MVA (future)	0 MVA

Three of the substations are over 30 years in operation without any major refurbishment viz. Industries, Voltaire and Marble Lime are in dire need of upgrades in terms of ageing equipment i.e. bulk transformers, medium voltage (MV) switchgears, battery units etc. if this situations is not addressed it will lead to failures resulting in black-out in those areas.

g) Network Assessment

The electricity network or/and infrastructure of RLM has aged (mainly the rural areas) and most parts of the protection scheme tend to malfunction which results in a lot of unplanned outages. This scenario leads to key components or/and equipment of the network being susceptible to damage and also posing a risk to operational teams, which might lead to fatalities. The infrastructure has exceeded its life span with old technology on it; as such the municipality is spending too much on repairs, reactive maintenance and overtime expenditure.

Key to addressing this challenge is to:

- Reduce the average age of the distribution network where it is in access of 30 years through refurbishment or/upgrade and replacement of obsolete or/and unreliable equipment for which spares are no longer available.
- Undertaking of routine maintenance on critical plant i.e. bulk transformers and 33/11kV switchgears in main distribution substation.
- Performing condition monitoring of critical equipment and its associated components through both infrared and ultrasonic scanning i.e. cable terminations, medium voltage terminations on overhead lines and transformer terminations.
- Addressing and improving safety on the network i.e. replacement of high risk equipment (oil switches and transformers) and provision of relevant PPE to personnel.

h) Some of the challenges faced by the unit: Electrical Engineering Services

- Densification of stands leading to a network exceeding firm capacity and in some worst scenario reaching or/and over shooting its installed capacity.
- Extension of the distribution network in support of new developments (for both commercial and industrial sectors) including electrification of historically disadvantage areas.
- Increased economic activity which will lead to increased demand on our network.
- Dramatic increase in the cost of key resources i.e. labour and material (excluding bulk purchases)
- Increased backlog due to uncontrolled or/and unplanned growth (land invasion) and insufficient capital or/and budget.
- Overloaded feeder cables from main substations.
- Dilapidated and aged electrical and mechanical infrastructure.
- Outdated technology.
- High electrical distribution losses.
- Illegal connections and unmetered installations.
- Vandalism and theft adversely affect the integrity of distribution networks to deliver sustainable electricity supply.

Key to addressing these challenges is to:

- Reduce the average age of the distribution network where it is in access of 30 years through refurbishment or/ upgrade and replacement of obsolete or/ and unreliable equipment for which spares are no longer available.
- Undertaking of routing maintenance on critical plant i.e. bulk transformers and 33/11kV switchgears in main distribution substation.

- Performing condition monitoring of critical equipment and its associated components through both infrared and ultrasonic scanning i.e. cable terminations, medium voltage terminations on overhead lines and transformer terminations.

i) Objectives

No	Priority Issue	Problem Statement	Goals	Strategies
1	**Energy Supply** 'Power'	o High distribution losses	o Reduced the distribution loses to be below 20%	**Strategy A:** Install bulk meters and household meters
		o Illegal connections	o Removed illegal connections	**Strategy B:** Have regular operation to remove illegal connections. Re-zone areas for operation and have each with dedicated team.
		o High number of cases of copper cable theft	o Reduced number of cases of cable theft	**Strategy C:** Carryout awareness campaigns
		o Fatal accidents resulting from electrocution	o Reduced number of reported electrocution fatalities	**Strategy C:** Carryout awareness campaigns to communities
		o Lack of alternative energy source	o Reduced dependency on the Eskom grid	**Strategy D:** explore alternative energy sources like solar energy and waste energy systems
		o Overloaded Substations	o Outages	**Strategy E:** Upgrade the substations.

j) 5 Year Plan 2018-2023

STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022	2022/2023	Potential funders
Refurbishment & upgrading of substations	2	3	2	2	4	RLM DoE
Refurbishment & upgrading of overhead lines and cable network feeders.	3	3	4	3	2	DoE
Installation of SCADA system & Advanced metering infrastructure	3	3	3	4	3	RLM

3.5.5 ROADS AND TRANSPORT DIRECTORATE

The Directorate has the responsibility to provide basic services to the community of Rustenburg in terms of provision of new roads and storm water as well as the maintenance of existing infrastructure, and safe and reliable public transport as listed below:

- Oversee the implementation of the RRT Project
- Provision of access to roads and well-functioning/properly maintained storm water drainage system (Ensures that roads are paved, re-gravelled and re-surfaced and construction of new roads to reduce the current backlogs)
- Contract service providers and contractors for the construction of infrastructure and required services to implement the RRT
- Undertake current public transport industry transition as the future RRT transport operators
- Build and ensure capacity to undertake the management of any transport function that might be assigned to the RLM in future including but not limited to the operating license functions.

a) Roads and Stormwater

Rustenburg has a total road network distance of **1,911.732** km of which **1052.598 km** are tarred (paved) and **859.134 km** are gravel (unpaved). The road network distance excludes the Provincial and National roads.

The majority of the paved roads range from good to fair surface conditions implying that these roads had fair ridability condition. The gravel or earth roads range from fair to poor gravel quality and quantity implying that these roads had poor condition. The need for Re-gravelling was therefore found to be very high. Roads with poor profiles where found to be without Camber and this resulted in water ponding.

According to the Visual Condition Assessment conducted in 2012, the average Visual Gravel Index (VGI) for RLM unpaved roads was calculated to be forty one percent (41%) which implied that most of the roads were in poor state. The average Visual Condition Index (VCI) and Reseal Condition Index (RCI) for paved roads were calculated to be 69% and 61% respectively which implies that the road network was in the fair condition.

NOTE: The Assessment was conducted in 2012 and it must be kept in mind that a road deteriorates which implies that the Visual Condition Index may be at approximately 56% in 2016.

i) Status of maintenance of *Roads and Storm water* services.

- **Tar Patching and Resealing of Roads (R4M)**
  - An allocation of R4M was made available for 2016/2017 financial year and R500 000.00 for the speed humps.
  - Tar Patching involves Pothole repairs and slurry seals to keep the road in a good riding condition.
  - Resealing of Roads-involves resurfacing of the roads with crushed stones and bitumen to prolong the lifetime of the Infrastructure.
  - Preventive Treatment Works: These works comprise fog sealing and rejuvenation. The fog sealing can be described as the machine application of slow- setting asphalt emulsion diluted with water to renew asphalt surfaces and to seal small cracks and surface voids, etc.; the activity may be followed by machine spreading of sand. The activity can be carried out on a scheduled basis, or in responsive to a set of specified intervention criteria.

  The unit do a visual inspection to determine the level of deterioration on the streets and draw up a programme for resealing of roads.

- **Regravelling and Blading for Roads**
  - An allocation of R5M was made available on the 2016/2017 financial year
  - Regravelling involves Import of material & compaction to build a road to a gravel standard. This work requires Tipper trucks, Graders, Water Bowser, compaction Roller & Front end Loaders. Due to ageing machinery and equipment the Unit depends on the Plant hire Contract to execute the work.
  - Blading – The grader blade the existing roads to smoothen the riding quality.

- **Stormwater Cleaning**
  - An allocation of R4.5m was made available on the 2016/2017financial year.
  - Replace Catch-pits Slabs
  - Cleaning of open Stormwater channels.
  - Cleaning of Sub surface drainage channels.
  - Installation of new culverts
- **Road Markings and Road Signs**
  - An allocation of R500 000.00 was made available on the 2016/2017 financial year for the road paint, R150 000.00for the street name plates, R200 000.00for the traffic signs and poles.
  - Road markings and marking of speed humps
  - Replacing road traffic signs.
  - Replacing street name plates.

b) Rustenburg Rapid Transit Network

i) Background

- The Rustenburg Local Municipality is implementing the Rustenburg Rapid Transport project as a bus service that will follow recommendations of the national Department of Transport's **Public Transport Strategy** and **Public Transport Action Plan** (2007).
- This gives selected cities in South Africa the mandate to establish Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTNs). These networks aim to catalyse a transformation of South Africa's public transport sector into a safe, secure and high-quality experience for the passenger in South Africa's 13 Cities.
- The planning, design and implementation of these IPTNs are funded through dedicated Public Transport Network Grant (PTNG) from National Treasury and administered by the Department of Transport.
- The allocation of PTN Grant is reviewed annually by a joint committee of Treasury and the Department of Transport (DOT) based on the performance of each city in meeting the goals of the Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan as provided for in the National Land Transport Act, Act 5 of 2009.
- The Department of Transport has set Grant Conditions and Standards on the **Public Transport Network Grant - Guidelines and Requirements** published annually. The Grant Guidelines and Requirements are the basis for continued Grant allocation and funding of the project.
- The PTN Grant not only funds infrastructure and operational costs of the catalytic bus service but also other infrastructure projects necessary for integration and advancement of public transport facilities such walkways, bus stops and park and rides and interchanges which form part of an overall Integrated Public Transport Network.
- In 2011, when the project was launched, it was branded the as the Rustenburg Rapid Transport Project identify projects funded through the PTN Grant as a flagship project. These included dedicated *inter alia* bus ways, walkways, and stations. Through the PTN Grant, capacity was also created to manage implementations of various projects. The RLM therefore took a resolution to make a distinction between the bus service and the PTN grant funded Unit under the Roads and Transport Directorate.
- While the RRT was primarily established for the implementation phase – the Municipality branded the eventual bus service – Yarona
- For the RLM, the objective of the PTNG is for the incremental development, implementation and operations of an IPTN.
- While the primary aim of the grant is to catalyse the provision of a municipal wide transport system, the RLM aims to transform the spatial development of the Municipality, strive to make an impact in the local economy, through the provision of employment opportunities, involvement of small, micro and medium enterprises (SMMEs) or any other spin-off it may create.

- By combining different vehicle sizes and frequencies it can meet a wide range of demand levels conveniently and cost effectively. With its network of trunk and feeder routes it can penetrate the urban fabric at a much finer level than, for example, rail. And, unlike rail which tends to divide urban space, BRT allows greater ease of movement across transport routes, facilitating growth along corridors.
- The operational planning process includes a range of activities required to achieve a technically viable system and provides data, systems and analysis upon which to base subsequent stages of planning and design. As such, the operational plan sits within an overall process aimed at the final implementation and operation of the system. The key elements of the overall planning process include:
    - Operational Plan
    - Infrastructure Design Plan
    - Industry Transition and Integration Plan
    - ITS and Fare System Plan
    - Communications and Marketing Plan
    - Financing Plan and Business Plan
    - Implementation Plan

ii) RRT System Overview

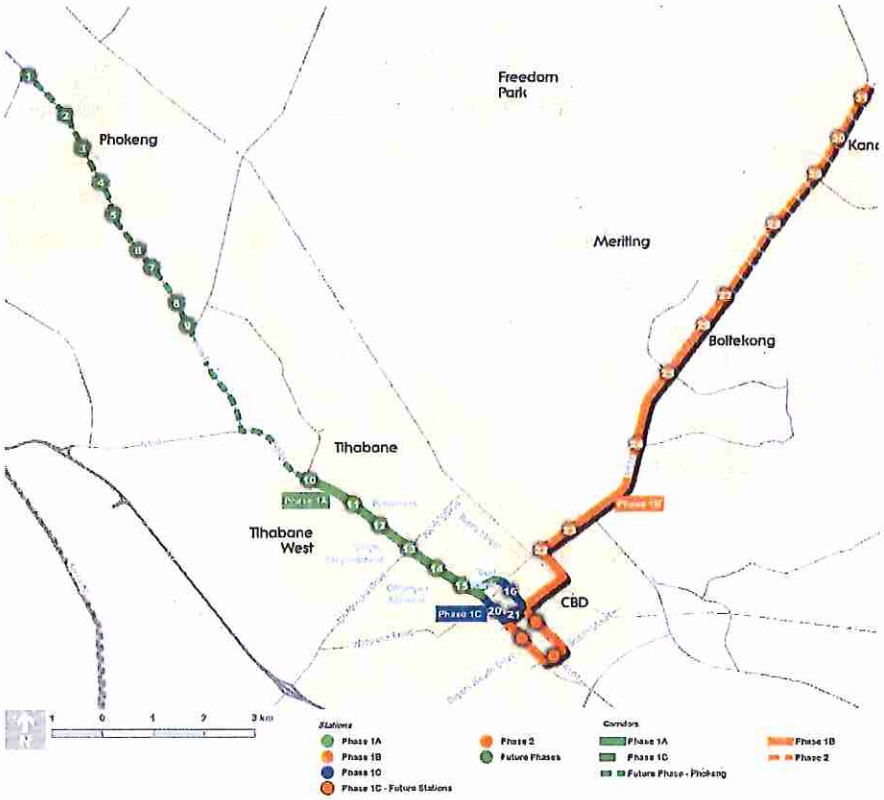
The new RRT project aims to substantially improve public transport service delivery, and will support other key city goals and strategies. The incremental approach to phasing of the full RRT network is crucial to the successful implementation thereof. The implementation of Phase1 staggered (A, B, C) and subsequently Phase 2 as noted below will ensure maximum benefit.

- Phase 1A being implemented during the 2017/18 Financial year;
- Phase 1C to follow the implementation of Phase 1A in relatively short periods of time, giving continuity
- Phase 1B to follow the implementation of Phase 1C in relatively short periods of time, giving continuity
- Phase 2 to follow the implementation of Phase 1A, B, and C.

The full IPTN network approach aims to cover 85% of Rustenburg when complete.

The full IPTN route system and network and designed for the Rustenburg IPTN include Trunk Corridors, Direct Services and Local Feeder Services. The main trunk corridor run between Phokeng & CBD and extents to Kanana.

During later stages, Direct Services will be accommodated to remote areas such as the mining areas to the far North extending beyond Phokeng and Kanana.



Full Network

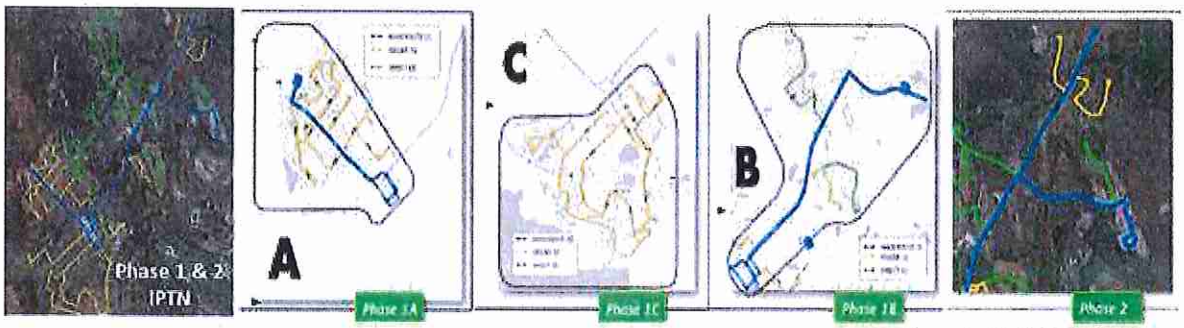
The trunk corridor consists of the two highest demand transport corridors in RLM, the R510 from Kanana to Rustenburg CBD and the R565/R104 from Phokeng to Rustenburg CBD. These two corridors form the Trunk Corridor that forms a "V", illustrated in figure above.

This "V" is to be designed and operated as a Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) system. The key system features include the following:

- Dedicated and segregated (either by barrier or grade) BRT lanes located in the roadway median along the critical parts of trunk corridor
- The total distance of the dedicated separated median trunk covering approximately 20km kilometres once the full system is implemented.

- A selection of trunks-, feeder and complementary routes are implemented to ensure that passenger delay due to transfers during peak hours of the day is limited and to ensure cost effective operations during off-peak periods.
- Both express and all-stops services are to be run on the trunk- and complementary routes to improve both journey times and to reduce the required level of station infrastructure in terms of the number of required bays
- All trunk stations to have level boarding platforms and need to be universally accessible compliant
- Electronic Fare Collection purchased by passengers from pre-approved vendors
- Trunk stations to be fully integrated with pedestrian and cycle networks with bicycle parking at key stations.

The RLM is currently implementing Phase 1 and 2 Infrastructure for the RRT. The figure below indicates the components being implemented in each phase of the projects.



17.3 km BRT operations 10	5.3km BRT operations 8 Feeder routes	No Trunk 6 Feeder Routes	6.5 km BRT Lanes 4 Feeders	7.6 km mixed traffic operations 4 Feeders
18 Stations	6 Stations	3 Stations	5 Stations	4 Stations
210 Bus Stops/Commuter shelters	70 Commuters shelters/Bus Stops	45 Commuter shelters/Bus Stops	65 Commuters shelters/Bus Stops	65 commuter shelters/bus stops
90 Low entry Standard Buses	30 Buses	20 Buses	20 Buses	20 buses
2 BOC	1 Bus Operator		1 Bus Operator	
	Control Centre			
	1 Depot			

Phases 1 and 2 of the RRT Network

iii) Historic Spending Profile

- Total grant allocations to the RLM amount to R2.8 billion

- Total expenditure on the Grant for infrastructure and Project Management fees amounts to R 2.4 billion.
- **Table 25** below illustrates the PTNG allocation as well as the spending thereof since 2010/11:

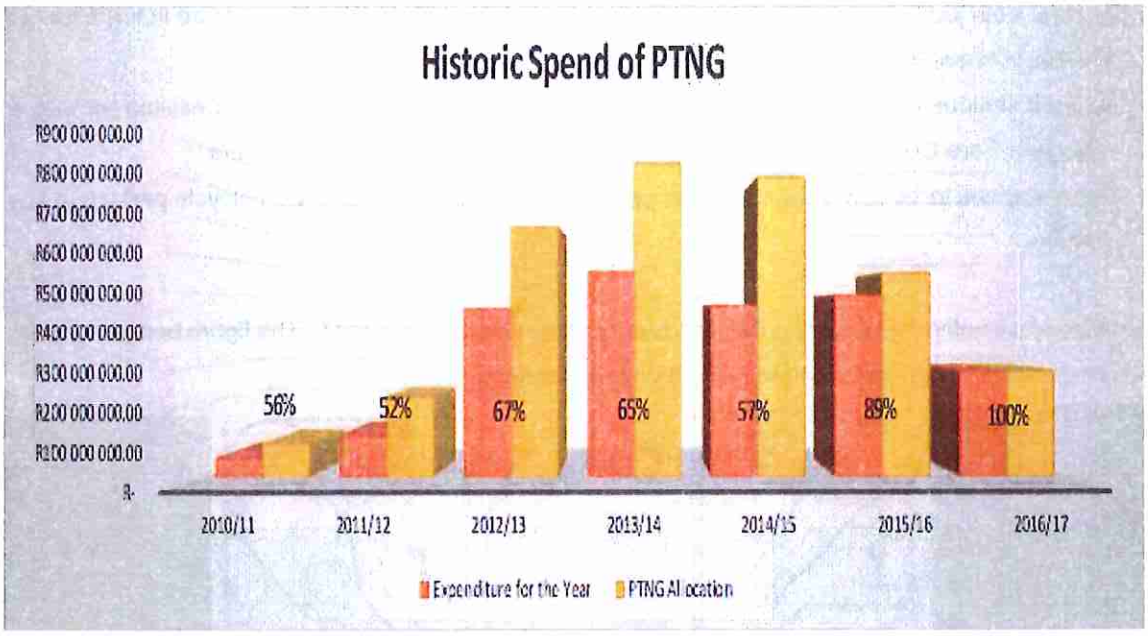


Table 17: Historic Spending Profile

Period	2010/11	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	Total
Public Transport Network Grant Allocations to RLM	R 20 000 000	R 178 000 000	R 303 484 000	R 500 000 000	R 520 000 000	R 552 000 000	R285 000 000	**R2 358 484 000**
Additional Allocation	R 69 575 000	R -	R 270 702 000	R 130 000 000	R -	R -		**R470 277 000**
Approved Rollover		R 39 336 449	R 104 500 000	R 221 908 000	R 294 200 000		R60 000 000	
Total Grant available	**R 89 575 000**	**R 217 336 449**	**R 678 686 000**	**R 851 908 000**	**R 814 200 000**	**R 552 000 000**	**R 345 000 000**	**R 2 828 761 000**
Expenditure for the Year	R 50 238 551	R 12 836 449	R 456 778 000	R 557 708 000	R 465 153 000	R 492 000 000	R328 058 000	**R 2 462 772 000**
Rollover to following year	R 39 336 449	R104 500 000	R 221 908 000	R 294 200 000	R 349 047 000	R 60 000 000	R -	

Expenditure Performance and Spend of PTNG

From the above it is evident that during the period 2010/11 up to 2014/15 the amount spent was between 52% and 67% of the annual allocation with the lowest amount spent during the 2011/12 financial year (52% of PTNG fund allocation).

During **2013/14** the project encountered litigation on a major infrastructure component, the Central Station, due to town planning process. Compounding that, there was an additional R 130 million allocation that was received in the last quarter of the financial year that could not be spent since no planning had been done for it.

While Intelligent Transport Systems (ITS) contracts were planned for execution in 2014/15, the procurement took longer than anticipated. To concede, a roll-over application should not have been proceeded with for that financial year, as the Central Station litigation process was still underway.

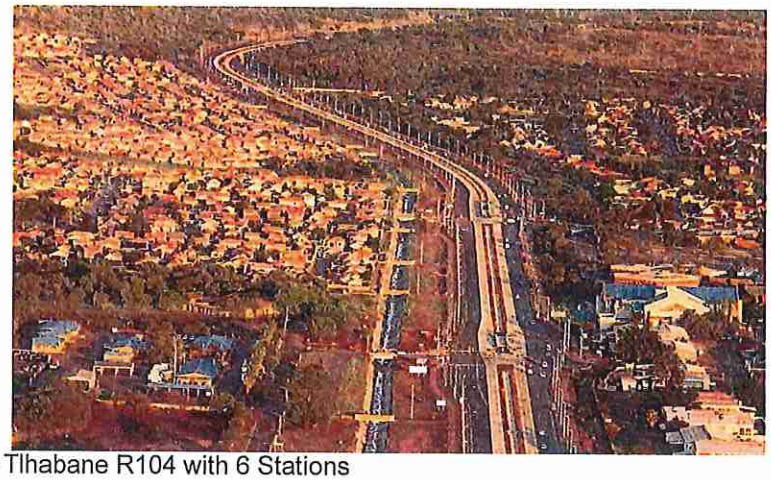
There are five (5) main capital projects which have been completed between 2011/12 to 2016/17 and reflected below with the costs. The total of cost of completed infrastructure to date amounts to R1.56 billion:

1. RLM/MM/0099/2012/13 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport North West Corridor (running from 2011/12);
2. RLM/MM/0099/2012/13 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport North East Corridor Contract A (running from 2013/14);
3. RLM/MM/0099/2012/13 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport North East Corridor Contract B (running from 2013/14) ; RLM/MM/0099/2012/13 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport North East Corridor Contract C (running from 2013/14) and
4. RLM/MM/0099/2012/13 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport North East Corridor Contract D (running from 2013/14)

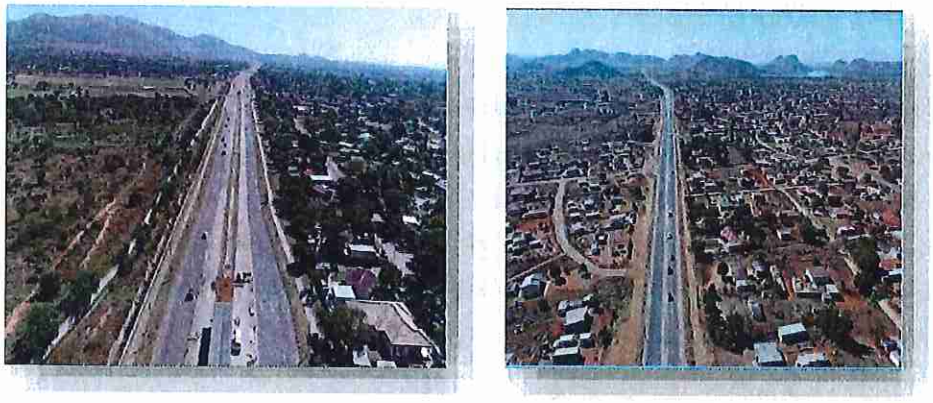
During 2017/18 five (5) multi-year infrastructure projects were still under construction (also funded by the Grant):

1. RLM/MM/0212/2013/14 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport Station Superstructure Contract A (running from 2015/16)
2. RLM/MM/0212/2013/14 Construction of the Rustenburg Rapid Transport Station Superstructure Contract B (running from 2015/16)
3. RLM/MM/0000/2016/17 Turnkey Contractor for the Construction of CBD Contract A
4. RLM/MM/0000/2016/17 Turnkey Contractor for the Construction of CBD Contract B
5. RLM/MM/0000/2016/17 Turnkey Contractor for the Construction of CBD Contract C

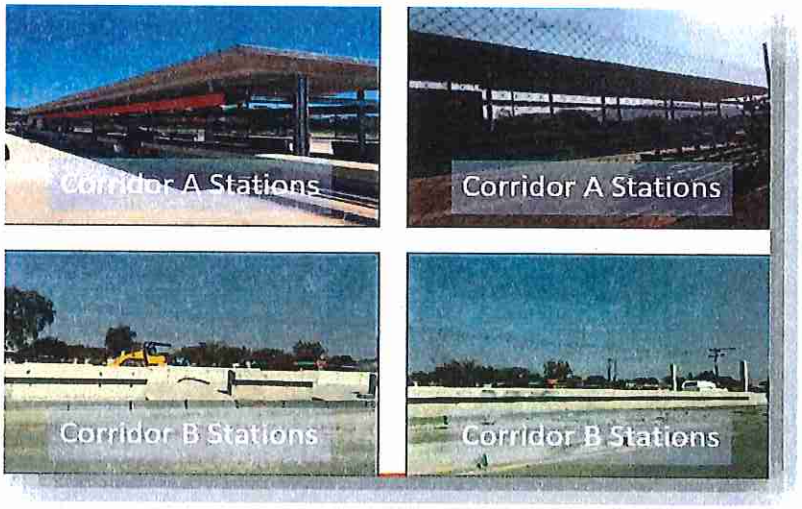
Construction of Feeder Routes of the RRT Network



Corridor A – Tlhabane R104 with 6 Stations



Kanana/ R510 Trunk Corridor 17km with 8 Open and Closed Median Stations



Progress on Stations Corridor A and B

iv) Stakeholder Engagement

In keeping with the objectives of the Department of Transport (DOT), specifically on ensuring a fully integrated public transport network, the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) acknowledges that the restructuring of its public transport network as envisaged by the RRT Project, cannot be fully achieved without the participation of the existing minibus-taxi industry in the implementation of the new system.

Hence the RLM envisages significant participation by the taxi industry and the current bus operators in the system in the form of:

- Ownership and management of future public transport companies operating on and feeding to the RRT corridors;
- The operation of buses on the trunk corridors of the RRT;
- The operation of DOT compliant vehicles on parts of the RRT routes that feed and distribute from RRT corridors where the passenger volumes so dictate.

To date the following progress has been made in this regard:

- All 22 taxi associations in Rustenburg, operating around the RLM and outside the municipal boundary were engaged during project initiation.
- 9 Taxi Associations have been identified as affected by the RRT routes and have formed a representative Structure - The Taxi Negotiating Forum and works have full time experts who provide technical support to them
- Bojanala Bus as an affected operator has been engaged is forming part of the Negotiation Structure
- MoUs have been entered into with both the Taxi and Bus Operator structures.
- It is envisaged that the affected and eligible operators will cease their current taxi operations in favour of equity within the Bus Operating Companies that will run bus operations in areas and routes planned to be served by the RRT.
- Cities already operating similar transport services and guidance from the DoT to operate an appropriate transport solution for the City serve as benchmark to develop a sound operational plan and financial model.
- Rather than embark on additional infrastructure, it is felt that a better approach would be to transform the public transport strategy in stages, through empowering and restructuring existing public transport operators while developing and improving efficiencies of existing systems and improving existing infrastructure.
- There is a need to dedicate significant human and financial resources to a public transport restructuring system from the beginning due to its complexity and necessary high level of engagement.

Conclusive Summary
• The Yarona service, once launched, will introduce a new standard of provision of public transport in Rustenburg. The introduction of dedicated bus ways on the trunk route has substantially increased the traffic flow and pavement condition on the R 510 • The purpose of the Public Transport Network Grant (PTNG) is to develop and improve integrated public transport network infrastructure that supports formal, scheduled and well managed services, which are accessible to an increasing percentage of the population for the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM). • The relatively low densities in our cities undermine the viability of all public transport systems. There is a need to look carefully at how we can create increased housing densification in well located areas. This must include designing and planning for a restructured land use landscape. Land use and transport to work in synergy, a densification policy or a transit-oriented development framework should have is developed parallel to public transport roll-out. • There is a need to fast track regulation changes to support greater flexibility in land use regulations and greater flexibility in housing subsidies to encourage brownfields regeneration by private sector. There are a range of impediments to municipalities being able to influence development through partnership arrangements.

3.6 COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

The work of the Directorate is affected by the need to provide a service to:

- 14 libraries, 19 Community halls
- 617 Municipal Buildings (incl. flat, rental stocks, substations, public toilets etc.)
- 21 Sports facilities, 5 Swimming pools
- 9 Parks, 13 Cemeteries
- More than 116 000 Waste Collection points
- Support the Municipality with Environmental Management Services

These services serve the estimated + 650 000 residents and 1800 employees of the municipality.

3.6.1 CIVIL FACILITIES MANAGEMENT

The Unit: Civil Facilities and Maintenance is responsible for the maintenance and upgrading of all municipal buildings and facilities and ensuring that these adhere to set high standards and that these facilities are well kept at all times. Municipal properties/buildings are becoming dilapidated because of insufficient budget and the lack of security, vandalism, burglary and generally the ageing condition of the property/building.

There are three different types of maintenance namely:

- Planned,
- Preventative, and
- Reactive maintenance plan

The Directorate responsible for Human Settlements is currently in a process to acquire services of a licensed operator who can manage flats.

Directorate Community Development will also through partnerships with cooperatives increase its capacity to maintain other facilities. In this financial year upgrades are planned for 5 community halls, 5 RCCs, , Mpheni House and the Civic Centre. A service provider has been appointed for the design and upgrade of Mpheni house.

3.6.2 COMMUNITY FACILITIES

UNIT: COMMUNITY FACILITIES
IDP UPDATES ON:

1. Cleaning and Maintenance of the Municipal Environment
2. Outline of status of sporting facilities per ward.
3. Greening, Beautification and Alien Species Management in the Municipality By-laws

1. Cleaning and Maintenance of the Municipal Environment

As part of the efforts of the municipality to fastrack service delivery in partnership with the Communities, A Programme termed ' Re Direla Sechaba' meaning "We are working for the Nation" has been launched by the municipality. This programme is composed of internal reengineering through interventions such as new fleet and stakeholder relations for municipal operations as well as partnership with communities through an EPWP/ Cooperatives partnership model. This model will result in each ward having a brigade of local community members being responsible for assisting the municipality with grass cutting, cleaning and maintenance activities.

2. Outline of status of sporting facilities per ward.

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
01	Phatsima Sports Facility	Soccer pitch with no grass. Ablution Block for both male and female. Concrete Roof, windows and doors, properly fenced.	• Soccer pitch with no grass • Ablution Block for both male and female. • Facility is fenced.	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader
01	Phatsima ((Slovo Section x1, Bothibello Primary x1)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer grounds with no grass Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
02	Robega Sports Facility	The facility is fenced with barbed wire fence and has ablution block, soccer pitch and combi courts.	• The facility is fenced with barbed wire fence and has ablution block, soccer pitch and combi courts.	• 01 x soccer pitch with no grass • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher	None
02	Chaneng	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 01 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
03	Luka	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 01 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
04	Luka (Rathibedi, grounds near Thete High School, grounds near Mogono Primary, Ground 1 and ground 2 near Bakwena Tavern)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 05 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
05	Phokeng (Lenatong & Rietvlei)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer grounds with no grass • Netball court • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
06	Phokeng (Rafrede, Kgale, Masosobane)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer grounds with no grass • Netball court • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
07	Lefaragatlhe (grounds near Primary School, Bubuanja & ground near Lekwakwa Primary)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
08	Olympia Park Stadium	Building has 3 floors and a basement. Building consist of 6 halls, 15 suites, 7 toilets, 8 change rooms, 8 store rooms and 2 first aid rooms. It has three steel stand structures for spectators.	• The official capacity of the facility is 18000. The facility is not in good condition due to lack of proper maintenance • The steel structure has since been ruled out for usage by engineers as it is considered a risk • Usable capacity is 7300 • The four high mass lights are not in good condition and cannot be used for professional night games • The electrical system needs to be upgraded • The pitch is maintained and in good condition • The whole stadium is guarded by one security personnel day and night. • There is a need to put a clear view fence around the entire stadium and improve on physical security • The outside venue where we host festivals need a new gate and the ablution facilities needs to be repaired (vandalized and not in use)	• 01 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and brush cutters	• 04 x grounds outside the stadium • No grass no irrigation • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
08	Olympia Park Hockey Club	Building consist of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and no storeroom and no stage	• Building consist of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and no storeroom and no stage • Building requires revamping	None	None
08	Olympia Park Tennis Club	Building consist of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, no change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage	• Building consist of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, no change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage • Building requires revamping	None	None
08	Olympia Park Squash Club	Building consist of 2 floors, windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage	• Building consist of 2 floors, windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling and storeroom and no stage • Building requires revamping	None	None
08	Olympia Park Korfball Club	Building consist of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, no change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling, stage and no storeroom	• Building consist of windows, exit door, toilets, kitchen, no change rooms, burglars, roof, ceiling, stage and no storeroom • Building requires revamping	None	None
09	Bester Sports Facility	Ablution block roofed with concrete, properly fenced with barbed wire fence, tennis courts and combi courts.	• Facility is vandalized	• 01 x soccer pitch with no grass • Netball court • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and brush cutters	None
10	Tlhabane Sports Facility	Facility has an ablution block with toilets and showers. There is also a kitchen. The facility is properly fenced with wall on the other side and palisade on the other side.	• Soccer pitch with no grass • Netball court damaged • Ablution block with toilets, showers and the kitchen are vandalized. • Most part of the fence is still intact	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Netball court • Maintenance done brush cutters and tractor
11	Tlhabane (ground near Rampa School)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
					• Maintenance done with a grader
12	Meriting Sports Facility Ext 4 and Ext 5	Soccer pitch with no grass. No fence. Ablution block with no windows and no doors and no burglars.	• Soccer pitch with no fence and no grass. • Ablution block with no windows and no doors and no burglars. • Netball courts vandalized	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Netball court x2 • Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader
18	East End Sports Facility	The facility has a maintained rugby field, ablution block, rugby club house, tennis club house, outside braai area, tennis courts basketball courts.	• The rugby field is maintained • The rugby club house, tennis courts, basketball courts and outside ablution block are vandalized	• 01 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and brush cutters	None
19	Paardekraal Sports Facility	Soccer pitch with no grass. No fence. Ablution Block for both male and female. Concrete Roof, windows and doors.	• Ablution Block for both male and female vandalized. • Soccer pitch with no grass and no fence. • Netball court vandalized	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Netball court • Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader
20	Boitekong Ext 2 & Ext 4	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
21	Boitekong Ext 4, 5, 6 near Library/Police Station	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
22	Sunrisepark (Popo Molefe, & Dikhibidung)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
23	Kanana /Letlapeng	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
24	Freedompark	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
25	Monakato Sports Facility	The facility is properly fenced with high prefab wall, two soccer fields, two combi courts, ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, store room, kitchen and high mass lights.	• The facility is properly fenced with high prefab wall, • Two soccer fields and combi courts well maintained • Ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, store room and high mass lights.	• 01 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher, brush cutters	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a tractor and brush cutters
26	Tlaseng Sports Facility	There is ablution block, combi courts and soccer pitch.	• There is ablution block, combi courts and soccer pitch.	• 01 x soccer pitch with no grass • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher, brush cutters	None
27	Lethabong Sports Ground	The facility is fenced with palisade fence. It has one soccer field, ablution block and four high mass lights.	• The facility is fenced with palisade fence. • It has one soccer field, ablution block and four high mass lights. • Well maintained	• 01 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/brush cutters	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
28	Lethabong near RCC	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
29	Rankelenyane Sports Facility	The facility is fenced with 70% concrete wall and 30% stop nonsense fence. It has one soccer field, ablution block, storeroom and security room.	• The facility is fenced with 70% concrete wall and 30% stop nonsense fence. • It has one soccer field, ablution block, storeroom and security room all well maintained.	• 01 x ground inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/brush cutters	None
30	Modikwe Bethanie	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer ground with no grass

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
					• Maintenance done with a grader
31	Marikana/Tlapa	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
32	Marikana Primary /Maditlokoa	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
33	Nkaneng	Soccer pitch with no grass, no ablution facilities and no fence	• Soccer pitch with no grass, no ablution facilities and no fence	None	• Soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
34	Mfidikwe	Soccer pitch with no grass, no ablution facilities and no fence	• Soccer pitch with no grass, no ablution facilities and no fence	None	• Soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
36	Mathopestad Sports Facility	Soccer pitch with no grass. Netball court. Caretaker's house and toilets on premises with fence.	• Caretaker's house and toilets on premises vandalized • Soccer pitch with no grass • Netball court damaged	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done brush cutters and a grader
36	Boons, Dinie Estate, Molote City	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
37	Sondela Boitekong Ext 1 Paardekraal Ext 1	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
39	Ramochana (near Primary School)	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 01 x soccer ground with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader
40	Paardekraal Ext 23, Damoyi View and Dhubai View	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 06 x soccer grounds with no grass

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
	Chachalaza Boitekong Ext 2 & 3				• Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
40	New Boitekong Sports Facility	The facility is properly fenced with a wall, soccer field, two combi courts, ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, automated irrigation system, a boardroom, store rooms, security office, caretakers house.	• The facility is properly fenced with a wall, soccer field, two combi courts, ablution block with change rooms for ladies and gents, automated irrigation system, a boardroom, store rooms, security office, caretakers house.	• 01 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower, tractor and slasher, brush cutters • Well maintained	None
41	Boitekong Ext 8 and 13	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 03 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
42	Old Sports Grounds	Greenified soccer pitch in good condition. Fenced with palisade fence and barbed wire fence. Ablution facility vandalized	• Greenified soccer pitch with automated irrigation system in good condition. • Fenced with palisade fence and barbed wire fence. • Ablution facility vandalized	• 01 x pitch inside the facility • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher	None
42	Impala Rugby Club	Managed by Impala mine, the facility has two well-maintained rugby fields, a number of buildings, grand stand, ablution blocks and an indoor and outdoor gym	• The facility is very well maintained	• 02 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher	None
42	Bowling Club	Managed by Impala. Buildings and bowling green are 100% functional and well maintained	• Managed by Impala. • Buildings and bowling green are 100% functional and well maintained	None	None
42	Rustenburg Tennis Club	Managed by Rustenburg Tennis Club. Well maintained tennis courts and club house	• The facility is well maintained	None	None
43	Karlienpark Sports Facility	No buildings, only grand stand for spectators. Soccer pitch with no fence and no grass. Ablution block was	• No buildings, only grand stand for spectators. • Soccer pitch with no fence and no grass.	None	• 01 x soccer pitch with no grass • Maintenance done with brush cutters and a grader

Ward	Area	Site Description	Current Status	Greenified	Rudimentary
		constructed but inside the swimming pools fence for security reasons.	• Netball courts vandalized • Ablution block was constructed but inside the swimming pools fence for security reasons.		
43	Zinniaville Sports Facility	Ablution block for ladies & gents with showers & toilets, grand stand for spectators. Well maintained soccer pitch with tennis courts. Sports Facility is fenced with barbed wire fence.	• Ablution block for ladies & gents with showers & toilets, grand stand for spectators. • Well maintained soccer pitch with tennis courts. • Sports Facility is fenced with barbed wire fence.	• 01 x pitch inside the stadium • Automated irrigation system • Maintenance done with ride on mower/tractor and slasher	None
43	Seraleng/ Nkandla	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 04 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
44	Ikageng/ Mosenthal	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters
45	Nkaneng 2 Photsaneng	Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	• Rudimentary grounds, no fence, no ablution facilities	None	• 02 x soccer grounds with no grass • Maintenance done with a grader and brush cutters

3. Greening, Beautification and Alien Species Management in the Municipality

The Parks and Environmental Units will have an intensified programme to encourage wards in the greening and cleaning of their wards. Some of the interventions in this regard will include the provision of fruit and shade trees to developing areas of the city and schools.

The RLM engaged the Department of Environment Affairs on clearing of some Invasive Alien Plants in the areas of the upper ridges of the Rustenburg Kloof, grave sites as well as rivers passing through the city. This request was approved and the programme will be finalized in this financial year. It will include the development of a municipal own programme that will be sustained throughout the year.

By-laws updated and implementation

The by-law on review of rental facilities and the new by-law on street trees management are earmarked for adoption in this Financial Year. These by-laws will assit with the management of especially community halls and improve on the management of trees in the municipal area.

INPUTS ON THE IDP REVIEW (COMMUNITY FACILITIES) 2019/2020

NO	PROJECT NAME	EXISTING CONDITIONS	UNIT MANDATE	AVAILABLE RESOURCES	PRIORITY ISSUES	STRATEGIES	CHALLENGES	Budget (2019)
1	Installation of Signage & Information Boards at all municipal swimming pools	Most signage boards are either old, outdated or vandalized	Develop, maintain and upgrade swimming pools and sports facilities	To be sourced externally	Identification of Community Facilities	Ensure continuous maintenance of facilities	Lack of physical security leading to vandalism	R50,000 (Sports) R50,000 (Pools)
2	Supply and Delivery of Equipment and Furniture for Olympia Park Stadium and the Pools	Insufficient furniture (steel tables, round tables, chairs, etc) in our sports facilities. Insufficient equipment including fridges, stoves, pa systems, etc	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal swimming pools and sports facilities	Very limited resources and in some facilities no equipment and furniture	To make available the necessary equipment and furniture at the stadium and pools when hiring to the communities and greater public	Procure services externally, bar code all municipal assets	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required	R200,000 (furniture) R200,000 (equipment)

3	Greening and installation of automated irrigation	Unattractive facilities due to insufficient budget to execute the required maintenance	Develop, maintain and upgrade the stadium and sports grounds	Staff in some instances to be sourced externally	Upgrade stadium and sports ground and develop safe and secured amenities	Procure services externally	Lack of security to safeguard facilities, insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required, limited transport, outdated/limited machinery and equipment	R600,000
4	Maintenance of sports facilities (buildings, fencing, electrical, sanitation etc)	Vandalized buildings mostly due to lack of security	Develop, maintain and upgrade sports facilities	Caretaker and support staff	Repair and maintenance of sports facilities	Renovation of facilities and deployment of physical security personnel	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required limited transport, outdated/limited machinery and equipment	R2,000,000
5	Maintenance of municipal swimming pools (buildings, fencing,	Annual maintenance (wear and tear)	Develop, maintain and upgrade	Caretaker and support staff	Repair and maintenance of swimming pools	Upkeep of facilities	Insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required,	R1,000,000

	electrical, sanitation, mechanical etc)		swimming pools				limited transport and limited general workers	
6	Upgrading of Municipal Swimming Pools	Unattractive and non-user-friendly facilities	Develop, maintain and upgrade swimming pools	Caretaker and support staff	Upgrading of municipal swimming pools	Develop use friendly facilities	Insufficient budget	R2,000,000
7	Installation of perimeter fence and guardhouse at Olympia Park Stadium	Unattractive and unsafe facilities leading to under utilisation and under collection of revenue	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal sports facilities	Caretaker and support staff	Upgrading of sports facilities	Upgrading of facilities	Insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required limited transport, outdated/limited machinery and equipment	R5,000,000
9	Installation of automated chlorination system at Middle Street Pool	Manual application of hth chemicals is not effective	Develop, maintain and upgrade swimming pools	Caretaker and support staff	Effective and efficient maintenance of swimming pools	Maintenance of swimming pools in a cost-effective manner	Insufficient budget for the upgrading of the system and procurement of chemicals	R500,000
10	Replace boilers at Olympia Park Stadium	Boilers are not working and is beyond repair.	Develop, maintain and	Caretaker and support staff	Renovation/upkeep of sports facilities	Upgrading of facilities	Insufficient budget	R800,000

		Staff and clients do not have access to hot water	upgrade sports facilities					
11	Installation of Signage & Information Boards at Community Facilities	Most signage boards are either old, outdated or vandalized	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal cemeteries, swimming pools, sports facilities, community halls and parks	To be sourced externally	Identification of Community Facilities	Ensure continuous maintenance of facilities	Lack of physical security leading to vandalism	R50,000 (Halls) R50,000 (Cemeteries) R50,000
12	Maintenance of Community Halls	Vandalized buildings mostly due to lack of security	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal community halls	Caretakers and Regional Caretakers to oversee their areas of responsibility	Repair and maintenance of community halls	Renovation of facilities and deployment of physical security personnel	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required	R3,500 000
13	Upgrading of Tlhabane Cemetery	Cemetery have been vandalized including the ablution	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal cemeteries	Staff supervision only during working hours	To upgrade and secure the cemetery	Procure services externally	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to	R3,000,000

		facilities and the fence					maintain facilities as required	
14	Upgrading of Marikana Cemetery	Cemetery have been vandalized including the ablution facilities and the fence	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal cemeteries	Staff supervision only during working hours	To upgrade and secure the cemetery	Procure services externally	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required	R2,000,000
15	Upgrading of Phatsima Cemetery	Cemetery have been vandalized including the ablution facilities and the fence	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal cemeteries	Staff supervision only during working hours	To upgrade and secure the cemetery	Procure services externally	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required	R500,000
16	Greening of developing areas	Unattractive facilities due to insufficient budget to execute the required maintenance	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal parks	Staff	Upgrade recreational parks and develop safe and secured amenities	Procure services externally	Lack of security to safeguard facilities, insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required, limited transport, outdated/limited	R1,000,000

							machinery and equipment	
17	Maintenance of Parks (buildings, fencing etc)	Vandalized buildings mostly due to lack of security	Develop, maintain and upgrade municipal parks	Caretaker and support staff	Repair and maintenance of parks	Renovation of facilities and deployment of physical security personnel	Lack of security to safeguard facilities and insufficient budget to maintain facilities as required limited transport, outdated/limited machinery and equipment	R300,000

3.6.3 LIBRARY AND INFORMATION SERVICES

The function of this Unit is to provide, in co-operation with the relevant governing bodies at local and provincial level, a dynamic library and information service that meets the educational, informational, cultural, economic, technological and recreational needs of the community at large. Each resident must have free access to resources and facilities for information, life-long learning, culture and recreation. Rustenburg Local Municipality has nine (9) community libraries and five (5) info hubs as listed below:

• **Community Libraries**	Rustenburg, Tlhabane, Boitekong, Karlienpark, Marikana, Monnakato, Phatsima, East-End, Phokeng
• **Info Hubs**	Lethabong, Barseba, Mamerotse, Mathopestad, Charora.

In the 18/19 financial year work to extend the three libraries (Phatsima, Monakato and East End) is still continuing and due completion by 30th April 2019, Boitekong Library will be extended while a new library will be constructed by the Department of Culture, Arts and Traditional Affairs in Lethabong.

Besides library buildings, the Unit will also ensure that additional four wards in this financial year have access to library services which are programmes that are not library building dependant. These will be in Luka, Photsaneng and Lesung. The municipality will also further drive its reading campaigns as well as increasing access to e-libraries for especially the youth.

The roll-out of the provincial e-library initiative in the RLM is also a short-term priority initiative. Due to challenges of internet services provided by the Department the municipality is in the process of providing access to wi-fi services for users to access online and e-services. The Department recently advertised a tender for Information Communication Technology which includes the provision of internet services and connectivity to library services within the province of which Rustenburg Local Municipality is included.

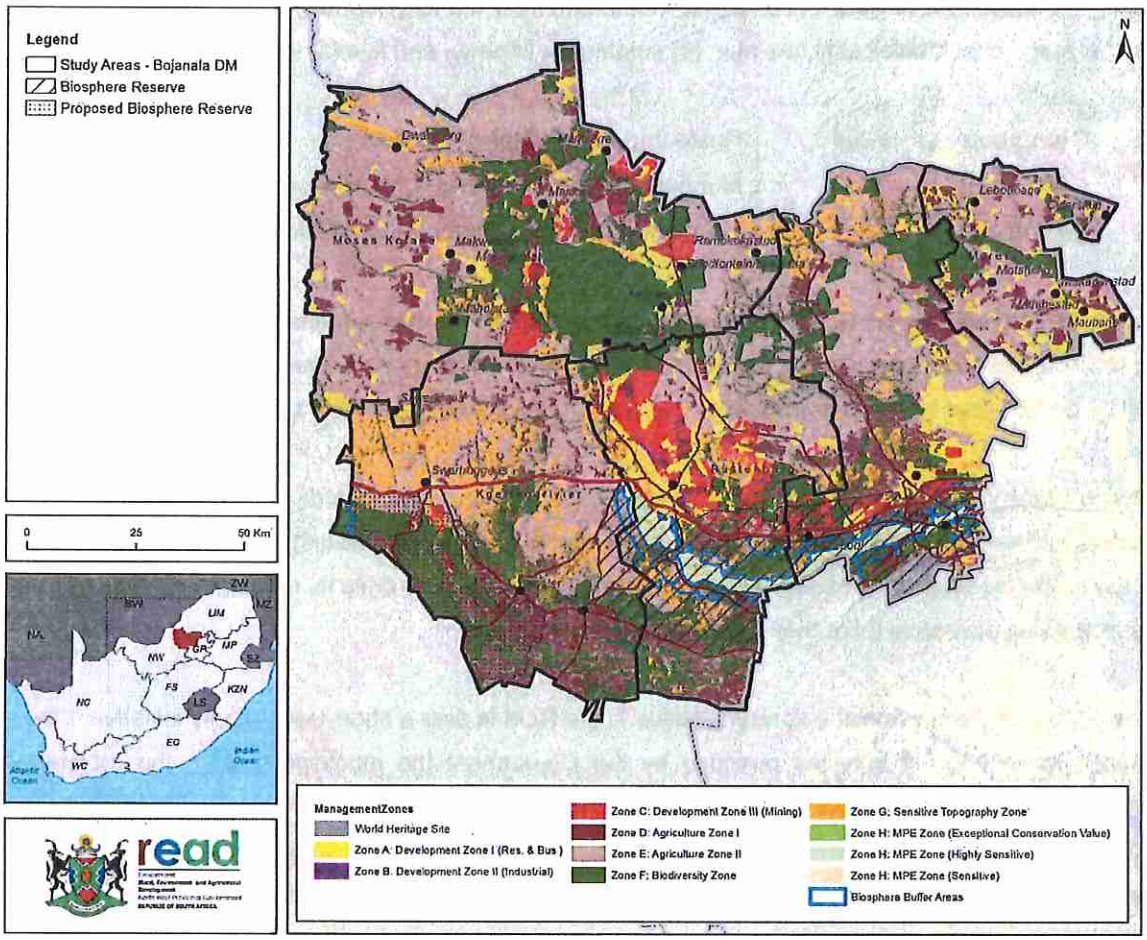
3.6.4 INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

The Rustenburg Local Municipality Environmental Management Framework was reviewed by the Department of Rural Environment and Agricultural Development (NW READ) in the financial year 2017/18. It was approved by Council on the 25th September 2018.

The reviewed Environmental Management Framework (EMF) is comprised of the bio physical environment (i.e. geology, topography and climate, biodiversity and conservation, hydrology and water resources, air quality and agricultural potential) and socio-economic issues (i.e. socio-economic profile, infrastructure development, land use, heritage resources, tourism and mining). These features are

classified under the Environmental Management Zones. The 2011 RLM EMF had only four Environmental Management Zones, as compared to the reviewed RLM EMF with seven Environmental Management Zones as indicated in the map below:

Rustenburg Local Municipality Environmental Management Zones



Zone A: Development Zone 1 (Residential, business and other)

'Development Zone I' is a refinement of areas identified for future urban development in local municipal SDFs. These development uses include, amongst others, residential land uses, commercial land uses and land uses related to government functions, but specifically excludes industrial land uses and mining related land uses.

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone A:

- *Development should be confined to urban areas (areas situated within the urban node/edge/fringe, or where no such node/edge/fringe has been defined or adopted, areas situated within the edge of built-up areas) to minimise the effects of urban sprawl in the area.*

- *The zone should be used for the expansion of urban areas and the integration of existing settlements.*
- *Green open spaces should be established and protected within the zone.*
- *The following should be encouraged in this zone: Urban infill development; Residential development; Commercial developments; Government functions; other appropriate land uses as reflected in the applicable SDF/s; Upgrading of service infrastructure and Urban greening.*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*
- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area.*

Zone B: Development Zone II (Industrial)

Development Zone II (Industrial) is a refinement of areas identified for future industrial development in local municipal SDFs.

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone B:

- *Development should be confined to urban areas (areas situated within the urban node, or where no urban node has been defined or adopted, areas situated within the edge of built-up areas) to minimise the effects of urban sprawl in the area.*
- *Green open spaces should be established and protected.*
- *The following should be encouraged in this zone: Industrial development and Upgrading of service infrastructure.*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*

- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area.*

Zone C: Development Zone III (Mining)

Development Zone III (Mining) is a refinement of areas identified in local municipal SDFs as areas with potential for mining development. If developed in a sustainable manner, these areas have the potential to stimulate economic growth in the area.

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone C:

- *Mining activities should, as far as possible, be confined to Zone C.*
- *Mining activities should be conducted in a sustainable manner.*
- *Wetlands, areas in proximity to aquatic features, areas of high or sensitive biodiversity, and areas of sensitive topography should be avoided at all costs.*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*
- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area.*

Zone D: Agriculture Zone

The 'Agriculture Zone' represents existing high potential agricultural land in the area (i.e. cultivated fields) that should be preserved for crop production and other agricultural purposes.

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone D:

- *High potential agricultural land that is actively being cultivated should not be used for other types of development.*
- *Agriculture is the main priority within this zone and should be prioritised above all other types of activities and developments.*
- *Crop farming should be encouraged.*
- *Irrigation potential should be optimised.*
- *Intensive agriculture should be encouraged and developed.*

- *Sustainable farming practices should be encouraged.*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*
- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area.*

Zone E: Agriculture Zone II

The 'Agriculture Zone' represents areas deemed suitable for further agricultural development for both grazing and cultivation purposes. The land may also be utilised for other types of development.

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone E:

- *High potential agricultural land that is actively being cultivated should not be used for other types of development.*
- *Agriculture is the main priority within this zone and should be prioritised above all other types of activities and developments.*
- *Crop farming should be encouraged.*
- *Irrigation potential should be optimised.*
- *Intensive agriculture should be encouraged and developed.*
- *Sustainable farming practices should be encouraged.*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*
- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area.*

Zone F: Biodiversity Zone

The 'Biodiversity Zone' represents areas of high and significant biodiversity in the Bojanala District Municipality. Areas of high biodiversity was identified from the North West Province Biodiversity Sector Plan and includes, amongst others, critical biodiversity areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support areas (ESAs)

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone F:

- *Biodiversity and sensitive topographical features should be protected within these areas at all costs.*
- *Before any non-conservation related activity is to be considered a detailed specialist study has to be conducted by an accredited scientist to determine the impacts of the envisaged activity on not only the site but also on the larger area (strategic context).*
- *Activities should be limited to conservation related and low-impact tourism related activities*
- *The guidelines contained in North West Province Biodiversity Sector Plan are applicable and should be applied within this zone.*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*
- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area*

Zone G: Sensitive Topography Zone

The 'Sensitive Topography Zone' represents the sensitive topographical features, such as hills and ridges, which are deemed sensitive to development.

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone G:

- *Sensitive topographical features should be protected and any development that might negatively affect them should be discouraged.*
- *A detailed specialist study might have to be conducted by an accredited scientist to determine the impacts of an envisaged activity on the corridor function provided by a topographical feature.*

- *The visual impacts of proposed developments in this zone should be considered and developments/activities with high visual impact avoided.*

Zone H: MPE Zone and sub-zones (Magaliesberg Biosphere)

The 'MPE Zone' represent the Magaliesberg Protected Environment, which is a formal protected area in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act

General environmental management guidelines

The following general management guidelines are applicable to Zone H:

- *The relevant Management Plan should be consulted whenever an activity is envisaged in this zone.*
- *Non-conservation related activities should be avoided in this zone.*
- *The Biosphere development guidelines should be considered.*
- *Before any non-conservation related activity is to be considered a detailed specialist study has to be conducted by an accredited scientist to determine the impacts of the envisaged activity on not only the site but also on the larger area (strategic context).*

If the zone falls within a Biosphere Buffer Zone, the following guidelines are also applicable:

- *The development guidelines in the relevant management plan should be consulted whenever an activity falls within the buffer area.*
- *Developments that might put stress on the protected environments should be avoided within the buffer area.*
- *The applicable biosphere development guidelines and principles should be considered.*
- *Conservation and tourism orientated developments should be promoted within the buffer area.*
- *High density developments, industrial developments, mining activities and other high-impact developments should be avoided in the buffer area.*

Activities that are incompatible, potentially compatible and incompatible with the sensitivity zones and their overall development objectives (MPE EMF Guidelines)

Exceptional conservation value zone

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are compatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Establishment of bioregions, conservancies, cultural heritage sites and nature reserves; Protected areas; Conservation, Heritage conservation; Minor structural alterations to existing buildings; Hiking trails; Home enterprises

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are potentially compatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Farm settlements; Livestock and game farming; Fencing, firebreaks and Recreation

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are incompatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Country and golf estates, group housing, retirement village; Informal structures, Informal and semi-formal rural settlements; Accommodation enterprises, guest house, guest lodge, conference facility; Hotel, restaurant, gymnasium, social hall
- Public & private resorts; Public garage, public worship; Camping, caravan park
- Mining, peat extraction; Construction or enlargement of buildings or structures
- Excavations, construction of bulk infrastructure, electrical purposes, installation of bulk pipelines
- Wholesale trade, shop; Place of refreshment, tavern, teagarden, liquor activities
- Private & public open space; Transport uses, roads, railway purposes, quad bike trails/facilities
- Wildlife rehabilitation centre; Abattoirs, agri-industries; Factories, industry, light industry; Mobile graveyard, scrapyard, panel beating; Livestock yard, kennels;
- Aerodrome; Aquaculture; Bakery; Cemetery, Crematorium; Cultivation of virgin soils, Drive-in and drive-through restaurants; Feedlots; Signage; Filling stations; Government purposes, place of instruction, Nursery, Sub-division of land; Waste disposal; Taxi rank, holding and parking areas and Telecommunication

Highly Sensitive Zone

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are compatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Establishment of bioregions, conservancies, cultural heritage sites and nature reserves
- Protected areas; Conservation, heritage conservation;
- Minor structural alterations to existing buildings; Construction or enlargement of buildings or structures; Hiking trails and Home enterprises

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are potentially compatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Farm settlements; Livestock & game farming; Fencing, firebreaks; Recreation, camping; Private & public open space; Camping, guesthouse

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are incompatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Country and golf estates, group housing, retirement village

- Informal structures, Informal and semi-formal rural settlements; Accommodation enterprises, guest house, guest lodge, Hotel, restaurant, conference facilities, social hall; Public & private resorts; Public garage, public worship; Place of amusement, gymnasium; Recreation, camping; Mining, peat extraction
- Excavations, construction of bulk infrastructure, electrical purposes, installation of bulk pipelines; Wholesale trade, shop; Place of refreshment, tavern, teagarden; Drive-in and drive-through restaurants
- Transport uses, roads, railway purposes, quad bike trails/ facilities; Abattoirs, agri-industries; Factories, industry, light industry; Mobile graveyard, scrapyard, panel beating; Livestock yard, kennels; Aerodrome; Aquaculture; Bakery; Cemetery, crematorium; Cultivation of virgin soils; Drive-in and drive-through restaurants; Feedlots; Signage; Filling stations
- Government purposes, place of instruction; Nursery; Sub-division of land; Waste disposal; Taxi rank, holding and parking areas and Telecommunication

Sensitive Zone

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are compatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Establishment of bioregions, conservancies, cultural heritage sites and nature reserves
- Protected areas, Conservation, Heritage conservation, Farm settlements, Livestock & game farming, Heritage conservation, Minor structural alterations to existing buildings
- Accommodation enterprises, guest house, guest lodge, Construction or enlargement of buildings or structures, Hiking trails, Home enterprises, Place of refreshment, teagarden, Private & public open space, Recreation, Mining, peat extraction
- Roads, Wildlife rehabilitation centre, Nursery

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are potentially compatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Camping, Fencing, firebreaks,

The following activities (as defined in the MPE EMF report) are incompatible with this sensitivity zone and the overall development objectives identified in the report:

- Country and golf estates, group housing, retirement village, Informal structures, Informal and semi-formal rural settlements, Hotel, restaurant, tavern, conference facilities, Public & private resorts, Public garage, public worship
- Place of amusement, gymnasium, social hall, Drive-in and drive-through restaurants
- Wholesale trade, shop, Mining, peat extraction, Excavations, construction of bulk infrastructure, electrical purposes, installation of bulk pipelines

- Abattoirs, agri-industries, Factories, industry, light industry, Mobile graveyard, scrapyard, panel beating, Livestock yard, kennels, Aerodrome, Transport uses, railway purposes
- Quad bike trails/facilities, Aquaculture, Bakery, Caravan park, Cemetery, crematorium
- Cultivation of virgin soils, Feedlots, Filling stations, Signage, Government purposes, place of instruction, Sub-division of land, Waste disposal, Taxi rank, holding and parking areas, Telecommunication

The key components of the EMF are management guidelines, decision support matrix and spatial screening tool. The EMF will assist the Rustenburg Local Municipality in the decision making and management of the development within the Municipality and give effect to the three main objectives which are to:

- Serve as a spatial screening mechanism for EIA;
- Provide strategic context for EIA applications in the area; and
- Inform strategic spatial planning.

The decision support matrix indicates the compatibility of each activity sub-theme within each of the different environmental management zones. Compatibility is rated as either 'Compatible', 'Potentially Compatible', 'Incompatible', 'Possible Exclusion' or 'Not Applicable'.

Compatibility categories for activity sub-themes

Compatible
'Compatible' means that an activity will be acceptable in a specific management zone. The activity will still require an environmental authorisation, but from a strategic level it is deemed suitable and complimentary to the applicable management zone and a positive authorisation should be highly possible.
Potentially Compatible
'Potentially compatible' means that an activity is only moderately suitable to a specific management zone. The activity will require an environmental authorisation, but from a strategic level it is deemed relatively suitable to the applicable management zone but more information will be needed to make an informed decision.
Incompatible
'Incompatible' means that an activity is not suitable to a specific management zone and should be avoided. An application can still be lodged for an environmental authorisation but from a strategic level it will not be supported. Incompatible activities should be avoided as far as possible.
Possible exclusion
'Possible exclusion' refers to activities that may be excluded from the requirement to obtain an environmental authorisation in this management zone. The specific environmental management guidelines referenced in the 'decision support matrix' should be consulted on the criteria and requirements for a possible exclusion.

The environmental management zones will inform the user on the compatibility of envisaged activities in specific geographical areas or on specific portions of land. If, for example, a portion of land is divided into Zone A (development zone I), Zone D (agriculture zone) and Zone E (biodiversity zone) the decision support matrix will suggest that an activity that might be 'incompatible' with Zones D and E but only has 'potential exemption' in Zone A, rather be considered in Zone A in an effort to minimize the impact of that applicable activity.

Ward by ward Environmental Education and Awareness.

The municipality experience a challenge of environmental pollution in the form of illegal dumping sites, burning of waste, emissions caused by illegal spray painting. The environmental challenges as stated above violates the human rights as enshrined in the constitution of the Republic of South Africa, act 108 of 1996. The National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998, section 4(h) indicates that the community well-being and empowerment must be promoted through environmental education, raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and experience and other appropriate means. To address these problems environmental education and awareness is key. Environmental Education is a process that allows individual to explore environmental issues, engage in problem solving and act to improve the environment.
The Rustenburg Local Municipality has a program that covers all the 45 wards guided by the national calendar of environmental days focusing on, amongst others:

Renewable Energy -Biogas workshops to businesses producing food waste and communities.
Workshops are conducted to capacitate the community on how to harness biogas from biodegradable waste and use it as renewable energy for cooking.

Rustenburg Local Environmental Forum Activities.
The forum is a platform for all the environmental stakeholders in the RLM jurisdiction to share environmental knowledge and experience to help address the environmental challenges.

Climate Change/Global Warming
Climate Change/Global Warming is a long term rise in the average temperature of the Earth's Climate systems that has detrimental effects in life systems. Education and awareness are conducted in the form of workshops, door to door encounter, eco camps wherein information is shared. It should be noted that:

- Climate Change cuts across all the directorates in the municipality.
- It should not be projectized but mainstreamed.

Rustenburg Local Municipality was selected amongst the secondary cities and metros that are to be assisted with the development of climate resilient assessment tool by the Department of Environmental Affairs. It is also imperative for the municipality to establish a multidisciplinary team across all the directorates in order to apply for a climate change funding to implement the mitigation and adaptation projects within the municipality. This will help enable the municipality to be climate change resilient.

Air Quality Management/Air Pollution Control Awareness/Workshops.

One of the key priority areas of the municipality is to maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all through exploring and implementing alternative eco-friendly and conservation interventions to preserve the environment. To achieve this priority, the municipality is implementing the Air Quality Management Program in order to prevent air pollution and ecological degradation. Climate Change awareness and workshops are conducted to prepare the community and schools to implement climate change mitigation and adaptation projects.

The workshop/awareness presentations focus on:

- Climate Change definition
- Causes
- Effects
- Solutions (mitigation and adaptation measures

Arbor

The municipality is adhering to the national calendar of environmental days to observe the National Arbor week. The municipality plan a program of tree planting and awareness campaign for the whole month of September to cover all the 45 wards. Awareness and tree planting is conducted to schools, communities and government facilities. Trees are provided from the municipal nursery with the support of the provincial department of Rural Environment and Agriculture Development and Bojanala Platinum District Municipality. The awareness presentations focus on:

- The background of arbour.
- The importance of trees.
- Tree planting and water conservation methods.
- Tree planting and waste management
- The technical aspect of tree planting.

Conservation of wetlands

Rustenburg Local Municipality adheres to the Ramsar Convention signed on 02 February 1971. Ramsar Convention is the intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources. Wetlands are areas of marsh, fen, peat land or water, whether natural or artificial, permanent or temporary, with water that is static or flowing, fresh, brackish or salt, including areas of marine water, the depth of which

at low tide does not exceed six metres, and may incorporate riparian and coastal zones adjacent to the wetland. Environmental Education and Awareness program covering all wards is planned for schools and communities residing in the areas where wetlands were rehabilitated. The education and awareness program on conservation of wetlands runs for the whole month of February in which school children and community members.

Waste Avoidance, Public Awareness and Participation

The municipality experience a challenge of land pollution in the form of illegal dumping sites, littering and burning of waste. National Environmental Management Act, section 4(h) indicates that the community well-being and empowerment must be promoted through environmental education, raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and experience and other appropriate means. Education and Awareness (E&A) activities in the RLM in respect of waste management services are conducted through the following activities:

- Workshops
- Awareness sessions
- Clean-up campaigns
- Exhibitions
- Eco-camps
- Observation of environmental calendar days relevant to waste management
- Recycling and upcycling
- Composting
- Waste separation at source
- Support on any other waste management programmes ongoing at schools and community.

Water Conservation Education and Awareness.

It is very important that the municipality reduces water demand through the implementation of water conservation and water demand management initiatives to ensure a sustainable supply of water for the future and result in significant long term financial savings for the municipality and the public. Education and Awareness plays a pivotal role in capacitating the community on water conservation. The Education and Awareness program is implemented for schools, community and government institutions. The following activities are implemented:

- Water audit in schools.
- War on leaks.
- Indigenous Tree planting and water conservation.

Sanitation

The municipality in conjunction with the Department of Water Affairs developed a sanitation backlog eradication acceleration strategy.

Sanitation education and awareness is conducted focusing on:
Sanitation backlog eradication strategy.
Commemoration of world toilet day.
Water saving mechanisms in the toilet cisterns.
Education and Awareness on sewer blockages.

Enforcement of Rustenburg Air Pollution By-Law and Waste Management By-Law

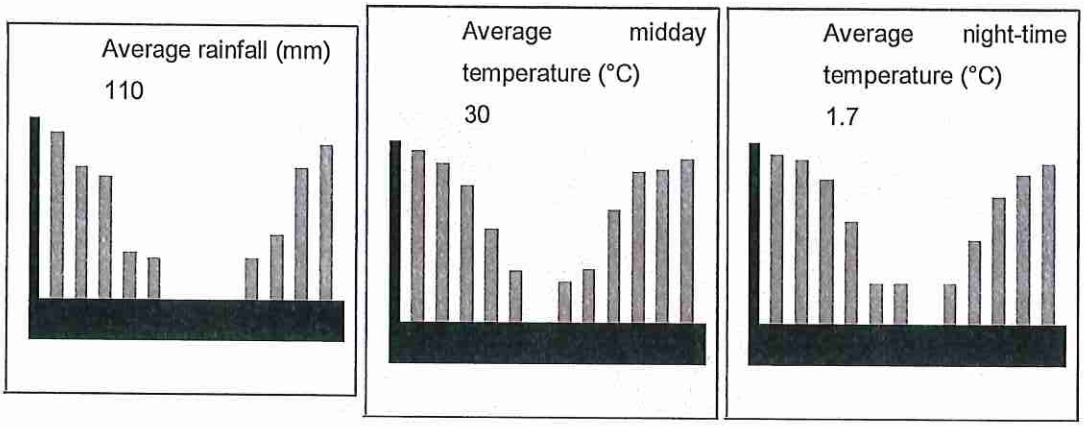
Rustenburg Local Municipality has *promulgated the Rustenburg Local Municipality Air Pollution By-Law gazette No 7383 of 2014* and the Rustenburg Municipality Integrated Waste Management By-Law Provincial Notice 105 of 2016 gazette No 7653 respectively as measures to comply with the constitution of RSA and to be climate change resilient. Environmental Education and Awareness are conducted to the schools, communities and other institutions to make them aware of these By-laws and their implications. Enforcement of these By-laws follows the education and awareness and it is done in the form of issuing abatement notices and admission of guilt fines with the assistance of the Directorate: Public Safety. The enforcement is conducted weekly and as an when complaints are reported.

Education and Awareness on illegal disposal of medical waste

The Rustenburg Local Municipality realised that there is an ongoing illegal disposal of medical waste within its jurisdiction. The measures that the municipality has put in place include quarterly meetings with the medical facilities to share knowledge and experience on the Environmental Legislation governing medical waste and their implications. The medical facilities are obliged to submit their medical waste disposal slips on monthly basis to monitor compliance with legislation. The municipality through the Directorate: Community Development, in collaboration with stake holders such as Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, RLM Public Safety and SAPS conduct quarterly loco inspections in medical facilities like Hospitals, Clinics, Drs Surgeries, hospice, old age homes to ensure compliance.

Rustenburg Local Municipality Climatic Conditions.

Rustenburg normally receives about 513mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occurring mainly during mid-summer. The City normally receives the lowest rainfall (0mm) in June and the highest (101mm) in January. The monthly distribution of average daily maximum temperatures (centre chart below) shows that the average midday temperatures for Rustenburg range from 19.3^{0}C in June to 29.4^{0}C in January. The region is the coldest during July when the mercury drops to 1.7^{0}C on average during the night.



Data Source: South African Weather Services (2017-18).

Temperature and Rainfall

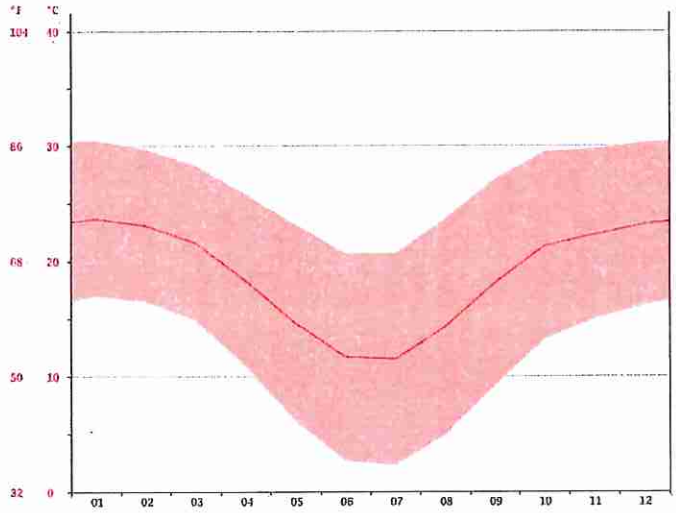
Rustenburg weather by month // weather averages.

	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Avg. Temperature (°C)	23.7	23.1	21.6	18.3	14.6	11.7	11.5	14.3	18.1	21.3	22.3	23.2
Min. Temperature (°C)	17	16.5	14.9	10.9	6.1	2.7	2.3	4.9	9.2	13.2	15	16.2
Max. Temperature (°C)	30.5	29.7	28.3	25.8	23.2	20.7	20.7	23.7	27.1	29.4	29.7	30.3
Avg. Temperature (°F)	74.7	73.6	70.9	64.9	58.3	53.1	52.7	57.7	64.6	70.3	72.1	73.8
Min. Temperature (°F)	62.6	61.7	58.8	51.6	43.0	36.9	36.1	40.8	48.6	55.8	59.0	61.2
Max. Temperature (°F)	86.9	85.5	82.9	78.4	73.8	69.3	69.3	74.7	80.8	85.1	85.5	86.6
Precipitation / Rainfall (mm)	117	100	95	37	18	9	7	8	18	55	86	113

Data Source: South African Weather Services (2017-18).

Average Rustenburg temperatures

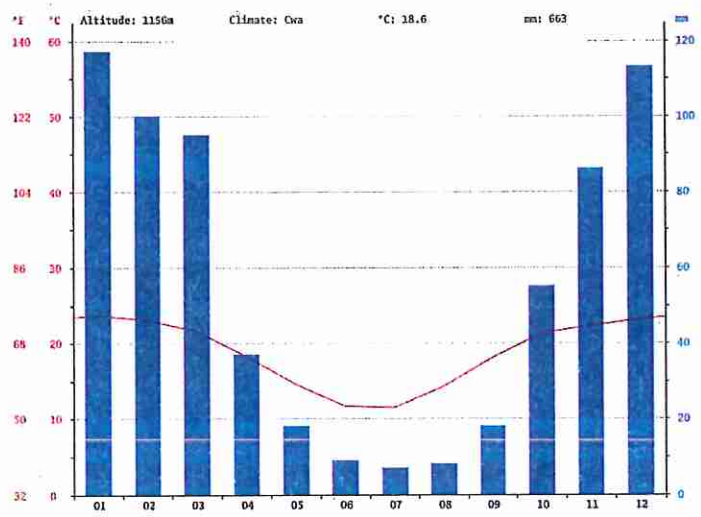
At an average temperature of 23.7 °C, January and December are the hottest months of the year. July has the lowest average temperature of the year. It is 11.5 °C as shown in the graph below.



Data Source: South African Weather Services (2017-18).

Rainfall

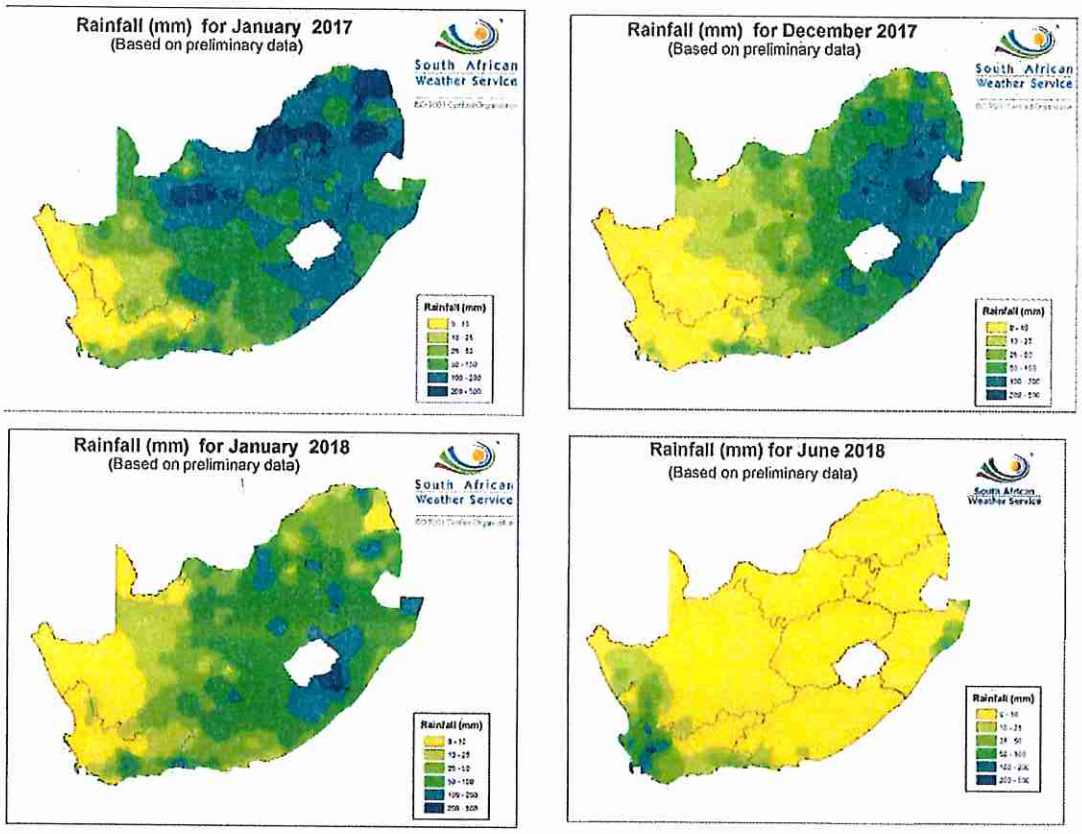
The total mean monthly rainfall for the municipality is estimated at 513mm, precipitation is the lowest in July, with an average of 7 mm (SAWS.2017/18), with an average of 117 mm, the most precipitation falls in January as shown in the graph below. The highest rainfall occurs in January (118mm), moderate to high rainfall characterises the month of February, March, November December). The lowest rainfall occurs in July. From an air quality perspective, the winter period, especially June and July offer the conditions necessary for pollution episodes. These months have low rainfall and low temperatures, factors which could create less turbulence and possible atmospheric stability. In the event of such stable atmospheric conditions, pollutants could be trapped degrading air quality.



Data Source: South African Weather Services (2017-18).

Fig. 5 Data Source: South African Weather Services(2017-18).

Below are the maps showing rainfall distribution around South Africa for certain months.



Air Quality

In terms of Section 24 of the Constitution, as well as the National Environmental Air Quality Act (AQA, 2004), government is enjoined to ensure that South Africans are breathing air that is not harmful to their health and wellbeing. Section 8 of the AQA provides for national monitoring and information management standards and stipulates that the Minister must, in the National Framework, establish national standards for Municipalities and Provinces to monitor ambient air quality and to report compliance with ambient air quality standards as requirements.

The Minister declared the Waterberg–Bojanala Priority Area (WBPA) on 15 June 2012 as the third National Priority Area (DEA, 2012a), crossing the North West and Limpopo provincial borders. The WBPA is located in the North West of South Africa and covers an area of 67 837 km2. Rustenburg Local Municipality is one of the nine Local Municipalities (LM) included in the WBPA. The development of the Waterberg -Bojanala Priority Area Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) and the Rustenburg Air

Quality Management Plan which is under review have contributed much to the improvement of the Rustenburg Ambient status.

The Rustenburg Air quality at any specific location depends on the interaction between sources of the pollutants and the action of the weather, in either transporting or dispersing the polluting particles and gases. In circumstances where the sources and patterns (spatial and temporal) of air pollutant emissions remain relatively constant, the factor of greatest importance in determining day-to-day increases or decreases in the overall concentration of air pollution is the weather

The Rustenburg Local Municipality has three operational Air Monitoring Stations that are situated at Boitekong Library, Reatile Educational Centre at Tlhabane and Marikana at Regional Community Centre. The following pollutants and meteorological parameters are monitored on a continuous basis:

- Pollutants: Sulphur dioxide (SO2), Nitric oxide (NO), Nitrogen dioxide (NO2), Nitrogen oxides (NOx), Carbon monoxide (CO), Ozone (O3), Particulate matter (PM10) and Particulate matter (PM2.5)
- Meteorological parameters: Wind speed and direction, ambient temperature, relative humidity, atmospheric pressure and global radiation

The location of the Rustenburg Local Municipality (RLM) air quality monitoring network stations is represented by the below figure.

Ambient Air Quality Report: November 2018

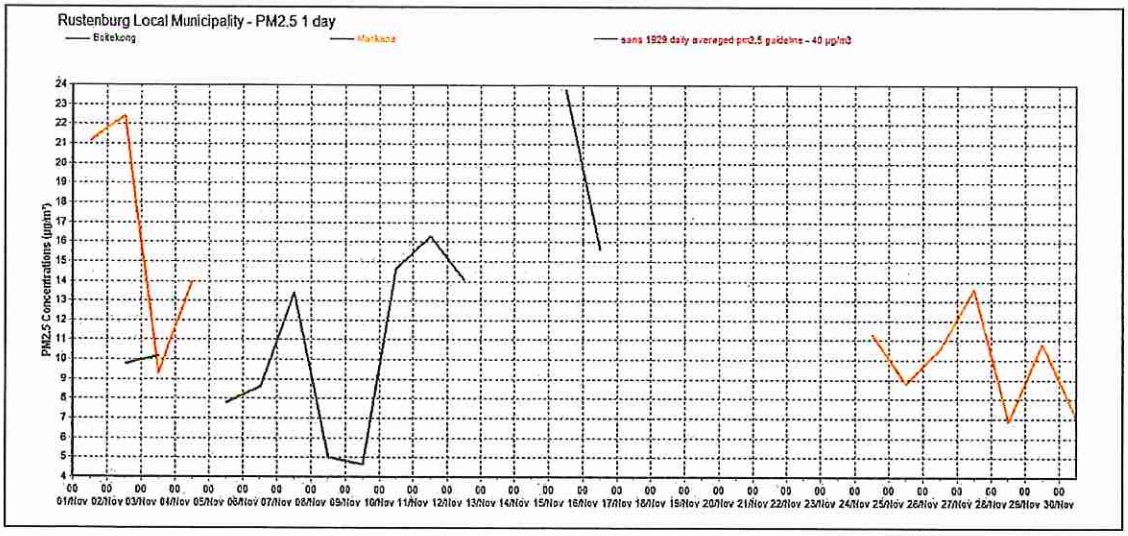
The report below shows the pollutants and meteorological data monitored by the RLM Air Monitoring network.

Particulate Matter ($PM_{2.5}$)

The $PM_{2.5}$ data statistics are presented in Table 1, below. The average, maximum and minimum $PM_{2.5}$ daily concentrations are captured in this table. This information is based on a daily averaged data. **No exceedances** of the $PM_{2.5}$ daily average NAAQS was recorded during this reporting period.

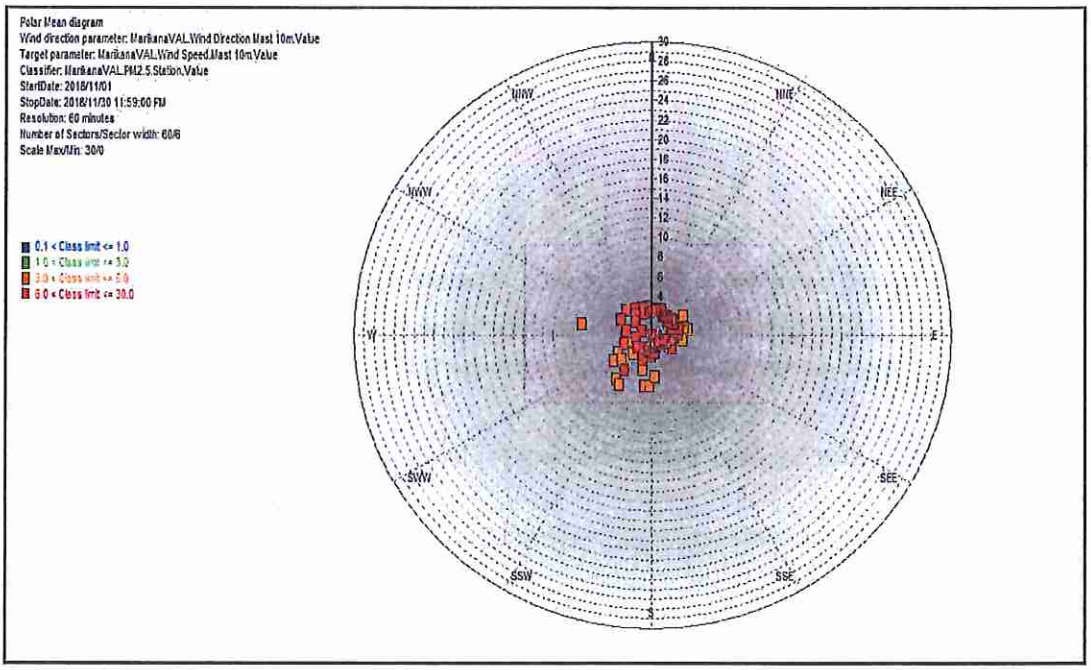
Data statistics for $PM_{2.5}$ daily average concentrations for the RLM monitoring network stations for November 2018.

tion	Particulate Matter – $PM_{2.5}$ (µg/m³)			
	Average	Max	Min	Date of Max
Boitekong	11.99	23.79	4.65	15/11/2018
Marikana	12.35	22.44	6.88	01/11/2018



$PM_{2.5}$ daily average concentrations at the RLM monitoring network stations for November 2018

A $PM_{2.5}$ pollution rose is presented for the Boitekong station, below. The monitoring station is situated in the middle of the diagram. In addition, the diagram illustrates the direction / origin of wind in relation to the monitoring station, and therefore the sector—based contribution of the pollutant on the air quality at the monitoring site. It is clear that $PM_{2.5}$ may be associated with all wind sectors.



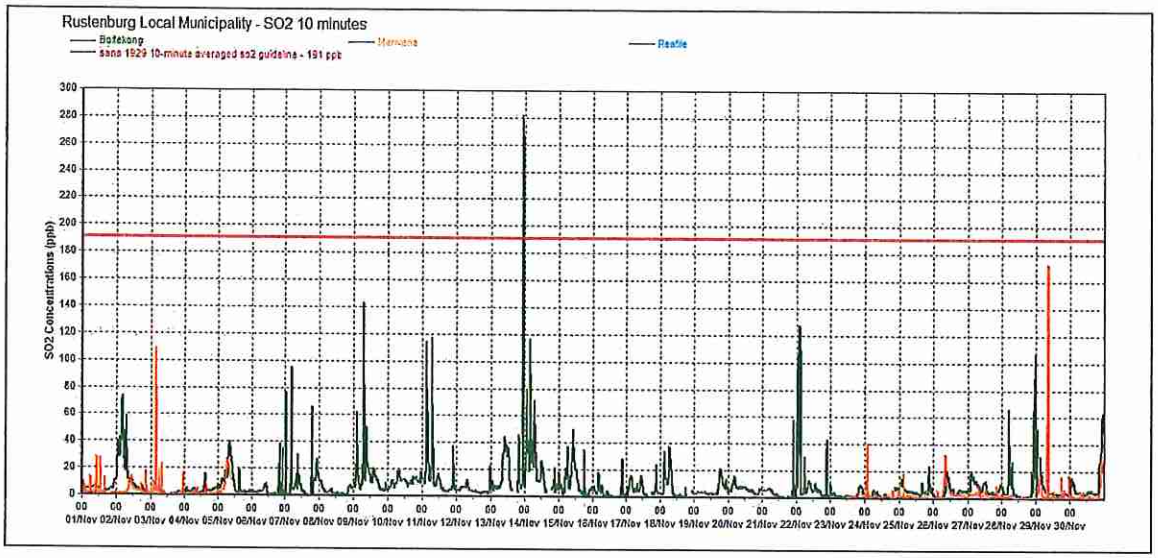
Pollution rose for $PM_{2.5}$ at the Marikana station during November 2018.

Sulphur Dioxide (SO_2)

The data statistics for the SO_2 10-minute average data is presented in Table2, below. The average, maximum and minimum are presented. Figure 6 below displays 10-minute averaged SO_2 data collected for the reporting period at the RLM monitoring network stations. As indicated in Tables 4 to 9 and the graph below, **1 exceedance** of the 191-ppb 10-minute guideline was recorded at the Boitekong station during this reporting period.

Statistical analysis of 10-minute averaged SO_2 data for November 2018.

Station	Sulphur dioxide – SO_2 (ppb)			
	Average	Max	Min	Date (Time) of Max
Boitekong	8.40	281.91	0.00	13/11/2018 (10:50)
Marikana	3.25	173.23	0.06	29/11/2018 (08:20)
Reatile	-	-	-	-



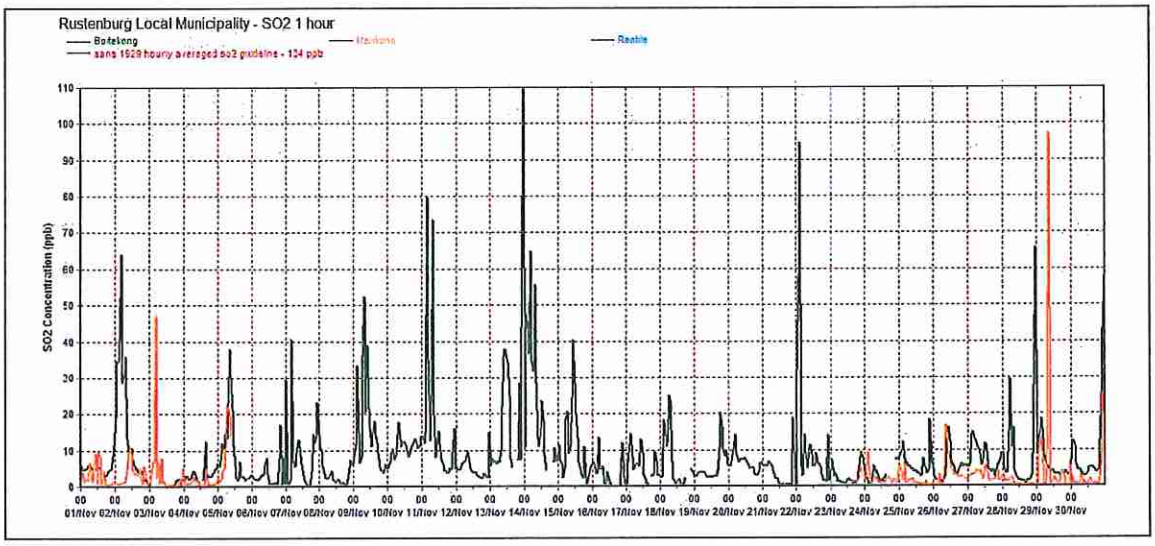
SO2 ten-minute average concentrations at the RLM monitoring network stations for November 2018.

The data statistics for the SO_2 hourly average data are presented in Table 3, below. The average, maximum and minimum are presented. Figure 7 below displays hourly averaged SO_2 data collected for the reporting period at the RLM monitoring network stations.

As indicated in Tables 3 to 6 and the graph below, **no exceedances** of the 134-ppb hourly guideline were recorded during this reporting period.

Statistical analysis of hourly averaged SO_2 data for November 2018.

Station	Sulphur dioxide – SO_2 (ppb)			
	Average	Max	Min	Date (Time) of Max
Boitekong	8.40	109.78	0.00	13/11/2018 (11:00)
Marikana	3.25	97.22	0.15	29/11/2018 (08:00)
Reatile	-	-	-	-

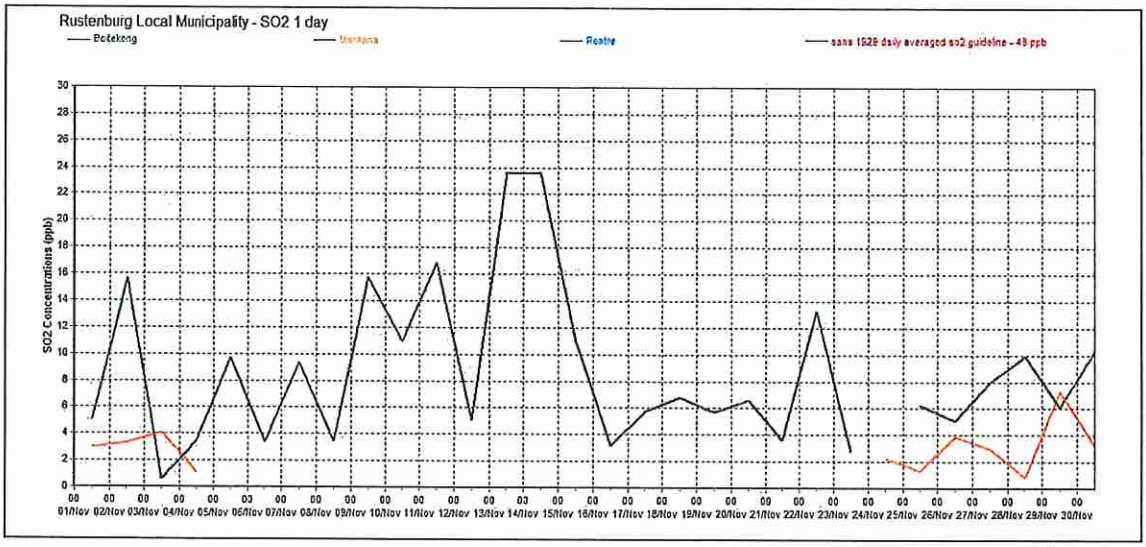


SO_2 hourly average concentrations at the RLM monitoring network stations for November 2018.

The data statistics for the SO_2 daily average data are presented in Table 4, below. The graph below displays daily averaged SO_2 data collected for the reporting period at the RLM monitoring network stations. As presented in Tables 4 to 9 as well as the graph below, **no exceedances** of the 48-ppb daily guideline were recorded during this reporting period.

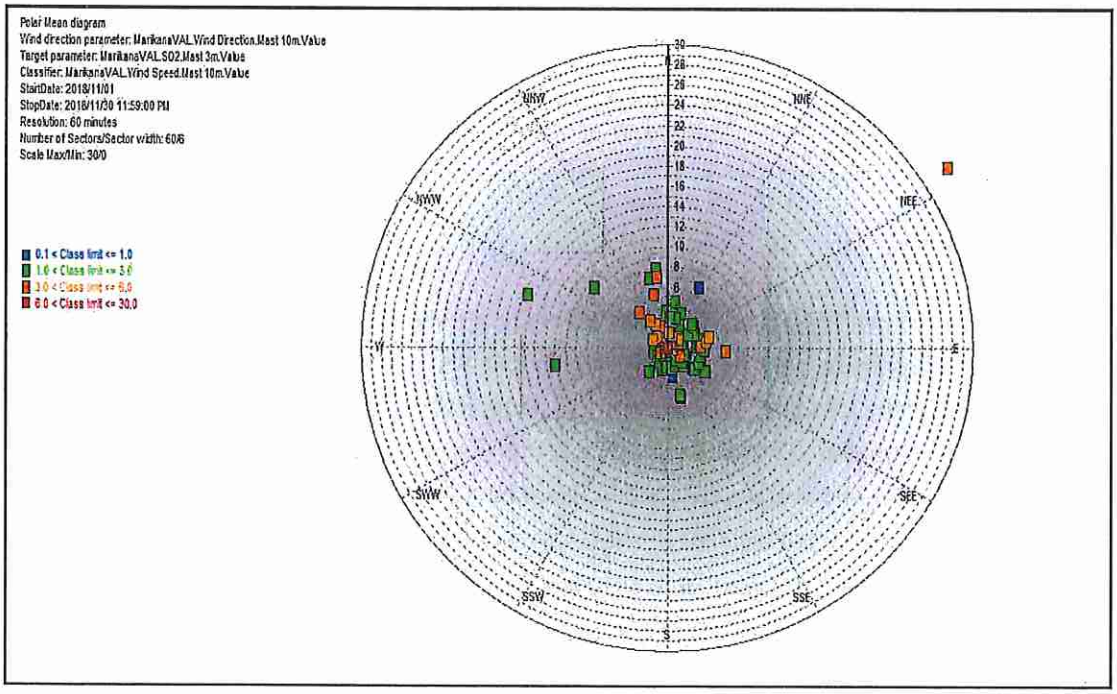
Statistical analysis of the SO_2 daily averaged data November 2018.

Station	Sulphur dioxide – SO_2 (ppb)			
	Average	Max	Min	Date of Max
Boitekong	8.64	23.60	0.60	13/11/2018
Marikana	3.03	7.28	0.82	29/11/2018
Reatile	-	-	-	-



SO_2 daily average concentrations at the RLM monitoring network stations for November 2018.

Pollution roses for SO_2 are presented below. The monitoring station is situated in the middle of the diagram. In addition, the diagrams illustrate the direction / origin of wind in relation to the monitoring station, and therefore the sector—based contribution of the pollutant on the air quality at the monitoring site.



SO_2 rose for the Marikana station for November 2018

Matter of importance: The report shows less pollutants exceedances throughout month of November 2018, which reiterates the improvement in the RLM ambient air.

The establishment of the new National Air Quality Indicator Stations Project (NAQI) in June 2018

The Department of Environmental Affairs, considering the current challenges with most of the Air Quality Monitoring Stations around the country, took a resolution on the 2nd June 2018 to assist some of the Provinces and Municipalities by outsourcing the overall management of the stations with a view to have a consistent reporting of National Air Quality Index going forward. Forty-two (42) stations measuring PM10, PM2.5 and SO2 from the financial year 2015/16 were identified for the reporting of the National Air Quality Index across the country, of which four (4) National Air Quality Index Stations are in North West.

Marikana Air Quality Monitoring Station is one of the four stations in the North West chosen for the National Air Quality Index Project for a period of five years. Department of Environmental Affairs, on behalf of the Rustenburg Local Municipality, is carrying out activities relating to the project, which include, but are not limited to the following:

- Installation and commissioning of dual Particulate Matter and Sulphur Dioxide
- Routine operation, maintenance and calibration, data management and reporting

This serves as a saving for the Municipality and assurance of a consistent data validation.
The overarching statement: The current levels of air pollution in the Rustenburg Local Municipality are no longer excessive, this is an indicative of an improvement in the quality of ambient air (reviewed RLM EMF)

Waste Management

The RLM is committed to providing an equitable, efficient, and effective integrated waste management service within its jurisdictional area, which is sustainable and is in accordance with the internationally accepted waste hierarchy principle. Through this, the municipality will ensure that waste is minimised, recycled, re-used and treated in accordance with national statutory requirements and policy, and that appropriate mechanisms and technologies are in place for the environmentally acceptable and cost-effective collection, transport and disposal of waste. Oversee and preside over the maintenance of all facilities/properties in the municipality and ensuring that they adhere to set high standards and compatibility and also that are well kept at all times.

The municipality gives their assurance that waste facilities operated or used by the municipality will be permitted and operated according to the DWAF Minimum Requirements and that they will constantly

strive for the best standards in waste management. RLM currently renders the following waste management services:

- Domestic waste removal
- Business/Industrial waste removal
- Street cleansing and litter picking service
- Garden refuse removal services
- Waste Transfer
- Waste Treatment
- Landfill operation services
- Contracted services.
- Education and Awareness

Waste Transportation

Waste transportation is the major challenge within the collection and transportation of waste, to improve the availability of vehicles the following needs to be undertaken:

- Improved maintenance
- Acquire mechanics for waste vehicles
- Replacement of heavy waste management vehicles every five years
- Appropriately choose and utilize vehicles
- Train drivers
- Manage and control Fleet.

The Municipality **has started with the** establishment of its status quo regarding the number of clients that **do not** pay for collection service received. This was also an Audit finding and it's receiving a serious attention. Furthermore, the procurement of new fleet is at an advanced stage with other units already having white and yellow fleet.

Required tools and equipment's

The following equipment are needed for effective service delivery of waste collection services:

- Compactor trucks
- Load luggers
- Roll On Roll Off Trucks
- Grab Truck
- Crew cabs

- Bakkies
- Tipper trucks
- Front End Loaders
- Bobcats and trailers

Alternative service delivery mechanism

In the process of improving services, the Rustenburg Local municipality has considered alternative service delivery mechanisms. The current service provider for wet refuse collection, Katlego Baphiring has been contracted from 01 April 2017 and the contract is coming to an end on the 31st March 2019. A new service provider(s) will be appointed in April 2019 to begin with the provision of wet refuse removal services. The municipality has been providing waste services, mainly to informal settlements and rural household. As a result, waste services will be rendered in all wards through cooperatives model throughout the 45 wards. To date, two Cooperatives have been appointed and approximately 88 Cooperatives are to be appointed.

Waste Governance

Waste Tariff Policy

A waste management tariff policy has been developed by RLM to align with operational cost, council's policies on assessment rates, Bad Debt write off policy and the Indigent policy for appropriate waste tariff setting for RLM. This will assist with cost recovery and the sustainability of waste management services. Addition to tariff aspects will be made in the 2019/20 financial year. New tariffs to be reflected in the tariff book will include, Licensing of private commercial waste collectors and renewal of such licenses.

Integrated Waste Management Plan

The final IWMP was approved by Council on the 29th May 2018. Subsequent to the approval, Council resolved that the IWMP be submitted to the Member of Executive Council for the North West Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development. RLM submitted an approved IWMP to the MEC for READ and is still awaiting an endorsement.

Waste Management By-Laws

The RLM's Integrated Waste Management By-law was approved and subsequently promulgated on the 07th June 2016. The larger portion of enforcing the By-law is done by the Law enforcement officers from the Directorate Public Safety. There are portion that Waste Management Unit are obliged to enforce

jointly with the Directorate Public Safety. For the purpose of generating income through By-law enforcement, Waste Management unit will be implementing Chapter 7, section 45 of the Rustenburg Integrated Waste Management By-law of 2016,

1) No person may provide commercial services for the collection and transportation of waste in the municipal area, unless such person is registered with the Municipality and obtained a license authorising these waste management activities.
2) An application for a licence must be submitted in writing in a format or a form prescribed by the Municipality including such information as the Municipality requires and the prescribed fee and, unless subsection (3) applies, the Municipality's prior approval for the collection and transportation of waste.
3) Any person already providing these commercial service at the commencement of this by-law, must within ninety days of such commencement date submit an application for accreditation in terms of sub-section (1), failing which the person will as from the date that the said ninety days' period expired no longer be able to render such services in the municipal area.
4) The Municipality will consider and grant or reject the application submitted in terms of sub-section (3), within 30 days of its receipt having regard to the health, safety and environmental record of the applicant and the nature of the commercial service to be provided and will furnish written reasons if such application is rejected.
5) Registration as a service provider does not entitle the service provider to render a waste removal service without the Municipality's approval for an exemption in terms of section 68 of this by-law.

Having considered the process above and minimal compliance to the Rustenburg Municipality Integrated Waste Management By-law, the Waste Management will undertake the following processes:

ACTIVITY	RESPONSIBLE PERSON	PERIOD
Identification of All commercial private service providers within the Municipal jurisdiction.	Unit Manager Waste Management Section Manager Refuse Removal Section Manager Landfills	02 January 2018 – 31 March 2019
Invitation, education and awareness, notices on Chapter 7 of the Waste Management By-law.	Unit Manager Waste Management Waste Education and Awareness Officer Communication Office	05 December 2018 to 31 March 2019.
Benchmarking and development of Tariff/s for Licensing of Private Service Providers as per Section 45 of the RLM Integrated Waste By-law.	Unit Manager Waste Management Services	30 November 2018 – 31 March 2019
Formal issuing of registration forms as recognised service providers by the Municipality.	Unit Manager Waste Management Services	02 January 2019 to 30 June 2019

Enforcement of Chapter 7 of the RLM Integrated Waste Management By-law	Unit Manager Waste Management All Section Managers (Waste) Education and Awareness Officer EMIs	01 July 2019 on-going
Implementation of Licensing of Commercial/private service providers tariff/s 1. Annual Registration and Licensing of Commercial Private waste collectors from RLM (It's a once off payment, then followed by the renewal fee annually). 2. Annual Registration and licensing of Commercial/Private waste collectors from Outside the RLM jurisdiction 3. Renewal of Annual Licenses for Commercial/Private waste collectors.	Waste Management administration Office BTO	01 July 2019

Refuse removal services

The greater Rustenburg area has approximately 120 000 service points of which approximately 70 000 as well as the CBD area is serviced by EPWP contractors. Areas not receiving basic waste Management services include:

- RDP houses – Newly developed houses are not yet receiving services
- Informal Settlements
- Rural areas

The outsourcing of the waste management collection services has assisted the unit in regionalizing the service and reducing the transport and monitoring cost for the municipality.

The **RLM** and **Royal Bafokeng Nation** has entered into agreements for the extension of Waste Management services (Refuse removal and disposal) and the financing thereof to the villages falling under the Royal Bafokeng Nation's Area of Jurisdiction

Business waste collection

The collection of waste services from Business premises should be serviced through a public- private partnership, whereby service provider register with the municipality to collect waste from business premises. Business premises are then allowed to choose whether to be serviced by the RLM or Private sector registered with RLM. And the disposal cost be recovered through a weighbridge cost at the landfill. Furthermore, the verification of businesses with or without waste storage areas and waste accounts is underway and it's expected to be completed by the 30th June 2019. Any discrepancies

found will therefore be corrected so that in the beginning of the new financial year, correct charges are implemented.

Garden Waste Collection System

A systematic schedule has not yet been developed for the collection of garden waste for composting in order to reduce the waste stream that goes to landfill site. RLM currently collects only two bags of garden waste per household and as a result, residents resort to disposing waste illegally. Currently garden waste is disposed at the dedicated area at the Waterval Landfill Site. With the implementation of STRUMOSA drop off area, expected to be operational in March 2019, residents will be allowed their garden waste free of charge. RLM further intends undergoing an expression of interest for the management of garden waste at the Waterval landfill.

Service Delivery Backlogs

Twenty percent (20 %) of areas are currently not receiving services **due to low resources, for rural areas, rapid growth of informal settlement and low cost recovery.**

Waste management service in Rural, informal and traditional areas

Farm lands and newly developed areas are some of the areas currently not receiving services, a provision has been made in the wet refuse removal bid to allow for extension of scope to cover newly developed areas. Alternative service delivery mechanisms will be explored to render services to informal settlements, the services can be implemented either through cooperatives or youth nor women service providers or expanded public works programme (EPWP) or Cooperative model.

Community Awareness on Waste Minimisation Strategies

Separation at Source Pilot Project

Section 23(2) of the Waste Act (Act 59 of 2008), requires municipalities to provide receptacles for recyclables that are accessible to the public. Furthermore, the National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS) advocates for separation at source i.e. separation of recyclables from general household points where the waste is generated (household). One of the 2016 targets relating to the promotion of waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste is that all the metropolitan municipalities, secondary cities and large towns should have established separation at source.

In partnership with the **National Department of Environmental Affairs and** other local stakeholders, there is a need to conducting door to door awareness campaigns; the purpose of the campaigns is to educate the community on how to properly separate their waste.

Separation at source strategies involve:

- Use external service providers

- Public Private Partnership, i.e extend properties body corporate (REMAX) - cleaning and sorting recyclables to other areas.
- Private buyback/sorting facilities, accommodate present recyclers
- Localised marketing, communication, education and awareness strategy
- Establishment drop off facilities in Tlhabane, Waterval East,
- •Establish local sorting facilities (MRFs)
- •Enforce separation at source (Waste Management By-laws)
- •Formalise reclaimers/waste pickers
- •Consider existing recycling facilities when planning for sorting/ buyback facilities.

There is a need for introducing separation at source in school, though recyclables are less.

Number of Jobs created

Through the community based programme, **the waste collection contractor** has appointed **eighty six (86)** task rated employees and are reported to Department of Public Works for full time equivalent and work opportunities created by the Municipality. There is also 150 expanded public works programme beneficiaries, whose contracts started in August 2017 and ending July 2019.

Key Projects 2019/20

The following projects have been identified as key for successful implementation of waste management in Rustenburg, but have not been implemented due to financial constraints.

Capital Projects	
Waste Recycling Village at Waterval Landfill site	R 23 000 000.00
Recyclables buy-back centres	R 20 000 000.00
Waterval Bio-gas project	R 18 000 000.00
Material Recovery Facility Phase 1	R 35 000 000.00
STRUMOSA Phase 2	R12 000 000.00
Marikana Waste Transfer Station (MIG Funded)	R15 000 000.00
Professional Fees (5%)	R30 000 000.00

WASTE MANAGEMENT

The final IWMP was approved by Council on the 29th May 2018. Subsequent to the approval, Council resolved that the IWMP be submitted to the Member of Executive Council for the North West

Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development. RLM submitted an approved IWMP to the MEC for READ and is still awaiting an endorsement.

The IWMP can be summarised as follows:

Key issues in the IWMP

Key Issues of Current Waste Management System	Overall Targets and Key Indicators	Recommendations for Concept Development
Institutional/ organisational set-up		
Governance and administrative practices	Overall Target: Improvement of efficiency and effectiveness of provision of SWM services Key Indicator: unit cost - cost and performance monitoring data)	Restructuring and re-organisation if the RLM WMU towards a ring-fenced business unit
Management optimisation practices		Implementation of HR Strategy
Operational optimisation practices		
Skills development and capacity building		
Performance management and monitoring		
Financing		
Reduction of current costs	Overall Target: Sustainable financing of SWM services Key Indicator: cost reflective tariffs and financial ring-fencing)	Reduction of labour costs
		Focussing on core functions and outsourcing of other functions
		Moratorium on new appointments (especially re lower level positions)
Securing of budget for additional expenditures (Waterval operation, new cells at Waterval Landfill, closure of landfills etc.)		Imposing gate fees at Waterval Landfill that goes into ring-fenced fund to be used for expenditures of the WMU
		Cooperation with producers/ producer organisations to fund awareness and education
		Assessment of possibilities for external funding
Implementation of cost covering tariffs (cost centres, ring fencing, gate fees)		Financial ring-fencing of the WMU
Key Issues of Current Waste Management System	**Overall Targets and Key Indicators**	**Recommendations for Concept Development**
Waste collection		
General challenges in service provision (especially for services provided by the RLM WMU itself)	Overall Target: Improvement of waste collection services Key Indicator: amount of collected waste according to weigh bridge data	Taking over responsibility for provision of waste collection services in entire RLM area
		Consolidation of provision of waste collection services by improving performance and cost efficiency
		Conduction of assessment of internal service delivery vs. outsourced service delivery
Street cleaning		
Services rely on EPWP and CWP workers (administrational efforts)	Overall Target: Improvement of street cleaning	Street sweeping in CBD shall be done through cooperatives consisting of EPWP workers

	Key Indicator: satisfaction of residents	Areas outside Rustenburg Town shall be done by CWP workers or through cooperatives
Waste transfer and transport		
Cost coverage for transfer and transport	Overall Target: Improvement of logistics for delivery and transport of waste Key Indicator: total amount of waste delivered through Marikana transfer station according to weigh bridge data	Discuss with Lonmin, whether they can include the operation of Marikana Refuse Transfer Station in their SLP
		Operation of Marikana Refuse Transfer Station
Options for private waste deliveries		Support implementation of drop-off points run by the private sector or cooperatives
Key Issues of Current Waste Management System	**Overall Targets and Key Indicators**	**Recommendations for Concept Developme**
Recycling and waste treatment		
Recyclables disposed at the landfill sites	Overall Target: Diversion of recyclables from landfill sites Key Indicator: 25% of recyclables related to amount of overall recyclables in collected waste is diverted	Facilitation of recycling initiatives driven by the private sector (e.g. by providing public space for drop-off points)
		Investigation of possibilities for cooperation with the private sector for collection of recyclables and green waste
		Follow-up on grant funding options for establishing of MRF at Waterval Landfill
High amount of organic waste (garden/ green waste and organic fraction of household waste)	Overall Target: Diversion of organic waste from landfill site Key Indicator: at least one pilot project for organic waste treatment is implemented	Establishing of green waste composting at the Waterval Landfill and implementation of respective tariff mechanisms
		Implementation of separate collection of food waste (if food waste treatment plant is constructed and operational costs allow)
		Establishing of centralised biomass pre-treatment facility for food waste at Waterv landfill site (if grant funding is available)
Disposal		
Waste disposal on different landfills	Overall Target: Landfilling of waste according to legal standards Key Indicator: Waterval landfill is operated according to license; old landfills are closed and rehabilitated	Effective operation of Waterval landfill;
Funding for landfill closure and rehabilitation (Townlands Landfill, communal landfill sites and old borrow pits)		Closure and rehabilitation of old landfills, dumpsites and borrow pits (after securing funds)
Key Issues of Current Waste Management System	**Overall Targets and Key Indicators**	**Recommendations for Concept Development**
Public participation and awareness raising		

Prioritisation of awareness raising measures to be implemented	Overall Target: Increase public awareness and engagement of population with regard to waste management and protection of environment Key Indicator: implementation of communication strategy	Public participation and awareness raising measures to be undertaken in partnership with producers and mines and other relevant stakeholders
		Use of social media and SMS broadcasting for awareness raising
Clarification of responsibilities (staff and budget)		Retain position of education and awareness
		Use of existing staff and capacity as well as cooperation with staff of other units (in working group)

2018/19 PROJECTS TO BE IMPLEMENTED

1. STRUMOSA

As approved by Council and due to budgetary constraints, STRUMOSA will be implemented in phases as per the table below:

2018-19 FY (Phase 1- Accommodate only Green Waste from March 2019)		**2019-20 FY (Phase 2- Add Dry Waste Recycling)**		**2021- FY (Phase 3- Education & Beneficiation Centre)**
Activity	**Budget (R)**	**Activity**	**Budget (R)**	**Funding still to be secured**
Fencing (RLM) February 2019	R 160 000	Ramp	R800 000	
Shade (RLM) March 2019	R100 000	Paving	R 1 500 000	
Paving (1st phase)	R100 000	Equipment (Chipper, weighbridge, etc)	R 3 500 000	
Temporary guard room & toilet (RLM)	R40 000	Recycling Station	R 3 500 000	
28 Cubic meter bins (RLM)	R200 000	Offices and Ablution facilities	R 1 800 000	
Composter (Pvt Sector)	R 50 000			
Total	**R 650 000**		**R 10 300 800**	

2. Townlands Waste to Energy Project

The Municipality has advertised for an expression in interest for the rehabilitation of Townlands Landfill Site in 2017. Upon exhausting all SCM processes, SPU Energy Fields was appointed for the

implementation of the project. The project will be implemented over a 10 years period and as a result, the Municipality is obliged to fulfil the requirements of Section 33 of the Municipal Finance Management Act, Act 56 of 2003. The process is already at advanced stage. The public meeting will be held in February 2019.

3.Licensing of commercial private waste collectors

In terms of Chapter 7, section 45 of the Rustenburg Integrated Waste Management By-law of 2016,

1) No person may provide commercial services for the collection and transportation of waste in the municipal area, unless such person is registered with the Municipality and obtained a license authorising these waste management activities.
2) An application for a licence must be submitted in writing in a format or a form prescribed by the Municipality including such information as the Municipality requires and the prescribed fee and, unless subsection (3) applies, the Municipality's prior approval for the collection and transportation of waste.
3) Any person already providing these commercial service at the commencement of this by-law, must within ninety days of such commencement date submit an application for accreditation in terms of sub-section (1), failing which the person will as from the date that the said ninety days' period expired no longer be able to render such services in the municipal area.
4) The Municipality will consider and grant or reject the application submitted in terms of sub-section (3), within 30 days of its receipt having regard to the health, safety and environmental record of the applicant and the nature of the commercial service to be provided and will furnish written reasons if such application is rejected.
5) Registration as a service provider does not entitle the service provider to render a waste removal service without the Municipality's approval for an exemption in terms of section 68 of this by-law.

4. Green Economy Initiatives

The Municipality is collaborating with the University of Lahti (Finland) to acquire knowledge of technology solutions, business and operational models for recycling and materials recovery as part of the outcomes of Work Package 2.

That training and knowledge sharing enables the municipality to deliver on the critical mandate of sustainable local economic development for local SMMEs. Another benefit for stakeholders (government, business and private sector) will be to learn and apply international best-practices in creating new and sustainable green economies.

LED has identified the green economy sector as a potential sector to help diversify the local economy

The Directorate has further identified the municipal waste as a resource to drive the development of the green economy and to promote the development of small medium and micro enterprises in Rustenburg. The initiative is also intended to attract new technologies for other green economy initiatives such as alternative energy production.

Furthermore, International best-practice points to the need to address sustainable resource management and environmental awareness in production and consumption of goods. Additional support can be sourced from various industries, sector departments and funding organizations to ensure that this proposed programme is successful.

5. Waterval Landfill Site

The Rustenburg Local Municipality has finalized installation of the Weighbridge software on the 02 March 2018 for the collection of waste disposal fee as per the tariffs approved by council in May 2017. This system assist in generating revenue for the maintenance of the Landfill site and to subsidies other services within the Municipality. The collection is done in the form of smart cards (pre-paid system) to ensure a bankable revenue generation.

- Currently waste management unit is in the process of reaching out to all site users to purchase cards and register with the Municipality for waste disposal purposes at the Waterval Landfill site.
- In addition a database of reclaimers at Waterval Landfill site was done and the screening and vetting of all reclaimers by the Department of Home Affairs and Public safety will be carried out in two stages to formalize reclamation activities on site. The operation for this exercise is scheduled to take place on the 29th March 2018.
- The illegitimate entrance of the landfill site that was a concern to the Provincial Environmental Authorities has also been fenced.
- All recyclable waste is been paid for by the buyers at the landfill.

FUTURE PLANS FOR THE WATERVAL LANDFILL SITE:

1. Development of Material Recovery Facility (MRF) and Composting Facility (CF) at Waterval Landfill site.

DCD is planning to develop MRF and CF as part of the license components to reduce the amount of waste disposed off on the landfill and save the air space of the site. Currently the reclaimed recyclables from the site are treated on a small scale recycling facility operated by the operator of the site but the material is just too much for the facility to handle.

The construction of composting facility is envisaged to be commissioned in the 2019/20 financial year and the Development of the MRF to be commissioned in 2020/21 financial year respectively.

2. Development of Waste to Energy (WTE) plant at Waterval Landfill Site.

The Rustenburg Local Municipality plans to develop a landfill gas processing facility at the Waterval landfill site as part of the license components to reduce the migration of the biogas or methane gas generated by the landfill site. This project will be implemented as one of the catalytic projects in Rustenburg Local Municipality and waste treatment plant as per Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP).

This project requires 1 to 5 hectares of land and the municipality is expecting an income of R60 000 per annum for this sublease.

The Waterval Landfill Site is currently managed according to sanitary landfilling principles ensuring controlled disposal and a healthier and safe environment for all residents. With the possible future developments to be implemented at Waterval Landfill site, the site will be in full compliance to the license conditions.

3.7 PUBLIC SAFETY

The Directorate is primarily responsible for performance of the following functions:

- Crime Prevention/ Law Enforcement and Security.
- Disaster Management
- Traffic Services.
- Licensing and Testing

3.7.1 CRIME PREVENTION

The Local Crime Prevention Strategy (LCPS) is developed (aligned with) in line with the Growth and Development Strategy (GDS) and (Goal 16) of Making Cities and human settlement inclusive, safe, resilient, and sustainable, (Goals 16) Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable and inclusive institutions at all levels, of the municipality which seeks:-

- To serve as an overarching planning instrument, articulating the developmental agenda, and
- To provide strategic direction for the Rustenburg Local Municipality with regard to the fight against crime.

Municipalities have a constitutional imperative to give attention to crime fighting. Section 152(d) in chapter 7 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996 stipulates that, one of the objects of local government is "to promote a safe and healthy environment and to encourage communities to be involved on matters affecting them at local level". Even the National Crime Prevention Strategy recognizes that Municipalities have a central role to play in crime prevention.

The strategy designates that local government are encouraged to review, refine and customise the NCPS to suit the local environment and implement local crime prevention programmes. Crime prevention strategies could never be a "one size fit all". The NCPS also emphasizes this aspect in the development of local crime prevention strategies by Municipalities and propagating that the exact strategies and mechanisms that local governments adopt should be based on local crime prevention priorities and should preferably fit within the four pillar strategy framework which entails the following:-

- The criminal justice process leading to certain and rapid deterrence
- Community values and education leading to community pressure and public participation in crime prevention
- Environmental design leading to limited opportunities for crime and maximizing constraints
- Trans-national crime: Regional cooperation, stability and address cross border crime

The National Development Strategy has identified five priorities to focus on to achieve a crime free South Africa. Amongst these priorities are to build safety using an integrated approach and build community participation in community safety. These two priorities are relevant to the Rustenburg Local Municipality. Building safer communities, requires cooperation between all departments and requires an integrated approach to tackle fundamental causes of criminality by mobilising a wider range of state and non-state capacities and resources at all levels and active community involvement. Civil society organisations and civic participation are critical elements of a safe and secure society. Establishment of community safety centres will enable safe healthy communities.

The RLM Local Crime Prevention Strategy (LCPS) seeks to make effective use of scarce resources within the Rustenburg Local Municipality by searching for more cost effective and sustainable solutions, whilst addressing the real causes of crime, poverty and unemployment. It is part of the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS) in terms of its broader agenda of crime prevention and fighting. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996 obliges municipalities to participate in National and Provincial development programmes.

The RLM Growth and Development Strategy (GDS) of the municipality acknowledges that many of the crime related problems that are experienced in the Rustenburg Local Municipality are related to higher influence associated with socio-economic conditions and poverty levels. Problematic crimes such as murder, rapes, assaults, robbery aggravating, burglary residential, burglary business, theft of motor vehicles, theft out of motor vehicles, stock theft, crime depending on police actions, carjacking and truck jacking, house robbery, business robbery, theft of copper are so common in the police stations situated in the Rustenburg municipal boundaries. Rustenburg police station, Tlhabane police station, Phokeng police station, Boitekong police station, Marikana police station, Lethabong police station, Boons police station, Sun City police station (Ward 1) and Bethanie police station are operating within the municipality jurisdiction. The nine (9) police stations and forty- five (45) wards are the largest crime output and also have the highest recording for crime in the province according to the crime index. Rustenburg is hosting the three (3) largest producers of platinum in the world. To this effect Rustenburg police station has been identified as one of the national hotspot for all crime categories. Crime statistics reveals that although there has been a decrease in ranges of crimes, Rustenburg Cluster contributed 51.2% of crime picture in the province in 2016/2017.

Demands on equality, human rights, accountability, participation as well as meeting the provision of Batho Pele, rapid urbanisation have already started to exert pressure on the RLM and there is a significant increase in unlawful occupation of land and societal conflict. Crime and health hazards are on the increase in the informal settlement. The booming economy in the municipality requires an effective police service, which will be able to make the city an attractive and safe place for tourism and investment.

The establishment of effective Municipal Police Service, in conjunction with other existing Law Enforcement Agencies, will be able to expose corruption even within the Municipality. This may also create a platform for production of harmful banned substance and a turned Rustenburg into a heaven for criminal activities such as the selling of contraband ("fong-kong") goods. Some of the existing by-laws do not cover areas that did not fall under the old Rustenburg Municipality. It presents serious challenges because such by-laws cannot be applied and enforced in their present state in those areas. Therefore, the re-alignment of those by-laws is critically needed to empower the envisaged Municipal Police Services.

Rustenburg has about plus minus 35 Taxi Organisations, some of these organisations are not registered. Taxi conflict and dispute is prevalent at the Rustenburg Taxi Rank and on the routes within Municipal Jurisdiction. The root causes are illegal operations, many taxi organisations, operate without permits or valid documentation and power competition. Management of these conflicts and joint management of the Rustenburg Taxi Rank with members of Taxi Associations or organisations have to be considered, due to unlawful trading and conflicts within the Rank. Maybe through the formulation of Taxi Rank by-laws and establishment of Municipal Police Service in Rustenburg, the situation may be better contained.

White collar criminals and other residential areas which have been turned into business premises to evade the law of the country by not (paying tax).

Following from the above the RLM identified the following as key Crime Prevention Challenges:

Table 18: Summary of Challenges

#	MAJOR CHALLENGES	ROOT CAUSES (NOT MORE THAN 2)	EFFECTS	PRACTICAL INTERVENTION OR SOLUTIONS
1.	Protests	Poor service delivery	Instability and destruction of properties	• Improved communication • Timeous response
2.	High rate of crime	Unemployment and high influx of people	Impact negatively on the investor confidence and instil a sense of insecurity	Enhancement of integrated approach through Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED)
3.	Land invasion	• Urbanization • Political influence	• Civil conflict • Disrupt spatial development	• Intensify villages, small dorpies programme • Integrated approach
4.	Moral degeneration or delay	Disregard good values and Botho.	General disrespect of the law, property and fellow human beings (conflict, violence, damages and losses)	Intensification of moral regeneration programmes.
5.	Theft and vandalisation of municipal properties	Lack of security	• The municipality lose money • Affect service delivery	• Cho and changing of security personnel which is not a solution. • Allocation of adequate budget for security.

Following from the above, the following primary crime prevention measures are taken in the RLM:

- Effective program addressing poverty alleviation such as SMME projects
- Job creation project like trolley pushers, car watch and car washers
- Organise sports and recreation
- Organise private community structure to combat crime e.g. street committees
- Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) e.g. inadequate street lighting, inadequate CCTV cameras, empty stands and houses, bushes, taverns near schools
- Education and awareness through media, pamphlets etc.

The RLM Crime Prevention Plan and Strategy comprise the following elements:

Focus Area One: Social Crime Prevention

Objective 1: To inform the community on the negative impact that substance abuse has on crime:

- Encourage liquor outlets to regulate alcohol abuse in and around their premises to contribute to the prevention of anti-social behaviour
- Revisit the current policy, regulating locality or liquor outlets
- Improve and expand educational programs regarding prevention of substance abuse
- Mobilise the business sector to fund programs addressing prevention of substance abuse

- Engage NGOs to deliver sufficient rehabilitation service
- Ensure participation of educational institutions in prevention of substance abuse programmes
- Ensure efficiency of Alcohol Rehabilitation programmes as an alternative to imprisonment.

Objective 2: To cultivate a culture of zero tolerance to crime:

- Launch awareness campaigns to encourage reporting of crime
- Inform the community on the process of reporting corruption and inefficiency within the criminal
- Programmes to educate the community to persevere in litigation
- Create a platform to unit divided portion of the community against crime.

Objective 3: To rebuild the moral fabric of society

- Launch awareness campaigns to realistic reporting on women and child abuse
- Awareness campaign to emphasise the importance of safer families within safer communities
- Inform the community in the principles of " broken window syndrome"
- Inform women with regard to their human rights in relationships
- Raise awareness of family values, morals and human rights
- Inform the community about the consequences of dealing with stolen property
- Cultivate a value system with regards to human rights
- Awareness campaign to promote a code of ethics between employer and employee.

Objective 4: To improve the community to fight poverty:

- Guide poverty stricken communities to develop sustainable economic units
- Launch programmes to encourage influential community members to establish active participation in poverty alleviation
- Providing skills developments projects.

Objective 5: To avail comprehensive services for victims of crime:

- Training in victim support skills
- The creation of local victim support network
- Ensure sustainability of the existing crisis centres
- Ensure establishment and sustainability of a local child-line
- Satellite Crisis Centres in surrounding areas.

Objective 6: To integrate the restitution mechanisms of restorative justice community sentencing and diversion into the community:

- Create public insight into the principles of diversion, restorative justice and community sentencing
- Expansion of community sentencing options through the involvement of the local municipality

- Involving the cadre of volunteers in diversion and monitoring of community sentences.

Objective 7: To create a positive attitude within the community that is conducive to safer families, neighbourhoods and communities:

- Promoting community pride through clean-up campaigns
- Cultivate a culture of responsible ownership.

Objective 8: To create synergy amongst all stakeholders in a partnership towards Crime Prevention:

- Ensure community participation in crime prevention structures.

Focus Area Two: Combating Crime

Objective 1: To expand and sustain the capacity of visible community policing:

- Sustaining and retention of the new cadre of reservists for traffic, fire and disaster management duties
- Skills development of reservists/volunteers to expand their activities
- Create a visible identity for the volunteers/reservists
- Create reporting structures for community police officers.

Objective 2: To empower the community to participate in combating crime:

- Mapping of crime information to highlight the area where crimes occur on regular basis
- Training women and youth in basic defence
- Embark on negotiations with security firms to extend patrol routes.

Focus Area Three: Environmental Design

Objective: To create a safe community/city/town/rural area:

- Community audit to identify environmental factors that could contribute to crime
- Creation of safer freedom of movement
- Get relevant stakeholders involved in safe guarding of destitute areas
- Improve and or establish street and security lighting at vulnerable spots
- Launch an awareness campaign in cooperation with all relevant stakeholders regarding the safeguarding of animals (Livestock)
- Educate property owners in the sound principles of home security
- Consulting with victims of rape to establish the role of the environment
- Locate sanitary facilities at suitable places
- CCTV monitoring in streets of central business districts.

The following projects/programmes have been identified from the Crime Prevention Plan and Strategy:

Table 19: Crime Prevention Strategy and Plan

Analysis of the sector plan	Aim of the sector plan	Project/ Programmes	What the Directorate will be able to implement in 5 years	Challenges
-Dovetail with the Provincial and Local SAPS Strategy has been integrated into the Municipal IDP -Put emphasis away from crime control towards crime prevention. -It focuses on social crime prevention, combating of crime, environmental design	-Reduce causes of crime and encourage the involvement of the local communities -Promote a safe and secure environment.	-Establishment of Rustenburg Community Safety Forum -Establishment and strengthening of the CPF and Street committees. -Expansion of the CCTV Cameras -Establishment of Municipal Police Service -Expand the Peace and Development Program me (Traffic Wardens and Fire Brigade Reservist	-Municipality was able to establish the forum. -On-going process -15 CCTV Cameras installed and R4 000,000 was allocated for. -Appointed only 50 Traffic Wardens	-Empathy from the community -Lack of capacity in the Directorate in terms of resources -Community empathy and not interested to be involved. -Inadequate funding for this project -Inadequate resources such as buildings and law enforcement equipment -No funding for this project -Inadequate to cover 45 wards. -No funding for Training and resources.
Municipal Systems Act compels Municipalities to develop Disaster Management Plan as part of IDP.	-Knowledge Management -Response, recovery, rehabilitation and reconciliation.	-Establishment of a volunteer programme for Disaster Risk identification and Knowledge Management. -Disaster Bus and Trucks -Emergency Precinct (Decentralization	-Not effective -Unable to fulfil this project -Unable to fulfil this project	-Funding -Funding

Conclusive Summary: Way Forward

1. The Crime Prevention Plan and strategy has been approved by the council on 29 November 2011 as per resolution 319
2. The Standard Operating Procedure was also approved
3. The Inauguration and launching of Community Safety Forum and Rustenburg Community Safety Committee was done on 19 October 2011. Meetings of the Community Safety Committees are held on monthly basis while community Safety Foru3.7.2m holds meetings on quarterly basis
4. The Execution plan outlines the projects and programmes to be implemented in a short, medium and long-term periods.

3.7.2 DISASTER MANAGEMENT

Section 53(1)(a) of the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002 – hereafter referred to as "the Act") requires the Rustenburg Local Municipality to prepare a Disaster Management Plan for its area according to the circumstances prevailing in the area and within the ambit of its municipal disaster management framework.

Section 53(2) (a) of the Act specifies that the Disaster Management Plan for a municipality must form an integral part of the municipality's Integrated Development Plan (IDP). Whilst, section 26(g) of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000) lists "applicable disaster management plans" as core components of an IDP.

Other than satisfying the intent of the Disaster Management Act and any associated National, Provincial or Municipal Framework promulgated in pursuit thereof; the Disaster Risk Management Plan also supports the obligatory purpose of Local Government as contemplated in the Constitution of the Republic of South Act, Act 108 of 1996; specifically, Section 152. (1).

Emergency plans must be developed, implemented and co-ordinate to ensure that an emergency and disaster management service is rendered to victims in the shortest space of time and in the most cost – effective manner. This emergency and disaster management planning is aimed at the protection of life and property, the continuation of essential service and the continuation of important administrative function.

In doing this, it needs to focus on addressing the following safety related conditions:

a) **Hazards:** Hazards are threats to life, well-being, material goods and the environment. Extreme natural processes or technology causes them. When a hazard results in great suffering or collapse, it is usually termed a disaster.

b) **Risk And Risk Assessment:** Risk may be defined as the expected damage or loss caused by any hazard. Risk usually depends on a combination of two factors:
   - How often and severe the hazard (e.g. floods and drought)
   - Vulnerability of the people exposed to these hazards.

   Risk perceptions are very complex as they are rooted in history, politics and economy

c) **Vulnerability:** No matter where one is located, whether in an urban or rural environment, one's chances of experiencing a disaster are usually strongly linked to one's vulnerability to the event. The more vulnerable a community, the greater the physical, economic and emotional costs of a disaster. Vulnerability, then is the degree to which an individual, family, community or region is at risk of experiencing misfortune following extreme events.

Disaster Management Plan for Rustenburg Local Municipality (2007) was adopted and approved in 2007 and was reviewed in 2009. It was further reviewed and approved by Council in April 2017.

The purpose of the RLM Disaster Management Plan is:

- Institutional arrangements for Disaster Risk Management Planning
- To assign primary and secondary responsibilities for priority disaster risks posing a threat in the Rustenburg Local Municipality
- To establish operational procedures for disaster risk reduction planning as well as the emergency procedure in the event of a disaster occurring or threatening to occur in council's area
- To facilitate an integrated and coordinated approach to disaster risk management
- To establish risk reduction, resilience building
- Develop adequate capabilities for readiness, and effective and rapid response and recovery.

The following is a summary of Disaster Management related hazards identified in the RLM:

AREAS CATEGORISED (Indicate most affected)	WARD NUMBER	AREAS AFFECTED	PRE-DOMINANT HAZARD	CAUSES
1. Villages	1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,23,25,29, 30,44,36	Phatsima Monnakato, Ikageng, Lekgalong Kanana Luka, Phokeng, Lefaragatlhe, Maumong, Barseba, Modikwe, Lekgalong, Bethany, Lekgalong, Mathopestad	Floods	Most residential dwellings built on 15 -20 years flood plain
			Storms	Settlement in flat areas
2. Informal settlements	19,20,21,22,27,28,31,32, 33,34,35, 37,38,39,40,41	Ramochana Freedom park	Floods	No drainage systems
		Lethabong Sondela Popo Molefe Sunrise Park	Fires	Negligence', illegal power connection
3. RDP-houses	12,19,20,21,24,25,27,28, 31,32,33,34,36,37,38,39, 40,41	Meriting Ext 4&5 Mathopestad Freedom park	Storms	Roof of houses not strong to stand the strong storms

		Freedom Park Seraleng Marikana phase 4 Boitekong Extension 23	Floods	No proper infrastructure (drainage and roads)
4. Urban areas	8,9,10,11,12,13,19,22,37	Tlhabane Rampa Primary School areas (Rabatjie Street) Paardekraal ext. 3 Meriting Ext 2	Floods	Drainage system blocked
5. CBD	14,15,16,17,18,43,42	CBD Roads,	Floods	Storm-water Drainage systems are blocked Other sections of road do not have drainage systems
		Kremetart bridge Middle bridge Dorpspruit bridge		Bridges- culverts are blocked and small Also, very low
6. Farms	1,31,32,35,36	Marikana Erasmus Plot Boshoek plot 92	Floods and Storms	No developments in these areas

Based on the above hazards/risks assessment, the RLM Disaster Management Plan identified the following generic and risk/hazard specific services to be provided in the municipal area:

GENERIC TYPE AND LEVEL OF SERVICES		
PREVENTION AND MITIGATION	**PREPAREDNESS**	**RESPONSE AND RECOVERY**
▪ Integration of Disaster Management Issues into sectoral and local development policies, plans, and budget ▪ Conducting Community Base Risk Assessment ▪ Early warning systems are to be improved ▪ Increase disaster resiliency of infrastructure systems	▪ Enhance level of awareness and capacity of communities to the impacts of hazards ▪ Communities are equipped with necessary skills and capability to cope with the impact of disasters ▪ Strengthened partnership and coordination among all key role players and stakeholders (Local Disaster Advisory Forum, Inter – Departmental Technical Advisory Forum, Disaster Ward Forum)	▪ Adequate and prompt assessment of needs and damages ▪ Integrated and coordinated search and rescue capacity ▪ Temporary shelter needs are adequately addressed ▪ Basic social provided to affected communities (Social Relief of distress) ▪ Psychological needs of affected communities addressed

RISK/HAZARDS SPECIFIC TYPE AND LEVEL OF SERVICE					
WARD NO:	**Type of incidents**	**Integrated Institution Capacity**	**Risk Assessment**	**Disaster Risk Reduction**	**Response & Recovery**
	• Fire • Floods • Storms	All stakeholders coordinated to	Coordinate risk assessment	To develop and implement Disaster risk	Implementing all rehabilitation and reconstruction strategies following disaster in an

	• Epidemic out break • Climate Change	implement Policy and Legislation	with other role players to inform plans	management Plans and Programmes	integrated development manner

The projects/programmes emanating from the RLM Disaster Management Plan are as follows:

Analysis of the sector plan	Aim of the sector plan	Project/ Programmes	What the Directorate will be able to implement in 5 years	Challenges
Adopted and approved in 2007 and reviewed in 2009. Current review approved April 2017	-Build institutional capacity -Disaster risk identification and analysis -Disaster Risk deduction	-Capacitating the Disaster Risk Management Centre -Intensifying community forums	-Effective staffing of the Centre -Provision of resources for effective performance -Volunteer Brigade -Revitalise the Disaster Management Forums	No funding for equipment and materials. No funding for stipend
Municipal Systems Act compels Municipalities to develop Disaster Management Plan as part of IDP.	-Knowledge Management -Response, recovery, rehabilitation and reconciliation.	-Establishment of a volunteer program me for Disaster Risk identification and Knowledge Management. -Disaster Bus and Trucks -Emergency Precinct (Decentralisation)	-Improve the pro-active, monitoring and responsive capability of the Disaster Management Centre, -Updated Volunteer database -Effective Disaster Risk Register -Recorded Disaster Risk assessment for all municipal wards -Provision of both human and financial resources -Provision of fleet and effective required equipment's	Unable to fulfil this project due to: -Funding -Skilled personnel to address legislations KPA's and Enablers -Required resources

3.7.3 TRAFFIC SERVICES

The core functions of this unit within the RLM are as follow:

- To manage and regulate public transport
- To manage, regulate and control, vehicular and pedestrian traffic flow as well as to render traffic policing
- To render crime prevention services
- To render traffic policing
- To enforce municipal by-laws and other legislations.

These services need to be performed within due consideration to the following related issues identified through the public consultation process in the RLM:

- **Hazardous Pedestrian Location**: In the entire 45 wards of the municipality. Engagement with the Provincial Department to provide funding in all the schools
- **Road Safety Training**: Capacity is an inhibiting factor to the realization of road safety. The municipality is in the process of establishing a Road Safety Council
- **Mass Overloading Control:** Joint operations on mass overloading control with the Provincial Traffic are ongoing
- **Insufficient Road Markings and Signage**: Improved budget and appointment of additional personnel to improve road marking and signage
- **Inadequate Passenger Ranking Facilities:** Under-utilised ranking facilities are identified allocation of such facilities for long distance destinations
- **Un-roadworthy Motor Vehicles:** Education and awareness campaigns are being intensified
- **Accident Prone Areas**
- **Traffic congestion**: Appointment of a Traffic Warden and Law Enforcement Officer to perform point duties and other functions. Point duties are being performed in congested routes
- **Poorly Maintained Roads and Streets**
- **Inadequate Visibility of Law Enforcement:** Joint operations and roadblocks are intensified between the SAPS, Traffic and other Law Enforcement Agencies.

To address the above matters the unit implemented the following initiatives over the past few years:

- Staging of road safety programmes including establishment of a Road Safety Committee, scholar patrols, organising and hosting of the driver of the year competition, education at Rustenburg exhibition show etc.
- Introduction of a mobile violation system
- Joint operations on overloading with the provincial traffic
- Research were conducted on road traffic through a traffic impact study
- Development of a Traffic Management Plan
- Introduction of a peace and development programme whereby traffic wardens and community safety patrols shall be appointed as a force multiplier
- Staged successful exhibitions at the Rustenburg Agricultural Show and awarded with medal in three consecutive years since 2004
- Installation of more than 25 traffic lights since 2003. This includes the Tlhabane, Rustenburg/Swartruggens road, Rustenburg / Johannesburg road to the Waterfall Mall as well as on the Rustenburg / Thabazimbi road.

Projects and Programmes for the next five years include the following:

- Road safety promotion
- Pedestrian hazardous location observation
- Upgrading of Rustenburg Local Control Centre

- Phase 2: Construction of Best Practice Model (DLTC and offices)
- Installation of traffic lights on road to be identified
- Municipal Court to address amongst others traffic related offences shall be fully functional and operational to address amongst others petty crime, by – law enforcement offences and Traffic Offences introduce
- Fully functional Alcohol Evidence Centre
- Decentralisation of Traffic Services
- Appointment of Traffic Wardens as part of the Peace and Development Centre.

3.7.4 LICENSING AND TESTING

The RLM serves on an agent basis and all systems are linked to the Provincial Department of Public Safety and or National Department of Transport. The licensing and testing should comply with the Provincial and National legislations as well as the code of practice, regulations and standards. This includes the following services:

- Registration and Licensing of motor vehicles
- Deregistration and introduction of motor vehicles and trailers
- Registration of motor dealers and issuance of business registration certificates (BRN)
- Issuance of Traffic Register Certificates (TRN) to foreign nationals
- Testing of applicants for their learners and driver's licenses
- Testing of all categories of motor vehicles for roadworthiness.

Progress during the past five years include the following:

- Registration and licensing of more than 100 000 vehicles per month
- Registration of Rustenburg Licensing Authority as Grade A
- Registering Authority was voted as the best in the province
- Leading revenue generating Registering Authority in the North West
- All employees underwent an eNatis course to improve service delivery
- Seven employees underwent an SABS code quality management course as part of service delivery improvement
- Completion of Best Practice Model phase one at R4 178 746.28 funded by the Provincial Department of Transport
- Employees underwent an eNatis course and introduction of eNatis
- All related personnel are registered as E-Natis Officers
- Minimised fraudulent activities through CCTV footage and staff rotation.

Project and programmes for the next five years include the following:

- Retention, training and development of potential employees
- Capacity building and employee empowerment
- Collaboration with the Provincial and National departments (departmental interdependency)
- Inspection by the SABS (South African Bureau of Standards), RTMC (Road Traffic Management Corporation Inspectorate) and Department of Transport, (both Provincial and National spheres of governance)
- Reconfiguration of the operational structure to be in line with current challenges
- Appointed two (2) Inspector of Licenses to ensure dealership compliance with relevant legislation.
- Introduction of Hi-Tech Learners and Drivers Licensing system
- Opening of satellite offices at Chaneng and Marikana (Operationalized)
- Development of a light motor vehicle driver's license track at Marikana

4. IMPLEMENTATION PLAN AND PROGRAMMES AND/ OR PROJECTS

4.1 IMPLEMENTATION PLAN, PROGRAMMES AND/ OR PROJECTS

This section of the IDP is constituent of Strategies, Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) per KPA, Programmes and/ or Projects informed by the Developmental needs and aspirations that emanated from Public Participation undertaken by the Municipality in all its constituent Wards and from various Stakeholders and interest groups therein.

The section forms the basis of the Top Layer Service Delivery and Budget Implementation following the Approval by Council of the IDP and the 2018/19 Budget during its ordinary sitting at the end of May 2018.

4.1.4. Key Performance Area (KPA 1): Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development

Key Focus Area	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
5. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building													
5.1. Municipal Strategic Objective: Develop, implement and review internal policies and procedures on regular basis													
GOAL 9: An Efficient, Effective and Well-Governed City	Strengthen internal controls and environment	Municipal wide	DCS 1	Number of HR policies reviewed and submitted to Council for approval	Policies reviewed during 2018/19	30	R000	10	10	10	-	10	10
5.2. Municipal Strategic Objective: Develop and implement internal capability model (institutional core and critical competencies, scarce skills, maintenance skills) that enhance institutional and external stakeholders' development communities and institutional capability													
GOAL 7: A vibrant, creative and innovative city	Knowledgeable, innovative and productive Personnel	Municipal wide	DCS 2	% of the municipality's budget actually spent on implementing its Workplace Skills Plan	Approved WSP	100%	R000	-	-	-	100%	100%	100%
		Municipal wide	DCS 3	Number of people from employment equity target groups employed in the 3 highest levels of management in compliance with a municipality's approved employment equity plan	Approved EE Plan	13	R000	-	-	-	13	13	13
5.3. Municipal Strategic Objective: Review, realign and implement organizational structure to support the vision and objectives													
GOAL 7: A vibrant, creative and innovative city	Building a capable Workforce	Municipal wide	DCS 4	Number of Organizational Structures reviewed and submitted to Council for approval	Reviewed Organizational Structure pending	1 x Organizational Structure reviewed and submitted to Council for approval	R000	-	-	-	1 x Organizational Structure reviewed and submitted to Council for approval	-	-

4.1.5. Key Performance Area (KPA 2): Good Governance and Public Participation

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
6. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: UPHOLD GOOD GOVERNANCE PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PRINCIPLES													
6.1. Municipal Strategic Objective: Drive Good Governance and Legislative compliance in all Municipal processes													
GOAL 9: An Efficient, Effective and Well-Governed City	Ensure and efficient, effective, accountable and transparent Governance Culture	Municipal wide	OMM 1	Number of 2018/19 Annual Report compiled and tabled to Council for adoption by 31 January 2020	2017/18 Annual Report compiled and tabled to Council	1 x 2018/19 Annual Report compiled and tabled to Council	R000	2018/19 Annual Performance Report and Annual Financial Statements submitted to AGSA	-	2018/19 Draft Annual Report compiled and tabled to Council for adoption	-	2019/20 Annual Report compiled and Tabled to Council for adoption	2020/21 Annual Report compiled and Tabled to Council for adoption
GOAL 9: An Efficient, Effective and Well-Governed City	Ensure inclusive and participatory Integrated Planning	Municipal wide	OMM 2	Number of 2020/21 IDP reviewed and submitted to Council for approval by 31 May 2020	2019/20 IDP revised, approved and implemented	1 x 2020/21 IDP	R000	Submission of the 2020/21 IDP Review process	Collating of prioritized needs	Draft 2020/21 IDP submitted to Council	Final 2020/21 IDP submitted to Council	2021/22 IDP	-
GOAL 9: An Efficient, Effective and Well-Governed City	Inclusive and participatory Integrated Planning	Municipal wide	OMM 3	Number of 2019/20 Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) by 30 June 2019	2018/19 SDBIP developed, approved by the EM and implemented Suring the 2018/19 FY	1 x 2019/20 SDBIP approved by the Executive Mayor	R000	1 x 2019/20 SDBIP approved by the Executive Mayor	-	-	-	2020/21 SDBIP compiled and submitted to the EM for approval	2021/22 SDBIP compiled and submitted to the EM for approval

4.1.6. Key Performance Area (KPA 3): Municipal Financial Viability and Management

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/98	2019/20 Annual Target	Requested Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
• MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Ensure a sustainable municipal financial viability and management													
• Municipal Strategic Objective: Develop and implement integrated financial management systems to support municipal programmes and ensure internal financial sustainability													
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Implementation of mSCOA compliant financial management system	Municipal Wide	BTO 1	Number of the mSCOA modules implemented	Implementation above 50%	All mSCOA modules implemented as per the Service Level Agreement.			All mSCOA modules implemented as per the Service Level Agreement			mSCOA compliance with all required reporting	N/A - this is a 3-year implementation
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Revenue collection	Municipal Wide	BTO 2	Percentage collection of revenue billed	82%	85% Percentage collection of revenue billed	R000	85% Percentage collection of revenue billed	85% Percentage collection of revenue billed	85% Percentage collection of revenue billed	85% Percentage collection of revenue billed	90% Percentage collection of revenue billed	95% Percentage collection of revenue billed
• Municipal Strategic Objective: Implement revenue management strategy to enhance municipal financial viability and sustainability Implement sound and sustainable													
• Municipal Strategic Objective: Implement sound and sustainable financial management and compliance controls													
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Compliance with Supply Chain Management laws and regulations.	Municipal Wide	BTO 3	Percentage of 2018/19 irregular expenditure Reduced		50% Reduction of 2018/19 Irregular Expenditure	R000	-	-	-	50% Reduction of Irregular Expenditure - For the year	60% Reduction of 2019/20 Irregular Expenditure	70% Reduction of 2020/21 Irregular Expenditure
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Sustaining clean administration	Municipal Wide	BTO 4	Audit opinion expressed by the Auditor General	Qualified audit opinion	Unqualified audit opinion	R12 million	N/A	N/A	N/A	Unqualified audit opinion	Unqualified audit opinion	Clean audit
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Payment of creditors within the statutory timelines.	Municipal Wide	BTO 5	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by	The current status quo is 42 Days.	30 Days	R000	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by user Directorate / Unit	Creditors payment within 30 days of signed-off invoices by user Directorate / Unit

				user Directorate / Unit				user Directorate / Unit	user Directorate / Unit	user Directorate / Unit	user Directorate / Unit		
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Achieve positive financial ratios	Municipal Wide	BTO 6	Maintain a current ratio above 1.5 : 1	0,92	1.6 : 1	R000	1.5 : 1	1.5 : 1	1.6 : 1	1.6 : 1	1.8 : 1	2.0 : 1
• Municipal Strategic Objective: Develop and implement an integrated municipal core projects' funding and acquisition model aligned with funding institutions' terms and conditions													
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Achieve positive financial ratios	Municipal Wide	BTO 7	Maintaining a debt coverage ratio of above 100 times.	50	100	R000	100	100	100	100	150	160
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Achieve positive financial ratios	Municipal Wide	BTO 8	Maintain a cost coverage of between 1-3 months	0,77	1 Times	R000	1 Times	1 Times	1 Times	1 Times	2 Times	2 Times
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Achieve positive financial ratios	Municipal Wide	OMM 4	Percentage expenditure on capital budget	40%	95%	R717 Million	25%	50%	75%	95%	95%	95%
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Compliance with laws and regulations	Municipal Wide	BTO 9	Number of section 71 reports submitted within legislated timeframes	mSCOA implementation in progress to enable credible report generation	12	R000	3	3	3	3	12 section 71 reports submitted within legislated timeframes	12 section 71 reports submitted within legislated timeframes
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Compliance with laws and regulations	Municipal Wide	BTO 10	Number of section 72 reports submitted within legislated timeframes	Submissions have been made in compliance with requirements.	1	R000	-	-	1	-	1	1
GOAL 11: City of sustainable and	Compliance with laws and regulations	Municipal Wide	BTO 11	Number of section 52 reports	Submissions have been made in	4	R000	1	1	1	1	4 section 52 reports submitted	4 section 52 reports submitted within

efficient resource management				submitted within legislated timeframes	compliance with requirements.							within legislated timeframes	legislated timeframes

4.1.7. Key Performance Area (KPA 4): Local Economic Development

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Requested Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Drive a vibrant diversified economic growth and job creation													
2.1 Municipal Strategic Objective: Revive and expedite development of alternative high value adding economic growth sectors - agriculture, manufacturing, transportation services and products 2.1 Revised Strategic Objective: Develop vibrant and diversified world class local economy through high-value adding economic sectors													
GOAL 5: A NEW POST MINING WORLD CITY	Develop investment campaigns for implementation of investment and catalytic projects	All	LED 1	Number of catalytic projects facilitated	6 Catalytic Projects facilitated for implementation	3	R1.5m	-	-	-	3	3 catalytic projects facilitated by end of June 2021	3 catalytic projects facilitated by end of June 2022
	Partnerships with key stakeholders to develop and promote tourism in Rustenburg	All	LED 2	Number of tourism activations facilitated	Rustenburg flea market being developed	4	R1.5m	1 x tourism activity facilitated	1 x tourism activity facilitated	1 x tourism activity facilitated	1 x tourism activity facilitated	4 tourism activations facilitated	4 tourism activations facilitated
2.2. Municipal Strategic Objective: Build and support broad-based black economic empowerment and sustainable Small, Medium and Micro Enterprises (SMMEs) business development 2.2 Revised Strategic Objective: Support Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment through the development of sustainable Small Medium and Micro Enterprises													

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Requested Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
GOAL 6: A SMART, PROSPEROUS CITY	Partnership with key stakeholders for local contractor development , SMMEs and Cooperatives Business Development Support; and Informal Trading Support	All	LED 3	Number of SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions		250	R1.7m	50 SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions	75 SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions	75 SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions	50 SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions	250 SMMEs and Cooperatives benefited from business development support interventions	250 SMMEs and Cooperatives assisted with business development support interventions
			LED 4	Number of jobs created through municipality's Local Economic Development initiatives including capital projects	658	600	R000	-	-	-	600	650 jobs created	700 jobs created
2.3. Municipal Strategic Objective: Create an enabling environment for the attraction, retention and expansion of foreign and local investments 2.3 Strategic Objective Replaced: Establish and maintain effective stakeholder relations in support of local economic development programmes													
GOAL 6: A SMART,	Partnerships with key	All	LED 5	Number of partnerships	3	2	R000			1 partnership	1 partnershi	2 partnerships established for	2 partnerships established for

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Requested Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
PROSPEROUS CITY	stakeholders to support development and implementation of local economic development programmes			established for Local Economic Development Interventions						established for Local Economic Development Interventions	p established for Local Economic Development Interventions	Local Economic Development Interventions	Local Economic Development Interventions

5. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development													
Municipal Strategic Objective: Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring 5.1 Revised Strategic Objective: Create a conducive local business environment that supports rural economic development													
GOAL 6: A SMART, PROSPEROUS CITY	Develop Policy and Programmes to support local agriculture sector development Partnerships with key stakeholders to support development of rural and township economies	All	LED 6	Number of agricultural projects supported	-	7	R3.5m	-	-	4	3	10 agricultural projects supported	10 agricultural projects supported

4.1.5a. Key Performance Area (KPA 5): Basic Services and Infrastructure Development

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
1. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment													
1.1. Municipal Strategic Objective: Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities													
WATER SERVICES													
Service Delivery: Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure		All wards	OMM	% of operating budget spent on maintenance of infrastructure		≥95%	R4m	≥25%	≥50%	≥75%	≥95%	≥95%	≥95%
Service Delivery: Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure			DTIS 1	% Reduction of reported service interruptions	New KPI (2000)	50%	R000	10%	20%	30%	50%	60%	70%
Service Delivery: Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure	Provision for water supply and increase the revenue base	All Wards	DTIS 2	% Households earning less than R3 400 per month with access to free basic services	87%	90%	MIG allocation	88%	89%	90%	-	92%	94%
Service Delivery: Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure	Improve on the quality of water supplied	All Wards	DTIS 3	% compliance of drinking water quality as per South African National Drinking Standards	100%	100%	R1,200,000	-	-	100% compliance	-	100%	100%
Service Delivery:	Reduce the distribution & Non-	All Wards	DTIS 4	% Reduction of Water losses	43%	30%	R25,000,000	40%	37%	35%	30%	20%	15%

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure	revenue water losses												
Service Delivery: Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure	Improve on the Blue Drop status rating	All Wards	DTIS 4	Percentage readiness to comply with Blue Drop Criteria	86%	100%	R500,000	-	-	-	100% readiness	95%	95%
Service Delivery: Sustainable Livelihoods and resilient Infrastructure	Improve on the Green Drop status rating	All Wards	DTIS 5	Percentage readiness to comply with Green Drop Criteria	53%	100%	R500,000	-	-	-	100% readiness	30%	20%

4.1.5b. Key Performance Area (KPA 5): Basic Services and Infrastructure Development

Key Focus Area	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
3. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment													
3.1. Municipal Strategic Objective: Improve Public Transport Infrastructure & Services													
GOAL 1: an accessible, connected city	Completion of integrated public transport infrastructure	All wards	RRT1	Number of Stations completed for the integrated public transport system	0	9 stations	R141m	-	-	-	9 Stations	7 Stations	
	Completion of integrated public transport infrastructure	All wards	RRT2	KMs of new roads constructed		10kms	R141m	3Km	5Km	7Km	10KM	15KM	20KM

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: DEVELOP AND SUSTAIN A SPATIAL, NATURAL AND BUILT ENVIRONMENT													
1.1. Municipal Strategic Objective: Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning													
Goal 3: Habitable, clean and green city	High quality Municipal Civil Facilities	All wards	DCD 1	Upgrade of Office (Mpheni House / Old Town Hall) Precinct	N/A	Private Partnership secured	R500 k (R20m)	Project plan developed	Designs finalised	Implementation plan developed	Phase 1 of implementation	Phase 2 of Mpheni upgrade	Phase 3 of Mpheni Upgrade
4. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all													
4.2. Municipal Strategic Objective: Explore and implement alternative eco-friendly and conservation interventions to preserve the environment													
Goal 5: City of sustainable and efficient resource management	Implementation of recycling programmes	All wards	DCD 2	Number of recycling drop off facilities established	1	1 recycling drop off facility established	R150k	-	-	-	1	1 recycling drop off facility established	1 recycling drop off facility established

4.1.5c. Key Performance Area (KPA 5): Basic Services and Infrastructure Development

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
2. MUNICIPAL STRATEGIC PRIORITY: DEVELOP AND SUSTAIN A SPATIAL, NATURAL AND BUILT ENVIRONMENT													
1.2. Municipal Strategic Objective: Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities													
City of smart livable homes	Establish a fully staffed and functional Licensing and Testing in Marikana	All	DPS 1	Number of Licensing and Testing Centre operationalised	Completed and renovated structure	1	R3m	Resourcing	Operationalisation			Appointment of additional staff	Review and evaluation of the centre
1.3. Municipal Strategic Objective: Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning													

Key Focus Area/Goal	Strategies	Area/Locality (Ward/Area)	KPI No:	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline 2018/19	2019/20 Annual Target	Annual Budget 2019/20 R'000	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
	Establish and staff state of the art weigh bridge centre to enhance revenue collection and road safety	All Wards	DP S 2	Number of weighbridge constructed	1 weighbridge	1	R000	Land acquisition	Source funding from mining houses		Design the layout plan	Procurement process	Development and Construction

Key Performance Area (KPA 6): Spatial Rational - Develop and Sustain a Spatial, Natural and Built Environment

Strategic Objective	Key Focus Area	Area/Locality	KPI No.	Key Performance Indicator (KPI)	Baseline	2019/20 Annual Target	Budget 19/20	2019/20 Performance Targets per Quarter19				2020/21 Annual Target	2021/22 Annual Target
								Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4		
Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Eradication of housing backlog through provision quality housing	RLM	DPHS 1	Number of township formalized	1	1	R4M				1	1	2
	Revenue generation	RLM	DPHS 2	Improve compliance rate of the Land Use Management Scheme	10	Campaigns in 10 wards	R2,5m	2	5	7	10	10	10

4.2 RLM PRIORITY PROJECTS FOR 2018/19 IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

This section is indicative of projects with confirmed financial commitments, funder either through Municipal own source capital, Equitable Share, Sectoral Grant allocated directly from National and/ or Provincial Departments.

Summary of RLM Priority Projects for 2019/20

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/1	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Water	Phatsima -AC Water pipe replacement	01	MIG	RLM	5 400 000	9 500 000	6 600 000
2019/20/IDP/2			Water	Replacement of Tlhabane AC Sewer Bulk Line	11	MIG	RLM	12 684 780	2 000 000	26 352 980
2019/20/IDP/3	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment		Water	Refurbishment of Bulk Line & Tlhabane Water AC replacement	11	MIG	RLM	3 004 879	2 000 000	19 846 111
2019/20/IDP/4			Water	Rustenburg North - AC sewer pipe replacement	13	WSIG	RLM	6 802 000	16 000 000	33 302 000
2019/20/IDP/5			Water	Rustenburg North - AC water pipe replacement	13	WSIG	RLM	8 000 000	34 000 000	49 500 000
2019/20/IDP/6			Water	Tierkloof - Upgrade reservoir	15	WSIG	RLM	20 000 000	18 000 000	38 000 000
2019/20/IDP/7			Water	Protea Park - AC sewer pipe replacement	16	WSIG	RLM	18 348 000	10 000 000	37 848 000
2019/20/IDP/8			Water	Protea Park - Water pipe replacement	16	WSIG	RLM	8 600	0	16 100

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/9			Water	Construction of Bospoort Bulk Water Pipeline	23	MIG	RLM	22 000 000	34 000 000	63 000 000
2019/20/IDP/10	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Water	Monnakato - A/C Water pipe replacement	25	MIG	RLM			1 200 000
2019/20/IDP/11			Water	Upgrading of the Monnakato Waste Water Treatment Works	25	MIG	RLM	4 200 000	6 000 000	15 600 000
2019/20/IDP/12	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment		Water	Refurbishment of Bulk Line & Water AC replacement	25	MIG	RLM	4 200 000	6 000 000	9 200 000
2019/20/IDP/13			Water	Upgrading & Extension of the Bospoort water Treatment Plant	26	MIG	RLM	12 172 050	3 000 000	48 010 259
2019/20/IDP/14			Water	Refurbishment of Bulk Line & Water AC replacement	27	MIG	RLM	8 400 000	0	
2019/20/IDP/15			Water	Refurbishment of Bulk Line & Water AC replacement	28	MIG	RLM	0	0	5 000 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/16			Water	Bethanie/ Modikwe AC Water Replacements	30	MIG	RLM	8 400 000	18 000 000	27 600 000
2019/20/IDP/17	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Water	Refurbishment of Bulk Line & Water AC replacement	30	MIG	RLM			
2019/20/IDP/18			Water	Marikana and Surrounding Areas Water Supply	31	MIG	RLM	6 750 000	7 000 000	15 250 000
2019/20/IDP/19			Water	Syferbult - Construction of water supply infrastructure	36	WSIG	RLM	10 000 000	4 840 000	14 840 000
2019/20/IDP/20			Water	Meriting Upgrading water network X4	40	MIG	RLM	7 000 000	11 000 000	19 000 000
2019/20/IDP/21			Water	Boitekong Water Supply Project (Pressure management)	20/40/21	MIG	RLM	8 400 000		9 600 000
2019/20/IDP/22			Water	Water conservation and Water Demand Management	ALL	WSIG	RLM	12 500 000	10 000 000	37 500 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/23	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Sanitation	Macharora VIP Toilets	02	MIG	RLM			3 625 000
2019/20/IDP/24			Sanitation	Upgrading of the Western Bulk Sewer Lines	14	MIG	RLM	7 000 000	21 263 362	36 276 994
2019/20/IDP/25			Sanitation	Upgrading of the Western Bulk Sewer Lines	15	MIG	RLM	3 500 000	8 023 817	19 537 449
2019/20/IDP/26			Sanitation	Upgrading of the Western Bulk Sewer Lines	16	MIG	RLM	3 500 000	8 000 000	19 513 632
2019/20/IDP/27	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality,	Sanitation	Replacement of AC Sewer Bulk Line	27	MIG	RLM	5 000 000	12 000 000	27 000 000
2019/20/IDP/28			Sanitation	Replacement of AC Sewer Bulk Line	31	MIG	RLM	7 000 000	11 000 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
		reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning								
2019/20/IDP/29	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Sanitation	Marikana - Upgrading of outfall sewer and pump station	31	WSIG	RLM	3 750 000	0	13 750 000
2019/20/IDP/30			Sanitation	VIP Toilets	33	MIG	RLM	4 236 742		
2019/20/IDP/31			Sanitation	Freedom park upgrading of sewer network	38	MIG	RLM	2 500 000	10 500 000	
2019/20/IDP/32			Sanitation	Replacement of AC Sewer Bulk Line	41	MIG	RLM			

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/33	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Electricity	Installation of High Mast Lights	05	MIG	RLM	4 000 000	550 000	8 850 000
2019/20/IDP/34			Electricity	Installation of High Mast Lights	06	MIG	RLM	4 000 000	500 000	8 700 000
2019/20/IDP/35	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all communities	Electricity	Marikana Waste Transfer Station Construction	32	MIG	RLM	0	0	3 047 484
2019/20/IDP/36			Electricity	Installation of High Mast Lights	35	MIG	RLM	0	3 200 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/37	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all communities	Electricity	Integrated National Electrification Programme	ALL	INEP		19 200 000	32 000 000	61 238 000
2019/20/IDP/38	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Roads & Storm water	Phatsima Roads And Stormwater Drainage Phase 5	1	MIG	RLM	5 000 000	6 500 000	12 250 000
2019/20/IDP/39			Roads & Storm water	Rasimone Internal Roads & Stormwater	02	MIG	RLM	2 000 000	5 000 000	9 728 471
2019/20/IDP/40			Roads & Storm water	Robega Internal Roads & Stormwater	02	MIG	RLM	2 000 000	500 000	3 050 000
2019/20/IDP/41			Roads & Storm water	Chaneng Internal Roads & Stormwater	02	MIG	RLM	2 000 000	7 071 452	11 621 452

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/42			Roads & Storm water	Meriting Roads & Stormwater Ward 18 Phase 4	12	MIG	RLM	10 000 000	800 000	14 900 000
2019/20/IDP/43			Roads & Storm water	Paardekraal Upgrading of storm water	19 & 40	MIG	RLM			3 000 000
2019/20/IDP/44	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Roads & Storm water	Freedom Park Ward 24 Roads And Stormwater Drainage	24	MIG	RLM	2 000 000		3 000 000
2019/20/IDP/45			Roads & Storm water	Tsitsing Roads And Stormwater Drainage	26	MIG	RLM	4 581 870	650 000	5 710 964
2019/20/IDP/46			Roads & Storm water	Tlaseng Roads And Stormwater Drainage System	26	MIG	RLM	7 000 000	720 000	8 270 000
2019/20/IDP/47	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Roads	Upgrading of Internal Roads(Description)	03	MIG	RLM	5 569 422	700 000	7 269 422
2019/20/IDP/48			Roads	Upgrading of Internal Roads (description	04	MIG	RLM	5 000 000	550 000	6 550 000
2019/20/IDP/49			Roads	Boitekong Upgrading of Roads	20	MIG	RLM	8 500 000	750 000	10 250 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/50	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Roads	Boitekong Upgrading of Roads	20	MIG	RLM	8 500 000	750 000	10 250 000
2019/20/IDP/51			Roads	Thlapa - Road	29	MIG	RLM	5 000 000	5 600 000	12 450 000
2019/20/IDP/52			Roads	Mathopestad Upgrading of Internal Roads	36	MIG	RLM	4 581 870	5 165 000	4 581 870
2019/20/IDP/53	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Roads	Sondela Upgrading of Internal Roads	37	MIG	RLM	0	0	3 100 000
2019/20/IDP/54			Roads	Ramochana Upgrading of Internal Roads	39	MIG	RLM	0	0	3 100 000
2019/20/IDP/55			Roads	Seraleng Upgrading of Internal Roads	41	MIG	RLM	5 500 000	5 500 000	14 100 000
2019/20/IDP/56	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective	Public Amenities - Libraries	LIBRARIES- Washing machine & cleaning equipment	14	CATA	RLM	9 000	0	22 000
2019/20/IDP/57				Boitekong Library Extension	21	CATA	RLM	1 300 000	1 300 000	3 400 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
		infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning								
2019/20/IDP/58	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Public Amenities -	Construction of the Rustenburg Flea Market	14	MIG	RLM	0	0	11 802 933
2019/20/IDP/59				Boitekong Hawker Stalls	20	MIG	RLM	7 000 000	5 000 000	13 000 000
2019/20/IDP/60	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural	Improve Public Transport	Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	07	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/61	and built environment	Infrastructure and services	Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	08	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/62			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	09	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/63			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	10	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/64			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	11	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/65	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	13	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/66				Bus Stops	15	PTNG	RLM	0	0	180 000
2019/20/IDP/67			Bus Rapid Transport	Bus Stops	16	PTNG	RLM	0	0	180 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/68			Bus Rapid Transport	Bus Stops	17	PTNG	RLM	0	0	180 000
2019/20/IDP/69			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	18	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/70			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	19	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/71	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improve Public Transport Infrastructure and services	Bus Rapid Transport	Paving & Bus Stops	20	PTNG	RLM	0	0	180 000
2019/20/IDP/72			Bus Rapid Transport	Paving & Bus Stops	21	PTNG	RLM	0	0	180 000
2019/20/IDP/73			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	22	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/74	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural	Improve Public Transport	Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	23	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/75	and built environment	Infrastructure and services	Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	39	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/76			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	40	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/77			Bus Rapid Transport	Construction of RRT Stations & Paving	42	PTNG	RLM	0	0	4 000 000
2019/20/IDP/78			Bus Rapid Transport	Paving & Bus Stops	43	PTNG		0	0	180 000
2019/20/IDP/79	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure	Community Development	Development of Boitekong Cemetery	40	MIG	RLM	15 000 000	6 658 801	22 658 801
2019/20/IDP/80				Refrigeration & other equipment	All	CATA	RLM	20 000	100 000	130 000
2019/20/IDP/81			Billing	Electronic Bill Presentment		CRR	RLM	3 000 000	2 000 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
		based on								
2019/20/IDP/82		integrated spatial planning	Civil Facilities Development And Management	Revamp of Mpheni		CRR	RLM		10 409 190	
2019/20/IDP/83			Infrastructure And Technical Services	Commissioning of Meters- Bodorp/Zinniaville And Other (Smec)		CRR	RLM	34 300 000		
2019/20/IDP/84			Community Development	Civic Centre- Pa System/ Sound/ Lights		CRR	RLM	15 000 000	000 000	
2019/20/IDP/85			Planning Development	Land Acquisition		CRR	RLM	7 504 000	8 650 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
2019/20/IDP/86	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Regional Community Centres	Freedom Park Community Centre	38	CRR	RLM			
2019/20/IDP/87			Infrastructure And Technical Services	Smart City - Prepaid Meter Rollout (All Wards)	ALL	CRR	RLM	1 735 100	1 972 095	
2019/20/IDP/88			Traffic	Weigh Bridge	14	CRR	RLM			
2019/20/IDP/89			Water Service	Upgrading Of Water Infrastructure - Tierkloof		CRR	RLM			
2019/20/IDP/90			Electrical Engineers Services	Upgrading Of Substations (Industries And Voltaire)		LOAN	RLM	60 000 000	60 000 000	
2019/20/IDP/91			Water Services	Replacement of AC pipes project		LOAN	RLM			
2019/20/IDP/92			Technical and Infrastruct	Replacement Of Fleet		LOAN	RLM			

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Strategic Objective	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area/Ward	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	TOTAL
			ure services							

4.3 NATIONAL, PROVINCIAL AND PARASTATAL PROJECTS

This section consists of Programmes and/ or Projects implemented by the National and/ or Provincial Sector Department and Parastatals within Rustenburg Local Municipality's jurisdiction area.

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/93	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	New and Replacement Asset: Boitekong Secondary	21		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/94	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Kanana Primary	23		Education and Sports Development	–	10 000	
2019/20/IDP/95	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Marikana Secondary	32		Education and Sports Development	20 000	11 345	
2019/20/IDP/96	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	New Paardekraal Primary	22		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/97	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Seraleng Primary	41		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/98	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Bonwakgogo Primary	21		Education and Sports Development	–	3 821	
2019/20/IDP/99	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Boons Primary	23		Education and Sports Development	–	9 000	
2019/20/IDP/100	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Bosabosele Primary	32		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/101	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Dimapo Primary	22		Education and Sports Development	–	2 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/102	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Kloofview Primary	12		Education and Sports Development	2 344	–	
2019/20/IDP/103	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Laerskool Karlienpark	2		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/104	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Laerskool Protea Park	36		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/105	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Lethabong Primary	9		Education and Sports Development	–	2 800	
2019/20/IDP/106	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Modikwe Primary	30		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/107	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Mojagedi Combined	31		Education and Sports Development	–	7 500	
2019/20/IDP/108	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Monato Inter	35		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/109	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Moremogolo Primary	6		Education and Sports Development	2 340	–	
2019/20/IDP/110	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Morogong Primary	23		Education and Sports Development	2 800	–	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/111	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Ramotse Primary	3		Education and Sports Development	3 821	–	
2019/20/IDP/112	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Reuben Monareng Primary	9		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/113	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	St. Gerard Majella Middle	23		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/114	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Vuka Primary	1		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/115	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Full Service schools for 2020/21	Numerous		Education and Sports Development	–	7 000	
2019/20/IDP/116	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Furniture	Numerous		Education and Sports Development	–	5 000	
2019/20/IDP/117	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Mobile classrooms +B72:B82	Numerous		Education and Sports Development	5 000	5 000	
2019/20/IDP/118	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Education	Renovations: Tlhabane Resource Centre	Numerous		Education and Sports Development	–	–	
2019/20/IDP/119	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Boitekong CHC	19		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/120	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially	Implement quality and improved health and	Health	Job Shimankane	17		Department of Health	20 000	52 846	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
	cohesive environment for all	social services to Communities		Tabane (Maternal Obstet)						
2019/20/IDP/121	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Boitekong CHC HT	19		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/122	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Boitekong CHC QA	19		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/123	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	JST Maternal Obstet ICT	17		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/124	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Job Shimankane Tabane Hospital (Upgrade)	17		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/125	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Boitekong CHC OD	19		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/126	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Refurbishment: JST Hospital Ward 10	17		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/127	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Refurbishment: JST Hospital Ward 10 - HT	17		Department of Health	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/128	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Refurbishment: Job Shimankane Tabane Hospital Generator	17		Department of Health	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/129	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Health	Tlhabane CHC Maintenance	10		Department of Health	3 050	150	
2019/20/IDP/130	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Roads & Storm water Upgrades and Additions	Paving of Auction Yard and Internal Roads in Bojanala District Paving of internal road			Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	200	
2019/20/IDP/132	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning		Uninterrupted power supplies-Rustenburg District Offices: 2 x UPS's			Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	2 800	
2019/20/IDP/133	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Renovations and repairs to data cabling in offices	All		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	1 000	1 000	
2019/20/IDP/134	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Renovation and repairs of Rustenburg Water reticulation	18		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
		integrated spatial planning								
2019/20/IDP/135	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Renovations and repairs, painting internally & externally	18		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/136	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Renovations and repairs, painting internally & externally	18		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/137	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Renovations and repairs, painting internally & externally, replacing gutters & garage doors	18		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	600	-	
2019/20/IDP/138	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Maintenance and Repairs	Day to Day Maintenance of All government facilities in Bojanala and purchasing of equipment etc.	All		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	6 360	10 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/139	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Maintenance and Repairs	Rustenburg District Admin Buildings NW02741: Maintenance and repairs, painting internally & externally	18		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/140	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	New and Replacement	Construction of Bridge over rail (level crossing) on Dr Moroka Street in Rustenburg	15,8,14		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	60 000	45 000	
2019/20/IDP/141	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Upgrades and Additions	Upgrading from gravel to surface Standard of Road D1537 and D1437 at Buffelspoort Dam (20km)	32		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	10 000	
2019/20/IDP/142	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Upgrades and Additions	Upgrading of Road D520 from Makolokwe to Bethani	29; 30		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	20 000	5 000	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/143	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Upgrades and Additions	Upgrading from gravel to surface Standard (tar) of Road D1325 from Buffelspoort to Tlapa through Marikana and Road P2/4 to D314 and Road D314 to Road P51/1	31		Department of Public Works and Roads (Public Works)	-	10 000	
2019/20/IDP/144	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Individual Subsidies	Various wards		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	13 440	13 440	
2019/20/IDP/145	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Rustenburg Municipality - Rankunyane (Monnakato)	25		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/146	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Rustenburg L M, Meriting Ext 4 & 5 (1590 Sub)	12		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	3 828	0	
2019/20/IDP/147	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	NHBRC	Various		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	19 880	21 048	

IDP Ref	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/148	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Opscap	Various		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	54 519	59 191	
2019/20/IDP/149	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Rustenburg Villages 550	23,26		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	0	0	
2019/20/IDP/150	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Municipal Accreditation			Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	25 000	25 000	
2019/20/IDP/151	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Rustenburg, Seraleng, 557, Marabe	11		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/152	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Boitekong Ext 16 600 Flisp	40		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/153	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Bokamoso 1600	20,33,34		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/154	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Ikemeleng Isup	35		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	31 897	19 138	
2019/20/IDP/155	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Mbeki Sun 2000	22		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	33 599	20 160	
2019/20/IDP/156	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Lethabong Ext 2	5		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	25 518	57 791	
2019/20/IDP/157	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Bojanala Military Veterans	Various wards		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	0	0	
2019/20/IDP/158	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Popo Molefe	4		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	13 796	26 879	
2019/20/IDP/159	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Rankalanyane	29		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/160	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Rural Dini Estate	36		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	6 329	-	
2019/20/IDP/161	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2016/17 Rustenburg Yizo	9		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/162	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Rustenburg Lm, Dini Estate 190	36		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/163	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2017/18 Lethabong Ext 3 & 4	27.28		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	26 879	26 879	
2019/20/IDP/164	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	Rustenburg Lm, Bokamoso 270, Mmopa Civil	20,33,34		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/165	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Housing New and Replacement	2017/18 Rustenburg Bokamoso 365, Barzani	20,33,34		Dept. of Local Government & Human Settlement	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/166	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of	Welfare	Tlhabane Service Point			Dept. of Social Development	176	500	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
	cohesive environment for all	quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation							
2019/20/IDP/167	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Kobbie van Zyl Sub Office			Dept. of Social Development	-	100	
2019/20/IDP/168	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Secure Care Centre (Rustenburg)			Dept. of Social Development	2 589	450	
2019/20/IDP/169	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Sefikile Atamelang ECD			Dept. of Social Development	-	300	
2019/20/IDP/170	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Letlhakeng CCC			Dept. of Social Development	-	200	
2019/20/IDP/171	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Rustenburg Residential Facility for persons with disability			Dept. of Social Development	-	200	
2019/20/IDP/172	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Kgogedi CKC			Dept. of Social Development	-	126	
2019/20/IDP/173	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and	Welfare	Tshikane CDCC			Dept. of Social Development	-	126	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
	cohesive environment for all	essential services to all Communities	Refurbishment and Rehabilitation							
2019/20/IDP/174	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Accelerated delivery and maintenance of quality basic and essential services to all Communities	Welfare Refurbishment and Rehabilitation	Rise and Shine			Dept. of Social Development	-	126	
2019/20/IDP/175	Drive a vibrant diversified economic growth and job creation	Create an enabling environment for the attraction, retention and expansion of foreign and local investments	Agriculture	Bojanala Aquaculture & Inland Fisheries: Provision of Fishery equipment, tools and packaging material			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/176	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Bojanala Food Security Projects: Food Security and Nutrition packages			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/177	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Bojanala Livestock Improvement: Provision of Artificial Insemination Equipment and development			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/178	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Bojanala Dry land Cropping: Sunflower production, purchase			READ	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
				combine harvester						
2019/20/IDP/179	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Farmer Training, Skills Development and Capacity Building: Farmers training and capacity building, empowerment interventions, mentorships and excursions.			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/180	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Information and Knowledge Management Services: Maintenance of AIMS, demonstrations , farmers days and shows, information packs, broachers, periodicals and radio talk shows for Districts and Provincial			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/181	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Project and Programme Planning processes, equipment, materials,			READ	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
				consulting and EIA's etc.						
2019/20/IDP/182	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Technical and Advisory Service and Regulatory Services (ERP): Ensuring visibility and accountability, improve image and professionalism , recruitment, reskilling and reorientation, provision of ICT and other resources for extension personnel			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/183	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Agricultural Marketing: Information, skills development and compliance			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/184	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Food and Nutrition Security: SAVAAC, and Provincial (Community, School gardens and Backyard gardens)			READ	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
2019/20/IDP/185	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Crop Massification Program: Crop production inputs, irrigation equipment, mechanisation and equipment			READ	10 473	11 049	
2019/20/IDP/186	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Primary Animal Health Care: Veterinary medication tool, equipment and materials support			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/187	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Female Farmer Awards: Planning and FEA event			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/188	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Youth Awards (YARD): Planning and Youth Awards event			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/189	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	WARD: Planning and Implementation of the Women in Agriculture and Rural Development Resuscitation			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/190	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development	Agriculture	Vulnerable Workers (Farm Workers) Project:			READ	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
		through sustainable SMME's mentoring		Advocacy, Social Facilitation and Support to Vulnerable Workers						
2019/20/IDP/191	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	People with Disabilities Development Programme: Advocacy, Social Facilitation and Support to People with Disabilities Development			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/192	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Older Persons and Veteran: Advocacy, Social Facilitation and Support to Older Persons and Veterans			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/193	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Baber span Aquarium: Support to the Small Scale Fisheries and development at selected Dams			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/194	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Nguni Programme: Cattle breeding stock and production			READ	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
				Inputs packages						
2019/20/IDP/195	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Comprehensive Rural Development Programme [CRDP]: Planning, facilitation, coordinating, implementation and monitoring of rural development initiatives in identified CRDP sites			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/196	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Horse Development: Planning and development of infrastructure and provision inputs				-	-	
2019/20/IDP/197	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Farmer Training, Skills Development Capacity Building, empowerment interventions, mentorships and excursions.			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/198	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Rustenburg Livestock Water: Provision of Fencing,			READ	-	-	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
				handling facilities, livestock water						
2019/20/IDP/199	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Monnakato Tannery: Equipment and effluent dams			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/200	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Rustenburg Horticulture: Provision of Vegetable production infrastructure & inputs			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/201	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Buang Makabe: Provision of Vegetable processing equipment			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/202	Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	Provide conductive environment for rural economic development through sustainable SMME's mentoring	Agriculture	Rustenburg Crop Production: Sunflower Production inputs			READ	-	-	
2019/20/IDP/203	2 Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement integrated community safety and security strategy and measures Implement an integrated by-law enforcement programme	Community Safety				SAPS			
2019/20/IDP/204	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially	Implement quality and improved health and	Libraries	Lethabong Library			CATA	1 000	1 055	

IDP Ref:	Strategic Priority	Municipal Goal	Focal Area	Project Name	Municipal Area	Funding Source	Implementing Agent	Budget R'00		
								2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
	cohesive environment for all	social services to Communities		New and replacement of assets						
2019/20/IDP/205	Maintain a safe; healthy and socially cohesive environment for all	Implement quality and improved health and social services to Communities	Libraries	Refurbishment and partitioning of the Phokeng Registering Authority			CSTM			
2019/20/IDP/88	Develop and sustain a spatial, natural and built environment	Improved service delivery through provision of high quality, reliable and cost-effective infrastructure based on integrated spatial planning	Traffic	Weigh Bridge	ALL	CRR	RLM	0	0	2 500 000

4.4 BUSINESS COMMUNITY PROJECTS

This section is constituent of Programmes and/ or Projects from the Business Community, which is implemented in partnership with the Municipality in fulfilment of their Social Labour Plans (SLPs) and Corporate Social Investments Legislative requirements.

SIBANYE PLATINUM PROJECTS FOR RPM									
Ward No.	Area	Project name/ description	Project cost(s)	Timeframe/implementation period		Funder/ Funding source	Jobs created		Status
				Start date	End date		Temporary	Permanent	
19	Paardekraal	Boikagong Primary School renovation & extension	**5,500,000**	Jun-17	Dec-17	SLP budget	20	0	Draft designs and scope of work completed
34	Mfidikoe	School renovations & extensions	**5,500,000**	May-18	Mar-19	SLP budget	15	0	To start in 2018
20	Boitekong	Tsholofelo School renovations	**7,000,000**	Sep-17	Dec-18	SLP budget	20	0	Finalising the draft designs and scope of work
34	Mfidikoe	Water Borne Sanitation	**15 000 000**	Mar-18	Dec-19	SLP budget	20	0	To start in 2018
29	Tlapa	Construction of Access Road	**5 000 000**	Jun-18	Dec-19	SLP budget	16	0	To start in 2018
22	Sunrise park	Construction of walkway bridge between Sunrise Park and Popo Molefe	**2 000 000**	Mar-18	Dec-19	SLP budget	14	0	To start in 2018
45	Thekwana	Clinic renovation and extension	**2,400,000**	Jun-17	Jun-18	SLP budget	15	0	Draft designs and scope of work completed
34	Mfidikoe	Expansion of clinic medical storage	**1,200,000**	Jun-17	Jun-18	SLP budget	10	0	Draft designs and scope of work completed
7, 22, 33 & 34	Popo Molefe, Lekhibidung; Bokamoso; Lefaragatlhe & Bobuanpya	Installation of a total of 47 High Mast Lights	**11 800 000**			SLP budget	20	0	To start in 2018
All the wards		Support to learner development	**90 000**	Jun-16	Jun-19	SLP budget	20	0	Yearly winter & spring school camps. More than 500 learners will benefit

SIBANYE PLATINUM PROJECTS FOR RPM

Ward No.	Area	Project name/ description	Project cost(s)	Timeframe/implementation period		Funder/ Funding source	Jobs created		Status
				Start date	End date		Temporary	Permanent	
All the wards		Support to teacher development	**720 000**	Sept 2017 March 2019		SLP budget	10	0	Yearly Maths and Science workshops. Educators from 10 schools
All the wards		School leadership development	**180 000**	Sep-17	Mar-19	SLP budget	4	0	Yearly workshop for school management.20 schools will benefit
All the wards		Supply of supplemental, learning & teaching support material	**2 469 600**	Jun-16	Jun-19	SLP budget	4	0	Learners supplied with study guides and tablets
29	Rankelenyane	ED Support - piggery project	**1 100 000**	Sep-17	Sep-20	SLP budget	11	11	In planning stage
36	Boshfonttein	ED Support - Sewing Project	**550,000**	Sep-17	Sep-19	SLP budget	12	10	In planning stage
45	Thekwane	ED Support - Poultry Project	**500 000**	Sept 2017 March 2019	Sep-20	SLP budget	11	11	In planning stage
21	Boitekong	ED Support - Piggery Project	**3 400 000**	Sep-17	Sep-20	SLP budget	17	21	In planning stage
45	Photsaneng	ED Support- bakery	**550,000**	Jun-17	Jun-19	SLP budget	6	10	In planning stage
All the wards	All areas	ED Support& linkages: Portable Skills	**1 500 000**	June 20116	Dec-18	SLP budget	0	27	Engineering and hospitality learnership in progress
All the wards	All areas	ED Support and linkages: SPI	**1 100 000**	Aug-17	Aug-19	SLP budget	16	9	In planning stage
1	Phatsima	ED Support and linkages: Phatsima Farming Project	**6 000 000**	Nov-16	Nov-19	SLP budget	81	32	In progress
35	Ikemeleng	ED Support and linkages: Youth	**150 000**	Sep-17	Sep-18	SLP budget	7	11	In planning stage

SIBANYE PLATINUM PROJECTS FOR RPM

Ward No.	Area	Project name/ description	Project cost(s)	Timeframe/implementation period		Funder/ Funding source	Jobs created		Status
				Start date	End date		Temporary	Permanent	
34, 45	Thekwana, Photsaneng, Mfidikoe	ED Support and linkages: Compost Manufacturing Project	**400 000**	Sep-17	Sep-19	SLP budget	21	33	In planning stage
All the wards	All areas	Support to expansion of health promotion & disease prevention	**1 890 000**	Oct-16	Oct-20	SLP budget		4	In progress
All the wards	All areas	Supply to emergency patient transport for Maternal and Obstetrics Units	**2 500 000**	Nov-16	Jun-17	SLP budget	0	2	Handover process in progress

WESIZWE PLATINUM MINE PROJECTS

Ward No.	Area	Project name/ description	Project cost(s)	Timeframe/implementation period		Funder/ Funding source	Jobs created	
				Start date	End date		Temporary	Permanent
Ward 1	Phatsima	Commercial Agricultural Project (Zwartskoppies farm north of Phatsima): Community members from Phatsima have been selected and are participating in the Crop project, supported by an external service provider to learn farm infrastructure development and crop production techniques. Project participants have established cooperatives to self-manage the project in the long-term towards food security, business development and	7,400,000.00	2014	Dec-18	Wesizwe Platinum Mine		15

		potential long-term employment. Products such as beetroot, spinach, chillies, etc. are currently supplied to the market.						
Ward 1	Phatsima	Boikanyego Welfare Centre: As per RLM IDP request for support the project, Wesizwe committed and listed the project in the new SLP. The project has not commenced as it awaits RLM's approval to connect the facility to the existing Phatsima Community Hall (as requested by the Boikanyego Welfare Centre management). It was felt that the Community hall is central and accessible to community as compared to the site allocated for the centre. Project to commence as soon as approval is granted.	2,500,000.00	2016	2017	Wesizwe Platinum Mine	0	0

IMPALA PLATINUM MINE PROJECTS

Ward No.	Area	Project name/ description	Project cost(s)	Timeframe/implementation period		Funder / Funding Source	Jobs created	
				Start date	End date		Temporary	Permanent
24	Freedom Park	School Infrastructure - Platinum Village	19 421 467	Aug-15	Nov-16	JV between Impala & NWDoE	80	20
24	Freedom Park	Freedom Community Infrastructure upgrade	2 532 961	Jan-15	Dec-15	Impala	14	
19	Boitekong	Attenuation Dam Rehabilitation	2 621 632			Impala		

4	Luka	Ramotse Community Centre	935 597	Sep-15	Feb-16	Impala	11	
3	Luka	Makgotla office upgrade	1 621 981	Oct-15	Feb-16	Impala	53	
4	Luka	Luka Clinic Upgrade	933 428	Sep-15	Dec-15	Impala Bafokeng Trust (IBT)	25	
3 & 4	Luka	Construction of Recreational and Sport Facilities	20 000 000	Apr-15	Dec-16	Impala		
23	Kanana	Construction of Multi-Purpose Centre and Library	15 000 000	Apr-15	Dec-16	Impala		

STANDARD BANK PROJECT

Ward No.	Area	Project name/ description	Project cost(s)	Timeframe/implementation period		Funder / Funding Source	Jobs created	
				Start Date	End date		Temporary	Permanent
	Rustenburg LM Jurisdiction	Standard Bank Housing support	R 1 000 000	In progress		Standard Bank	Local Contractor	
		4 houses						
		Beneficiaries identified by Mayor's Office						
AQUARIUS PLATINUM MINE PROJECTS								
33	Ikemeleng	Ikemeleng formalization	R 675 000	2006	2016	AQPSA	Nil	Nil
33	Ikemeleng	Ikemeleng chemical toilet rental	4 484 587	2009	2018	AQPSA	Nil	Nil
33	Ikemeleng	Ikemeleng VIP toilets	15,000,000	2016	2018	AQPSA	28	2
33	Ikemeleng	Ikemeleng Brickmaking	2,500,000	2016	2017	AQPSA	25	14
	Ramochana	ECD construction	5,500,000	2016	2017	AQPSA	20	5
	All	Facilitation: SMME's	176 000	2013	2016	AQPSA	26	
THARISA MINERALS								
32	Marikana	Water supply project	6 000 000	June-16	TBC	Tharisa Minerals	20	5
LONMIN PLATINUM								
Ward No.	**Area**	**Project name/ description**	**Project cost(s)**	**Timeframe/ implementation period**		**Funding source**	**Jobs created**	

				Start date	End date			
							Tempor ary	Perman ent
32	Marikana RDP	High Mast Lights	6 500 000	2018	2018	Lonmin SLP	15	0
31	Marikana	Refuse Management	1 200 000	2013	2018	Lonmin SLP	10	0
32	Marikana RDP	Refuse Management	1 200 000	2013	2018	Lonmin SLP	10	0
32	Marikana RDP	Community Health Centre	16 500 000	2017	2017	Lonmin SLP	30	0
32	Marikana RDP	Construction of a new primary school	15 600 000	2016	2017	Lonmin SLP	40	0
		TOTAL FUNDING	**41 000 000**					

5. INTEGRATION

5.1 SECTOR PLAN ALIGNMENT WITH IDP

The Integrated Development Plan is an important tool used by municipalities to provide vision, guidance and ultimately a roadmap towards developing the municipal area. Municipalities play an important role in ensuring sustainable integration between the cross cutting inter-dimensional sectors in achieving development in the area that is socially, economically and environmentally sustainable. In order to implement the correct developmental approach, projects should be targeted at specific human needs identified during public participation. Each need identified can be allocated to a certain sector and is important in the planning and delivery of services.

The concept of integration is central to the Integrated Development Plan and is led by priority issues identified in each municipality, which provides the focus for planning and development. Furthermore, it is important that each sector should be considered in their relevance to the priority issues identified by the public.

Through sector planning the local planning requirements of each specific sector are met and need to feature as part of the IDP process. It is therefore important to make sure that the sector plans of the RLM are aligned with the IDP. In the past, the local government only played an administrative and service delivery role. It has changed in the modern day, where local needs inform the active planning of sector-specific development and ultimately contribute towards the compilation of the overall Integrated Development Plan.

Table 25 attends to the contribution made by each sector through the identification of their specific objectives/goals/thrusts/issues and the alignment with the priorities (strategic objectives) identified for the IDP. The following sector plans for the RLM are included:

- Spatial Development Framework, 2010
- Disaster Management Plan, 2007
- Integrated Waste Management Plan, 2006
- Water Services Development Plan, 2009
- Integrated Transport Plan, 2008
- Housing Sector Plan, 2012
- Electricity Master Plan, 2009
- Local Economic Development Plan, 2011
- City Development Strategy, 2006.

Table 20: Sector Plan Alignment with the IDP

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
Spatial Development Framework, 2010							
Priorities and Objectives:							
Priority 1: Integrated Spatial Development Support by the Required Bulk Infrastructure Development	X						
Priority 2: Accelerated and Shared Economic Growth Supported by Creation of Spatial Economic Opportunities		X					
Priority 3: Sustainable Use and Management of Natural Resources				X			
Priority 4: Integration of Land Use and Transport Development					X		
Priority 5: Creation of Sustainable Settlements Through Access to Appropriate Housing and Social Facilities	X						
Priority 6: Creation of Opportunities for Sustainable Rural Development					X		
Disaster Management Plan, 2007							
Strategic Thrusts:							
Thrust 1: To ensure provision of adequate disaster management and emergency services	X						
Thrust 2: To promote relations with other spheres of government (Inter Government Relations)						X	
Thrust 3: To empower all level of Municipal structures, stakeholders,							X

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
functionaries and community at large on matter relating to Disaster/Risk Management and promote public participation							
Integrated Waste Management Plan, 2006							
Objectives:							
Objective 1: Identify and plan for future waste management needs and requirements of the RLM							X
Objective 2: To put into action goals and objectives stated within the Waste Management Policy							X
Objective 3: Ensure that adequate and equitable waste services are provided to all residing in the RLM	X						
Objective 4: To incorporate the principles of the internationally acceptable waste management hierarchy into daily, as well as short to long-term, waste activities and planning							X
Objective 5: To build on the waste management foundations currently established and improve all aspects of waste management within the RLM							X
Objective 6: To aim at successfully reducing the amount of waste that is disposed of at landfill by the continual support of private and community waste minimisation and				X			

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
recycling projects and initiatives, and the development of municipal projects							
Objective 7: Enable the municipality to have critical waste information at hand for optimisation of waste management							X
Objective 8: Minimise adverse social and environmental impacts related to waste management and thereby improve the quality of life for the communities of Rustenburg				X			
Objective 9: Minimise waste management costs by optimising the efficiency of the waste management system in terms of usage of infrastructure, labour and equipment				X			
Objective 10: To ensure that provision is made for adequate resources, such as human resources, infrastructure, vehicles and equipment	X						
Objective 11: To assist in the development of skills and capacity within the Waste Management Unit, to ensure successful implementation of the IWMP		X					
Objective 12: To ensure that the RLM mission statement is adhered to with the implementation of the IWMP, by assisting with job creation opportunities and introducing waste		X					

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
education/awareness initiatives for the public							
Objective 13: To assist with the Municipal Systems Act Section 78 internal and external mechanisms process							X
Objective 14: To be the precursor for the updating of the Waste Management By-laws for the RLM				X			
Water Services Development Plan, 2009							
Strategic Gaps/Issues:							
Issue 1: Fragmented development and distant communities	X						
Issue 2: Eradication of the current housing backlog					X		
Issue 3: Provision of employment opportunities		X					
Issue 4: Formulation of stands and proclamation of townships (informal settlements)					X		
Integrated Transport Plan, 2008							
Strategic Thrusts:							
Thrust 1: Modal Integration	X						
Thrust 2: Role of Public Transport vs. Private Transport	X						
Thrust 3: Integrate Transport and Land-Use	X						
Thrust 4: Special Categories of Passengers	X						
Thrust 5: Safety				X			
Thrust 6: Non-Motorised Transport	X						

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
Housing Sector Plan, 2012							
Strategic Objectives:							
Objective 1: The constitutional imperative	X						
Objective 2: Partnerships						X	
Objective 3: Integration and Intelligent Spatial Restructuring	X						
Objective 4: Sustainable living				X			
Objective 5: Facilitating intra-community economic growth		X					
Objective 6: Preserving a "sense of place"	X						
Electricity Master Plan, 2009							
Objectives:							
Objective 1: Promote a compact urban structure through urban infill and densification, specifically within the settlement clusters	X						
Objective 2: Create a logical hierarchy of settlements to support effective service delivery	X						
Objective 3: Create an urban edge to contain urban sprawl	X						
Objective 4: Focus rural development around key rural settlements					X		
Objective 5: Redirect the focus of rural settlements located close to water sources on intensive agriculture to lessen their					X		

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
dependence on the Rustenburg core area							
Objective 6: Strengthen rural centers as centers of service delivery					X		
Objective 7: Identify and strengthen gateways to Rustenburg through appropriate urban design, landscaping and development control	X						
Local Economic Development Plan, 2011							
Goals and Objectives:							
Goal 1: Increase Employment		X					
Goal 2: Increased Investment		X					
Goal 3: Increased Skills -Objective 1: Increase the number of education facilities -Objective 2: Increased number of vocational institution				X			
Goal 4: Increase the levels of health and safety				X			
Goal 5: Increase service -Objective 1: Increase the number of local community forums to assist in the area						X	
Goal 6: Responsible implementation of Corporate and Social Responsibility						X	
Goal 7: Build a green economy				X			
Goal 8: Increase local procurement						X	
City Development Strategy, 2006							
Long Term Goals:							

Sector Plans	RLM Priorities (Informs Strategic Objectives) of the IDP						
	Priority 1: Efficient provision of quality basic services and infrastructure within a well-planned spatial structure	**Priority 2:** Drive diversified economic growth and job creation	**Priority 3:** Ensure municipal financial viability and management	**Priority 4:** Maintain clean, green, safe and healthy municipal environment for all	**Priority 5:** Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development	**Priority 6:** Uphold good governance and public participation principles	**Priority 7:** Drive optimal municipal institutional development, transformation and capacity building
Goal 1: A diversified and resilient economy		X					
Goal 2: A logical and well-planned spatial structure supported and sustained by high quality infrastructure	X						
Goal 3: Appropriately skilled labour force	X						
Goal 4: Citizens enjoy a high quality of life	X						
Goal 5: Sustainable use and effective management of natural resources				X			
Goal 6: A city well governed by a municipal administration providing decisive leadership						X	

To conclude it is clear that there is a positive integration with regard to the Rustenburg Sector Plans and the IDP. Every sector plan contributes towards fulfilling the ultimate goal of the RLM in achieving each of their priority areas, through the implementation of its sector plans.

Linkages of the Municipal Role, to National Outcomes

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
1. Improve on the quality of basic education		
1. Improved quality of teaching and learning. 2. Improved early childhood development.	• Increase the number of Funza Lushaka bursary recipients from 9300 to 18 100 over the 2011 MTEF • Assess every child in grade 3, 6 and 9 every year • Improve learning and teaching materials to be distributed to primary schools in 2014 • Improve maths and science teaching.	• Collecting needs related to school from communities during mayoral imbizos • Identification and allocation appropriate land and appropriate zoning for school and early childhood development centres • Facilitate zoning and planning processes • Facilitate the eradication of municipal service backlogs in schools by extending appropriate bulk infrastructure and connections.
2. Improved health and life expectancy		
1. Decreased maternal and child mortality. 2. Combating HIV and AIDS and decreased burden of Tuberculosis. 3. Strengthen health services effectiveness. Related IDP objective: *(To ensure good health of the community by providing a comprehensive Primary Health care and ensuring the implementation of HIV/AIDS programmes)*	• Revitalize primary health care • Increase early antenatal visits to 50% • Increase vaccine coverage • Improve hospital and clinic infrastructure • Accredit health facilities • Extend coverage of new child vaccines • Expand HIV prevention and treatment • Increase prevention of mother to child transmission • School health promotion increase school visits by nurses from 5 to 20 % • Enhance TB treatment.	• Offering Primary Health Care at municipal clinics • Increase the percentage of children under 1 year of age that are vaccinated with pneumococcal and rotavirus vaccines • Increase the proportion of pregnant women tested through health care provider-initiated counselling and testing for all pregnant women • Increase the percentage of infants requiring dual therapy for PMTCT • Provide Isonaid Preventive Therapy (IPT) to HIV positive patients with no active TB • Provide Contrimoxazole Preventive therapy (CPT) to HIV-TB co-infected patients • Establishment of the HIV/AIDS support Groups • Conducting workshops on HIV & AIDS Mainstreaming in municipal services.
3. All people in South Africa protected and feel safe		
1. Reduced overall level of crime. 2. An effective and integrated criminal justice system. 3. Improved perceptions of crime among the population. 4. Improved investor perceptions and trust.	• Increase police personnel • Establish tactical response teams in • Occupation-specific dispensation for legal professionals • Deploy SANDF soldiers to South Africa's borders.	• Crime Prevention through Environmental Design – Installation of CCTV cameras • Establishment of Alcohol Testing Centre • Joint law enforcement operation on bylaws and traffic regulations • Integrated communication centre at Fire Department

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
5. Effective and integrated border management. 6. Integrity of identity of citizens and residents secured. Related IDP objective: *(To promote safety and security by adequately managing traffic, monitoring public transport; providing adequate disaster management and emergency services and by ensuring compliance to and enforcement of by-laws.)*		• Construction and manning of fire houses at the regional centres (Marikana and Phatsima) • Strengthened traffic and by law enforcements Joint operations • Special operations on outstanding traffic fines • Extension of Traffic safety programmes to school outside the city core.
7. Integrated ICT system and combated cybercrime. Related IDP objective*: (To create an integrated information and communication technology for the municipality by establishing, implementing and monitoring Management Information Systems.)*	• Upgrade IT infrastructure • ICT renewal in justice cluster.	• Revision of the ICT master system plan (ICT Strategy) • Address cybercrime by developing and approving an IT Security and cybercrime policy • Monitoring the implementation of the Security and cyber-crime policy • Maintenance of the ICT infrastructure.
4. Decent employment through inclusive economic growth		
1. Faster and sustainable inclusive growth. 2. More labour-absorbing growth. 3. Strategy to reduce youth unemployment. 4. Increase competitiveness to raise net exports and grow trades. 5. Improve support to small business and cooperatives. 6. Implement expanded public works programme. Related IDP objectives*:* • *(To promote, attract and retain investors through maximising private sector investment and facilitate forging of*	• Invest in industrial development zones • Industrial sector strategies – automotive industry; clothing and textiles • Youth employment incentive • Develop training and systems to improve procurement • Skills development and training • Reserve accumulation • Enterprise financing support • New phase of public works programme.	• Create an enabling environment for investment by streamlining planning application processes • Ensure proper maintenance and rehabilitation of essential services infrastructure • Ensure proper implementation of the EPWP at municipal level • Design service delivery processes to be labour intensive • Improve procurement systems to eliminate corruption and ensure value for money • Utilise community structures to provide services.

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
partnerships and creating conditions conducive to entrepreneurial activity and investment.) • *(To promote a diverse economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.)*		
5. A skilled and capable workforce to support inclusive growth		
1. A credible skills planning institutional mechanism. 2. Increase access to intermediate and high-level learning programmes. 3. Increase access to occupation- specific programmes (especially artisan skills training). 4. Research, development and innovation in human capital. Related IDP objectives: • *To promote capacity building **through** skills development* • *To ensure that transformation is reflected in all levels of municipality through managing an organisational structure supportive of the Employment Equity.*	• Increase enrolment in FET colleges and training of lecturers • Invest in infrastructure and equipment in colleges and technical schools • Expand skills development learnerships funded through sector training authorities and National Skills Fund • Industry partnership projects for skills and technology development • National Research Foundation centres excellence, and bursaries and research funding; • Science council applied research programmes.	• Conducting of skill audit critical posts of all senior management to ensure that the positions are filled by competent and suitable qualified individuals • Develop and extend intern and work experience programmes in municipalities • Implementation on Workplace skills plan by appointing accredited providers • Implementation of the national treasury competency regulation, enrolling senior management middle management in high level learning programmes to close the identified skill gaps and to meet the target date of 2013 • Allocation of Municipal bursaries for further tertiary education of personnel.
6. An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network		
1. Improve competition and regulation. 2. Reliable generation, distribution and transmission of energy. 3. Maintain and expand road and rail network, and efficiency, capacity and competitiveness of sea ports.	• An integrated energy plan and successful independent power producers • Passenger Rail Agency acquisition of rail rolling stock, and refurbishment and upgrade of motor coaches and trailers	• Ring-fence water, electricity and sanitation functions so as to facilitate cost-reflecting pricing of these services • Maintain and expand water purification works and waste water treatment works in line with growing demand • Improve maintenance of municipal road networks

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
4. Maintain bulk water infrastructure and ensure water supply. 5. Information and communication technology. 6. Benchmarks for each sector.	• Increase infrastructure funding for provinces for the maintenance of provincial roads • Complete Gauteng Freeway Improvement Programme • Complete De Hoop Dam and bulk distribution; • Nandoni pipeline • Invest in broadband network infrastructure.	• Implementations of the bus rapid transport system to link create transports with urban centres.
Ensured reliable generation, distribution and transmission of electricity. Maintenance and supply availability of our bulk water infrastructure *Related IDP objective :* *To ensure provision of quality basic services and investment of funds into infrastructure projects to benefit the community.*	.	Develop programme for interaction through social development vehicle for municipal infrastructure that will be established in collaboration with other departments, business and mines to assist in mobilising private sector infrastructure funding for municipality and also to support the planning and expenditure of CAPEX and OPEX in municipalities.
7. Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security		
1. Sustainable agrarian reform and improved access to markets for small farmers. 2. Improve access to affordable and diverse food. 3. Improve rural services and access to information to support livelihoods. 4. Improve rural employment opportunities. 5. Enable institutional environment for sustainable and inclusive growth. *Related IDP objective:* *To promote a diverse Economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.*	• Settle 7 000 land restitution claims • Redistribute 283 592 ha of land by 2014 • Support emerging farmers • Soil conservation measures and sustainable land use management • Nutrition education programmes • Improve rural access to services by 2014: o Water - 74% to 90% o Sanitation - 45% to 65% o Sanitation - 45% to 65%	• Facilitate the development of local cooperatives and support • Promote home production to enhance food security; through agricultural support programme (strategies of the CDS and LED strata not captured)

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
Improved access to affordable diverse food Rural job creation linked to skills training and promoting economic livelihoods *Related IDP objective:* *To promote partnerships, public and stakeholder participation by empowering and involving Magosi, communities and ward committees on matters of local government.*		• To strengthen engagement with the traditional authorities on basic services with emphasis on rural development and food security.
8. Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life		
1. Accelerate housing delivery. 2. Improve property market. 3. More efficient land utilisation and release of state-owned land. Related IDFP objective: *To facilitate an accelerated housing development and promote integrated human settlement through spatial restructuring and integrated land-use management with special emphasis on curbing urban sprawl and promotion of densification.*	• Increase housing units built from 220 000 to 600 000 a year • Increase construction of social housing units to 80 000 a year • Upgrade informal settlements: 400 000 units by 2014 • Deliver 400 000 low-income houses on state-owned land • Improved urban access to basic services by 2014: o Water - 92% to 100% o Sanitation - 69% to 100% o Refuse removal - 64% to 75% o Electricity - 81% to 92%	• Accreditation for housing provision • Review spatial plans to ensure new housing developments are in line with national policy on integrated human settlements • Participate in the identification of suitable land for social housing • Ensure capital budgets are appropriately prioritised to maintain existing services and extend services.
9. A responsive and, accountable, effective and efficient local government system		
1. Differentiate approach to municipal financing, planning and support. 2. Community work programme. 3. Support for human settlements. 4. Refine ward committee model to deepen democracy. 5. Improve municipal financial administrative capability. 6. Single coordination window.	• Municipal capacity-building grants: o Systems improvement o Financial management (target: 100% unqualified audits) o Municipal infrastructure grant o Electrification programme o Public transport & systems grant o Bulk infrastructure & water grants o Neighbourhood development partnership grant	• In line with the Guideline to be developed by COGTA the RLM will focus on the Following: o Develop a framework for priority infrastructure informed by the backlog report o Review IDP legal status to include national and provincial sector Commitment o In a consultative manner engage internal and external stakeholder for project and implementation alignment. • Development of the financial plan as prescribed by Municipal planning and performance regulation of 2001

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
	○ Increase urban densities ○ Informal settlements upgrades.	• All ward committees functional. (budgeted for stipend, transport costs, stationery and capacity building). participate in IDP planning processes • Monitor and table audit reports to Performance Audit Committee and Council in terms of the MFMA timelines • Integrate risk management as part of promoting internal controls and good governance • Use risk identified during audit to compile the operational risk and mitigation strategies and controls • Implement the community work programme in more wards of the municipality • Availing land for housing developments, Town-ship establishment; Administration and allocation of houses to correct beneficiaries • Re-establishment of ward committee after elections and Ensuring that ward committees are representative and fully involved in community consultation processes around the IDP, budget and other strategic service delivery issues • Improve municipal financial and administrative capacity by implementing competency norms and standards and acting against incompetence and corruption.
<u>A differentiated approach to municipal financing, Planning and support implemented.</u> • Produced simplified IDP • A simplified revenue plan to Support the simplified IDP.	To promote a culture of accountability, transparency and performance excellence through proper implementation of performance management system, other compliance monitoring mechanisms and by ensuring effective internal audit services.	• In line with the Guideline to be developed by COGTA the RLM will focus on the Following: ○ Develop a framework for priority infrastructure informed by the backlog report ○ Review IDP legal status to include national and provincial sector Commitment ○ In a consultative manner engage internal and external stakeholder for project and implementation alignment ○ Development of the financial plan as prescribed by Municipal planning and performance regulation of 2001.
• Concise Performance contract for municipal manager, senior and middle management developed.		• Develop performance agreement for all senior management and middle management and other positions that Council identified as next level of cascading

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
Related IDP objective: To promote a culture of accountability, transparency and performance excellence through proper implementation of performance management system, other compliance monitoring mechanisms and by ensuring effective internal audit services.		• Aggressive implementation of the employee performance assessment and review systems for high performance and cascading to level five including all traffic Officers into the system • Ensure that the performance contract of the Municipal Manager is concise and focused on key deliverables • Monitor the implementation of IDP & SDBIP and adherence to targets of the programmes • Receive regular reports and feedback from municipal entities and Provide quarterly reports to council • Ensure that feedback is provided to council on decisions taken at mining forum by the LED directorate • Quarterly and Annual Performance reviews.
<u>Improved Municipal Financial and Administrative capacities.</u> • Improved Audit outcomes Related IDP Objectives: • *To practice sound and sustainable financial management **by** strengthening internal control measures and compliance to relevant legislations and policies.* • *To enhance and optimise all current and potential revenue resources **by** cultivating a culture of payment for services.*		• Update consumer information with correct stand no.; water & electricity meter number and postal address in urban areas • Transfer RDP houses to rightful beneficiaries and to complete service level agreements and capture the new consumer information on PROMIS following deed registrations • Link **farm** with correct owner and obtain all consumer contact information to enable successful delivery of municipal account • Reconcile the supplementary valuation roll to be received end of March 2011 with PROMIS • Reduce estimated metered readings by 10% per month, Investigate consumer accounts in credit - repay where need be - adjust account where need be • Apply rates & tariffs in accordance with consumer /property categories or usage • Link and consolidate accounts • Enhance collection thru implementation of water pre-paid system • Reduce to below 5% the number arrear accounts that result from transfer of properties • Enter into agreements with employers to collect municipal debt from their employees

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
		• Verify correctness of top 1 000 (one thousand) outstanding consumer accounts • Appoint additional employees as debt collectors at Regional Offices • Monitor and table audit reports to Performance Audit Committee and Council in terms of the MFMA timelines • Integrate risk management as part of promoting internal controls and good governance • Use risk identified during audit to compile the operational risk and mitigation strategies and controls • To integrate risk analysis on the SDBIP key deliverable upon completion of the risk sessions • Procedure manuals and standard operation procedure to strengthen the internal control system • Strengthen management oversight financial records and asset management.
• Strengthened anti-corruption capacity of the municipality.		• Approval of the anti-fraud and anti-corruption policies • Resuscitation of the fraud hotline • Review supply chain policy in line with the Supply chain management regulation to be reviewed • Campaigns on ethics and fraud prevention awareness.
<u>Improved access to basic services</u> • Increased access to basic water • Improved access to basic sanitation • Increased access to basic refuse removal • Increased access to basic electricity *Related IDP Objective:* *To ensure provision of quality basic services and investment of funds into infrastructure projects to benefit the community.*	To ensure provision of quality basic services and investment of funds into infrastructure projects to benefit the community.	• Implementation of projects though own and Grant Funding to reduce backlog on basic services • Water provision will be extended to all areas of the municipality. Adequate resources will be allocated to areas with no access to water • Reduction in backlog on rehabilitation/refurbishment of the old water infrastructure • Reduction in unaccounted water from approximately 39% of supply to 15%.by 2013 • The number of households with access to refuse removal services will be increased through the extension of the services to all the areas of the municipality, especially the villages • Household access to electricity should be 100% by 2014. Rustenburg Local Municipality will facilitate the provision of electricity to all its

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
		communities through cooperation with ESKOM and other service providers • Maintenance and refurbishment master plan to be reviewed and implemented to ensure efficient supply and minimized power outages • The condition of access and internal roads will be improved • High mast lights will be provided and maintained in the entire area of the municipality • Prioritise those areas without street lighting and those with the greatest need for maintenance.
<u>CWP Implemented in at least two wards in the Municipality</u> • Job opportunities associated with Functional cooperatives Related IDP objective: To promote a diverse economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.	To promote a diverse economic development and job creation for local residents by the development of entrepreneurial skills in the management of SMME's, tourism and capital projects undertaken within the municipal area.	• Identification of wards poor wards for implementation • Deployment of CWP labourer across the municipal ward with particular focus or poorer wards. • Implement the Housing EPWP and link it to the Private Sector Property Development Initiatives. • Monitoring and reporting. • Training of SMMEs • Implement Community Works Programme. (CWP) • The CWP is a key initiative to mobilise communities in order to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local level. This is a ward-based programme the idea being to identify 'useful work' ranging from 1-2 days a week or one week a month initially targeted at the poorest wards • Facilitate grading of the Bread and Breakfast accommodation.
<u>Support to the human settlement outcomes</u> • Increased densities in the in human settlements	To facilitate an accelerated housing development and promote integrated human settlement through spatial restructuring and integrated land-use management with special emphasis on curbing urban sprawl and promotion of densification.	• The implementation plan of the CWP to ensure that 30% of all jobs opportunities of the CWP are associated with functional cooperatives.
• Mobilised well located public, private and traditional land for low income and affordable housing.		• To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification • Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA • Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill.

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
		• To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan
• Mobilised well located public, private and traditional land for low income and affordable housing.		• To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification • Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA • Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill. • To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan
• Mobilised well located public, private and traditional land for low income and affordable housing.		• To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification • Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA • Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill • To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan
• Mobilised well located public, private and traditional land for low income and affordable housing.		• To participate in the in the development of a Framework to ensure densification • Facilitate the establishment of human settlement committee, guided by COGTA • Support the review of the Land used planning and management bill • To review the municipal Spatial Development Plan
• Formalised Settlements under the National Upgrading Support programme (NUSP)		• Extend the lessons of the integrated human settlement programme to other new development projects • Develop bulk infrastructure in the development nodes • A key requirement is a proper functioning land use management system to improve development and zoning processes and systems. In this regard, the Municipality will align with the process coordinated by the Presidency in the development of new comprehensive land use management legislation • Identification of settlement to be formalised • Applications for township establishment.
Refined ward committee model to deepen democracy.	To ensure functionality and sustainability of ward committees, Council committees and Business and Mining consultative forum by	• Facilitate election of ward committee in consultation with province. • LG-SETA accredited training for ward committee members. • Support the updating and refinement of wards committee induction material by COGTA

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
	positively engaging on issues of common interest and oversight	
• Reduced Municipal debts and enhance revenue collection.	To enhance and optimize all current and potential revenue resources ***by*** cultivating a culture of payment for services	• Rollout of comprehensive revenue enhancement programme that includes: o Debt Collection o Indigent management o Billing systems and data Cleansing o Undertake detailed investment and tariff plan • Co-sourcing debts collections to maximise collection. • Embark on campaign to simultaneously register indigents and make awareness on payment of services and different option of making payments. • Audit all properties and meters to ensure correct levying in terms of zoning and investigate illegal connections, electricity and water losses • Regular audits on Water quality to sustain the blue drop status • Implement the innovative meter reading system linked to GIS
• Reduced municipal under spending on capital budget (Capex)	To practice sound and sustainable financial management by strengthening internal control measures and compliance to relevant legislations and policies.	• Implementation of capital projects within the planned timeframes • Reduction in turnaround times in the supply chain processes • Completion of Purchasing of capital items by the first quarter of the financial year.
• Reduced over spending on operational budget (opex)		• Monitoring and control on overtime and other votes with high potential of over spending.
• Increased Municipal Spending on repairs and maintenance.	To maintain and upgrade the level of existing services to meet the required standards and ensure sustainability of assets/ projects.	• Monitor budget and in year reporting for expenditure on repairs and maintenance.
• Increased access to occupationally-directed programmes in needed areas • Increased level of post matric and post graduate qualification amongst staff and councillors.	To promote capacity building through skills development	• Prepare targeted workplace Skills Plan, setting of aggressive skills development targets for the municipal labour force • Award bursaries to deserving and qualifying officials • Implementation of the national treasury competency regulation for senior and middle management by enrolling Officials and Councillors in the CPMD programmes • Coordinate development of a clear institutional plan (illustrating future need for human resources, office space and estimated cost to

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
		fund the plan) in line with the Integrated Development Planning guidelines and sector plans • Revision of the employment equity plan with clear numeric targets • Implementation of the EEP.
10. Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources		
1. Enhance quality and quantity of water resources 2. Reduce greenhouse gas emissions; mitigate climate change impacts; improve air quality 3. Sustainable environment management 4. Protect biodiversity. *Related IDP objective: Ensuring sustainable environment management and protection*	• National water resource infrastructure programme • reduce water losses from 30% to 15% by 2014 • Expanded public works environmental programmes; • 100 wetlands rehabilitated a year • Forestry management (reduce deforestation to <5% of woodlands) • Biodiversity and conservation (increase land under conservation from 6% to 9%).	• Review the Strategic Environmental Assessment reports (SEA) • Conduct air quality monitoring • Develop and implement water management plans to reduce water losses • Ensure effective maintenance and rehabilitation of infrastructure • Run water and *electricity saving awareness campaigns* • *Ensure proper management of* municipal commonage and urban open spaces • Ensure development does not take place on wetlands • Review of the Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) • Alignment of the environmental framework with the Spatial Development Framework.
11. A better South Africa, a better and safer Africa and world		
1. Enhance the African agenda and sustainable development 2. Enhance regional integration 3. Reform global governance institutions 4. Enhance trade and investment between South Africa and partners.	• International cooperation: proposed establishment of the South African Development Partnership Agency • Defence: peace-support operations • Participate in post-conflict reconstruction and development • Border control: upgrade inland ports of entry • Trade and Investment South Africa: o Support for value – added exports o Foreign direct investment promotion.	Our Role of local government is limited in this area.
12. A development-orientated public service and inclusive citizenship		
1. Improve government performance 2. Government-wide performance monitoring and evaluation 3. Conduct comprehensive expenditure review	• Performance monitoring and evaluation: o Oversight of delivery agreements • Statistics SA: Census 2011 – reduce undercount	• Develop performance agreement for all senior management and middle management and other positions that Council identified as next level of cascading • Aggressive implementation of the employee performance assessment and review systems

Outputs	Key spending programmes (National)	Municipal Role programmes/ projects.
4. Information campaign on constitutional rights and responsibilities 5. Celebrate cultural diversity.	• Chapter 9 institutions and civil society: programme to promote constitutional rights; • Arts & Culture: promote national symbols and heritage; • Sport & Recreation: support mass participation and school sport programmes	• Comply with legal financial reporting requirements • Review municipal expenditures to eliminate wastage • Monitor the implementation of IDP & SDBIP and adherence to targets of the programmes.

6. FINANCIAL PLAN

6.1 INTRODUCTION

The municipality strives to make the most of the financial resources to ensure long-term financial viability and sustainability through the following:

- Ensure transparency and accountability
- Manage revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities in a responsible manner
- Set affordable tariffs
- Effective supply chain management
- Effective use of latest technology to eliminate unnecessary inefficiencies
- Effective cash flow management
- Effective implementation of credit control and debt collection processes
- To seek alternative sources of funding
- To ensure compliance to the prescripts governing the local government sphere
- Attract new businesses and existing business retention.

With this plan the municipality will be striving for the sound financial management and viability. Looking at the medium-term with regards to the imperatives and related strategies, the plan seeks to address a number of aspects to achieve the desired outcome within the five-year period. For 2017- 2022 term, the municipality will focus on the following as a five-year plan approach:

- Financial stability – (short-term; one to two years)
- Financial Consolidation (medium-term; three years)
- Sustainability (long-term; 4 to 5 years).

The objective of the financial plan is to ensure that the municipality has effective, efficient and well-coordinated financial management.

The municipality's focal point will be on the two-fold approach, the first approach will be to correct the basics and dealing with inefficiencies and productivity. The next phase will be coordination and sustainability to ensure that the municipality matches the growth of Rustenburg and also looking at the 2025 vision.

The municipality will also look at the gaps as identified in the revenue turnaround plan and focus on the continuation of the growth in relation to the capital expansion program. While ensuring compliance to the prescripts of the MFMA, the municipality will focus on improving and investing on the latest

technology in improving the financial services to the clients and the turnaround time. The municipality will have to follow suit in the line of SARS in ensuring that there is continuous developments in terms of technology and system integration. The municipality is in the process of acquiring an Electronic Bill Presentment Payment Solution in order to eliminate the paper based statements which will certainly have a positive impact in the long-term in reducing the number of clients at Mpheni House's rates hall and reduction in printing costs. Further the municipality is looking at introducing e-clearance certificates and electronic clearance certificate applications to ease the burden of applicants to physically apply for the clearance certificates at the municipality and also to improve on the turnaround time in terms of issuing the certificates.

The municipality's liquidity ratio and credit rating are not in good standing, therefore the municipality, in the next five years, will focus in the following to ensure that alternating funding methodologies are explored in order to accelerate service delivery. The collaborations with the mines through MASECO in providing services will also assist in ensuring that within the next five years the basic needs are extended to all.

6.1.1 FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

Moody's rating agency has conducted a credit rating exercise in early 2016. The key indicators that were examined were the following reviewing the periods 2011-2018:

Indicator	14/15	15/16	16/17	17/18
Capital charges to total expenditure	19%	16%	11%	2%
Repairs & maintenance as % of PPE(CV)	2%	1%	1%	1%
Collection rate	87%	83%	82%	54%
Cash/Cost coverage ratio	1 Month	0 months	0 months	1 month
Current ratio	0.88	0.85	0.92	0.78
Net operating surplus margin	5%	5%	6%	6%
Electricity distribution Losses	5%	7%	9%	8%
Water Distribution Losses	48%	49%	43%	41%
Gearing ratio	7.66%	7.04%	6.53%	5%

[1] GDP at provincial level

The A3.za national scale issuer rating of the Municipality of Rustenburg reflects its currently moderate debt levels and historically strong liquidity position, notwithstanding persistently weak revenue collection rates. The rating also incorporates challenges associated with the municipality's anticipated large capex programme in the medium-term, which will lead to an increase in debt stock in the medium-term. Rustenburg features a strong economic base, albeit concentrated towards the platinum industry which makes the local economy vulnerable to macro-economic cycles.

In June 2017, Moody's Investors Service downgraded the rating of Rustenburg Municipality Ba2. This action was prompted by the deterioration of South Africa's credit profile as captured by the placement under review for stable in 2018.

National Peer Comparison

Rustenburg is rated in the mid-range of South African municipalities; whose ratings span from Aaa.za to Ba2.za. The municipality's relative position reflects its historically strong liquidity profile. Debt and debt service levels are in line with the median of South African municipalities rated by Moody's.

Credit Strengths

- Strong revenue growth, albeit volatile operating balances
- Strong liquidity position
- Conservative investment management system

Credit Challenges

- Increasing debt stock, albeit debt ratio remain moderate
- Concentrated economic base

Rating Outlook

The negative outlook on Rustenburg rating mirrors the rating action taken on the ratings of its support provider, the Government of South Africa (Ba2/ Negative).

Factors that Could Lead to an Upgrade

Substantial improvements on revenue collections and continued moderate debt levels could exert upward rating pressure on Rustenburg´s rating.

Factors that Could Lead to a Downgrade

- A deterioration in financial performance resulting in cash flow tensions and rapidly growing debt levels would foster downward rating adjustments of the rating.
- A further weakening of the South African government's credit profile, reflected in a downgrade of the sovereign rating could negatively affect the Municipality of Rustenburg's rating.

Recent Developments

The weakening of South Africa's credit profile, as captured by Moody's recent action to place the South African sovereign bond rating under review for possible downgrade, prompted a similar change to the outlook of 11 regional and local governments and three government related issuers, including that of Rustenburg Municipality. The deterioration in South Africa's sovereign creditworthiness indicates a weakening operating environment for sub-sovereign issuers. The centralised nature of South Africa's local public sector results in close operational and financial links between the national government,

large cities and medium-sized municipalities, whose budgetary structure and relative size expose them to the country's macroeconomic performance and socio-economic conditions to varying degrees. Small municipalities are highly reliant on government transfers for operating and capital investments.

STRONG REVENUE GROWTH, ALBEIT VOLATILE OPERATING BALANCES

Rustenburg is the largest local municipality in the North West Province in terms of revenues, the municipality recorded R4.2 billion in 2017/18. The municipality's budget has expanded significantly over recent years, primarily reflecting substantial increase in government grants while there is decline in service charges. In 2019 the municipal budget featured high exposure to the local economy, given that Rustenburg derives 83% of annual operating revenue from locally-collected taxes and service charges, namely property tax income and service charges, while it receives 17% in the form of national government grant transfers. On the budgeted expenditure side, fixed items such as bulk purchases and employee costs contribute a high 57% of operating expenditure as which is a significant increase to 44% in 2017. We expect its own revenue structure to fund the operating expenditure.

Rustenburg has been challenged by persistently low debtors' collection over the past couple of years and this primarily reflects modest budgetary control, and a high provision for bad debts of R3,7 billion which is high by R600 million from 2016/17.

STRONG LIQUIDITY POSITION

Rustenburg historically maintained strong liquidity position and very low debt levels, in 2011 the city recorded the highest liquidity ratio of 2.8 compared to other rated peers. That said, the city's investment in fixed assets substantially increased between 2012 and 2015 which was largely financed through capital grants and own funds. This resulted in a steep decline in the city's liquidity ratio (Current Assets/Current Liabilities - Net off 50% of Balance Sheet Debtors) to 0.8x in 2015. However, going forward the municipality budgeted to increase its exposure to borrowing which will likely conserve its liquidity buffer but increase debt service. As a result of increased borrowing, the liquidity ratio is projected to improve to 1.5x by 2020 onwards. This can be achieved through intense credit control and debt collection programme and coupled with other revenue enhancement strategies

CONSERVATIVE INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Whilst management has been able to exercise conservative approach towards new borrowing in recent years, Rustenburg's new strategy to invest heavily on infrastructure projects may present a challenge for the administration in the medium-term if revenue collections rate does not improve.

CONCENTRATED ECONOMIC BASE

Rustenburg is the largest and one of the wealthiest municipalities in the North West Province. With about 581,000 inhabitants or 37% of Bojanala District municipality, it contributes more than 70% of the district GDP and about 40% of the provincial GDP. The municipality's unemployment rate at around 26.4% is in line with the rest of the country.

Rustenburg's economy is largely concentrated in the platinum mining industries, which contributed 66% to provincial GVA in 2013, followed by the trade and finance sector which contributed 29% and 28% respectively in the same period. It must be noted that Rustenburg experienced negative GDP growth (-3.5%) in 2012 which was largely influenced by a decline in the mining sector. This led to negative growth in the province of -0.9% compared to national GDP growth of 2.5%. In 2013 Rustenburg GDP recorded an improved growth of 1.8%.

The municipality is the largest producer of platinum, with approximately 70% of the world's platinum production, followed by Russia and Canada. Platinum is primarily used in autocatalytic converters for emissions control, but the jewellery industry has recently become a large user. Despite Rustenburg's policy to increase sector diversification, the performance of the mining industry will continue to influence local economic prospects for the foreseeable future.

Extraordinary Support Considerations

Moody's assigns a low likelihood of extraordinary support from the national government, reflecting, at the jurisdictional level, the national government's policy stance of promoting greater accountability for South African municipalities. Reputation risk for the central government is deemed modest, mainly in view of the heavy dominance of bank loans rather than bonds. The credit history of municipalities in South Africa also highlights past instances of missed payments or delinquencies on loans. Although the new legal framework regulates the recovery of municipalities experiencing financial difficulties, it does not suggest timely extraordinary bail-out actions to avoid defaults on debt obligations.

Output of the Baseline Credit Assessment Scorecard

In the case of Rustenburg, the BCA matrix generates an estimated BCA of ba2 close to the BCA of ba1 assigned by the rating committee. The matrix-generated BCA of ba2 reflects (1) an idiosyncratic risk score of 5 (presented below) on a 1 to 9 scale, where 1 represents the strongest relative credit quality and 9 the weakest; and (2) a systemic risk score of Baa2, as reflected in the sovereign bond rating (Baa2, negative).

The idiosyncratic risk scorecard and BCA matrix, which generate estimated baseline credit assessments from a set of qualitative and quantitative credit metrics, are tools used by the rating committee in assessing regional and local government credit quality. The credit metrics captured by these tools provide a good statistical gauge of stand-alone credit strength and, in general, higher ratings

can be expected among issuers with the highest scorecard-estimated BCAs. Nevertheless, the scorecard-estimated BCAs do not substitute for rating committee judgments regarding individual baseline credit assessments, nor is the scorecard a matrix for automatically assigning or changing these assessments. Scorecard results have limitations in that they are backward-looking, using historical data, while the assessments are forward-looking opinions of credit strength. Concomitantly, the limited number of variables included in these tools cannot fully capture the breadth and depth of our credit analysis.

ABOUT MOODY'S SUB-SOVEREIGN RATINGS

Moody's National Scale Credit Ratings (NSRs) are intended as relative measures of creditworthiness among debt issues and issuers within a country, enabling market participants to better differentiate relative risks. NSRs differ from Moody's global scale credit ratings in that they are not globally comparable with the full universe of Moody's rated entities, but only with NSRs for other rated debt issues and issuers within the same country. NSRs are designated by a ".nn" country modifier signifying the relevant country, as in ".za" for South Africa. For further information on Moody's approach to national scale credit ratings, please refer to Moody's Credit rating Methodology published in June 2014 entitled "Mapping Moody's National Scale Ratings to Global Scale Ratings". The Moody's Global Scale rating for issuers and issues allows investors to compare the issuer's/issue's creditworthiness to all others in the world, rather than merely in one country. It incorporates all risks relating to that country, including the potential volatility of the national economy.

Baseline Credit Assessment

Baseline Credit Assessments (BCAs) are opinions of entity's standalone intrinsic strength, absent any extraordinary support from a government. Contractual relationships and any expected ongoing annual subsidies from the government are incorporated in BCAs and, therefore, are considered intrinsic to an issuer's standalone financial strength.

BCAs are expressed on a lower-case alpha-numeric scale that corresponds to the alpha-numeric ratings of the global long-term rating scale.

Extraordinary Support

Extraordinary support is defined as action taken by a supporting government to prevent a default by a regional or local government (RLG) and could take different forms, ranging from a formal guarantee to direct cash infusions to facilitating negotiations with lenders to enhance access to needed financing.

Extraordinary support is described as either low (0% - 30%), moderate (31% - 50%), strong (51% - 70%), high (71% - 90%) or very high (91% - 100%).

6.2 OPERATING AND CAPITAL BUDGETS

The five-year financial plan includes an operating budget and capital investment program per source of funding.

6.2.1 BUDGET ASSUMPTIONS

The following sub-section provided the budget assumptions from 2019/20 medium- term revenue and expenditure framework.

The outcome of the IDP is the alignment of the planning processes and resources to the strategic direction. The result is the compilation and approval of the multi-year budget. The plans to deliver and protect the poor are still dependent on the economy that is still volatile. The table below refers to the indicative macroeconomic forecasts for the three forecasted years.

Table 27: Indicative Macro-Economic Forecasts

Indicator	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22
CPI inflation	5.30%	5.33%	5.40%	5.50%
Interest rate	Prime + 1%	Prime + 1%	Prime + 1%	Prime + 1%
Employee cost	7%	7%	5%	5%
Remuneration of Councillors	4%	4%	4%	4%
Repairs and Maintenance	6%	6%	6%	6%
Free basic Water	6KI	6KI	6KI	6KI
Free basic Electricity	50KWH	50KWH	50KWH	50KWH

The table below indicates a summary of the operating budget for 2018/2019 MTREF.

Table 28: Operational Budget for 2018/2019 MTREF

Description	2017/18	Adjusted budget 2018/19	2019/20	2020/21
R thousands				
Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)	4 787 919	4 830 995	5 062 815	5 397 151
Expenditure	4 779 643	4 821 240	5 028 718	5 330 419
Surplus/ (Deficit)	**8 276**	**9 755**	**34 097**	**66 732**

6.2.2 CAPITAL BUDGET

The implementation of the capital budget will be informed by the Growth and Development strategy. Provision for the capital expansion program will be limited to the available funds in terms of grants for the backlog without the mix of the internal funds and borrowings to cater for the asset replacement and refurbishment. The following principles will have to be addressed during the implementation:

- Labour based construction
- Supporting the local businesses and BBBEE broader
- LED projects that will support SMME's and create jobs with private sector corporation
- The enterprise developments.

The multi-year budget allocations were prioritized based on the following elements:

- Revenue generating projects
- Refurbishment of infrastructure
- Installation of services for the low-cost houses
- Formalisation of informal settlements into sustainable human settlements
- Projects to reduce costs, such as smart metering and consumption management system.

An overview of the total capital expenditure that is budgeted over the following three financial years.

Description (R 000)	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21
TOTAL	828 935	701 284	726 664

Table 29 illustrated the provision of the funding for the capital budget over the next three financial years.

Table 29: Funding of the Capital Budget

FUNDING FOR CAPITAL EXPENDITURE						
FUNDING	**2015/2016**	**2016/2017**	**2017/2018**	**2018/19**	**2019/2020**	**2020/2021**
MIG	202 743	169 603	239 436	230 086	235 107	248 995
PTNIG	492 252	345 354	314 156	298 212	218 912	230 953
NEIGHBOURHOOD	-	-	800	200	200	10 200
INEP	7 402	-	-	10 038	19 200	32 000
WSIG	16	15 131	82 256	60 000	88 000	92 840
ACIG	4 611	-	-	-	-	-
DSAC - Library	11 026	4 737	4 135	2 152		
GRANTS	**707 024**	**530 088**	**636 648**	**598 536**	**561 419**	**614 988**
INTERNALLY GENERATED FUNDS	**194 131**	**19 120**	**29 000**	**117 807**	**170 600**	**167 894**
BORROWING:	**79 270**	**128 603**	**-**	**203 662**	**60 000**	**60 000**
TOTAL	**980 426**	**677 811**	**665 648**	**920 006**	**792 019**	**842 882**

6.3 FINANCIAL STRATEGY FRAMEWORK

The municipality is growing at a very high rate and it is important for the municipality to focus on ensuring that the revenue is optimized, protected and managed properly. In terms of the turnaround plan, a lot of strides have been made in identifying the gaps and ensuring that the aspects that are impacting negatively on maximizing collection are corrected.

The investment on the ICT infrastructure and moving into the acquisition of the ERP will assist in ensuring that the systems are integrated. Further it will also assist in improving on the efficiencies and responding quickly in terms of reporting and client services.

The Municipality had experienced system challenges in the implementation of the mSCOA compliant system in the 2017/18 financial year. A decision was taken to revert back to the old PROMIS system for parallel run with the new SAGE system.

6.3.1 REVENUE MANAGEMENT AND TARIFF SETTING

Revenue Management and Enhancement

The municipality approved the Revenue Turnaround Strategy in May 2016 as initiative of improving the revenue generation, management, protection and enhancement for the city. The objective of the plan is to improve revenue base and collections through:

- Proper meter management
- Ensure accuracy and completeness of billing and data integrity
- Reduction of distribution losses for water and electricity
- Improving on telephone query management supported by trained call center operators
- Indigent management through updating of the indigent management register and management consumption
- Data cleansing exercise to update the data.
- Enforcement of credit control and debt collection policy

The element of the interdependencies from other directorates was addressed through the formation of the committee that is chaired by the Executive Mayor. The resources are coordinated from various departments:

- Technical services
- Community development
- Communications and marketing
- Public safety
- Planning and Human Settlement
- Finance.

Tariff Setting

The municipality's setting of the tariffs for the next five years will ensure that the tariffs are cost reflective on the same breath affordable so that municipality can achieve the following:

- **Existing Business Retentions and New Businesses**

In the past years, the municipalities were experiencing weaker collection rates due to economic pressures. The high hike of tariffs is affecting a lot of businesses. Through the municipality's increase in tariffs it will have to incorporate incentives and special rebates for the businesses to attract more businesses within Rustenburg and also to be in a position to retain the existing businesses.
The expansion on the domestic investment will assist in ensuring that the businesses create more employment within Rustenburg and to boost geographic domestic product.

- **Foreign investment support**

The finance department together with Local Economic Department should come up with incentives that will promote potential growth to direct foreign investment. Further the strategies should include research and branding and intelligence to promote investment development and policy advocacy.

- **Affordability**

The municipality is creating mechanisms to ensure sustainable tariff increases for the stakeholders. The municipality currently develops scenarios in order to look at the elasticity of the tariffs prior the implementation to assess the impact in all the income groups.

6.3.2 CASH/LIQUIDITY POSITION

It is important that the municipality maintains a healthily cash position. The cash flow management is essential in ensuring that services to the people are accelerated.

The municipality's liquidity ratio is at 0.95 which in essence means that the municipality will not be in position to meet its short obligations. This ratio is considered as a pertinent risk for the municipality as any under collection of revenue will translate to serious financial challenges.

The collection of debtors will also assist in improving the cash position of the municipality. The average rate is 83%; the municipality would like to see the situation improving by 2% annually to achieve the desired outcome of 95%.

The credit control and debt collection actions are the direct attributes to debt management and payment rate. To achieve the desired outcome, the municipality will have to ensure that debt collections are taken against the defaulting consumers. On the same breath, the accuracy of the readings is important to ensure correct billings and to curb the use of estimates for more than three months.

6.3.3 SUSTAINABILITY

For the next five years, the municipality will have to ensure that the budget is credible and fully funded. The municipality will ensure that the municipality pays attention in the following areas below.

Table 30: Strategic Plan of Sustainability

Program		Budget	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022
Billing program	Produce 100 % accurate bills	R 10 mill	Increase accuracy to 95%	Increase accuracy to 98%	Increase accuracy to 100%	Maintain accurate data	Maintain accurate data
Call center management	Increase turnaround time on queries	R 1 mill	Ensure that phones are answered at all times	Ensure that queries are attended to within 72 hours	Ensure that queries are attended to within 48 hours	Ensure that queries are attended to within 48 hours	Ensure that queries are attended to within 48 hours
Issuing of clearance certificates on time	Reduce turnaround time on the issuing of clearance certificates		90% of applications be issued within 5 days from the date of payment	95% of applications be issued within 5 days from the payment date	97% of applications be issued within 5 days from the payment date	100% of applications be issued within 5 days from the payment date	100% of applications be issued within 5 days from the payment date
Revenue collection program	To increase collection to 97%	R 5 mill	Hold payment campaigns on annual basis to encourage culture of payment	Hold payment campaigns on annual basis to encourage culture of payment	Hold payment campaigns on annual basis to encourage culture of payment	Hold payment campaigns on annual basis to encourage culture of payment	Hold payment campaigns on annual basis to encourage culture of payment
Enforce credit control and debt collection policy	Decrease by 30% number of defaulting customers	R25 mill	10% decrease number of customers defaulting on the accounts.	5% decrease number of customers defaulting on the accounts	5% decrease number of customers defaulting on the accounts	5% decrease number of customers defaulting on the accounts	5% decrease number of customers defaulting on the accounts
Review tariffs and methodology	To have competitive and affordable tariffs	R6 mill	Review tariffs and ensure competitiveness while they are cost reflective	Benchmark with other municipalities	Implement cost reflective and competitive tariffs	Implement cost reflective and competitive tariffs	Implement cost reflective and competitive tariffs
Compile valuation roll	Compile valuation roll for 2020-2023	R16 mill	Compile supplementary valuation roll and	Preparation for appointment of	Compile valuation roll	Implement new valuation roll	Compile supplementary valuation roll

Program		Budget	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022
			prepare for new valuation roll	municipal values			
Contract management	To realize value for money and governance regulator processes	R 1 mill	Review contracts and that those that have lapsed be advertised on time	Develop and maintain contract management module and centralize contract management	Maintain a proper contract register and ensure that bids are advertised on time	Maintain a proper contract register and ensure that bids are advertised on time	Maintain a proper contract register and ensure that bids are advertised on time
Clean audit campaign	Achieve clean audit by 2018/19		Implement the remedial plan to reduce the material misstatements on assets and revenue	Attend to audit findings in the Audit Action Plan	Proper maintenance of data and quality reporting	Proper maintenance of data and quality reporting	Proper maintenance of data and quality reporting
Asset management	Develop and implement asset management model that will inform asset maintenance plan and asset replacement plan	R 15 mill	Componentized assets to ensure proper depreciation and impairment	Develop an asset maintenance plan and asset replacement strategy	Implement the approved strategy and proper budgeting for maintenance of assets	Implement the approved strategy and proper budgeting for maintenance of assets	Implement the approved strategy and proper budgeting for maintenance of assets
Review insurance portfolio	Mitigate risk on assets and ensure that are properly covered	R 40 mill	Ensure that assets are properly covered	Ensure that assets are properly covered	Review contract for the 2015 - 2018	Review contract for the 2019 - 2022	Ensure that assets are properly covered.
Raising capital funding	Collaborate with mines and other private sector partnership to diversify funding	R1bill	Engage the private sector through MASECO and align processes	Partner with private partnership to have funding for the catalytic projects	Partner with different private firms on capital funding	Partner with different private firms on capital funding	Partner with different private firms on capital funding

Program		Budget	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	2021/2022
Diversify funding instruments balance sheet	Explore borrowing	600 mill	Develop long term financing strategy and borrowings	Develop long term financing strategy and borrowings	Raise funding for capital projects	Raise funding for capital projects	Raise funding for capital projects
Quality management program	Training of staff and ensure discipline	R 6 mill	Training of staff	Training of staff	Training of staff	Training of staff	Training of staff

6.3.4 EFFECTIVE AND EFFICIENT USE OF RESOURCES

The municipality will have to ensure that the resources available are used efficiently through applying supply chain management policy and review of all contracts to realise the value for money.

6.3.5 ACCOUNTABILITY, TRANSPARENCY AND GOOD GOVERNANCE

The municipality is accountable to the people of Rustenburg for all the financial decisions it makes and budget process. The municipality ensures that the following is done:

- Section 71 and 72 reports as per municipal finance management act are publicised.
- During April after the adoption of the draft budget, integrated development plan and budget related policies; the municipality embarks on the public participation process to source the views and comments of the public. The process takes twenty-one days. Further the bids are advertised and the appointments made each quarter are publicised.

6.3.6 EQUITY AND REDISTRIBUTION

The budget for the municipality in the next five years must ensure that the projects promote job creation through:

- the use of capital projects that are labour intensive
- supporting LED projects
- Participating fully on the Extended Public Works Program
- Implementing internship programmers.

The capital investments and refurbishment of assets must be done across the municipality to ensure fair distribution of resources. The poor will be prioritised at all times.

6.3.7 DEVELOPMENT AND INVESTMENT

The municipality will prioritise the capital expansion in electricity, roads and public transport to ensure that the town grows in line with the 2025 vision. With the RRT grant, the capital expansion in roads and public transport will ensure that the municipality keeps the current businesses and that more businesses will be established within the municipality.

6.3.8 MACRO-ECONOMIC INVESTMENT

The municipality plays a significant role in this area. It is essential that it operates efficiently within the national macro-economic framework. The aggregate indicators of the macro-economic framework are GDP, unemployment rate and price indices are directly affecting the operations of the municipality. The advances in the technology, accumulation of assets, and better education and human capital can lead to increased economic output overtime. The municipality subscribes to the fiscal and monetary policies as they are meant to guide in terms of stabilising the economy. The economic fluctuations are currently affecting the following:

Investments	The investment is most volatile component of the GDP and is an important part of the business cycles as well as growth imperfections. The low interest rate affects the investment portfolio however the municipality will continue to diversify the investment portfolio to maximize the returns
Unemployment	The municipality will ensure that the budget promotes job creation to addresses the unemployment. The labour-intensive projects through EPWP (extended public works program)
Inflation	The CPI is used as a guide to increase the budget however bulk purchases are always more and it affects directly the consumers. The elasticity in terms of the income for the consumers is stretched due to high increases in water and electricity. Further a negative supply shock like oil prices they lower the aggregate and they cause inflation.

6.3.9 BORROWING

The municipality has huge backlogs especially infrastructure and eradication of informal settlements. The municipality cannot rely on the reserves to address the backlog in terms of the unfunded projects. Therefore, responsible borrowing will be initiated by the municipality its balance sheet and off balance for the 2017 – 2022.

The implementation of the RRT project will require capital injection for the finalisation of the projects and the purchasing of the buses. Further the national initiative on capital investments will require more

funding for the infrastructure. In term of the sustainability, the entities to be formed will then have to raise the loans.

The municipality will leverage on the cash backed reserves to obtain the external funding. The affordability will be determined by the long-term financing strategy of the municipality over the MTREF. The funding mix will comprise amongst other:

- Off balance sheet funding
- Public Private Partnerships
- Own funding
- Capital grants.

The municipality will set aside the sinking funds for the repayment of loans. For the municipality to be in a position to leverage on private finance and borrowing, a good credit rating will have to be maintained.

6.4 STRATEGIES

6.4.1 REVENUE RAISING STRATEGIES

The municipality will continue to work on diversifying and ensuring growth in the revenue base. The strategy will ensure that the following revenue streams are maximised:

- Assessment rates
- Revenue from trading services
- Agency fees and fines
- Smart revenue e.g. estate management, adverting rights and other revenue
- Grants
- Funding from the mines
- Donor funding from international agencies
- Public Private Partnership.

The revenue raising strategies will be achieved through the implementation of the following:

- **Compilation of the new valuation roll**

The valuation roll will be compiled and implemented in 2020. The implementation is expected to increase the revenue base of the municipality while in the short-term supplementary valuation rolls would be implemented.

- **Development charges**

Pay attention on possibility of development charges in closing the gap for the funding gap for the infrastructure build especially that are related to housing and residential build. The insufficient usage of these charges, has shown a decline in terms of the monies collected as well as implementation.

- **Maximize The Revenue from Properties Owned by Council**

Proper management of the estate of the municipality will enhance the revenues of the municipality. This will be done through charging market related price.

The following policies will be reviewed to support the strategy:

- **The review of the credit control and debt collection policy**

Enforce credit control and debt collection policy to ensure that the monies due and payable to the municipality are collected

- **The review and implementation of an indigent policy**

Management of indent customers and ensure that the indigent customers are not overburden with the debt that they cannot afford. Ensure that there is an indigent management strategy which will assist with the indigent not accumulating the debt

- **The review and implementation of the rates policy**

The municipality will implement the new valuation roll in July 2020 following delays in the legislated implementation from 2018. Legislative process has been complied with for late implementation in 2020. The municipality's revenue base is expected to increase due to expected increase property market values.

- **Review of the payment incentive scheme and strategy to maximize revenue**

The municipality will review the incentive scheme for indigent and child headed households.

6.4.2 ASSET MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES

The municipality must ensure that the assets that are owned by the municipality are properly accounted for and safeguarded. Leveraging on the municipal assets will drive the economic growth and sustainable development in line with smart vision city for 2025. The municipality is currently managing an asset base of R 8 billion. The municipality will focus on the following aspects below.

The Integrated Asset Management System

The municipality have acquired the integrated asset management system (Phoenix), as one of the E-modules which will assist with GRAP Reporting. The system will have to link to the GIS for the proper management of assets. The integrated asset management system will assist in ensuring that assets are reported on accurately and the system will be integrated with the finance management system.

Review and Update Risk Insurance Procedure and Renewal of the Insurance Portfolio

The municipality will ensure that the risk insurance procedure are reviewed and updated annually. The municipality has the insurance committee that looks at the insurance claims and also outstanding claims. The trend in terms of the claims will therefore inform the basis of the review to mitigate the risk. The insurance portfolio will be reviewed every three years. This will also assist in realizing value for money.

GRAP Compliant Asset Register

The municipality will ensure that the reporting of assets is in-line with GRAP standard. The municipality prioritise the development and implementation of an asset maintenance plan and asset replacement plan. Both plans will ensure that decisions in relations to the repairs and maintenance budget are informed by the plan.

The capital investment plan for the next four years will informed the decisions to be made in relation to the capital expansion programme.

Proper Maintenance of Revenue Generating Assets and Other Assets

The municipality's current budget maintenance of the assets is not completely utilised. This warrant proper asset management plan which will then inform the percentage spending for the next five years for the proper maintenance of assets. The current allocation is at 6%. To ensure proper maintenance, the municipality will have to develop an asset maintenance plan,

The spending on assets will be increased to 10% of the operating revenue so as to improve the lifespan of assets.

6.4.3 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES

The municipality will focus on the following:

- Ensure that the municipality complies with GRAP standards
- Review and update all policies and procedures annually
- Automate National Treasury reporting templates so as to ensure proper reporting
- Training and development of staff to minimize the use of the consultants
- Documentation of processes to improve on the institutional memory

- To maintain an effective system of expenditure control including procedures for the approval authorization, withdrawal and payment of funds
- Prepare annual financial statements timeously and review performance and achievements
- Preserve and diversify investment portfolio to maximise the returns
- Ensure that multi-year forecasts are sustainable.

Purchasing of an Enterprise Resource Plan (ERP), will ensure the integration of computerised systems and acquisition of proper hardware to support operations. The plan to implement the new application was proposed to start in July 2019.

6.4.4 CAPITAL FINANCING STRATEGIES

The municipality needs to prioritise the allocation of resources to strategic infrastructure assets as part of the long-term growth strategy. The public infrastructure such as public transport and roads, bulk services for water, sanitation and electricity are important in terms of development and growth of the city. The anticipated expenditure for 2019/2020 is R 850 million and for the two years the growth is expected to be more than 10%. For the municipality to deliver on its core mandate and achieve its developmental goals the municipality needs to explore different funding opportunities. The funding options other than grants and own revenue, taking into cognisance the prescripts of the Municipal Finance Management Act will be as follows:

- Loans
- Bonds
- Private partnerships.

The municipality is currently dependent on the grants and capital replacement reserve for the capital investment program. The municipality will diversify funding looking at balance and off balance sheet funding, focusing at the ageing infrastructure and the Growth Management Strategy in 2013/2014-2017. The different funding will assist in enhancing-service delivery which will translate to proper infrastructure investment management capabilities that are aligned with proper finance strategies. The funding mix will be projected at 50% grants, 20% revenue and 30% borrowings will assist in accelerating the service delivery.

The municipal infrastructure has a long term economic life and a general principle is that the current rate payers should not pay for the usage of future rate payers. There is a strong economic argument to say that the financing of capital expenditure should be through borrowing in order to accelerate the pace of delivery and mirror payment of funds with the economic life of the asset. The long-term funding strategy will assist in accelerating the delivery of service through the diversified funding model.

The municipality will ensure that the capital budget is appropriated for three financial years as opposed to one year to ensure 100% spending on the capital expenditure.

The annual procurement plans have been developed to enable the municipality to initiate the procurement for the two outer years as an effort to accelerate spending within the municipality.

6.4.5 OPERATIONAL FINANCING STRATEGIES

The municipalities projected budget for 2019/20 is R 4.8 billion and for the two outer years the budget will be at R5.1 billion and R5,4 billion respectively. To ensure funding the municipality will have to ensure a collection rate at 90% throughout. The consumers will have to be billed correctly and ensure that all of the consumption is billed. The municipality will have to ensure that what is due to the municipality is collected to improve the collection rate and cash flow position by aggressively implementing the credit control actions and handover the accounts to attorneys for collection.

The municipality will ensure that there is significant improvement in the supply chain management processes to accelerate spending on the required basic service delivery. Further centralisation of the supply chain management will also enhance the spending pattern.

In terms of expenditure management the municipality will have to ensure that the resources are utilised in an efficient and effective manner to accelerate service delivery. The resources will be directed towards meeting the projects identified in the Integrated Development Plan for 2017-2022.

6.4.6 Financial Management Policies

The aims of the financial policies are to provide guidance in terms of financial management of the affairs of the municipality and ultimately to ensure sound and sustainable management of the fiscal and financial affairs of the municipality. The following policies applicable in the Rustenburg Local Municipality are reviewed on an annual basis:

Revenue Management Policies

- **Tariff Policy**

The policy is compiled in line with section 74 of the Municipal Systems Act 2000, and covers the levying of tariffs for the services consumed by the consumers. The policy is reviewed on the annual basis.

- **Rates Policy**

The policy gives the municipality the power to levy rates on the properties that are within its jurisdiction. The policy is reviewed on annual basis. The policy is required in terms of Municipal Property Rates Act 6 of 2004.

- **Indigent Policy**

The policy must be adopted to grant relief to the indigent and child headed households. The policy also talks to the free basic services.

- **Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy**

The policy is done in-line with the systems act in-order to achieve the following:

- To ensure that consumers pay for the services supplied and consumed according to the approved tariff structure
- To ensure that all consumer related enquiries are attended to promptly and diligently
- It provides for credit control and debt collection procedures and mechanisms
- The termination or restriction of services when payments are in arrears
- Procedures relating to unauthorized consumption of services, theft and damages

Asset Management Policy

The aim of the asset management policy is to prescribe accounting and administrative policies and procedures in relation to Property, Plant and Equipment.

The property plant and equipment are tangible non- current assets that are held for use in the production or supply of goods and services or for the administrative purposes and are expected to be used for more than 12 months.

The asset register must comply with GRAP 17. The fixed assets are classified as follows:

- Land
- Infrastructure
- Community Assets
- Heritage Assets
- Investment Assets
- Other Assets
- Intangible Assets

For the safekeeping of assets each departmental head is responsible for the assets in their directorate.

Cash and Investment Policy

In terms of the Municipal Finance Management of 2003, section 13 (2) and investment regulations, each municipality must adopt an investment policy for the money that is not immediately required. The investments of the municipality are done to preserve the capital and to ensure that the municipality is in position to meet its short-term obligation.

Accounting Policies

A summary of the principal accounting policies that were adopted by the municipality when the annual financial statements were prepared is as follows:

- Basis Presentation
- Presentation Currency
- Significant judgements and sources of estimation uncertainty applied in various components
- Housing Funds
- Reserves
- Property, Plant and Equipment
- Investment property
- Investments
- Inventories
- Financial Instruments
- Revenue
- Provisions
- Unauthorized, Irregular and Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure
- Foreign Currencies
- Leases
- Retirement Benefits
- Borrowing Costs
- Comparative Information

Supply Chain Management Policy

Each municipality in terms of section 111 of the municipal finance management act must have and implement a Supply Chain Management Policy. The Supply Chain Policy was reviewed to ensure compliance to the BBBEE. The municipality ensures that there is compliance to the provisions of the Act.

6.5 PROGRAMMES

6.5.1 BILLING PROGRAMME

The Billing Programme includes the following:

- Ensure that all the consumers are billed accurately and on time
- The municipality will hold campaigns to encourage consumers to pay for the accounts and also introduce incentives for the customers
- The municipality will ensure statements are user friendly so that the consumers can clearly understand the itemized charges
- Structure key accounts managements such as businesses
- Perform data cleansing exercise
- Reduce the use of estimated readings for more than three months
- The municipality will hold campaigns quarterly to register indigent customers
- Implementation and maintenance of the appropriate systems and business processes
- Training of staff in the metered services.

6.5.2 CUSTOMER CARE SERVICE IMPROVEMENT PROGRAMME

The municipality needs to implement a Customer Care Program to improve operations and performance. To date the customers are frustrated due to calls not being answered. To improve, the municipality's performance the focal point will be on the following:

- Improve customer feedback, by providing feedback with reference via e-mails or sms on the progress made regarding the required service using the Computer Telephony Integration System (CTI). The system will be located at the state of the art Integrated Contact Centre (ICC)
- Setting up self-service portals and web based services to reduce long queues. The self-service portals will assist in terms of statements and processing of payments via internet
- Introduce a toll-free number to improve communication and response time on general queries
- The decentralisation of services to Tlhabane and Boitekong as phase will assist in ensuring that that services are available in the areas where consumers are residing and will assist in improving productivity and service delivery. The decentralisation will in the third year be extended to other areas such Monnakato, Lethabong and Freedom Park
- The reports will be drawn from the CRM system to monitor the number complaints versus the responses
- The municipality will have to review the following policies and strategies to raise more revenue for the municipality

- The streamlining of activities within the Contact Centre will assist the customers to have one point to access different services
- The implementation of an Integrated Contact Centre will also assist with job creation through Learnerships.

6.6 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMMES

6.6.1 TO ENSURE REVENUE ADEQUACY

The projections and management of the revenue streams are guided by the past and present trend, the growth factor, the fiscal climate and regulators. The revenue streams are closely monitored and reporting is done monthly on the under-performing and over-performing revenue streams. The municipality will focus on increasing the revenue base by identifying the opportunities. Further the intention of the strategy is to streamline the revenue value chain by ensuring accurate billing, customer service, credit control and debt collection processes.

The tariffs are set in-line with the market trends but are still protecting the poor and supporting local economic development, however due to an economic meltdown there is an increasing number of indigents and the funding is inadequate to cater for the demand.

6.6.2 REDUCE THE DEBT OWED TO THE MUNICIPALITY

The credit control actions are directly linked with debt management and the payment ratio. The municipality will increase on the number of actions that are taken against the defaulters so that the cash flow remains in the region of 2: 1.
An account beyond 90 days without any progress regarding payments will be handed over for debt collection. The effective management of debtors includes inter-alia:

- Impairment of debtors
- Write-off of uncollectable debtors
- Effective and timeous credit control and debt collection
- Accurate Billing
- Customer care and accounts enquiry management
- Proper data input and management of business processes.

The municipality will track and report the measurable deliverables for the debt management actions that are taken against defaulters. The debt management contributes directly to the cash flow for the municipality.

The municipality will further look at the Consumer Protection Act, which has implications on the recovery of the debts.

6.6.3 IMPLEMENTATION OF THE MUNICIPAL PROPERTY RATES ACT

The municipality will embark on the process of the compilation of the new roll to be implemented in 2020. The implementation of the roll will increase the revenue base of the municipality.

6.6.4 SEEK ALTERNATIVE SOURCES OF FUNDING

In addition to the current revenue sources, the municipality needs to explore other revenue raising strategies. This will include donor funding, partnerships with international agencies and enter into partnerships with the private sector to contribute in the funding of the projects.
The drive has already started through MASECO.

6.6.5 MAXIMISE THE REVENUE FROM PROPERTIES OWNED BY COUNCIL

Review contracts and ensure that the rental contracts are done in-line with the market values and the escalation clauses as well.

6.6.6 VALUE FOR MONEY EXPENDITURE

The municipality will have to ensure that goods are procured in a most efficient way. A contract register will be kept to ensure that the contracts are reviewed on time. The outsourcing of the services will be explored.

6.6.7 INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT

The municipality will continue to explore ways of diversifying investments under the restrictions of the legislation. Within the prescripts of the investment regulations the municipality will strive to optimise the return on investments, as it is another revenue source for the municipality.

6.6.8 CREDITORS MANAGEMENT

The municipality will ensure that all the creditors are paid within 30 days. The SMME's will be paid within 14 days.

7. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND MONITORING

Integrated Development Planning enables the achievement of the planning stage of performance management. Performance management fulfills the implementation, management, monitoring and evaluation of the Integrated Development Plan. The performance of an organisation is integrally linked to that of its staff. It is therefore vitally important for any municipality to periodically review its own performance as well as that of its employees.

The RLM Performance Management Framework and Policy is in place, and is reviewed annually together with the IDP. Key performance indicators have been refined in support of the municipality's development priorities and objectives to ensure consistency in measuring and reporting on long terms strategies and projects.

Measurable performance targets about each of these development priorities and objectives were established and are reflected on the Top Layer Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP). A process to ensure regular reporting is in place and gets reported quarterly to the Council through the Performance Audit Committee.

Individual performance agreements and performance plans for the Municipal Manager and Directors are prepared annually in line with provisions prescribed in the Performance Regulations (Notice 805, published on 1 August 2006 in the official gazette). These agreements are fully implemented and aligned with the SDBIP in line with the Municipal Finance Management Act 56 of 2003.

Performance Evaluation Panels have been established for the assessment of performance of the Municipal Manager as well as Managers directly accountable to the Municipal Manager and performance assessment is taking place on a quarterly basis to ensure that annual departmental targets will be achieved.

During the Organisational restructuring process, the Municipality has also put in resources in the form of Section Manager: Individual Performance Management to enhance its capability to be able to effectively, efficiently and progressively cascade Performance Management to the lower levels of its Administrative echelons.

With effect from the 1st of July 2018, all the Unit Heads, Section Managers and Supervisors worked according to the signed Performance Plans, which are informed by their respective Job Descriptions.

Rustenburg Local Municipality

Annexure A

ITEM 83 PAGE 388

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

Draft IDP Review 2019/20 and Draft Budget 2019/20 Public Participation Schedule of Deployment for Directors and Support Personnel

N.B. All the Presenters and Support Personnel are expected to be at the venue of the meeting 30 minutes prior to the commencement of the meeting.

WARD	CONSULTATION DATE	TIME	VENUE	ACTIVITY	PARTICIPANTS	PRESENTING DIRECTOR DEPLOYED MMC	SUPPORT PERSONNEL
ALL	16/04/2019	10:00	Old Town Hall	IDP Representative Forum (All Ward Committees & Councillors)			
ALL	16/04/2019	14:00	8th Floor chamber	Multi- stakeholder's Consultation Meeting (Government Department, Mining houses, business & other major stakeholders)			
6	23/04/2019	09H00	Cyferbuilt	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD	Name: B. Dikutle Contact: 0761684506
6	23/04/2019	12H00	Molote City	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD	Name: B. Dikutle Contact: 0761684506
36	23/04/2019	14H30	Dinie Estates	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS	Name: G. Moopelwa Contact: 0838091912
35	23/04/2019	10H00	Ikemeleng sports ground	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS	Name: G. Moopelwa Contact: 0838091912
31	24/04/2019	10H00	Shakhina Church RDP	Public consultation	Community Members	DPS MMC Babe	Name: L. Magale Contact: 0835588075
32	24/04/2019	15H00	Marikana Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DRT MMC Babe	Name: L. Magale Contact: 0835588075
33	24/04/2019	10H00	Nkaneng Sport ground	Public consultation	Community Members	BTO MMC Xatasi	Name: C. Mosiane Contact: 0605243734

Rustenburg Local Municipality

WARD	CONSULTATION DATE	TIME	VENUE	ACTIVITY	PARTICIPANTS	PRESENTING DIRECTOR DEPLOYED MMC	SUPPORT PERSONNEL
20	30/04/2019	16H00	Next to library Boitekong	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD MMC Lekoro	Name: G. Moopelwa Contact: 0838091912
21	30/04/2019	10H00	Joe ground	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS MMC Mashishi-Ntsime	Name: Contact:
12	30/04/2019	16H00	Meriting community hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS MMC Molubi	Name: B. Dikutle Contact: 0761684506
39	30/04/2019	16H00	Ramochana Sports Ground	Public consultation	Community Members	BTOMMC Mhlungu	Name: Contact:
24	02/05/2019	14H00	Living by faith Church	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD MMC Makhaula	Name: Contact:
38	02/05/2019	15H00	Freedom park taxi rank	Public consultation	Community Members	DRT MMC Molubi	Name: Contact:
41	02/05/2019	15H00	Seraleng Community office	Public consultation	Community Members	DTIS MMC Babe	Name: Contact:
43	02/05/2019	17H00	Seraleng Ext 5 grounds	Public consultation	Community Members	LED MMC Kombe	Name: Contact:
37	02/05/2019	15H00	Bana Pele Primary School	Public consultation	Community Members	DCSS MMC Xatasi	Name: Contact:
01	03/05/2019	10h00	Phatsima Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS MMC Makhaula	Name: Contact:
02	03/05/2019	14H00	Robega community hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DCSS MMC Lekoro	Name: Contact:
03 & 04	03/05/2019	15H30	Luka clinic	Public consultation	Community Members	DTIS MMC Mhlungu	Name: Contact:
05 & 06	03/05/2019	16H00	Saron Primary School	Public consultation	Community Members	LED MMC Kpaladi	Name: Contact:
09; 10; 11; 13	03/05/2019	17h00	Tlhabane community hall	Public consultation	Community Members	BTO MMC Wolmarans	Name: Contact:

HOW TO ADVERTISE IN THE DIARY

2019
Dagboek • Diary
Only R60

Moet dit nie misloop nie. AGS Dec Gloria bied aan: Die lydingsweg saam met Jesus. Kom deel saam met ons die belewenispunte in Sy ervaring tot en met die lee graf, 16-22 April (08H00-20H00) te 19 Waterboomlaan.
K20995 W15

Andre Bocelli - Thursday 18 April 2019, 19H00 at Tickelpro Dome The Coca Cola Dome, Johannesburg. Tickets are available online at www.bigconcerts.co.za or Computicket. For more information contact 011 769 7215.
n/o W05-W15

Die Houtkruis-Fees Pasa-Konferensie: 19-21 April 2019. Gratis Kamperingil Plek: God's Window, Donkerhoek-pad, in Nuwe begin vir Rustenburg. Navrae en besprekings: Johan Louw 082 807 3192.
K20993 W14-W16

Op Werkersdag, 01 Mei 2019, bied Agape Gemeente, Buffelspoort Kampus, hul jaarlikse Hartklop Plaasfees aan. Hekke open 08H00. 'n Dag vol pret: snuffel, eet, speel en kuier vir die hele familie. Bergfiets wedren; trail run; bulletjie rugby; skyfskiet; foodcourt/lee tuin; speelparkens. Kontak Annette vir meer inligting 083 9727 2511 of www.buffelspoort.agape.app
K20987 W16-W17

African Swine fever outbreak in the North West

BONUS - RUSTENBURG- North West Provincial Veterinary Services has placed a farm in the province under quarantine following an outbreak of African Swine Fever (ASF).

The World Organisation for Animal Health recently reported an outbreak of African swine fever in the Zeerust area, just outside the African swine fever controlled area of South Africa.

The Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries said the farm has been placed under quarantine by the provincial veterinary services, who are also doing follow-up investigations and applying disease controlled measures for this outbreak.

MISSING

Where is Johnny?

The family of Johnny Erasmus (47) is desperate to get information regarding his possible whereabouts. Erasmus disappeared from his sister, Amelia's home seven years ago. Since then, his family hasn't heard from him at all. If you can help with any information that may lead to finding him, please contact Amelia on 060 462 9387.

The police in the province are looking for any information that can help in finding Okaeng Willem Ditire (71), He went missing on 4 December 2018 from Kgomotso. Anyone with information regarding the whereabouts of Okaeng are requested to contact the investigating officer, Warrant Officer AJ Pitsonyane at 079 522 1638.

Farmattacker arrested

BONUS - MOOINOOI - A 23-year-old foreign national was arrested by the Rustenburg Cluster Task Team for the 14 March attack on a farmer from Barnardsvlei.

During the early hours of 14 March, 88-year-old Nic Pienaar was overpowered at home as he went out to let his dogs out. Four men then attacked him, overpowering him and his life partner, 59-year-old Jessie Lewis. Pienaar was severely assaulted with a hammer before the assailants fled with stolen solar panels, a grass cutter, a 250 cc motorbike and a .222 hunting rifle. After the attackers have fled, Lewis managed to call for assistance and Pienaar was hospitalised. The motorbike was later found abandoned about 2km from Pienaar's smallholding. Another couple of kilometres further away, a white Toyota bakkie - presumably the property of the suspects - was found abandoned and seized.

Within two weeks, a breakthrough was made by the members of the Rustenburg Cluster Task Team when 23-year-old foreign national, Jan Mawai, was arrested. Mawai had previously worked on an adjacent farm. He was apprehended after information was received.

During the investigation, the hunting rifle was recovered, along with five live rounds of ammunition and one discharged round. Mawai appeared in court on 31 March and the case was postponed until 16 May. Bail was successfully opposed. The other three suspects are currently still at large.

Jessie Lewis shortly after the attack on 14 March.

Precast
Ons bou huise / mure.
SPECIAL
Classic Concrete
014 592 7250/ 082 386 0330
Fax: 086 541 5516

DG CONSULTING SERVICES
We specialize in CAD Drafting and Project Management.
For all your big and small projects.
We have years of experience in mining construction and shaft sinking.
Contact details
Melodie Groenewald.
Cell: 079 418 4468
melgroenqi@gmail.com

ONS WINKEL
SOLIDARITEIT HELPENDE HAND
Oortollige meubels, speelgoed, hulsware of klere kan vir kinders loekomshoop gee. Jou ou goed kan ons help om 'n groter verskil in die gemeenskap te maak.
Solidariteit Helpende Hand veg vir verligting, voorkoming en verbreking van armoede.
Skenkings aan ons winkel word teruggeploeg in jou gemeenskap vir opheffing deur opleiding.
Kontak: 082 598 6034 of kom besoek ons by: Oliver Tambo Str. 16.

RUSTENBURG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

OFFICE OF THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER

P O Box 16, Rustenburg, 0300, North West Province, South Africa
Tel: (014) 590 3100 Fax: (014) 590 3552 Email: cmoslane@rustenburg.gov.za

NOTICE 31/2019

DRAFT IDP 2019/20 AND THE MTREF BUDGET 2019/20

The Municipal Council of the Rustenburg Local Municipality adopted the Draft IDP Review for 2019/20 per Item 70 in accordance with requirements of Section 34 (a) (i) of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended and the Draft MTREF 2019/20 (with the Tariffs and Budget Related Policies) as per Item 71 on the 05 April 2019.

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 21 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, no 32 of 2000 (MSA) read with Sections 22 and 23 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003) of the adopted Draft IDP Review 2019/20 and Draft MTREF 2019/20 tabled as per above quoted item numbers.

Sections 21 and 21(a) of the Municipal Systems Act requires that the Municipality should publicize the said documents inviting the local community to submit representations in connection with the IDP and avail the document for public comments whilst the MFMA states the same with the draft budget.

The draft IDP and draft MTREF (with the Tariffs and Budget Related Policies) will be open for comments and inputs for a period of 21 days effective from Monday 15th April 2019. The closing date for comments is set for 03rd May 2019.

In terms of the provisions for public participation on the above Acts, the National Treasury, Provincial Treasury and the Local Community are hereby invited to peruse and submit written representations in connection with the IDP Review and the MTREF to the Municipal Manager at the address given above within 21 days of the advertisement.

The adopted draft IDP and draft MTREF (with the Tariffs and Budget Related Policies) will be available for comments from Monday 15th April 2019 at the following venues:

- ✓ Municipal Building: Missionary Mpheni House, Corner Nelson Mandela and Beyers Naude Drive;
- ✓ Municipal Offices and RCC's: Marikana, Hartebeesfontein/Lethabong, Photsima, Monnakato, Boitekong, Ikageng, Rankelenyane, Freedom Park, Phokeng Civic Centre;
- ✓ Tribal Offices: Rankelenyane, Bethanie;
- ✓ Rustenburg Main Library;
- ✓ Community Libraries: Photsima, Boitekong, Monnakato, Mamerotse Info Hub, Lethabong, Rankelenyane, Bareeba, Tlhabane, Marikana, Mathopestad, Chaneng Info Hub, Karlien Park and Zinniavale; or

This may also be viewed on the Municipal website (www.rustenburg.gov.za)

A summary of the Operating Budget, Capital Budget as well as the proposed tariffs for 2019/20 is provided below

Operating Revenue and Expenditure by Standard Classification: Table A4 (version 6.3 2019/20 MTREF)

Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote Standard Classification: Table A5 (version 6.3 2019/20 MTREF)

Proposed Tariffs

Public participation on the Draft IDP Review 2019/20, the MTREF 2019/20 and budget related policies will be conducted as per the schedule below:

WARD	CONSULTING DATE	TIME	VENUE	ACTIVITY
All	16/04/2019	10:00	Old Town Hall	IDP Representative Forum (All Ward Committees & Councilors)
All	16/04/2019	14:00	9th Floor chamber	Multi- stakeholder's Consultation Meeting (Government Department, Mining houses business & other major stakeholders)
36	23/04/2019	09H00	Cyferbult	Public consultation
36	23/04/2019	12H00	Molote City	Public consultation
36	23/04/2019	14H30	Onle Erfales	Public consultation
35	23/04/2019	10H00	Rumelang sports ground	Public consultation
31	24/04/2019	10H00	Shakhira Church RDP	Public consultation
32	24/04/2019	15H00	Marikana Community Hall	Public consultation
33	24/04/2019	10H00	Khaneng Sport ground	Public consultation
34	24/04/2019	15H00	Bokamoso stop sign	Public consultation
45	24/04/2019	16H00	Photsaneng old primary school	Public consultation
29	26/04/2019	10H00	Rankelenyane Sassa paypoint	Public consultation
30	26/04/2019	10H00	Bethanie Tribal hall	Public consultation
44	26/04/2019	14H00	Mesung community hall	Public consultation
22	26/04/2019	16H00	Sunrise Community Hall	Public consultation
23	26/04/2019	10H00	Makulane SASSA paypoint	Public consultation
25	29/04/2019	16H00	Monakato Community Hall	Public consultation
26	29/04/2019	10H00	Mamerobe community hall	Public consultation
27	29/04/2019	14H00	B Tause hall	Public consultation
28	29/04/2019	16H00	Rethusegile High school	Public Consultation
40	29/04/2019	16H00	Ext 23 pardekraal hall	Public consultation
14;15; 16;17; 18;42	29/04/2019	18H00	Rustenburg old town hall	Public consultation
19	30/04/2019	16H00	Pardekraal ext taxi wash	Public consultation
20	30/04/2019	16H00	Next to library Boitekong	Public consultation
21	30/04/2019	10H00	Jos ground	Public consultation
12	30/04/2019	16H00	Marikana community hall	Public consultation
39	30/04/2019	16H00	Ramochana Sports Ground	Public consultation
WARD	CONSULTING DATE	TIME	VENUE	ACTIVITY
24	02/05/2019	14H00	Living by faith Church	Public consultation
38	02/05/2019	15H00	Freedom park taxirank	Public consultation
41	02/05/2019	15H00	Seraleng Community office	Public consultation
43	02/05/2019	17H00	Seraleng Ext 5 grounds	Public consultation
37	02/05/2019	15H00	Dana Pele Primary School	Public consultation
01	03/05/2019	10h00	Photsima Community Hall	Public consultation
02	03/05/2019	14H00	Robega community hall	Public consultation
03& 04	03/05/2019	15H30	Luka clinic	Public consultation
05&06	03/05/2019	16H00	Saran Primary School	Public consultation
09,10, 11;13	03/05/2019	17h00	Tlhabane community hall	Public consultation
08	03/05/2019	17h00	Tlhabane west primary	Public Consultation
07	03/05/2019	10h00	Elshadai hall	Public Consultation

For more information on the budget please contact Ms. Vivian Mahlafi, Mr. Mmileng Dikoto on 014 590 3687/3372/3325/3488/3764 and for IDP Ms. Gloria Moopelwa or Ms. Cindi Moslane at 014 590 3251/3106 respectively.

(SGD) Mr. E. Komane
Acting Municipal Manager
15 April 2019

Rustenburg Local Municipality

"A world-class city where all communities enjoy a high quality of life and diversity"

NOTICE 31/2019

DRAFT IDP 2019/20 AND THE MTREF BUDGET 2019/20

The Municipal Council of the Rustenburg Local Municipality adopted the Draft IDP Review for 2019/20 per item 70 in accordance with requirements of Section 34 (a) (i) of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended and the Draft MTREF 2019/20 (with the Tariffs and Budget Related Policies) as per item 71 on the 05 April 2019.

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 21 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, no 32 of 2000 (MSA) read with Sections 22 and 23 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003) of the adopted Draft IDP Review 2019/20 and Draft MTREF 2019/20 tabled as per above quoted item numbers.

Sections 21 and 21(a) of the Municipal Systems Act, requires that the Municipality should publicize the said documents inviting the local community to submit representations in connection with the IDP and avail the document for public comments whilst the MFMA states the same with the draft budget.

The draft IDP and draft MTREF (with the Tariffs and Budget Related Policies) will be open for comments and inputs for a period of 21 days effective from Monday 15th April 2019. The closing date for comments is set for 05rd May 2019.

In terms of the provisions for public participation on the above Acts, the National Treasury, Provincial Treasury and the Local Community are hereby invited to peruse and submit written representations in connection with the IDP Review and the MTREF to the Municipal Manager at the address given above within 21 days of the advertisement.

The adopted draft IDP and draft MTREF (with the Tariffs and Budget Related Policies) will be available for comments from Monday 15th April 2019 at the following venues:

- ✓ Municipal Building: Missionary Mphahl House, Corner Nelson Mandela and Beyers Naude Drive;
- ✓ Municipal Offices and RCC's: Marikana, Hartebeesfontein/Lethabong, Phatsima, Monnakato, Boitekong, Ikegeng, Rankelenyane, Freedom Park, Phokeng Civic Centre;
- ✓ Tribal Offices: Rankelenyane, Bethanie;
- ✓ Rustenburg Main Library;
- ✓ Community Libraries: Phatsima, Boitekong, Monnakato, Mamaroteo Info Hub, Lethabong, Rankelenyane, Bersaba, Tlhabane, Marikana, Mathopestad, Chaene Info Hub, Karlien Park and Zinniaville; or

This may also be viewed on the Municipal website (www.rustenburg.gov.za)

mary of the Operating Budget, Capital Budget as well as the proposed tariffs for 2019/20 is provided below

Operating Revenue and Expenditure by Standard Classification: Table A4 (version 6.3 2019/20 MTREF)

Budgeted Capital Expenditure by vote Standard Classification: Table A5 (version 6.3 2019/20 MTREF)

Proposed Tariffs

Public participation on the Draft IDP Review 2019/20, the MTREF 2019/20 and budget related policies will be conducted as per the schedule below:

WARD	CONSULTATION DATE	TIME	VENUE	ACTIVITY
ALL	15/04/2019	10:00	Old Town Hall	IDP Representative Forum (All Ward Committees & Councillors)
ALL	16/04/2019	14:00	5th Floor chamber	Multi-stakeholder's Consultation Meeting (Government Department, Mining houses, business & other major stakeholders)
35	23/04/2019	09H00	Cyferkuil	Public consultation
36	23/04/2019	12H00	Meloto City	Public consultation
38	23/04/2019	14H00	Dirkie Estates	Public consultation
35	25/04/2019	10H00	Damsleng sports ground	Public consultation
31	24/04/2019	09H00	Shalshina Church RDP	Public consultation
32	24/04/2019	13H00	Marikana Community Hall	Public consultation
33	24/04/2019	10H00	Nkaneng Sport ground	Public consultation
34	24/04/2019	15H00	Bokamoso stop sign	Public consultation
45	24/04/2019	14H00	Photoleng old primary school	Public consultation
29	25/04/2019	10H00	Rankelenyane Bassa paypoint	Public consultation
30	25/04/2019	10H00	Bethanie Tribal hall	Public consultation
44	26/04/2019	14H00	Lesung community hall	Public consultation
22	26/04/2019	16H00	Sunrise Community Hall	Public consultation
	26/04/2019	10H00	Makulane BASSA paypoint	Public consultation
	29/04/2019	15H00	Monakato Community Hall	Public consultation
26	29/04/2019	10H00	Mamaroteo community hall	Public consultation
27	29/04/2019	14H00	B Thaas hall	Public consultation
28	29/04/2019	16H00	Kalvanagte High school	Public Consultation
40	29/04/2019	16H00	Ext 21 parkhall hall	Public consultation
16; 15; 10; 17; 18;42	29/04/2019	18H00	Rustenburg Old town hall	Public consultation
19	30/04/2019	16H00	Pandakraal ext 1 car wash	Public consultation
20	30/04/2019	16H00	Next to library Boitekong	Public consultation
21	30/04/2019	10H00	Joe ground	Public consultation
12	30/04/2019	18H00	Meriting community hall	Public consultation
39	30/04/2019	16H00	Ramokhand Sports Ground	Public consultation
24	02/05/2019	11H00	Living by faith Church	Public consultation
46	02/05/2019	16H00	Freedom park taxi rank	Public consultation
41	02/05/2019	16H00	Bending Community office	Public consultation
43	02/05/2019	17H00	Bending Ext 5 grounds	Public consultation
37	02/05/2019	15H00	Karel Park Primary School	Public consultation

For more information on the budget please contact Ms. Vivian Mdhluli, Mr. Mmileng Dikoko on 014 590 3887/3372/3328/3488/3764 and for IDP Ms. Gloria Moopelwa or Ms. Cindi Mosiane at 014 590 3261/3108 respectively.

Ms. N. B Sithole
Municipal Manager
11 April 2019

DOYZE.media

NW373 Rustenburg - Table A4 Consolidated Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)

Description	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	Current Year 2018/19				2019/20 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2019/20	Budget Year +1 2020/21	Budget Year +2 2021/22
Revenue By Source										
Property rates	283 411	308 999	319 434	340 075	340 075	340 075	340 075	362 069	381 172	401 679
Service charges - electricity revenue	1 701 792	2 032 113	2 471 480	1 978 697	1 978 697	1 978 697	1 978 697	2 105 676	2 215 123	2 335 900
Service charges - water revenue	356 300	393 354	548 355	681 948	671 948	671 948	671 948	619 617	652 481	687 585
Service charges - sanitation revenue	99 333	114 755	300 693	314 414	314 414	314 414	314 414	334 784	352 406	371 385
Service charges - refuse revenue	109 919	118 305	135 078	157 730	157 730	157 730	157 730	166 232	176 789	184 406
Rental of facilities and equipment	9 047	9 321	10 337	254	254	254	254	11 804	13 048	14 021
Interest earned - external investments	143 764	23 629	16 114	16 581	16 581	16 581	16 581	20 774	21 969	23 048
Interest earned - outstanding debtors	40 678	211 029	259 006	19 569	19 569	19 569	19 569	261 084	274 812	289 597
Dividends received	-		-	250 278	250 278	250 278	250 278	-	-	-
Fines, penalties and forfeits	23 569	9 511	1 713	17 748	7 748	7 748	7 748	18 709	19 694	20 753
Licences and permits	10 651	10 554	9 119	9 853	9 853	9 853	9 853	10 213	10 751	11 330
Agency services	18 572	19 975	20 457	131 844	131 844	131 844	131 844	131 249	138 166	145 599
Transfers and subsidies	639 859	458 809	481 258	703 274	637 371	637 371	637 371	772 660	858 940	898 851
Other revenue	39 599	78 800	28 719	141 845	131 845	131 845	131 845	65 783	69 229	72 954
Gains on disposal of PPE	6 367	2 771	5 000	117 000	84 690	84 690	84 690	170 477	200 359	211 147
Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)	3 879 865	3 786 230	4 729 734	4 779 397	4 630 855	4 630 855	4 630 855	5 050 979	5 414 934	5 768 233
Expenditure By Type										
Employee related costs	614 555	605 355	633 813	689 648	689 648	689 648	689 648	739 404	788 185	830 748
Remuneration of councillors	28 318	31 420	34 000	66 614	66 614	66 614	66 614	64 593	68 069	71 778
Debt impairment	450 069	460 361	677 834	639 436	639 436	639 436	639 436	390 638	495 770	522 841
Depreciation & asset impairment	398 991	335 421	440 290	446 984	446 984	446 984	446 984	448 974	470 144	495 532
Finance charges	78 813	70 859	61 565	100 028	43 413	43 413	43 413	63 877	66 845	70 247
Bulk purchases	1 665 810	2 025 958	2 145 936	2 008 835	2 008 835	2 008 835	2 008 835	2 153 153	2 325 278	2 450 843
Other materials	84 409	78 818	148 231	244 627	244 627	244 627	244 627	240 178	259 373	304 884
Contracted services	158 392	174 940	241 992	315 328	405 848	405 848	405 848	246 900	264 792	310 701
Transfers and subsidies	-	3 202	18 021	16 938	16 938	16 938	16 938	17 892	18 876	19 898
Other expenditure	258 718	242 361	199 698	354 102	369 102	369 102	369 102	378 304	405 132	426 363
Loss on disposal of PPE	15 255	11 573	102 627							
Total Expenditure	3 787 528	4 040 069	4 778 843	4 772 892	4 821 240	4 821 240	4 821 240	4 749 920	5 222 249	5 503 884
Surplus/(Deficit)	(377 663)	(253 838)	(49 109)	6 765	9 765	9 765	9 765	301 059	192 684	264 349
Transfers and subsidies - capital (monetary allocations) (National / Provincial and District)	598 719	530 608	593 392	608 865	538 062	538 062	538 062	485 172	459 667	514 062
Transfers and subsidies - capital (monetary allocations) (National / Provincial Departmental Agencies, Households, Non-profit Institutions, Private Enterprises, Public Corporations, Higher Educational Institutions)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Transfers and subsidies - capital (in-kind - all)										
Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers & contributions	219 056	276 769	534 483	613 640	548 827	548 827	548 827	786 231	978 252	778 710
Taxation										
Surplus/(Deficit) after taxation	219 056	276 769	534 483	613 640	548 827	548 827	548 827	786 231	978 252	778 710
Attributable to minorities										
Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to municipality	219 056	276 769	534 483	613 640	548 827	548 827	548 827	786 231	978 252	778 710
Share of surplus/ (deficit) of associate										
Surplus/(Deficit) for the year	219 056	276 769	534 483	613 640	548 827	548 827	548 827	786 231	978 252	778 710

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL - 24 MAY 2019

CAPEX

Vote Description	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	Current Year 2018/19				2019/20 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2019/20	Budget Year +1 2020/21	Budget Year +2 2021/22
Capital Expenditure - Functional										
Governance and administration	400	3 236	3 000	17 800	11 800	11 800	11 800	293 067	155 848	169 198
Executive and council				7 800	7 800	7 800	7 800	31 435	22 226	26 222
Finance and administration		3 236	3 000	10 000	4 000	4 000	4 000	261 324	133 622	142 976
Internal audit	400							258	-	-
Community and public safety	18 803	11 533	3 856	42 184	32 873	32 873	32 873	20 649	39 847	33 830
Community and social services	3 186	513	3 506	13 557	14 256	14 256	14 256	1 000	14 500	15 830
Sport and recreation	15 345	11 120		7 107	7 107	7 107	7 107	2 518	2 412	2 681
Public safety				10 000	9 200	9 200	9 200	14 000	11 000	11 770
Housing				2 500	1 500	1 500	1 500	2 500	2 035	2 810
Health										
Economic and environmental services	507 434	185 045	432 143	277 320	278 809	278 809	278 809	209 287	221 674	233 417
Planning and development	928		2 004	26 803	23 091	28 091	28 091	9 500	35 787	26 203
Road transport	506 509	185 045	430 141	250 518	251 518	251 518	251 518	199 787	185 777	207 214
Environmental protection										
Trading services	381 713	319 231	183 795	353 158	402 858	402 858	402 858	398 044	382 271	428 652
Energy sources	81 065	92 130	20 151	66 238	74 638	74 638	74 638	83 850	97 730	130 515
Water management	122 771	182 125	148 206	147 141	174 841	174 841	174 841	204 377	232 279	295 446
Waste water management	156 049	44 997	12 849	142 131	142 131	142 131	142 131	92 187	48 800	80 718
Waste management	9 793		5 600	8 047	10 547	10 547	10 547	8 000	3 662	3 383
Other	59 878	8 550	1 909	128 850	122 650	122 650	122 650			
Total Capital Expenditure - Functional	1 297 129	805 831	623 418	829 492	858 690	858 690	858 690	921 326	799 640	862 727
Funded by:										
National Government	923 739	357 770	576 922	505 672	512 317	512 317	512 317	484 272	484 767	513 182
Provincial Government	913	518	566	1 057	3 756	3 756	3 756	800	900	900
District Municipality										
Other transfers and grants										
Transfers recognised - capital	924 649	358 288	577 488	506 885	516 082	516 082	516 082	485 172	485 667	514 082
Borrowing	79 270	69 311		200 000	79 000	79 000	79 000	60 000	60 000	84 200
Internally generated funds	293 209	49 222	45 929	119 607	243 607	243 607	243 607	376 154	214 973	264 445
Total Capital Funding	1 297 129	805 831	623 418	829 492	859 690	858 690	858 690	921 326	799 640	862 727

ELECTRICITY TARIFFS

					Proposed Tariff 2019/2020		
DOMESTIC TARIFFS							
Residential Life-line							
Residential 1(1-50 KWH)			59,6172	4,39	63,5497	97,6548	101,5400
Residential 2(51-350 KWH)			111,6744	4,39	116,5748	121,8903	127,0000
Residential 3(351-600 KWH)			146,4045	8,83	159,4612	173,7259	181,3400
Residential 4(601 + KWH)			178,1429	8,93	191,8758	209,0139	218,1600
Residential Town Conventional							
Basic Charge (R/month)			285,3474	9,01	302,2725	320,3015	334,0000
Residential 1(1-50 KWH)			90,3607	3,42	93,4450	98,6408	102,8400
Residential 2(51-350 KWH)			112,8250	3,42	116,8799	120,5664	126,0000
Residential 3(351-600 KWH)			146,5419	8,74	159,1311	173,0380	180,5100
Residential 4(601 + KWH)			178,8784	8,74	192,3373	209,1462	218,1600
Residential Town Prepaid							
Basic Charge (R/month)			311,3477	9,01	330,4086	350,2931	365,4400
Residential 1(1-50 KWH)			88,7832	5,25	93,4450	98,3579	102,6700
Residential 2(51-350 KWH)			110,8252	5,46	116,8799	123,0548	128,4600
Residential 3(351-600 KWH)			144,7537	9,93	159,1311	174,0366	182,6100
Residential 4(601 + KWH)			175,5313	9,39	192,3373	210,3928	219,6200
Residential Rural Prepaid							
Basic Charge (R/month)			311,3400	9,01	330,4086	349,2930	364,4400
Residential 1(1-50 KWH)			90,0785	5,25	94,8093	99,7807	104,1600
Residential 2(51-350 KWH)			112,7361	5,46	118,8593	125,3849	130,8600
Residential 3(351-600 KWH)			146,5419	9,93	160,9771	176,8560	184,6100
Residential 4(601 + KWH)			178,8784	9,39	193,4836	211,5169	220,8300
Residential Rural Conventional							
Basic Charge (R/month)			311,3400	9,01	330,4086	349,2930	364,4400
Residential 1(1-50 KWH)			88,6040	3,42	91,6279	94,8551	98,9600
Residential 2(51-350 KWH)			110,8252	3,42	114,4152	118,3244	123,4100
Residential 3(351-600 KWH)			144,7537	8,74	157,4040	171,1599	178,5700
Residential 4(601 + KWH)			175,5313	8,74	191,1978	207,9069	217,0300
COMMERCIAL TARIFFS							
Business Rate (Conventional) Small to Med							
Basic Charge (R/month)			815,00	0,00	815,00	815,00	850,70
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer		182,8200	0,00	182,8200	182,8200	190,8200
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter		203,7500	0,00	203,7500	218,4293	228,0143
Business Rate (Prepaid) Small to Med							
Basic Charge (R/month)			814,19	2,35	833,09	873,72	912,00
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer		168,4052	2,35	180,0748	193,8500	171,0191
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter		209,5301	2,35	213,4223	218,1293	228,0143
Business Rate (Conventional) Medium to Large							
Basic Charge (R/month)			815,00	0,00	815,00	815,00	850,70
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer		182,8200	0,00	182,8200	182,8200	190,8200
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter		203,7500	0,00	203,7500	203,7500	212,6900

ELECTRICITY TARIFFS

					Proposed Tariff 2019/2020		
Business Rate (Prepaid) Medium to Large							
Basic Charge (R/month)		808,80	8,72	878,50	883,72	1 854,10	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	163,0984	8,72	174,0839	185,7669	193,9307	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	217,4912	8,72	232,0738	247,8707	258,5482	
GOVERNMENT TARIFFS							
Business Rate (Government)							
Basic Charge (R/month)		815,00	0,00	815,00	815,00	850,70	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	152,8200	0,00	152,8200	152,8200	217,0301	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	203,7500	0,00	203,7500	203,7500	217,0301	
Business Rate (Institutional)							
Basic Charge (R/month)		815,00	0,00	815,00	815,00	850,70	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	152,8200	0,00	152,8200	152,8200	189,3289	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	203,7500	0,00	203,7500	203,7500	212,6900	
Agricultural Tariffs							
Agricultural (Small - Medium)							
Basic Charge (R/month)		834,23	4,81	865,34	903,43	943,00	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	160,1755	4,81	167,8550	175,9658	183,6872	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	213,5565	4,81	223,8357	234,6093	244,9062	
Agricultural (Medium - Large)							
Basic Charge (R/month)		838,69	2,68	859,90	882,34	921,00	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	158,9181	2,68	161,1251	165,4470	172,7070	
Business/Commercial	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	209,2139	2,68	214,6243	220,5552	230,2648	
INDUSTRIAL TARIFFS							
Basic Charge (R/month)		2 718,48	0,00	2 718,48	2 718,48	2 838,67	
Industrial (Bulk Supply Town and Rural 400 V)	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	101,9000	0,00	101,9000	101,9000	106,3716	
Industrial (Bulk Supply Town and Rural 400 V)	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	171,0700	0,00	171,0700	171,0700	178,5708	
Industrial (Bulk Supply Town and Rural 400 V)	Utilised Demand Charge (R/kVA) 12 month maximum	165,5400	0,00	165,5400	165,5400	172,8041	
Industrial (Bulk Supply Town and Rural 400 V)	Maximum Demand Charge (R/kVA)	41,3900	0,00	41,3900	41,3900	43,2062	
Basic Charge (R/month)		2 548,66	8,56	2 764,01	3 001,83	3 133,91	
Industrial (11kV Bulk Supply Town and Rural)	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Summer	109,1049	8,56	118,4458	128,5868	134,2281	
Industrial (11kV Bulk Supply Town and Rural)	Energy Rate (c/kWh) Winter	171,6274	8,56	186,2130	202,1660	211,0269	
Industrial (11kV Bulk Supply Town and Rural)	Utilised Demand Charge (R/kVA) 12 month maximum	174,7843	8,56	189,7487	205,9944	215,0037	
Industrial (11kV Bulk Supply Town and Rural)	Maximum Demand Charge (R/kVA)	43,4747	8,56	47,1425	51,1787	53,4346	
TIME-OF-USE							
Basic Charge (R/month)		9 583,43	8,56	10 374,96	11 233,32	11 731,30	
11 kV Bulk supply Time-of-use	Demand Charge (R/kVA)	45,0531	8,56	48,9104	53,0979	55,4273	
	Access Charge (R/kVA)	34,7397	8,56	37,7140	40,9430	42,7396	
	SUMMER Peak Energy (c/kWh)	147,6439	8,56	160,2848	174,0077	181,6434	
	Standard Energy (c/kWh)	99,8767	8,56	108,4278	117,7111	122,8784	
	Off-peak Energy (c/kWh)	72,7393	8,56	78,9638	85,7249	89,4861	
	WINTER Peak Energy (c/kWh)	481,3871	8,56	500,8895	543,7740	567,6008	
	Standard Energy (c/kWh)	134,6185	8,56	146,1410	158,6541	165,6180	
	Off-peak Energy (c/kWh)	80,3358	8,56	87,2137	94,6808	98,8084	
	Reactive Energy (c/kVArh)	22,2551	8,56	24,1606	29,2291	27,3901	
Basic Charge (R/month)		6 600,00	0,00	6 600,00	6 600,00	6 891,84	
33 kV Bulk supply Time-of-use	Demand Charge (R/kVA)	39,5000	0,00	39,5000	39,5000	41,2538	
	Access Charge (R/kVA)	30,0000	0,00	30,0000	30,0000	31,3184	
	SUMMER Peak Energy (c/kWh)	132,0000	0,00	132,0000	132,0000	137,7923	
	Standard Energy (c/kWh)	89,0000	0,00	89,0000	89,0000	92,9264	
	Off-peak Energy (c/kWh)	62,5000	0,00	62,5000	62,5000	65,2638	
	WINTER Peak Energy (c/kWh)	415,0000	0,00	415,0000	415,0000	433,2107	
	Standard Energy (c/kWh)	120,0000	0,00	120,0000	120,0000	125,2966	
	Off-peak Energy (c/kWh)	70,0000	0,00	70,0000	70,0000	73,0717	
	Reactive Energy (c/kVArh)	20,5000	0,00	20,5000	20,5000	21,4066	
Basic Charge (R/month)		130 000,01	7,32	139 520,01	149 731,61	156 337,61	
33 kV Bulk supply NMD > 150MVA	Demand Charge (R/kVA)	31,1657	7,32	33,4471	35,8954	37,4768	
	Access Charge (R/kVA)	16,4922	7,32	17,6565	18,9189	19,7604	
	Transmission Energy (c/kWh)	9,2100	7,32	9,8110	9,4559	9,8709	
	Reactive Energy (c/kVArh)	14,4023	7,32	15,4566	16,5880	17,3159	
	SUMMER Peak Energy (c/kWh)	111,6864	7,32	120,1560	128,8838	134,5430	
	Standard Energy (c/kWh)	78,8956	7,32	85,6296	91,7903	95,8182	
	Off-peak Energy (c/kWh)	53,8385	7,32	57,5849	61,7768	64,4908	
	WINTER Peak Energy (c/kWh)	325,9952	7,32	349,8581	376,4677	391,5437	
	Standard Energy (c/kWh)	104,5048	7,32	112,2819	120,4764	125,7902	
	Off-peak Energy (c/kWh)	60,8251	7,32	65,0628	69,8254	72,8888	

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

ASSESSMENT RATES

CATEGORY DESCRIPTION	Approved Tariff 2018/2019		Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021
	R/C		R/C	R/C	R/C
GOVERNMENT REBATE (10%)	-0,1000		-0,1000	-0,1000	-0,1000
PUBLIC SERVICE INFRASTRUCTURE - REBATE (30%	-0,3000		-0,3000	-0,3000	-0,3000
PRIVATE OWNED TOWN REBATE	-0,2500		-0,0250	-0,0250	-0,0250
PRIVATE SCHOOLS/ CRECHES REBATE	-0,2500		-0,2500	-0,0250	-0,0250
RESIDENTIAL REBATE	-100 000		-100 000	-100 000	-100
RESIDENTIAL	0,0068	6,40	0,0072	0,0077	0,0082
BUSINESS/COMMERCIAL	0,2532	6,40	0,2694	0,2887	0,3080
INDUSTRIAL	0,2578	6,40	0,2740	0,2916	0,3102
GOVERNMENT	0,0710	6,40	0,0256	0,0272	0,0290
EDUCATIONAL	0,0231	6,40	0,0246	0,0261	0,0278
MINING	0,0771	6,40	0,0289	0,0307	0,0327
AGRICULTURAL	0,0018	6,40	0,0019	0,0020	0,0022
PRIVATE ROAD	0,0071	6,40	0,0076	0,0081	0,0086
GUEST HOUSES	0,0092		0,0269	0,0288	0,0306
PRIVATE OWED TOWN	0,0068	6,40	0,0072	0,0077	0,0082
VACANT LAND	0,0106		0,0113	0,0128	0,0136
PRIVATE OPEN SPACES	0,0078	6,40	0,0060	0,0068	0,0068
PUBLIC SERVICE INFRASTRUCTURE	0,0068		0,0072	0,0077	0,0082
EXCLUSIVE USE AREA	0,0068		0,0072	0,0077	0,0082
SECTIONAL TITLE - GARAGES	0,0068		0,0072	0,0077	0,0082

WATER BASIC

				Proposed Tariff 2019/2020 PER MONTH	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020 ANNUAL				
Residential	80,97	971,64	6,5%	86,23	1 034,80	92,01	1 104,13	97,99	1 176,00 Per Unit
Residential Vacant	85,59	1 027,08	6,5%	91,15	1 093,81	97,28	1 167,10	103,60	1 242,96 Per Unit
INDUSTRIAL	87,58	1 050,72	6,5%	93,25	1 119,02	99,50	1 193,99	105,97	1 271,62 Per Unit
INDUSTRIAL - Vacant	88,54	1 062,50	6,5%	94,30	1 131,57	100,62	1 207,38	107,16	1 285,88 Per Unit
Agricultural	83,28	999,31	6,5%	88,69	1 064,27	94,63	1 135,57	100,78	1 209,36 Per Unit
BUSINESS	87,58	1 050,72	6,5%	93,25	1 119,02	99,50	1 193,99	105,97	1 271,62 Per Unit
BUSINESS - Vacant	87,58	1 050,72	6,5%	93,25	1 119,02	99,50	1 193,99	105,97	1 271,62 Per Unit
CHURCH	79,16	949,74	6,5%	84,29	1 011,48	89,94	1 079,24	95,78	1 149,40
Educational	79,16	949,74	6,5%	84,29	1 011,48	89,94	1 079,24	95,78	1 149,40
STATE OWNED	82,76	993,04	6,5%	88,13	1 057,58	94,04	1 128,44	100,14	1 201,76
MUNICIPALITY	82,75	993,04	6,5%	88,13	1 057,58	94,04	1 128,44	100,14	1 201,76

WATER TARIFFS

CONSUMER	Approved Tariff 2018/2019	2019/2020 Increase	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021	Proposed Tariff 2021/2022
DOMESTIC (Prepaid and Conventional meters) TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 12KL	12,66	1,1%	12,80	13,63	13,63
Consumption 13KL to 25KL	13,39	1,1%	13,54	14,31	14,46
Consumption 26KL to 40KL	16,07	1,1%	16,25	17,17	17,35
Consumption 41KL to 60KL	20,30	1,1%	20,52	21,69	21,91
Consumption above 60KL	23,03	1,1%	23,28	24,60	24,86
Domestic consumers with no meter Minimum charge per household per month	77,51	1,1%	78,36	82,81	83,72

WATER TARIFFS

CONSUMER	Approved Tariff 2018/2019	2019/2020 Increase	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021	Proposed Tariff 2021/2022
AGRICULTURAL DOMESTIC TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 12KL	17,23	1,1%	17,42	18,41	18,61
Consumption 13KL to 25KL	18,91	1,1%	19,12	20,20	20,42
Consumption 26KL to 40KL	20,98	1,1%	21,21	22,41	22,65
Consumption 41KL to 60KL	20,65	1,1%	20,88	22,06	22,30
Consumption above 60KL	22,47	1,1%	22,72	24,01	24,27
INDUSTRIAL TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	20,18	18,5%	28,59	41,34	49,00
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	22,42	21,0%	33,10	49,80	59,24
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	23,61	14,6%	31,30	42,32	48,50
Consumption 151KL+	28,73	18,6%	37,95	64,91	65,12
INDUSTRIAL: BOSPOORT TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	21,32	18,5%	30,23	43,70	51,80
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	23,04	21,0%	34,02	51,10	61,91
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	22,80	14,6%	29,83	40,34	46,22
Consumption 151KL+	24,48	18,6%	34,71	60,23	59,57
COMMERCIAL TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	20,43	1,1%	20,65	21,83	22,07
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	21,91	1,1%	22,15	23,41	23,67
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	22,70	1,1%	22,95	24,25	24,52
Consumption 151KL+	24,65	1,1%	24,92	28,34	28,65
INSTITUTIONAL: Church TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	19,34	18,5%	27,43	39,55	47,90
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	20,64	21,0%	30,47	45,84	55,46
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	19,73	14,6%	26,15	35,38	40,52
Consumption 151KL+	21,35	18,6%	30,30	43,85	52,00
INSTITUTIONAL TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	19,08	18,5%	28,69	38,67	46,07
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	20,23	21,0%	29,67	44,04	54,36
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	19,59	14,6%	25,97	35,12	40,24
Consumption 151KL+	21,45	18,6%	30,46	44,07	52,27
INSTITUTIONAL: GOVERNMENT TOTAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	20,19	18,5%	28,63	41,39	49,07
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	23,59	21,0%	34,83	52,40	63,36
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	22,74	14,6%	30,14	40,76	46,71
Consumption 151KL+	24,99	18,6%	35,47	51,32	60,86
PUBLIC AND PRIVATE SCHOOLS					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	19,84	18,5%	28,13	40,67	48,21
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	23,18	21,0%	34,22	51,48	62,27
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	22,05	14,6%	29,23	39,53	45,30
Consumption 151KL+	23,94	18,6%	33,99	49,19	58,33
SPECIAL					
Consumption 0KL to 60KL	21,39	18,5%	30,33	43,85	51,99
Consumption 61KL to 100KL	22,68	21,0%	33,49	50,38	60,95
Consumption 101KL to 150KL	21,88	14,6%	28,98	39,20	44,91
Consumption 151KL+	23,84	18,6%	33,84	48,97	58,07

SUNDRY WATER TARIFFS

Description	Approved Tariff 2018/2019				Proposed Tariff 2019/2020				Proposed Tariff 2020/2021				Proposed Tariff 2021/2022			
SUMMARY OF WATER CONNECTION	Short	Long	Short (Prepaid)	Long (Prepaid)	Short	Long	Short (Prepaid)	Long (Prepaid)	Short	Long	Short (Prepaid)	Long (Prepaid)	Short	Long	Short (Prepaid)	Long (Prepaid)
15 mm Connection	4 561,34	49 259,33	7 388,39	51 090,44	5 017,47	53 129,26	8 127,22	56 199,48	6 020,96	63 755,11	9 752,66	67 439,37	7 225,15	75 606,14	11 703,20	80 927,25
20 mm Connection	4 561,34	35 298,79	7 599,64	51 133,03	5 017,47	38 828,67	8 439,62	56 246,33	6 020,96	49 691,78	10 163,78	67 495,80	7 225,15	85 615,11	12 196,54	80 994,71
25 mm Connection	5 299,71	49 322,87	7 738,43	51 212,89	5 828,68	54 255,15	8 512,28	56 334,15	6 994,30	85 106,18	10 214,73	67 601,01	8 393,16	76 127,42	12 257,68	81 121,21
	Short	Long	Short (AMR)	Long (AMR)	Short	Long	Short (AMR)	Long (AMR)	Short	Long	Short (AMR)	Long (AMR)	Short	Long	Short (AMR)	Long (AMR)
50 mm Connection	19 203,87	76 729,49	25 994,43	83 521,58	21 124,03	84 402,44	28 593,87	91 873,74	25 348,84	101 282,92	34 312,65	110 248,49	30 418,61	121 539,51	41 175,18	132 298,19
80 mm Connection	28 460,26	84 458,61	33 252,37	91 249,37	29 106,31	92 904,47	38 077,61	100 374,30	34 927,57	111 445,36	45 693,13	120 449,16	41 913,09	133 739,43	54 871,70	144 539,00
100 mm Connection	31 632,55	113 524,98	38 423,31	98 516,56	34 795,80	124 877,48	42 265,64	106 258,62	41 754,96	149 852,98	50 718,77	127 510,23	50 155,95	178 823,57	66 862,52	153 012,27
150 mm Connection	47 882,73	113 524,98	54 674,82	118 268,01	52 671,00	124 877,48	60 142,30	130 092,81	63 205,20	149 852,98	72 170,76	156 111,13	75 848,24	178 823,57	86 604,91	187 333,36
SUMMARY OF SEWER CONNECTION	Short	Long			Short	Long			Short	Long			Short	Long		
100 mm Sewer Connection	3 798,01	61 524,14			4 176,61	67 676,56			5 010,74	81 211,87			6 012,89	97 454,24		
150 mm Sewer Connection	4 127,43	69 677,65			4 540,17	76 645,64			5 448,21	91 974,76			6 537,86	110 369,71		
SUMMARY OF METER TEST	Cost				Cost				Cost				Cost			
15mm Meter Test	943,68				1 038,05				1 245,66				1 494,79			
20mm Meter Test	976,95				1 074,65				1 289,58				1 547,50			
25mm Meter Test	1 452,12				1 597,33				1 916,80				2 300,16			
50mm Meter Test	1 961,89				2 158,08				2 589,70				3 107,64			
80mm Meter Test (connection)	3 908,49				4 297,13				5 156,56				6 187,87			
80mm Meter Test	2 691,28				2 960,41				3 552,49				4 262,99			
80mm Meter Test (connection)	5 121,69				5 633,86				6 760,63				8 112,76			
100mm Meter Test	3 420,67				3 762,74				4 515,28				5 418,34			
100mm Meter Test (connection)	5 849,75				6 434,72				7 721,66				9 266,00			
150 mm Meter Test	4 999,24				5 499,16				6 598,99				7 918,79			
150mm Meter Test (connection)	5 849,75				6 434,72				7 721,66				9 266,00			
200mm Meter Test	4 999,24				5 499,16				6 598,99				7 918,79			
200mm Meter Test (connection)	5 849,75				6 434,72				7 721,66				9 266,00			
15mm water meter KSM	487,18				513,90				616,68				740,01			
15mm water metered box	562,84				729,12				874,95				1 049,94			
20mm water meter KSM	485,82				534,40				641,28				769,53			
20mm water metered box	873,14				960,45				1 152,54				1 383,05			
25mm water meter KSM	1 108,72				1 219,60				1 463,51				1 756,22			
25mm water metered box	1 381,58				1 519,74				1 823,68				2 188,42			
50mm water meter	3 074,81				3 382,07				4 058,49				4 870,19			
50mm combination meter	9 916,05				10 907,55				13 089,05				15 706,86			
80mm water meter	3 913,14				4 304,45				5 165,34				6 198,41			
80mm combination meter	10 821,03				11 903,13				14 283,76				17 140,51			
100mm water meter	4 299,13				4 729,04				5 674,85				6 809,82			
100mm combination meter	11 979,00				13 176,90				15 812,28				18 974,74			
150mm water meter	6 987,75				7 686,53				9 223,83				11 068,60			
150mm combination meter	23 691,80				26 060,98				31 273,18				37 527,81			
Prepaid / smart meter 15 - 25 mm	3 327,60				3 660,35				4 392,30				5 270,76			

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

SUNDRY WATER TARIFFS

OTHER SERVICES Description																
WBDP Copy	306,70				339,87				407,61							
Water services bylaw copy	77,20				84,92				101,90							
Delivery of water by tankers	728,39				802,33				962,79							
Septic and sewer tank dislodging	0,30 per liter				0,30 per liter				0,30 per liter							
Treated Water per kl	11,73				12,90				15,48							
Portable toilets hire	355,38				390,91				469,10							
Water quality check per parameter	Based on current rates of appointed service provider				Based on current rates of appointed service provider				Based on current rates of appointed service provider							
Night soil disposal per 6KI or part	388,65				427,52				513,02							
Prepaid meter tag	139,78				153,73				184,48							
Relocation of services	Quote on request				Quote on request				Quote on request							
Damage recovery	As per extent based on losses				As per extent based on losses				As per extent based on losses							
Adjustment of manhole	Quote on request				Quote on request				Quote on request							

SANITATION SERVICES

			Proposed Tariff 2019/2020			
Residential 1 TOTAL						
Up to and including 300m³	148,27	8,5%	157,91	178,44	191,49	
301m³ to 1000m³	157,17	8,5%	167,39	190,21	202,56	
1001m³ to 2000m³	169,76	8,5%	180,78	205,49	219,20	
2001m2 and Above	186,71	8,5%	198,85	225,96	241,10	
Residential 2-4 TOTAL						
Up to and including 300m³	149,62	18,5%	185,97	211,21	229,37	
301m³ to 1000m³	158,59	18,1%	198,13	222,88	237,81	
1001m³ to 2000m³	171,26	18,6%	210,88	239,63	255,69	
2001m2 and Above	186,71	14,1%	228,79	257,72	274,69	
Business/Commercial TOTAL						Sewer points
Up to and including 300m³	161,68	8,5%	172,19	195,67	208,79	
301m³ to 1000m³	170,49	8,5%	181,19	217,22	231,79	
1001m³ to 2000m³	202,67	8,5%	218,06	245,52	261,87	
2001m2 and Above	233,38	8,5%	248,65	282,44	301,36	
Industrial TOTAL						Sewer points
Up to and including 300m³	167,84	15,5%	206,84	234,81	288,54	
301m³ to 1000m³	188,32	19,3%	228,77	259,97	277,39	
1001m³ to 2000m³	210,59	14,8%	257,41	292,51	312,11	
2001m³ and Above	242,26	14,1%	294,29	334,42	356,83	
Government TOTAL						Sewer points
Up to and including 300m³	167,84	15,5%	206,84	234,81	288,54	
301m³ to 1000m³	188,32	19,3%	228,77	259,97	277,39	
1001m³ to 2000m³	210,59	14,8%	257,41	292,51	312,11	
2001m³ and Above	242,26	14,1%	294,29	334,42	356,83	
Church TOTAL						Sewer points
Up to and including 300m³	161,62	15,5%	198,98	226,12	241,27	
301m³ to 1000m³	178,61	19,3%	219,30	249,21	265,89	
1001m³ to 2000m³	201,02	14,8%	245,71	279,22	297,93	
2001m³ and Above	233,38	14,1%	283,50	322,15	343,74	
Educational TOTAL						Sewer points
1 including 300m³	161,62	15,5%	198,98	226,12	241,27	
1000m³	178,61	19,3%	219,30	249,21	265,89	
1001m³ to 2000m³	201,02	14,8%	245,71	279,22	297,93	
2001m³ and Above	233,38	14,1%	283,50	322,15	343,74	
Agri Residential TOTAL						Sewer points
Up to and including 300m³	149,28	15,5%	182,56	207,45	221,35	
301m³ to 1000m³	157,17	18,3%	192,98	219,30	233,99	
1001m³ to 2000m³	169,74	14,8%	207,48	235,77	251,57	
2001m³ and Above	186,72	14,1%	226,82	257,75	275,02	
Agri Business TOTAL						Sewer points
Up to and including 300m2	161,68	15,5%	199,08	226,20	241,36	
301m³ to 1000m³	179,49	18,3%	220,38	250,49	267,21	
1001m³ to 2000m³	202,67	14,8%	247,97	281,78	300,68	
2001m³ and Above	233,38	14,1%	283,50	322,15	343,74	
Municipal TOTAL						
Up to and including 300m³	161,68	15,5%	199,08	226,20	241,36	
301m³ to 1000m³	179,49	18,3%	220,38	250,49	267,21	
1001m³ to 2000m³	202,67	14,8%	247,97	281,78	300,68	
2001m³ and Above	233,38	14,1%	283,50	322,15	343,74	
Special TOTAL						
Up to and including 300m³	161,68	15,5%	199,08	226,20	241,36	
301m³ to 1000m³	181,14	15,3%	222,41	252,73	269,67	
1001m³ to 2000m³	210,67	14,8%	257,78	292,00	312,02	
2001m³ and Above	239,69	14,1%	291,18	330,86	353,09	
Vacant property TOTAL						
Up to and including 300m³	151,13	15,5%	188,07	211,44	225,81	
301m³ to 1000m³	166,24	15,3%	204,11	231,95	247,49	
1001m³ to 2000m³	189,19	14,8%	227,58	258,61	276,04	
2001m³ and Above	212,26	14,1%	257,84	293,00	312,83	

INDUSTRIAL EFFLUENT MONITORING

The following formula will apply for industrial effluent charges covering the conveyance, and treatment of industrial effluent.

$$TI = C \times \frac{QI}{QI} \times [0,3 + 0,35\,Ko + 0,25\,Kn + 0,1\,Kp]$$

Where:

- TI = charge due in R/month
- C = total cost of the sewerage undertaking of Rustenburg Local Municipality covering both treatment and conveyance and must include fixed, semi fixed and variable charges (R/month).
- QI = sewage flow from the industry in m3/month
- Qt = sum of design capacities of all the waste water treatment works of the Rustenburg Local Municipality in m3/month

$$Ko = \frac{CODI}{CODI}$$

Where: CODI = Industry sewage COD

CODI = target COD as published in Schedule A in the Bylaws in mg/l

The ratio(Ko) is the larger of 1 or the actual ratio

$$Kn = \frac{TKNI}{TKNI}$$

Where: TKNI = the industry TKN

TKNI = target TKN as published in Schedule A in the Bylaws in mg/l

The ratio(Kn) is the larger of 1 or the actual ratio

$$Kp = \frac{PI}{PI}$$

Where: PI = Phosphate of industry in mg/l

PI = target Phosphate as published in Schedule A in these Bylaws in mg/l

The ratio(Kp) is the larger of 1 or the actual ratio.

(a) The factor of 0,3 represents the "fixed portion" of the costs. This is independent of the strength (or make-up of the sewage) and also deals with the conveyance costs.

(b) The above formula is only applicable for the treatment of compliant effluent. If any constituent (heavy metals, any toxic substances etc.) exceeds the approved values, the municipality may introduce any of the following steps:

I. Refuse to accept the effluent
II. Impose a fine on the industry
III. Insist on pre-treatment by the industry to render the effluent compliant prior to discharge to the municipal system.

(c) Fines for contravening the allowable limits of constituents in industrial effluents.:

(d) The municipality sells treated sewage effluent to the mines as process water. There is stringent quality criteria associated with this and the mines may refuse to accept sub-standard effluent. In this case the municipality must provide them with potable water at no incremental cost. The one major concern is fats and oils in the effluent as that impact negatively on the mines processes.

(e) The municipality will thus, in particular, enforce the fat and oil standards rigorously.

(f) The fines will be implemented as follows:

I. First written warning. No fine.
II. Second contravention R10 000.00 fine regardless of quantity or quality
III. Subsequent contraventions:
- Spot fines of the larger of R 10 000 or a flow related minimum fine of R5 per m³ or as per written approval.
- Refuse to accept the effluent

AGENDA SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

WASTE MANAGEMENT

	Tariff Code	Unit	Approved Tariff 2018/2019	2018/2019 % Increase	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021	Proposed Tariff 2021/2022	Sundry Tariffs
1. DOMESTIC								Per Unit
STD CONTAINER 1 X WEEK RES 1	AA	R/month	135,61	9,20	148,08	161,71	176,56	
STD CONTAINER 1 X WEEK RES 2-4	BA	R/month	135,61	9,20	148,08	161,71	176,56	
BAG COLLECTION (6 BAGS each ass.)		R/month	135,61	9,20	148,08	161,71	176,56	
MONTHLY RENTAL PER 240LITER BIN		R/month	20,70	9,20	22,61	24,69	26,96	
ADDITIONAL REFUSE BAGS REMOVAL (PER BAG)	NEW				36,28	39,00	42,12	
BASIC CHARGE WITHOUT COLLECTION (Includes street cleaning)	NEW				72,55	77,99	84,23	
2. INDUSTRIAL								Per Unit
INDUSTRIAL	DA	R/month	519,27	9,20	567,05	619,22	676,18	
3. COMMERCIAL								Per Unit
240L BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK	CF	R/month	519,27	9,20	567,05	619,22	676,18	
240L BULK CONTAINER (ADDITIONAL)	CG	R/month	442,09	9,20	482,76	527,17	575,67	
770L BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK		R/month	1 543,79	9,20	1 685,82	1 840,91	2 010,28	
770L BULK CONTAINER (ADDITIONAL)		R/month	1 309,20	9,20	1 429,58	1 560,41	1 699,60	
1100L BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK		R/month	2 217,44	9,20	2 421,45	2 644,22	2 887,49	
1100L BULK CONTAINER (ADDITIONAL)		R/month	1 880,82	9,20	2 053,83	2 242,67	2 448,68	
1,5 m³ BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK	CB	R/month	2 520,20	9,20	2 752,81	3 012,40	3 289,54	
1,5 m³ BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK (ADDITIONAL)	CC	R/month	2 161,50	9,20	2 360,15	2 577,28	2 814,39	
4,0 m³ BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK		R/month	6 764,12	9,20	8 283,60	6 881,59	7 492,85	
4,0 m³ BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK (ADDITIONAL)		R/month	4 855,92	9,20	5 302,58	5 790,61	6 323,24	
6,0 m³ BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK	CD	R/month	8 526,26	9,20	9 310,68	10 167,26	11 102,65	
6,0 m³ BULK CONTAINER 1 X WEEK (ADDITIONAL)	CE	R/month	7 227,74	9,20	7 892,69	8 618,62	9 411,78	
STD CONTAINER 2 X WEEK BUS/ COM	CA	R/month	0,00		0,00	0,00	0,00	
4. INSTITUTIONAL								Per Unit
MUNICIPAL	EA	R/month	142,44	9,20	155,54	169,85	185,48	
GOVERNMENT	FA	R/month	142,44	9,20	155,54	169,85	185,48	
CHURCH	GA	R/month	142,44	9,20	155,54	169,85	185,48	
EDUCATIONAL	JA	R/month	142,44	9,20	155,54	169,85	185,48	
					0	0	0	
5. RENTAL SERVICES					0	0	0	
240L BIN RENTAL (Including disposal costs)	CJ	R/week	258,48	5,90	271,81	287,84	304,81	
770L CONTAINER RENTAL (Including disposal costs)		R/week	514,29	5,90	544,64	576,77	610,80	
1100L CONTAINER RENTAL (Including disposal costs)		R/week	587,78	5,90	622,44	659,16	698,06	
1,5 m³ CONTAINER RENTAL	CH	R/week	701,31	5,90	742,68	786,50	832,91	
4 m³ SKIP CONTAINER RENTAL (First Removal)	CK	R/week	1 123,50	-15,97	944,20	793,45	666,76	
4 m³ SKIP CONTAINER RENTAL (Additional Removal)		R/week	954,00	-15,97	801,69	673,68	566,12	
6 m³ SKIP CONTAINER RENTAL (First Removal)	CL	R/week	1 821,60	-15,97	1 352,68	1 145,28	962,40	
6 m³ SKIP CONTAINER RENTAL (Additional Removal)		R/week	1 378,00	-15,97	1 157,98	973,09	817,72	
9 m³ SKIP CONTAINER RENTAL (First Removal)		R/week	3 009,60	5,90	3 187,93	3 370,73	3 569,60	
9 m³ SKIP CONTAINER RENTAL (Additional Removal)		R/week	2 027,28	-15,97	1 703,57	1 431,57	1 203,00	
36 m³ RORO CONTAINER RENTAL (First Removal)		R/week	7 213,45	5,90	7 639,04	8 089,75	8 567,04	
36 m³ RORO CONTAINER RENTAL (Additional Removal)		R/week	6 131,43	5,90	6 493,19	6 876,29	7 281,99	
6. OTHER SERVICES								
RENTAL OF WASTE MANAGEMENT HALL		R/day	1 124,64	5,90	1 191,00	1 261,27	1 335,68	
RENTAL OF PA (SOUND) SYSTEM		R/day	919,51	5,90	973,77	1 031,22	1 092,06	
WASTE REMOVAL INFORMAL SETTLEMENT PER SHACK		R/week	21,23	5,90	22,48	23,80	25,21	
WASTE TRANSPORTER PERMIT VEHICLES UNDER FOUR TON PER ANNUM		R/ vehicle	141,48	5,90	149,81	158,65	168,01	
WASTE TRANSPORTER PERMIT VEHICLES ABOVE FOUR TON PER ANNUM		R/ vehicle	282,93	5,90	299,62	317,30	336,02	
ILLEGAL DUMPING REMOVAL ON EMPTY STANDS 1000 SQUARE METERS		R/stand	11 430,27	5,90	12 104,66	12 818,83	13 575,16	
ILLEGAL DUMPING REMOVAL ON EMPTY STANDS 1001 SQUARE METERS AND ABOVE		R/stand	14 146,39	5,90	14 981,03	15 864,91	16 800,84	
SPECIAL WASTE REMOVAL	KA	PA	1 182,42	5,90	1 252,18	1 326,08	1 404,30	
CARCASS REMOVAL	KD	R/ carcass	326,74	5,90	346,02	366,44	388,06	
CONDEMNED FOODSTUFF UNDER 1000 KG s		PA	1 116,48	5,90	1 181,39	1 250,99	1 324,80	
CONDEMNED FOODSTUFF ABOVE 1000 KG s		PA	2 230,86	5,90	2 362,59	2 501,88	2 649,50	
STREET SWEEPER OR COLLECTION WORKER		R/h	163,82	5,90	162,88	172,28	182,45	
DRIVER		R/h	227,09	5,90	240,49	254,68	269,70	
240 LITER BIN ONCE OFF PURCHASE		R	721,47	5,90	764,03	809,11	856,85	
770 LITER BIN ONCE OFF PURCHASE		R	6 790,28	5,90	7 190,89	7 615,18	8 064,44	
1100 LITER BIN ONCE OFF PURCHASE		R	7 073,19	5,90	7 490,61	7 932,45	8 400,16	
ANNUAL REGISTRATION AND LICENSING OF COMMERCIAL/ PRIVATE WASTE COLLECTORS FROM THE JURISDICTION OF RLM - once off payment / ABOVE 4 Ton vehicle	NEW	R			2 000,00	2 150,00	2 322,00	
ANNUAL REGISTRATION AND LICENSING OF COMMERCIAL/ PRIVATE WASTE COLLECTORS FROM THE JURISDICTION OF RLM - once off payment / LESS 4 Ton vehicle	NEW				500,00	537,50	580,50	
ANNUAL REGISTRATION AND LICENSING OF COMMERCIAL/ PRIVATE WASTE COLLECTORS FROM OUTSIDE THE JURISDICTION OF RLM - once off payment / ABOVE 4 Ton vehicle	NEW				3 000,00	3 225,00	3 483,00	
ANNUAL REGISTRATION AND LICENSING OF COMMERCIAL/ PRIVATE WASTE COLLECTORS FROM OUTSIDE THE JURISDICTION OF RLM - once off payment / LESS 4 Ton vehicle	NEW				1 500,00	1 612,50	1 741,50	
RENEWAL OF ANNUAL LICENSES FOR COMMERCIAL/PRIVATE WASTE COLLECTORS (WASTE COLLECTORS INOUT OF THE RLM JURISDICTION)	NEW				1 000,00	1 075,00	1 161,00	
7. DISPOSAL CHARGES AT THE DROP-OFF CENTRES AND TRANSFER STATIONS								
GARDEN WASTE		RB	13,38	5,9	14,15	14,98	15,88	

WASTE MANAGEMENT

	Tariff Code	Unit	Approved Tariff 2018/2019	2018/2019 % Increase	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021	Proposed Tariff 2021/2022	Sundry Tariffs
8. DISPOSAL CHARGES AT THE HATERNAL LANDFILL								
Prepaid card for Waste Disposal			35,00	0,00	35,00	35,00	35,00	
Non Municipal Resident		PA	420,78	5,90	445,61	471,90	499,74	
General waste (household waste and similar commercial, industrial and institutional wastes)		PA	180,00	90,26	342,49	651,61	1 239,78	
Private deliveries of any kind of uncontaminated (non-hazardous) waste (passenger car, pick-up, bakkie / trailer up to 1,000 kg payload) - once a week		PA	0,00		0,00	0,00	0,00	
Garden waste (free from impurities)		PA	0,00		0,00	0,00	0,00	
Construction and demolition waste (uncontaminated soil and rubble up to a length of 80 cm from edge to edge)		PA	80,00	1 356,43	1 014,74	12 871,33	163 203,84	
Rubble (stone, concrete or asphalt) with a length of larger than 80 cm from edge to edge		PA	133,55	958,743078	1 412,95	14 970,11	158 499,03	
Mixed construction and demolition waste (including glass, packaging, gypsum, wood, plastics, metals, etc)		PA	250,00	98,1922547	495,48	982,00	1 946,28	
Special waste (includes solid, liquid, sludge waste or waste requiring special handling, e.g. condemned foodstuff, animal carcasses, de-listed sanitary waste, rags and grit from sewerage works, incinerator ash, sludge etc. all special wastes will require prior approval and laboratory testing)		PA	267,16	5,9	282,93	299,62	317,30	
Mixed industrial and commercial waste		PA	200,37	5,9	212,20	224,72	237,97	
Mixed recyclable wastes (impurities less than 5%)		PA	0,00		0,00	0,00	0,00	
Waste tyres up to a diameter of 0,6 m (normal passenger vehicle tyre) - without wheel rim		R/tyre	6,68	5,9	7,07	7,49	7,93	
Waste tyres up to a diameter of 0,6 m (normal passenger vehicle tyre) - with wheel rim		R/tyre	10,02	5,9	10,61	11,24	11,90	
Waste tyres with a diameter of larger than 0,6 m - without wheel rim		R/tyre	20,04	5,9	21,22	22,47	23,80	
Waste tyres with a diameter of larger than 0,6 m - with wheel rim		R/tyre	30,06	5,9	31,83	33,71	35,70	
Tyres cut or shredded		PA	200,47	58,9284192	318,60	506,34	804,71	
E-waste (if more than 50kg) (Electrical and electronical waste)		PA	120,67	81,2288848	230,87	441,72	845,14	
Bulky waste (Furniture, sofas, beds, mattresses, chairs, carpets, bicycles, and other bulky household items)		PA	115,40	82,9711988	211,15	386,39	706,89	
Hazardous Household Waste (if more than 10kg)		R/kg	13,36	5,9	14,15	14,98	15,85	

SUNDRY TARIFFS

Sundry Item Description	Approved Tariff 2018/2019	2018/2019 % Increase	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021	Proposed Tariff 2021/2022
	R		R	R	R
CLEARANCE CERTIFICATE FEE	79,20	13,2%	89,67	101,51	114,92
CLEARANCE APPLICATION FEE: MANUAL	165,60	13,2%	187,48	212,24	240,28
CLEARANCE APPLICATION FEE: ELECTRONIC (clearance.com)	369,81	13,2%	418,64	473,71	536,29
ISSUING OF DUPLICATE (SUBSCRIPTION ACCOUNT OVER 3 MONTHS (per acc)	3,30		3,30	3,30	3,30
ADMIN FEE R/D CHEQUE	173,00	16,5%	201,58	234,80	273,52
CONSUMER DEPOSIT - RESIDENTIAL	1 700,80	12,6%	1 914,62	2 155,32	2 426,28
VALUATION ROLL - Soft copy	1 064,00	13,2%	1 204,55	1 363,57	1 543,80
VALUATION ROLL - Hard copy	1 064,00	13,2%	1 204,55	1 363,57	1 543,80
VALUATION CERTIFICATE	82,64	13,2%	93,55	105,92	119,91
DEED SEARCH	61,97	13,2%	69,48	78,66	89,05
LOST COPY OF CERTIFICATE	68,95	13,2%	78,79	85,80	97,14
FINAL DEMAND	26,96	12,1%	30,38	34,23	38,58
WATER RECONNECTION	538,34	12,7%	607,72	684,76	771,57
ELECTRICITY RECONNECTION	377,54	11,9%	422,59	473,02	529,48
REMOVAL OF INSTALLATION	2 312,74	10,9%	2 564,38	2 843,41	3 152,80
CHEQUE RE ISSUE	150,00	5,9%	158,85	168,22	178,15
ADMIN FEE ON TRANSFERS	5,50	5,9%	5,82	6,17	6,53
SEARCHING OF ANY DISCLOSURE RECORD	R18,86 P/H OR PART	6,4%	R18,98 P/H OR PART	R18,07 P/H OR PART	R19,22 P/H OR PART

TOWN PLANNING

APPLICATION	Approved Tariff 2018/2019	2018/2019 % Increase	Proposed Tariff 2019/2020	Proposed Tariff 2020/2021	Proposed Tariff 2021/2022
WRITTEN CONSENT ON DOC:F/3- APPLICATION IN TERMS OF THE LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEME READ WITH SECTION 18(4) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Second dwelling	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Building Line Relaxation	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Height Relaxation	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Coverage Relaxation	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Servitude Upliftment	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Relaxation of the line(s) of no access	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Provision of parking on adjacent property	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Relaxation of parking	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Site Development Plan	R 882,60	12,3%	R 991,22	R 1 113,21	R 1 250,21
Amendment of Site Development Plan	R 882,60	12,3%	R 991,22	R 1 113,21	R 1 250,21
Erection of screen wall(s) exceeding 2m meters in height	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Written consent objection	R 493,45	12,3%	R 554,18	R 622,38	R 698,97
SPECIAL CONSENT ON DOC:F/4- APPLICATION IN TERMS OF THE LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEME READ WITH SECTION 18(5) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Special Consent	R 1 087,84	12,3%	R 1 221,71	R 1 372,06	R 1 540,92
Special Consent Objection/submission	R 493,45	12,3%	R 554,18	R 622,38	R 698,97
SPECIAL CONSENT ON DOC:F/5- APPLICATION IN TERMS OF THE LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEME READ WITH SECTION 18(5) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
The erection and use of temporary buildings, or the use of existing buildings for site offices, storage rooms, workshops or such other uses as may be necessary during the erection of any permanent	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
The occasional use of land or buildings for public religious exercise, place of instruction, institution, place of amusement or social hall, informal retail trade	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
The use of land or building thereon for State or Municipal purposes	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77
Prospecting rights	R 611,21	12,3%	R 686,43	R 770,90	R 865,77

TOWN PLANNING

AMENDMENT SCHEME OR DOC:F2- APPLICATION FOR THE CHANGE OF USE RIGHTS IN TERMS OF LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEME READ WITH SECTION 19(1) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015.					
Amendment Scheme Applications	R 3 392,48	12,3%	R 3 809,98	R 4 278,68	R 4 805,45
Proclamation	R 1 233,63	12,3%	R 1 385,45	R 1 555,95	R 1 747,44
Floor Area Ratio Increase	R 3 392,48	12,3%	R 3 809,98	R 4 278,68	R 4 805,45
Amendment Scheme Objection	R 1 233,63	12,3%	R 1 385,45	R 1 555,95	R 1 747,44
					R-
Notice of appeal	R 3 183,00	12,3%	R 3 574,72	R 4 014,65	R 4 508,72
Notice to oppose appeal	R 1 061,00	12,3%	R 1 191,57	R 1 338,22	R 1 502,91
Interviewer Status ()Section 45 (7)((3) and or (4) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 2013	R 1 000,00	12,3%	R 1 123,07	R 1 261,28	R 1 416,50
REMOVAL OF RESTRICTIONS ON DOC:F3: APPLICATION FOR THE REMOVAL, AMENDMENT OR SUSPENSION OF TITLE CONDITIONS IN TERMS OF SECTION 19(2) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Removal of restrictive conditions	R 280,37	12,3%	R 314,87	R 353,62	R 397,14
TOWNSHIP ESTABLISHMENT ON DOC:F17- APPLICATION FOR TOWNSHIP ESTABLISHMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 19(7) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Township Establishment (1-100 erven)	R 7 463,45	12,3%	R 8 381,95	R 9 413,50	R 10 571,99
Township with more than 100 stands	R 2 487,20	12,3%	R 2 770,89	R 3 111,90	R 3 494,87
Proclamation notice	R1 500/page	12,3%	R1 685/page	R1 890/page	R2 120/page
Extension of boundaries	R 7 463,45	12,3%	R 8 381,95	R 9 413,50	R 10 571,99
Township Establishment Objection	R 2 487,28	12,3%	R 2 770,89	R 3 111,90	R 3 494,87-
DIVISION OF A TOWNSHIP ON DOC:F8- APPLICATION FOR A DIVISION/PHASING OF A TOWNSHIP IN TERMS OF SECTION 19(5) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Division of a Township	R 1 850,44	12,3%	R 2 078,17	R 2 333,92	R 2 621,15
DIVISION OF LAND ON DOC:F11 APPLICATION FOR A DIVISION OF AGRICULTURE LAND IN TERMS OF SECTION 19(15)(x)(iii-) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Division of Agriculture Land	R550,00	12,3%	R 617,69	R 693,70	R 779,09
AMENDMENT OF AN APPROVED TOWNSHIP ON DOC:F10- APPLICATION FOR THE AMENDMENT OF AN APPROVED TOWNSHIP IN TERMS OF SECTION 19(7)(i) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Amendment of the layout plan	R 1 850,44	12,3%	R 2 078,17	R 2 333,92	R 2 621,15

TOWN PLANNING

CONSOLIDATION/SUBDIVISION ON DOC:F11 – APPLICATION FOR THE CONSOLIDATION/SUBDIVISION IN TERMS OF SECTION 19(15) OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT BY-LAW, 2015					
Subdivision	R 615,81	12,3%	R 692,72	R 777,97	R 873,72
Subdivision with more than 5(five) stands/ stand	R 72,00	12,3%	R 81,87	R 91,94	R 103,26
Subdivision of Agricultural Land (Section 8) of the Town Planning and Townships Ordinance 20 of 1986.	R 615,81	12,3%	R 692,72	R 777,97	R 873,72
Consolidation	R 475,51	12,3%	R 534,03	R 599,75	R 673,66
OTHER APPLICATIONS					
Zoning Information	R 40,37	12,3%	R 45,34	R 50,92	R 57,19
Trade License	R 271,40	12,3%	R 304,80	R 342,31	R 384,44
Original Plans and Duratars					
A0	R 67,23	12,3%	R 75,57	R 84,87	R 95,31
A1	R 56,07	12,3%	R 62,97	R 70,72	R 79,43
A2	R 44,88	12,3%	R 50,38	R 56,58	R 63,54
A3	R 19,07	12,3%	R 21,41	R 24,05	R 27,01
A4	R 11,21	12,3%	R 12,59	R 14,14	R 15,89
Original Plans (paper)					
A0	R 37,01	12,3%	R 41,56	R 46,68	R 52,42
A1	R 30,28	12,3%	R 34,01	R 38,19	R 42,89
A2	R 24,67	12,3%	R 27,71	R 31,12	R 34,95
A3	R 12,34	12,3%	R 13,85	R 15,55	R 17,47
A4	R 3,25	12,3%	R 3,65	R 4,10	R 4,61

HOUSING

CRU'S BOITEKONG EXT 12 (NO INCREASE)					
1 BEDROOM	R 300,00	R 300,00	R 300,00	R 300,00	R 300,00
2 BEDROOM	R 500,00	R 500,00	R 500,00	R 500,00	R 500,00
3 BEDROOM	R 700,00	R 700,00	R 700,00	R 700,00	R 700,00
AMBERBOOM (LOW COST HOUSES)					
1 BEDROOM	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
2 BEDROOM	25%	25%	25%	25%	25%
3 BEDROOM	30%	30%	30%	30%	30%
	0%				
PERSONNEL HOUSES (MARKET RELATED)					
FLATS	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00
HOUSES	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00	R 3 500,00
KERK OLD AGE FLATS					
1 BEDROOM(SINGLE)	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
2 BEDROOM(DOUBLE)	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
GEELHOUT PARK OLD AGE FLATS					
2 BEDROOM(DOUBLE)	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%

PROPOSED TARIFFS FOR COMMUNITY FACILITIES: CEMETERIES

Description	Donkerhoek		Zinniville		Karlenpark		Mariana		Phatsima		Lethabong		Monsanto		Rietvlei	
	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20	Approved 2018/19	PROPOSED 2019/20
Adult Resident	700,00	750,00	520,00	550,00	520,00	550,00	520,00	550,00	520,00	550,00	520,00	550,00	520,00	550,00	775 (garden section)	830,00
Adult Non-resident	1 000,00	1 070,00	990,00	1 050,00	990,00	1 050,00	990,00	1 050,00	990,00	1 050,00	990,00	1 050,00	990,00	1 050,00	1 920,00 (garden section)	2 054,00
Child resident	500,00	535,00	395,00	425,00	210,00	225,00	210,00	225,00	210,00	225,00	210,00	225,00	210,00	225,00	690,00 (garden section)	531,00
Child Non-resident (under 14)	1 000,00	1 070,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	550,00	R1 145,41- (garden section)	1 226,00
Monumental: Adult resident	1 000,00	1 070,00	-		-		-		-		-		-		1 028,00	1 099,00
Monumental: Adult Non-resident	1 900,00	2 035,00	-		-		-		-		-		-		2 035,00	2 177,00
Monumental: Child Resident	865,00	926,00	-		-		-		-		-		-		898,00	960,00
Monumental: Child Non-resident	1 831,00	1 745,00	-		-		-		-		-		-		1 910,00	2 044,00
Remembrance Hall	Donkerhoek		Zinniville		Karlenpark		Mariana		Phatsima		Lethabong		Monsanto		Rietvlei	
Um Resident	1 067,00	1 142,00	-		-		-		-		-		-		R	
Um Non-resident	1 142,00	1 222,00	-		-		-		-		-		-		R	

"COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT
PROPOSED TARIFFS FOR COMMUNITY FACILITIES : SPORTS & RECREATION"

												Proposed % increase
Olympia Park Stadium Primary (Private Companies)	8 500	2 200	11 000	9 418	2 354	11 770	10 075	2 519	12 594	10 780	2 695	13 475	7%
Preparation fee (per day)	1 500	n/a	1 500	1 605	n/a	1 605	1 717	n/a	1 717	1 838	n/a	1 838	7%
Olympia Park Stadium Secondary (Government Department)	8 600	2 200	8 800	7 062	2 354	9 416	7 558	2 519	10 075	8 085	2 695	10 780	7%
Reception Hall on Super suite	3 850	1 100	4 950	4 152	1 177	5 329	4 442	1 259	5 702	4 763	1 348	6 101	7%
Preparation fee (per day)	800	n/a	800	856	n/a	856	918	n/a	918	950	n/a	950	7%
North West Hall	1 100	550	1 650	1 177	589	1 766	1 259	630	1 889	1 348	674	2 021	7%
Preparation fee (per day)	800	n/a	800	535	n/a	535	572	n/a	572	613	n/a	613	7%
Small Halls 2-8 Tennis, Hockey and Ring Ball Club House	1 000	550	1 550	1 070	589	1 659	1 145	630	1 776	1 225	674	1 899	7%
Flood Lights	850	n/a	850	942	n/a	942	1 008	n/a	1 008	1 078	n/a	1 078	7%
Suites	550	n/a	550	589	n/a	589	630	n/a	630	674	n/a	674	7%
Kitchen	1 100	550	1 650	1 177	589	1 766	1 259	630	1 889	1 348	674	2 021	7%
Olympia Park Professional Events Inside	20 000	3 300	23 300	21 400	3 531	24 931	22 898	3 776	26 678	24 501	4 043	28 544	7%
Preparation fee (per day)	1 500	n/a	1 500	1 605	n/a	1 605	1 717	n/a	1 717	1 838	n/a	1 838	7%
Olympia Park Professional Events Outside	17 000	3 300	20 300	18 190	3 531	21 721	19 453	3 776	23 241	20 826	4 043	24 868	7%
Barricades (single)	none	none	-	300	300	600	315	-	-	332	-	-	-
Barricades (double)	none	none	-	500	300	800	525	-	-	553	-	-	-
Plastic grass per sqm	-	-	-	150	2 000	2 150	158	-	-	166	-	-	-
CLEANING OF EMPTY STANDS 1-1000 SQUARE METERS	11 430	n/a	11 430	12 230	n/a	12 230	13 087	-	13 087	14 003	-	14 003	7%
CLEANING OF EMPTY STANDS 1001 SQUARE METERS AND ABOVE	14 146	n/a	14 146	15 137	n/a	15 137	16 196	-	16 196	17 330	-	17 330	7%
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

DIRECTORATE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT
PROPOSED TARIFFS FOR COMMUNITY FACILITIES: SWIMMING POOLS

...MING POOLS		2018/2019 % Increase			
...el (Adult)	30,00	4,8%	31,50	33,00	35,00
Marais Street (Child)	15,00	5,3%	15,00	17,000	15,00
Marais Street (Pensioner)	none		none	none	none
Swimming Gala	R4,000.00 (RLM collect the revenue during the Gala) R10,000.00 (If Club is collecting revenue during the Gala)		R4,000.00 (RLM collect the revenue during the Gala) R10,000.00 (If the Swimming Club collect the revenue during the Gala)	10 500,00	11 025,00
Private Event/Function	NEW	5,0%	2 000,00	2 100,00	2 213,40
Middle Street (Adult)	30	5,0%	31,50	33,39	35,19
Middle Street (Child)	15	5,0%	15,75	16,70	17,60
Middle Street (Pensioner)					
Private Event/Function	NEW	5,0%	2 000,00	2 100,00	2 213,40
Zinniaville Pool (Adult)	30	5,0%	31,50	33,39	35,19
Zinniaville Pool (Child)	15	5,0%	15,75	16,70	17,60
Zinniaville Pool (Pensioner)					
Private Event/Function	NEW	5,0%	2 000,00	2 100,00	2 213,40
Karlempark Pool (Adult)	30	5,0%	31,50	33,39	35,19
Karlempark Pool (Child)	15	5,0%	15,75	16,70	17,60
Karlempark Pool (Pensioner)					
Private Event/Function	NEW	5,0%	2 000,00	2 100,00	2 213,40
Monakato Pool (Adult)	30	5,0%	31,50	33,39	35,19
Monakato Pool (Child)	15	5,0%	15,75	16,70	17,60
Monakato Pool (Pensioner)			-	-	-
Private Event/Function	NEW	5,0%	2 000,00	2 100,00	2 213,40

DIRECTORATE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT
PROPOSED NEW TARIFFS FOR THE HIRING OF THE CIVIC CENTRE & COMMUNITY HALLS 2018/19

											Proposed % increase
Atrium	4 300,00	1 500,00	5 800,00	4 600,00	1 600,00	6 200,00	4 830,00	1 680,00	6 090,82	1 764,00	7,0%
Auditorium	8 200,00	1 500,00	9 700,00	8 770,00	1 600,00	10 300,00	9 208,50	1 680,00	9 705,78	1 764,00	7,0%
Banquet hall	8 500,00	1 500,00	8 000,00	6 955,00	1 600,00	8 555,00	7 344,75	1 680,00	7 741,37	1 764,00	7,0%
Banquet hall half	3 300,00	1 500,00	4 800,00	3 530,00	1 600,00	5 130,00	3 709,50	1 680,00	3 908,65	1 764,00	7,0%
Caucus rooms	1 200,00		1 200,00	1 280,00	1 600,00	1 280,00	1 344,00	1 680,00	1 416,58	1 764,00	6,7%
City hall	7 500,00	1 500,00	9 000,00	8 025,00	1 600,00	9,63	10 108,25	1 680,00	10 651,99	1 764,00	7,0%
City hall half	3 900,00	1 500,00	5 400,00	4 170,00	1 600,00	5 770,00	5 058,50	1 680,00	5 365,60	1 764,00	6,8%
Terrace/Pergola	1 700,00	600,00	2 300,00	1 820,00	640,00	2 460,00	2 583,00	672,00	2 722,45	705,60	7,1%
Main bar	1 900,00	600,00	2 500,00	2 030,00	640,00	2 670,00	2 803,50	672,00	2 954,93	705,60	5,8%
Preparation fee/Rehearsal fee	1 400,00	n/a	1 400,00	1 500,00	n/a	1 500,00	1 575,00	N/A	1 657,05	N/A	7,1%
Hiring fee per chair	11,00	n/a	11,00	11,80	n/a	11,80	12,39	N/A	13,04	N/A	7,3%
Hiring fee per square table	25,00	n/a	25,00	26,80	n/a	26,80	28,14	N/A	28,68	N/A	7,2%
Hiring fee per round table	35,00	n/a	35,00	37,00	n/a	37,00	38,85	N/A	40,93	N/A	5,7%
Foyer	1 650,00	n/a	1 650,00	1 760,00	n/a	1 760,00	1 848,00	N/A	1 947,79	N/A	5,7%
Government rates	n/a	n/a	-	-	-	-	4 830,00	-	5 090,82	-	-

COMMUNITY HALLS				RENTAL	REFUNDABLE DEPOSIT	TOTAL	RENTAL	REFUNDABLE DEPOSIT	RENTAL	REFUNDABLE DEPOSIT	% Increase
	Approved Rental 2017/2018	Approved Refundable Deposit 2017/2018	Total including Deposit 2017/2018	Proposed Rental 2018/2019	Proposed Refundable Deposit 2018/2019	Total including Deposit 2018/2019	Proposed Rental 2019/2020	Proposed Refundable Deposit 2019/2020	Proposed Rental 2019/2020	Proposed Refundable Deposit 2019/2020	Proposed % Increase
B Theze Austrian Hall	1 500,00	840,00	2300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 580,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,9%
Ben Marais Hall	4 000,00	1 680,00	5 500,00	4 280,00	1 800,00	6 080,00	6 384,00	1 890,00	6 728,74	1 984,50	8,0%
Boitekong Hall	1 500,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 580,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,0%
Meriting Hall	1 500,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 580,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,0%
Monakato Hall	1 500,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 580,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,0%
Old Town Hall	3 100,00	1 680,00	4 700,00	3 320,00	1 800,00	5 120,00	5 376,00	1 890,00	5 668,30	1 984,50	8,0%
Phatsima Hall	1 500,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 580,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,0%

AGENDA SPECIAL COUNCIL 24 MAY 2019

PROPOSED NEW TARIFFS FOR THE HIRING OF THE CIVIC CENTRE & COMMUNITY HALLS 2018/19

Civic Centre	Approved Tariff 2017/18	Approved Tariff Deposit 2017/18	Tariff Proposed 2018/19	Proposed Deposit 2018/19	Tariff Proposed 2019/20	Proposed Deposit 2019/20	Proposed Tariff 2020/21	Proposed Deposit 2020/21	Proposed % Increase
Tlhabane Hall	1 600,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 630,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,9%
WA van Zyl	1 600,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 630,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,9%
Zinniavite Hall	1 600,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 630,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,9%
Paardekraal Hall	1 600,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 630,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,9%
Sunrisepark Hall	1 600,00	840,00	2 300,00	1 605,00	900,00	2 505,00	2 630,25	945,00	2 772,28	992,25	8,9%

DIRECTORATE COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT
PROPOSED NEW TARIFFS FOR HIRING OF SHOW HALLS

		R/C	R/C	R/C	R/C	R/C	
HALLS							
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	130.02	139.12	147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Day	R 2 955.09	3 250.60	3 478.14	3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Week	R 20 685.61	22 754.17	24 346.66	25 807.78	R 2 068.56	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Month	R 59 101.73	65 011.90	69 562.74	73 736.50	R 5 910.17	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Rib Show	R 8 274.24	9 101.66	9 738.78	10 323.11	R 827.42	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	130.02	139.12	147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Day	R 2 955.09	3 250.60	3 478.14	3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Week	R 14 775.43	16 252.97	17 390.68	18 434.12	R 1 477.54	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Month	R 5 550,00	6 138,99	6 568,72	6 962.84	R 558,09	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Rib Show	R 5 909,62	6 497,28	6 952,09	7 369,22	R 590,68	5.3%
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	130.02	139.12	147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Day	R 2 995,09	3 294,60	3 525,22	3 736,73	R 299,51	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Week	R 14 775.43	16 252.97	17 390.68	18 434.12	R 1 477.54	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Month	R 5 550,27	6 138,30	6 567,98	6 962.06	R 558,03	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Rib Show	R 4 137,12	4 550,83	4 869,39	5 161,55	R 413,71	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	130.02	139.12	147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Nolte- Bigger Hall	Per Day	R 539,34	648,27	693,65	735,27	R 58,93	5.3% p.a
Nolte- Bigger Hall	Per Week	R 17 730,62	19 503,67	20 868,92	22 120,95	R 1 773,05	5.3% p.a
Nolte- Bigger Hall	Per Month	R 47 281,38	52 009,62	55 650,19	58 989,20	R 4 728,14	5.3% p.a
Nolte- Bigger Hall	Per Rib Show	R 6 501,19	7 151,31	7 651,90	8 111,01	R 650,12	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	130.02	139.12	147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Nolte Small Hall	Per Day	R 2 190,30	2 409,33	2 577,98	2 732,66	R 219,03	5.3% p.a
Nolte Small Hall	Per Week	R 14 184,42	15 602,86	16 695,06	17 696,77	R 1 418,44	5.3% p.a
Nolte Small Hall	Per Month	R 2 955,09	3 250,60	3 478,14	3 686,83	R 295,51	5.3% p.a

PROPOSED NEW TARIFFS FOR HIRING OF SHOW HALLS

Nolte Small Hall	Per Rib Show	R 2 953,09	3 250,60	3 478,14	3 686,83	R 295,51	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118,20	130,02	139,12	147,47	R 11,82	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Day	R 2 800,35	3 080,99	3 303,07	3 501,26	R. 280,84	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Week	R 20 685,61	22 754,17	24 346,66	25 807,78	R. 2068,56	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Month	R 59 101,73	65 011,90	69 562,74	73 736,50	R 5910,17	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Rib Show	R 8 274,24	9 101,66	9 738,78	10 323,11	R 827,42	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118,20	130,02	139,12	147,47	R 11,82	5.3% p.a
Flip Joubert	Per Day	R 2 955,09	3 250,60	3 478,14	3 686,83	R 295,51	5.3% p.a
Flip Joubert	Per Week	R 20 685,61	22 754,17	24 346,66	25 807,78	R 2068,56	5.3% p.a
Flip Joubert	Per Month	R 59 101,73	65 011,90	69 562,74	73 736,50	R 5910,17	5.3% p.a
Flip Joubert	Per Rib Show	R 8 274,24	9 101,66	9 738,78	10 323,11	R 827,42	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118,20	130,02	139,12	147,47	R 11,82	5.3% p.a
Koble van Zyl	Per Day	R 29 550,87	32 505,96	34 781,37	36 868,26	R 2953,09	5.3% p.a
Koble van Zyl	Per Week	R 20 685,61	22 754,17	24 346,66	25 807,78	R 2068,56	5.3% p.a
Koble van Zyl	Per Month	R 59 101,73	65 011,90	69 562,74	73 736,50	R 5910,17	5.3% p.a
Koble van Zyl	Per Rib Show	R 8 274,00	9 101,40	9 738,50	10 322,81	R 827,40	5.3% p.a

PARKS

Description				
Debushing Private Stand	R20 per square meter	R30 per square meter	R40 per square meter	R50 per square meter

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

BUILDING CONTROL

DETERMINATION OF CHARGES PAYABLE TO THE LOCAL AUTHORITY WITH REGARDS TO THE EXAMINATION OF APPROVAL OF BUILDING PLANS AND RELATED MATTERS					
DWELLING HOUSES					
For new residential buildings, additions, new proposals/re-erection/amended plans(only residential buildings)	R 8.50 per m² (minimum R220.00 levy)	R 8.10 per m² (minimum R450.00 levy)	R 8.70 per m² (minimum R500.00 levy)	R 7.30 per m² (minimum R450.00 levy)	
For alterations, amended plans (without additional area)	R 8.50 per m² (minimum R220.00 levy)	R 8.10 per m² (minimum R440.00 levy)	R 8.70 per m² (minimum R500.00 levy)	R 7.30 per m² (minimum R450.00 levy)	
OTHER BUILDINGS					
For new other buildings, additions, new proposals/re-erection/amended plans(other buildings)	R 8.50 per m² (minimum R220.00 levy)	R 8.10 per m² (minimum R700.00 levy)	R 8.10 per m² (minimum R840.00 levy)	R 7.40 per m² (minimum R800.00 levy)	
For alterations, amended plans (without additional area)	R 8.50 per m² (minimum R220.00 levy)	R 8.10 per m² (minimum R700.00 levy)	R 8.10 per m² (minimum R840.00 levy)	R 7.40 per m² (minimum R870.00 levy)	
For removal of a plan after approval has lapsed	R220.00 per application	R450.00 per application	R500.00 per application	R450.00 per application	
For tenant/ shop layouts	R310.00 per application	R700.00 per application	R840.00 per application	R800.00 per application	
Minor building work	R220.00 per application	R450.00 per application	R500.00per application	R450.00 per application	
Re-roofing (amended plan)	R220.00 per application	R450.00 per application	R500.00 per application	R450.00 per application	
Geyser/ pump installations	R310.00 per application	R700.00 per application	R840.00 per application	R800.00 per application	
Low cost housing -by government/ council	No fee (submit proof)	No fee (submit proof)	No fee (submit proof)	No fee (submit proof)	
Projects by state department on property owned by state	R1,70 per m² minimum or motivation for exemption DG of State Department	R1.80 per m² minimum or motivation for exemption DG of State Department	R2.00 per m² minimum or motivation for exemption DG of State Department	R2.20 per m² minimum or motivation for exemption DG of State Department	
For section 7(6) application	R1,70 per m² minimum R220.00 levy	R3.80 per m² minimum R700.00 levy	R1.00 per m² minimum R840.00 levy	R4.40 per m² minimum R920.00 levy	
	R240.00 per application	R450.00 per application	R500.00 per application	R450.00 per application	
Antenna structure	R280.00 per application	R450.00 per application	R500.00 per application	R450.00 per application	
For examination of preliminary sketch plans	R1,70 per m² minimum R220.00 levy	R0.80 per m² minimum R450.00 levy	R1.00 per m² minimum R500.00 levy	R1.40 per m² minimum R450.00 levy	
Inspection fee from 2nd re-inspection	R220.00 per application	R150.00 per application	R500.00 per application	R450.00 per application	

LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

HIRING OF SHOW HALLS

		2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	
HALLS							
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Day	R 2 953.09	R 3 250.60	R 3 478.14	R 3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Week	R 20 685.61	R 22 754.17	R 24 346.96	R 25 807.78	R 2 068.56	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Month	R 59 101.73	R 65 011.90	R 69 562.74	R 73 736.50	R 5 910.17	5.3% p.a
Ans van Zyl Hall	Per Rib Show	R 8 274.24	R 9 101.66	R 9 738.78	R 10 323.11	R 827.42	5.3% p.a
Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
	Per Day	R 2 953.09	R 3 250.60	R 3 478.14	R 3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Week	R 14 775.43	R 16 252.97	R 17 390.68	R 18 434.12	R 1 477.54	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Month	R 5 550.80	R 6 138.50	R 6 568.72	R 6 962.84	R 558.09	5.3% p.a
Johann Vorster	Per Rib Show	R 5 068.62	R 5 497.28	R 5 882.09	R 7 359.22	R 590.65	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Day	R 2 995.09	R 3 294.60	R 3 525.22	R 3 736.73	R 299.51	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Week	R 14 775.43	R 16 252.97	R 17 390.68	R 18 434.12	R 1 477.54	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Month	R 5 550.27	R 6 138.50	R 6 567.98	R 6 962.06	R 558.09	5.3% p.a
Opperman	Per Rib Show	R 4 137.12	R 4 550.83	R 4 869.39	R 5 161.55	R 413.71	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Holte- Bigger Hall	Per Day	R 589.34	R 648.27	R 693.65	R 735.27	R 58.93	5.3% p.a
Holte- Bigger Hall	Per Week	R 17 730.52	R 19 503.57	R 20 868.82	R 22 120.95	R 1 773.05	5.3% p.a
Holte- Bigger Hall	Per Month	R 47 281.38	R 52 009.52	R 55 650.18	R 58 989.20	R 4 728.14	5.3% p.a
Holte- Bigger Hall	Per Rib Show	R 5 501.19	R 7 151.31	R 7 651.90	R 8 111.01	R 650.12	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Holte Small Hall	Per Day	R 2 190.30	R 2 409.33	R 2 577.98	R 2 732.66	R 219.03	5.3% p.a
Holte Small Hall	Per Week	R 14 184.42	R 15 602.86	R 16 695.06	R 17 696.77	R 1 418.44	5.3% p.a
Holte Small Hall	Per Month	R 2 955.09	R 3 250.60	R 3 478.14	R 3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Holte Small Hall	Per Rib Show	R 2 955.09	R 3 250.60	R 3 478.14	R 3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Day	R 2 868.35	R 3 068.99	R 3 303.07	R 3 501.26	R 280.84	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Week	R 20 685.61	R 22 754.17	R 24 346.96	R 25 807.78	R 2 068.56	5.3% p.a
KJH Behrens	Per Month	R 59 101.73	R 65 011.90	R 69 562.74	R 73 736.50	R 5 910.17	5.3% p.a
KJH	Per Rib Show	R 8 274.24	R 9 101.66	R 9 738.78	R 10 323.11	R 827.42	5.3% p.a
Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Ffp Joubert	Per Day	R 2 955.09	R 3 250.60	R 3 478.14	R 3 686.83	R 295.51	5.3% p.a
Ffp Joubert	Per Week	R 20 685.61	R 22 754.17	R 24 346.96	R 25 807.78	R 2 068.56	5.3% p.a
Ffp Joubert	Per Month	R 59 101.73	R 65 011.90	R 69 562.74	R 73 736.50	R 5 910.17	5.3% p.a
Ffp Joubert	Per Rib Show	R 8 274.24	R 9 101.66	R 9 738.78	R 10 323.11	R 827.42	5.3% p.a
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 130.02	R 139.12	R 147.47	R 11.82	5.3% p.a
Kobie van Zyl	Per Day	R 29 550.87	R 32 505.98	R 34 781.37	R 36 868.26	R 2 955.09	5.3% p.a
Kobie van Zyl	Per Week	R 20 685.61	R 22 754.17	R 24 346.96	R 25 807.78	R 2 068.56	5.3% p.a
Kobie van Zyl	Per Month	R 59 101.73	R 65 011.90	R 69 562.74	R 73 736.50	R 5 910.17	5.3% p.a
Kobie van Zyl	Per Rib Show	R 8 274.00	R 9 101.40	R 9 738.50	R 10 322.81	R 827.40	5.3% p.a

HIRING OF THE VARIOUS SPACES OF THE FLEA MARKET

PROPOSED TARIFFS FOR TRADING SPACE AT THE FLEA MARKET (INDIVIDUAL/SHARED SPACES)

VISITOR'S INFORMATION CENTRE										
3 x 6m Stalls	R 150.00	R 1 000.00	NEW	R-	R-	R 500.00	NEW	R 500.00	R 535.00	R 567.10
3 x 6m Stall (Shared)	R 150.00	R 1 000.00	NEW	R-	R-	R 500.00	NEW	R 500.00	R 535.00	R 567.10
3 x 6m Stall	R 150.00	R 750.00	NEW	R-	R-	R 400.00	NEW	R 400.00	R 428.00	R 453.68
3 x 6m Stall (Shared)	R 150.00	R 750.00	NEW	R-	R-	R 400.00	NEW	R 400.00	R 428.00	R 453.68
3 x 3m Stall	R 150.00	R 500.00	NEW	R-	R-	R 350.00	NEW	R 350.00	R 374.50	R 396.97

HIRING OF THE VISITORS & INFORMATION CENTRE AND THE TIDC FACILITIES

		2018/19	2019	20	2021	2022	2023
VISITORS & INFORMATION CENTRE							
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 150.00	R 128.92	10.0%	R 141.81	R 151.74	R 160.64
VIC Boardroom	Once Off	R 150.00	R 311.19	10.0%	R 342.31	R 366.27	R 388.75
VIC Kitchen	Once Off	R 1 500.00	R 3 111.91	10.0%	R 3 423.10	R 3 662.72	R 3 887.48
VIC Entery Area	Once Off	R 375.00	R 622.83	10.0%	R 685.11	R 733.07	R 777.00
TOURISM INFORMATION DEVELOPMENT CENTRE							
Administrative Fee (Once Off)		R 150.00	R 122.43	10.0%	R 134.67	R 144.10	R 152.75
TIDC Arena		R 150.00	R 295.53	10.0%	R 325.08	R 347.84	R 368.71
TIDC Cafe'teria		R 150.00	R 428.55	10.0%	R 468.10	R 500.87	R 530.92
TIDC Office/s		R 150.00	R 854.89	10.0%	R 390.38	R 417.70	R 442.77
TIDC Lapa		R 300.00	R 720.69	10.0%	R 792.78	R 848.28	R 899.18
TIDC Boardroom		R 75.00	R 118.19	10.0%	R 130.01	R 139.11	R 147.46
TIDC Kitchen		R 1 500.00	R 1 774.19	10.0%	R 1 951.60	R 2 088.22	R 2 213.51
Outside Open Area		R 1 500.00	R 2 364.09	10.0%	R 2 600.49	R 2 782.53	R 2 949.48
TIDC Office (each)		R 150.00	R 354.89	10.0%	R 390.38	R 417.70	R 442.77

LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT | HIRING OF SHOW HALLS

HIRING OF THE VARIOUS OFFICES OF THE BMHE SUPPORT & DEVELOPMENT CENTRE

		2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	
OFFICE 1							
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 141.84	R 151.77	R 160.87	R 23.64	20% p.a
Usage	Per Day	R 413.71	R 496.45	R 531.20	R 563.08	R 82.74	20% p.a
Usage	5 Days Per Week	R 1 773.05	R 2 127.66	R 2 276.60	R 2 413.19	R 354.61	20% p.a
Usage	7 Days Per Week	R 2 068.56	R 2 482.27	R 2 656.03	R 2 815.39	R 413.71	20% p.a
Usage	Per Month	R 8 865.23	R 10 638.31	R 11 382.09	R 12 065.97	R 1 773.05	20% p.a
Usage	Per Annum	R 106 383.12	R 127 659.74	R 136 595.93	R 144 791.68	R 21 276.62	20% p.a
OFFICE 2							
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 141.84	R 151.77	R 160.87	R 23.64	20% p.a
Usage	Per Day	R 413.71	R 496.45	R 531.20	R 563.08	R 82.74	20% p.a
Usage	5 Days Per Week	R 1 773.05	R 2 127.66	R 2 276.60	R 2 413.19	R 354.61	20% p.a
Usage	7 Days Per Week	R 2 068.56	R 2 482.27	R 2 656.03	R 2 815.39	R 413.71	20% p.a
Usage	Per Month	R 8 865.23	R 10 638.31	R 11 382.09	R 12 065.97	R 1 773.05	20% p.a
Usage	Per Annum	R 106 383.12	R 127 659.74	R 136 595.93	R 144 791.68	R 21 276.62	20% p.a
OFFICE 3							
Administrative Fee	Once Off	R 118.20	R 141.84	R 151.77	R 160.87	R 23.64	20% p.a
Usage	Per Day	R 413.71	R 496.45	R 531.20	R 563.08	R 82.74	20% p.a
Usage	5 Days Per Week	R 1 773.05	R 2 127.66	R 2 276.60	R 2 413.19	R 354.61	20% p.a
Usage	7 Days Per Week	R 2 068.56	R 2 482.27	R 2 656.03	R 2 815.39	R 413.71	20% p.a
Usage	Per Month	R 8 865.23	R 10 638.31	R 11 382.09	R 12 065.97	R 1 773.05	20% p.a
Usage	Per Annum	R 106 383.12	R 127 659.74	R 136 595.93	R 144 791.68	R 21 276.62	20% p.a

TARIFFS FOR TRADING STALLS (INDIVIDUAL/SHARED)

6 x 6m Stalls	R 150.00	R 1 000.00	Existing	R 447.90	R 447.90	R 44.79	10.0%	R 492.69	R 677.19	R 658.61
6 x 6m Stall (Shared)	R 150.00	R 1 000.00	Existing	R 447.90	R 447.90	R 44.79	10.0%	R 492.69	R 677.19	R 658.61
3x 6m Stall	R 150.00	R 750.00	Existing	R 335.49	R 335.49	R 33.55	10.0%	R 369.04	R 394.87	R 418.56
3x 6m Stall (Shared)	R 150.00	R 750.00	Existing	R 335.49	R 335.49	R 33.55	10.0%	R 369.04	R 394.87	R 418.56
3 x 3m Stall	R 150.00	R 500.00	Existing	R 222.39	R 222.39	R 22.24	10.0%	R 244.63	R 261.76	R 277.46
2 x 3m Open Space	R 105.20	R 105.30	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 2.78	10.0%	R 30.58	R 32.72	R 34.68
Demarcated Open Space	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 2.78	10.0%	R 30.58	R 32.72	R 34.68
Parking/Loading Zone/Space	R 105.20	R 842.40	Existing	R 444.79	R 444.79	R 44.48	10.0%	R 489.27	R 623.62	R 654.93
3 x 4.1m Stalls (Shared)	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 2.78	10.0%	R 30.58	R 32.72	R 34.68
BANTA Taxi Abla	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 2.78	10.0%	R 30.58	R 32.72	R 34.68
3 x 3m Stall	R 105.20	R 421.20	Existing	R 222.39	R 222.39	R 22.24	10.0%	R 244.63	R 261.76	R 277.46
3 x 3m Stall (Shared)	R 105.20	R 421.20	Existing	R 222.39	R 222.39	R 22.24	10.0%	R 244.63	R 261.76	R 277.46
Taxi Abla	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 2.78	10.0%	R 30.58	R 32.72	R 34.68
Rustenburg & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Thabane & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R-
Boitekong & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Paardekraal & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Marikana & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Lethabong & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Marikana & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Phatsima & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Boshoek	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Monakato & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30
Freedom Park & Extensions	R 105.20	R 62.65	Existing	R 27.80	R 27.80	R 13.90	50.0%	R 41.70	R 44.62	R 47.30

Application fee + Administration fee	NEW	1 585.00	1 802.93	1 911.13
Annual display fee per sign- private property	NEW	8 414.00	9 002.98	9 543.16
Annual display fee – council property	NEW	15 878.00	16 773.32	17 779.72
CLASS 2: Signs on buildings or structures				
Projecting signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	505.00	540.35	572.77
Encroachment fee(council land) per square meter for each sign type	NEW	2 028.00	2 169.96	2 300.16
Building attachment (roof signs, signs and murals on walls and roofs, a sign in the fabric of a building and advertisements on towers, bridges and pylons)	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	422.00	451.54	478.63
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 011.00	1 081.77	1 146.68
Wall signs/fascia signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	505.00	540.35	572.77
Ground sign (excluding billboards)	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW			
Encroachment fee(council land) per square meter for each sign type	NEW	3 135.00	3 354.45	3 555.72
Annual display fee	NEW	1 568.00	1 677.76	1 778.43
CLASS 3: Signs on Premises and miscellaneous signs				
Boundary walls and entrance gates	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 037.00	1 109.59	1 176.17
Residential and community-oriented buildings	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 037.00	1 109.59	1 176.17
On–premises Business signs in urban Areas	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	3 754.00	4 016.78	4 257.79
Miscellaneous signs for urban residential oriented land use and community services	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 568.00	1 677.76	1 778.43
Signs for agricultural and related land use in rural and natural Areas	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 011.00	1 081.77	1 146.68
CLASS 4: Signs for Pedestrian Environments and Streetscaping				
Street furniture signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee	NEW	1 181.00	1 263.67	1 339.49
Street light/street pole sign, etc.	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee	NEW	1 181.00	1 263.67	1 339.49
Headline posters	NEW			
Application fee + Administration fee	NEW	2 525.00	2 701.75	2 863.86
Annual display fee	NEW	5 049.00	5 402.43	5 726.58
CLASS 5: Signs for Tourist and Travelers				
Service facility signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 037.00	1 109.59	1 176.17
Road traffic project signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 037.00	1 109.59	1 176.17
Tourism information signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 037.00	1 109.59	1 176.17
Gateway signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	1 037.00	1 109.59	1 176.17
CLASS 6: Mobile signs				
Advertising vehicles	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	590.00	631.30	669.18
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	5 228.00	5 590.76	5 926.20
CLASS 7: Temporary Advertising				
In respect of general advertisements of a commercial nature (Events) i.e. construction site advertisements, signs for sporting events, festival & exhibitions ,temporary window signs etc.	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	1 165.00	1 246.55	1 321.34
Up to 100 posters	NEW	3 030.00	3 242.10	3 436.63
Each poster thereafter, an additional	NEW	31.00	33.17	35.16
Refundable deposits	NEW	605.00	861.35	913.03
Stickers for each poster	NEW	18.00	19.26	20.42
In respect of general advertisements for awareness campaigns with commercial content logos	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	1 198.50	1 279.72	1 356.50
Up to 100 posters, or part thereof	NEW	2 624.00	2 700.68	2 862.72
Each poster thereafter, an additional	NEW	26.00	27.82	29.49
Refundable deposits	NEW	838.00	894.52	948.19
Stickers for each poster	NEW	13.00	13.91	14.74

In respect of general advertisements for non-profit organisations (subject to submission of a NPO certificate from relevant authority- e.g. government)	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	862.00	922.34	977.68
Up to 100 posters, or part thereof	NEW	1 209.00	1 293.63	1 371.25
Each poster thereafter, an additional	NEW	13.00	13.91	14.74
Refundable deposits	NEW	602.00	837.14	569.37
Stickers for each poster	NEW	10.00	10.70	11.34
In respect of election advertisements, per party/per candidate	NEW			
Posters (unlimited number)	NEW	2 525.00	2 701.75	2 863.86
Refundable deposit	NEW	5 049.00	5 402.43	5 726.58
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Estate agents boards	NEW			
Administration fee(per agency)	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee	NEW	838.00	894.52	948.19
Advertising deposit (per agent)	NEW	4 073.00	4 360.25	4 621.87
Banners	NEW			
Per banner	NEW	577.00	670.89	711.14
Refundable deposit	NEW	602.00	837.14	569.37
Sticker for each banner	NEW	18.00	19.26	20.42
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Removable posters, should council be required to remove any poster (per poster)	NEW	101.00	108.07	114.55
CLASS 8: other signs				
Security signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	575.00	615.25	652.17
Public service and other information signs	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	500.00	535.00	567.10
Aerial advertisements	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	505.00	540.35	572.77
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	2 027.00	2 169.69	2 299.02
Refundable Deposit	NEW	445.00	476.15	504.72
Electric and Illuminated signs	NEW			
Application fee + administration fee	NEW	505.00	540.35	572.77
A rental rate per metre	NEW	5 225.00	5 590.75	5 926.20
Portable boards	NEW			
Administration fee	NEW	360.00	385.20	408.31
Annual display fee per sign	NEW	4 073.00	4 360.25	4 621.87
Penalties	NEW			
For the erection of any sign without approval, per week	NEW	1 585.00	1 802.95	1 911.13
For the erection of any billboards without approval, per week	NEW	5 049.00	5 402.43	5 726.58
For the erection of any posters without approval, per week	NEW	1 558.00	1 774.06	1 880.50

LICENSING(BUSINESSES ACT 71 OF 1991)
ANNEXURE D: PROPOSED TARIFFS

SALE & SUPPLY OF PERISHABLE FOODSTUFFS	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Restaurants	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Cafes	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Coffee Houses	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Fast Food Outlets	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Kiosks	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3
Supermarkets/ Hypermarkets	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
PROVISION OF HEALTH AND OTHER CARE FACILITIES	R 111						
Private Hospitals	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Private Clinics	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Maternity & Baby Care Clinics	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Creches/ Kindergartens	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Pharmacies	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Eye care providers	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Laboratories	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
Massage palours/Saloons	R 111		R 117	R 123	R 130	R 137	5,3%
ENTERTAINMENT AND LEISURE FACILITIES	R 111						
Bars & Pubs	R 111		R 175	R 184	R 194	R 205	5,3%
Liquor Outlets	R 111		R 175	R 184	R 194	R 205	5,3%
Night clubs/ Dance halls	R 111		R 175	R 184	R 194	R 205	5,3%
Cinema/ Drive-in	R 111		R 175	R 184	R 194	R 205	5,3%
Theatres	R 111		R 175	R 184	R 194	R 205	5,3%
OTHER RETAIL/ SERVICE OUTLETS	R 111						
Clothing/ Shoe retailers	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Motor vehicle services	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Electronics	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Building Materials	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%
Factories	R 111		R 170	R 185	R 195	R 205	5,3%

EMERGENCY AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

A. FEES FOR HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES AND FIRE PROTECTION SERVICES

Tariffs for rendering of fire safety services: plans, inspections, events, standby, fire water tests, rational designs, fireworks applications and hazardous substances

Inspection of bulk depots and issuing of registration certificates	R 2 622,57	10%	R 2 775	R 3 052,31	R 3 357,54
Inspection of spray booth and issuing of spray permit as well as inspection of storage, handling and use of	R 781,33	10%	859,46	945,40	1 039,94
Inspection of a dangerous goods vehicle and issuing of transport permit	R 781,33	10%	859,46	945,40	1 039,94
Issuing of certificate of fitness for a public building	R 781,33	10%	859,46	945,40	1 039,94
Release of emergency incident information as contemplated in Section 2 of the Fire Brigade Service By-Laws	R 111,67	10%	122,78	135,06	148,56
Temporary registration of hazardous substances installation for special events	R 55,81	10%	61,39	67,53	74,28
Plan approval for fire Protection Plans inclusive of a fire installation drawing or smoke ventilation plan (per m2 or	R 2,23	10%	2,46	2,70	2,97
Plan approval for fire Protection Plans inclusive of a fire installation drawing or smoke ventilation plan(with a	R 200,91	10%	221,00	243,10	267,41
Plan approval for fire Protection Plans inclusive of a fire installation drawing or smoke ventilation plan(per building	R 24 555,86	10%	27 011,56	29 712,71	32 683,98
Plan approval for tenant layouts / amendments / deviations (per floor / per tenant)	R 357,18	10%	392,90	432,18	475,40
Plan approval for site development including amendments (SDP)(per submission)	R 357,18	10%	392,90	432,18	475,40
Plan approval for hazardous substances including amendments / deviations (per submission)	R 357,18	10%	392,90	432,18	475,40
Rational design for a thatched roof or input as a residential stand/erf(per submission)	R 435,31	10%	478,84	526,73	579,40
Plans for temporary structures at events that includes the rational design thereof	R 439,31	10%	478,84	526,73	579,40
Cost per Officer per hour or part thereof at events for standby and inspections	R 270,05	10%	308,05	337,64	371,41
Rational design	R 892,94	10%	982,24	1 080,46	1 188,51
Fireworks display / discharge application	R 390,66	10%	429,73	472,70	519,97
General Fire Safety compliance letter / inspection request / fire water reticulation test result out of schedule	R 279,05	10%	306,95	337,64	371,41
Fire water reticulation tests at street hydrants per hydrant	R 279,05	10%	306,95	337,64	371,41
Reclamation of lapsed annual hazardous substance certificate	R 350,66	10%	429,73	472,70	519,97

B. RENTAL PAYABLE FOR MAKING SERVICE EQUIPMENT AVAILABLE

			Approved 2018/19	Proposed % increase 2019/20	Proposed 2019/20	Proposed 2020/21	Proposed 2021/22
Rescue Pumper	R 250,00	500	837,133	10%	920,85	1 012,93	1 114,23
Aerial Apparatus	R 450,00	900	1508,843	10%	1 657,53	1 823,28	2 005,61
Specialist Vehicle (Hazmat vehicle)	R 450,00	950	1562,652	10%	1 718,92	1 890,81	2 079,89
Tanker	R 300,00	650	1060,371	10%	1 166,41	1 283,05	1 411,35
Unit	R 150,00	250	446,472	10%	491,12	540,23	594,25
Incident Command vehicle / response vehicle	R 495,00	500	1445,4531	10%	1 590,00	1 749,00	1 923,90
Diving Unit	R 450,00	950	1562,652	10%	1 718,92	1 890,81	2 079,89
Utilisation of Specialised Equipment	R 250,00	550	1004,562	10%	1 105,02	1 215,52	1 337,07
Kilometres (Km) Travelled		R2.00/Km	2,23238	10%	2,46	2,70	2,97
Personnel		R70.00/h per Member	R 78	10%	85,80	94,38	103,82
Water used		R7.50/KL + Vat	R 8	10%	8,80	9,68	10,65

NOTE:

1 The time is calculated from arrival to departure
2 Utilisation cost includes cost of personnel and equipment
3 Call out tariff will be rendered for all incidents where a fire vehicle arrived on scene,
a. Any form of scene safety including cones and regulating of traffic
b. Safety of the vehicle / s were ensured, which include the cutting of the battery cables
c. Fires: where a fire was extinguished before arrival but an investigation was done to ensure the house / building is safe
4. Utilisation Tariff will be rendered to the vehicle where work was done with the following equipment
• Hydraulic rescue set

TARIFF DESCRIPTION	*Approved 2018/19*	*Proposed % increase 2019/20*	*Proposed 2019/20*	*Proposed 2020/2021*	*Proposed 2021/2022*

• Positive pressure ventilator
• Rotary Disc cutter
• Chain saw
• Reciprocating saw
• Motorised break-in equipment

5. Fires: Any equipment used to extinguish the fire
• Portable pumps
Flooding: All houses involved in a flood

6. Utilisation of Specialised Equipment tariff apply for Specialist rescue operations (High Angel, Swift Water, Urban Search and Rescue, Mountain Rescue, Diving)

a. Delivery of expert services in specialised fires

	Approved 2018/19	*Proposed % increase 2019/20*	*Proposed 2019/20*	*Proposed 2020/2021*	*Proposed 2021/2022*
A maximum restriction of R8 000.00 (VAT included)	R 6 697	10%	7 366,70	8 103,47	8 913,81

Fees are also applicable to all Council, Provincial and National Departments except the Office of the Mayor, Office of the Premier and office of the President.
The fees do not apply to grass, veld and rubbish fires on vacant Erf / Erven within the Rustenburg Local Municipality area.
Persons registered on the Council's Indigent Register will be exempted from paying costs for fire and rescue services.
Members of registered Fire Protection Associations established in terms of the National Veld and Forest Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) will be exempted from paying any fees for fire services.
Informal residences i.e. a residence that does not receive any municipal services i.r.o electricity, water, waste removal and waterborne sewerage will be exempted from paying fees for fire
Tariffs for making available fire and rescue equipment and rendering a standby service and events
1. For all standby services at events a full tariff for all the vehicles on standby, will be issued for the total of hours on standby.
2. All special services will receive full accounts
The Municipality may withdraw such equipment at
Note:
1. The time is calculated from arrival to departure
2. Utilisation cost includes cost of personnel and equipment
3. A single tariff per vehicle per hour is charged.
Utilisation of material
The tariff for material used is cost plus a surcharge of 15%. Provided that in respect of material for which the Municipality has determined a tariff, that tariff shall apply in accordance with
Renting out of equipment outside the jurisdiction area of the Municipality
The tariffs as set out in this Annexure plus a surcharge of 50%.

A maximum restriction of R8 000.00 (VAT included)

C. ADJUSTMENT IN FEES PAYABLE TO THIS SERVICE AS CONTEMPLATED IN CLAUSES A AND B OF THIS ANNEXURE

The Service must ensure that all fees referred to in clauses A and B of this Annexure are adjusted to keep trend with Inflation according to the Consumer Price Index (CPI).

GENERAL DIRECTIVES FOR THE PAYMENT OF THE ABOVE FEES

1. All certificates of registration, certificates of fitness and/or spraying permits will be valid for twelve (12) calendar months. A written application for the renewal of the certificate or permit must
2. When application is made for registration, the appropriate application form, correctly completed in full, must be accompanied by the prescribed fees,
3. All the appropriate application forms are available from the Service and must be completed in full and, where applicable, be duly signed.
4. If, for whatever reason, the Service rejects an application for any certificate of registration, certificate of fitness or any permit, the applicant must, within 14 days (excluding weekends and
5. (a) The tariff for premises that are liable to registration in respect of paragraph 1(2) or (3), or a combination of them, will be a single fee of R700,00, irrespective of the combination of items:
Provided that such combination applies to one premises and is under the same control.

TARIFF DESCRIPTION	*Approved 2018/19*	*Proposed % increase 2019/20*	*Proposed 2019/20*	*Proposed 2020/2021*	*Proposed 2021/2022*

(b) If there are different divisions and/or affiliates within a business and/or company situated on the same premises but each division and/or affiliate is managed separately, each division
6. All monies are payable in advance,
8. All relevant application forms are available at the Emergency Services Department (Fire Brigade Services) and must be completed in full and where applicable, signed properly.
7. If certificates and/or spray/transport permits are refused, the applicant must take remedial steps within 14 days in order for the re-inspection to be free of charge and to ensure the issuing of
Restoration of lapsed certificate (each year certificate has not been renewed) R700, 00 (including VAT) plus current year registration fee

Fire Fighter I	R 7 205	10 Weeks	R 7 205	10%	7 925,93	8 718,52	9 590,37
Fire Fighter I Challenge	R 2 112		R 2 112	10%	2 323,12	2 555,43	2 810,97
Haz-Mat Awareness	R 1 615	2 Weeks	R 1 615	10%	1 776,50	1 954,15	2 149,57
Fire Fighter II	R 4 100	4 Weeks	R 4 100	10%	4 509,55	4 960,51	5 456,59
Fire Fighter II Challenge	R 2 112		R 2 112	10%	2 323,12	2 555,43	2 810,97
Haz-Mat Operational	R 2 857	2 Weeks	R 2 857	10%	3 143,04	3 457,34	3 803,08
Fire Services Instructor	R 4 100	2 Weeks	R 4 100	10%	4 509,55	4 960,51	5 456,59
Vehicle Rescue	R 1 615	2 Weeks	R 1 615	10%	1 776,50	1 954,15	2 149,57
Basic Fire Fighting And Safety	R 639	1 Day	R 639	10%	702,78	773,07	850,38
Industrial Fire Fighting	R 1 292	5 Days	R 1 292	10%	1 421,20	1 563,32	1 719,65
SCBA	R 783	3 Days	R 783	10%	861,67	947,73	1 042,50
Pump Operator	R 6 715	5 Days	R 6 715	10%	7 386,50	8 125,15	8 937,66
All Appliances (Hydraulic Platform, Turntable Ladder, Industrial Foam Pumper)	R 6 622	5 Days	R 6 622	10%	7 173,68	7 891,05	8 680,15
Rental of Porta Cabin Sleeping Rooms per person per day sharing	65,00 \ Per Room \ Sharing	1 Day	65,00 \ Per Room \ Sharing	10%	71,50 \ Per Room \ Sharing	78,65 \ Per Room \ Sharing	86,50 \ Per Room \ Sharing
Rental of Training Props per Hour	500 \ hr	Per Hour	500 \ hr	10%	550 \ hr	615 \ hr	680 \ hr
Rental of Training Lecture-room per day	0	Per Day	R-	10%	R 0	R 0	R 0

E. Disaster Management

Tariffs for rendering of Evacuation plans and emergency evacuation drills

		With effect from 1 July 2019 until 30 June 2022
Description of service		Total
Emergency evacuation plans		Free of charge
Emergency assistance rendered at emergency evacuation drills	per official per hour or part thereof	Free of charge
Plan development, approval & site inspection for events organised by private/government organisations		Free of charge
Venue Operations Centre for events organised by private/government organisations	per official per hour or part thereof	Free of charge
Plan development, approval & site inspection for events organised by RLM or RLM partnering with private sector		Free of charge
Venue Operations Centre for events organised by RLM or RLM partnering with private sector	per official per hour or part thereof	Free of charge

AGENDA: SPECIAL COUNCIL: 24 MAY 2019

MARATHONS / FUN RUN / FUN WALK & MARCHES TARIFFS

10 KM FUN RUN	APPLICABLE TO ALL AREA	R 2 460	10%	2 706,00	2 976,61	3 213,95
20 KM FUN RUN	APPLICABLE TO ALL AREA	R 3 280	10%	3 607,65	3 968,43	4 285,87
30 KM FUN RUN	APPLICABLE TO ALL AREA	R 4 920	10%	5 411,50	5 952,64	6 547,91
50 KM FUN RUN	APPLICABLE TO ALL AREA	R 8 199	10%	9 018,15	9 921,07	10 813,18
RUSTENBURG TAXI RANK	MPHENI HOUSE	R 373	10%	409,96	450,96	486,05
RUSTENBURG TAXI RANK	DEPT OF LABOUR	R 311	10%	342,29	376,51	416,17
RUSTENBURG TAXI RANK	RUSTENBURG BAPS	R 373	10%	409,96	450,96	486,05
RUSTENBURG TAXI RANK	JOB SHIMANKANE TABANE HOSPITAL	R 435	10%	478,94	526,83	570,92
RUSTENBURG TAXI RANK	DEPT. OF EDUCATION	R 187	10%	205,83	226,19	248,81
RUSTENBURG TAXI RANK	BARS	R 184	10%	180,90	198,99	218,89
SUN RISE	SUN RISE	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
MARIKANA	WONDERKOP	R 248	10%	273,31	300,64	330,70
MARIKANA	MADITLHOKWA	R 311	10%	342,29	376,51	414,17
PHOTSANENG	PHOTSANENG	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
PHOTSANENG	TSHUKUDU HIGH SCHOOL	R 248	10%	273,31	300,64	330,70
THEKWANE	THEKWANE	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
THEKWANE	TSHUKUDU HIGH SCHOOL	R 248	10%	273,31	300,64	330,70
MFIDIKWE	MFIDIKWE	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
MFIDIKWE	TSHUKUDU HIGH SCHOOL	R 248	10%	273,31	300,64	330,70
KANANA	KANANA	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
SERUTUBE	SERUTUBE	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MAFIKA	MAFIKA	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
FREEDOM PARK	WILDEBEES STADIUM	R 187	10%	205,83	226,19	248,81
BOITEKONG	BOITEKONG	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
PHOKENG	PHOKENG	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
PHOKENG STADIUM	BAFOKENG CIVIC CENTRE	R 149	10%	163,98	180,38	198,42
PHOKENG STADIUM	LEGATO	R 149	10%	163,98	180,38	198,42
PHOKENG STADIUM	PHOKENG BAPS	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
PHOKENG STADIUM	LEBONE CONVENTIONAL HIGH SCHOOL	R 149	10%	163,98	180,38	198,42
LUKA	LUKA	R 124	10%	136,55	150,32	165,35
LUKA	BAFALA PLATINUM MINES	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
CHANENG	CHANENG	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
		R-	10%	-	-	-
		R-	10%	-	-	-
PHATSIMA	PHATSIMA	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MAILE	MAILE	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MONAKATO	MONAKATO BAPS	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MONAKATO	MUNICIPAL OFFICES	R 186	10%	204,33	224,76	247,24
MONAKATO	MONAKATO CLINIC	R 186	10%	204,33	224,76	247,24
TLASENG	TLASENG	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
TSITSING	TSITSING	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MOGAJANE	MOGAJANE	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
LEBUNG	LEBUNG	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,
LETHABONG	LETHABONG	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
LETHABONG	LETHABONG BAPS	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
LETHABONG	LETHABONG MUNICIPAL OFFICES	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
LETHABONG	LETHABONG CLINIC	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MOSENTHAL	MOSENTHAL	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
RANKELENYANE	RANKELENYANE	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MABITSE	MABITSE	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
TLAPA	TLAPA	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MAGENG	MAGENG	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MODIKWE	MODIKWE	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
BETHANY	BETHANY	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
BARSEBA	BARSEBA	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
PAARDEKRAAL	PAARDEKRAAL	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
MERITING	MERITING	R 174	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49

TRAFFIC AND LICENSING | FUNERAL ESCORTS

ZONES	STATION	Approved Tariff	Proposed % Increase 2019/20	Proposed 2019/20	Proposed 2020/21	Proposed 2021/22
TLHABANE	RIETVLEI	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
BOITEKONG	RIETVLEI	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
MERITING	RIETVLEI	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
PAARDEKRAAL X1	RIETVLEI	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
PAARDEKRAAL X2	RIETVLEI	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
RUSTENBURG NORTH	RIETVLEI	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
EAST END	RIETVLEI	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
TLHABANE WEST	RIETVLEI	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
ZINNIVILLE	RIETVLEI	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
KARLIENPARK	RIETVLEI	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
CASHAN	RIETVLEI	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
KANANA	RIETVLEI	R 360	10%	R 396	R 435,21	R 478,73
LETHABONG	RIETVLEI	R 484	10%	R 532	R 585,53	R 644,08
GEELHOUTPARK	RIETVLEI	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
BOITEKONG X 19	RIETVLEI	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
SONDELA	RIETVLEI	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
BERALENG	RIETVLEI	R 360	10%	R 396	R 435,21	R 478,73
FREEDOM PARK	RIETVLEI	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429
PROTEA PARK	RIETVLEI	R 233	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,
RUSTENBURG CBD	RIETVLEI	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
PTA ROAD	RIETVLEI	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
JHB ROAD	RIETVLEI	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
RAMOCHANA	RIETVLEI	R 273	10%	R 301	R 330,70	R 363,77
SUNRISE	RIETVLEI	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
PHOKENG	RIETVLEI	R 273	10%	R 301	R 330,70	R 363,77
BLESKOP	RIETVLEI	R 360	10%	R 396	R 435,21	R 478,73
TLHABANE	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
BOITEKONG	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
MERITING	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
PAARDEKRAAL X1	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
PAARDEKRAAL X2	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
RUSTENBURG NORTH	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
EAST END	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
TLHABANE WEST	ZINNIAVILLE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
ZINNIVILLE	ZINNIAVILLE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
KARLIENPARK	ZINNIAVILLE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
CASHAN	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
KANANA	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
LETHABONG	ZINNIAVILLE	R 422	10%	R 465	R 511,09	R 562,19
GEELHOUTPARK	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
BOITEKONG X 19	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
SONDELA	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
BERALENG	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
FREEDOM PARK	ZINNIAVILLE	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
PROTEA PARK	ZINNIAVILLE	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
RUSTENBURG CBD	ZINNIAVILLE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
RAMOCHANA	ZINNIAVILLE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
SUNRISE	ZINNIAVILLE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
PHOKENG	ZINNIAVILLE	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
TLHABANE	KARLIEN PARK	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
BOITEKONG	KARLIEN PARK	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
MERITING	KARLIEN PARK	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
PAARDEKRAAL X1	KARLIEN PARK	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
PAARDEKRAAL X2	KARLIEN PARK	R 236	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
RUSTENBURG NORTH	KARLIEN PARK	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
EAST END	KARLIEN PARK	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56
TLHABANE WEST	KARLIEN PARK	R 199	10%	R 219	R 240,51	R 264,56

TRAFFIC AND LICENSING | FUNERAL ESCORTS

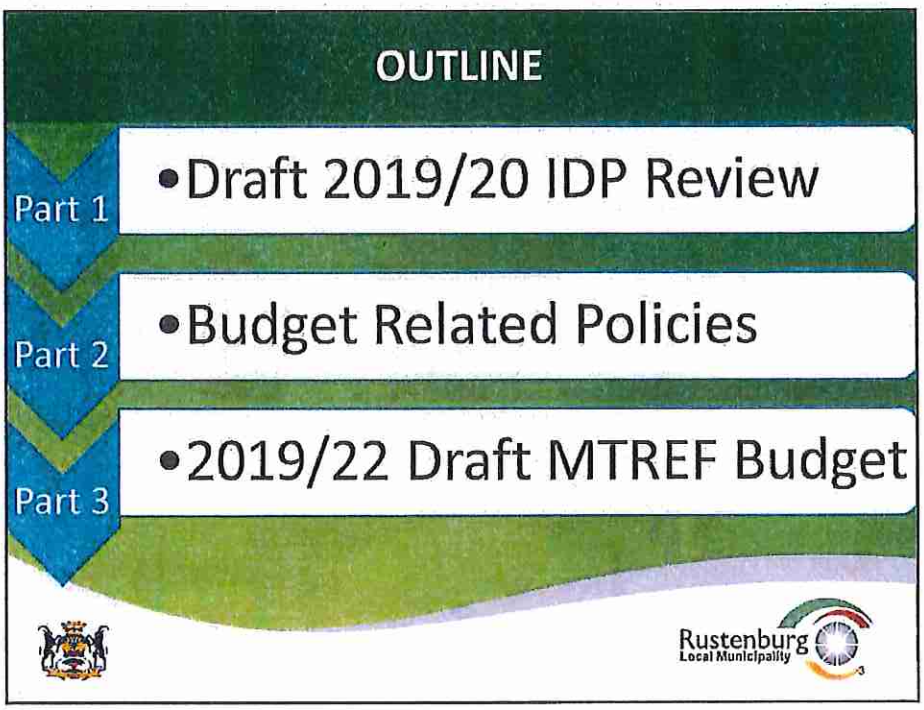
ZINNIVILLE	KARLIENPARK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
KARLIENPARK	KARLIENPARK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
CASHAN	KARLIENPARK	R 235	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
KANANA	KARLIENPARK	R 235	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
LETHABONG	KARLIENPARK	R 422	10%	R 465	R 511,09	R 562,19
GEELHOUTPARK	KARLIENPARK	R 196	10%	R 216	R 240,61	R 264,68
BOITEKONG X 13	KARLIENPARK	R 235	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
BONDELA	KARLIENPARK	R 196	10%	R 216	R 240,61	R 264,68
SERALENG	KARLIENPARK	R 196	10%	R 216	R 240,61	R 264,68
FREEDOM PARK	KARLIENPARK	R 235	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
PROTEA PARK	KARLIENPARK	R 196	10%	R 216	R 240,61	R 264,68
RUSTENBURG CBD	KARLIENPARK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
RAMOCHANA	KARLIENPARK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
SUNRISE	KARLIENPARK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
PHOKENG	KARLIENPARK	R 251	10%	R 276	R 303,77	R 334,04
TLHABANE	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
BOITEKONG	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
MERITING	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
PAARDEKRAAL X1	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
PAARDEKRAAL X2	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
RUSTENBURG NORTH	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
EAST END	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
TLHABANE WEST	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
ZINNIVILLE	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
KARLIENPARK	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
CASHAN	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
KANANA	TLHABANE	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
LETHABONG	TLHABANE	R 422	10%	R 465	R 511,09	R 562,19
GEELHOUTPARK	TLHABANE	R 196	10%	R 216	R 240,61	R 264,68
BOITEKONG X 13	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
BONDELA	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
SERALENG	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
FREEDOM PARK	TLHABANE	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
PROTEA PARK	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
RUSTENBURG CBD	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
RAMOCHANA	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
SUNRISE	TLHABANE	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
PHOKENG	TLHABANE	R 273	10%	R 301	R 330,70	R 363,77
[illegible]	DONKERHOEK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
[illegible]ONG	DONKERHOEK	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
[illegible]ING	DONKERHOEK	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
PAARDEKRAAL X1	DONKERHOEK	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
PAARDEKRAAL X2	DONKERHOEK	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
RUSTENBURG NORTH	DONKERHOEK	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
EAST END	DONKERHOEK	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
TLHABANE WEST	DONKERHOEK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
ZINNIVILLE	DONKERHOEK	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
KARLIENPARK	DONKERHOEK	R 211	10%	R 232	R 254,83	R 280,31
CASHAN	DONKERHOEK	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
KANANA	DONKERHOEK	R 360	10%	R 396	R 435,21	R 478,73
LETHABONG	DONKERHOEK	R 484	10%	R 532	R 585,53	R 644,08
GEELHOUTPARK	DONKERHOEK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
BOITEKONG X 13	DONKERHOEK	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
BONDELA	DONKERHOEK	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
SERALENG	DONKERHOEK	R 360	10%	R 396	R 435,21	R 478,73
FREEDOM PARK	DONKERHOEK	R 323	10%	R 355	R 390,83	R 429,91
PROTEA PARK	DONKERHOEK	R 235	10%	R 259	R 284,89	R 313,38
RUSTENBURG CBD	DONKERHOEK	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
PTA ROAD	DONKERHOEK	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
JHB ROAD	DONKERHOEK	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
RAMOCHANA	DONKERHOEK	R 273	10%	R 301	R 330,70	R 363,77
SUNRISE	DONKERHOEK	R 298	10%	R 328	R 360,77	R 396,84
PHOKENG	DONKERHOEK	R 273	10%	R 301	R 330,70	R 363,77
PAARDEKRAAL	KANANA	R 174	10%	R 191	R 210,45	R 231,49
MERITING	KANANA	198,77	10%	218,64	240,51	264,56
RUSTENBURG CBD	KANANA	359,68	10%	395,65	435,21	478,73
RUSTENBURG	TLASENG	422,38	10%	464,62	511,08	562,19
RUSTENBURG	LETHABONG	483,91	10%	532,30	585,53	644,08
RUSTENBURG	MOSENTHAL	422,38	10%	464,62	511,09	562,19
RUSTENBURG	RANKELENYANE	359,68	10%	395,65	435,21	478,73
RUSTENBURG	RISTOPRUIT	422,38	10%	464,62	511,09	562,19
RUSTENBURG	MARIE	422,38	10%	464,62	511,09	562,19
RUSTENBURG	PHOKENG	298,15	10%	327,97	360,77	396,84
RUSTENBURG	CHANENG	359,68	10%	395,65	435,21	478,73
RUSTENBURG	MAROKANA	422,38	10%	464,62	511,09	562,19
RUSTENBURG	N4	173,92	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
RUSTENBURG	PHATSIMA	422,38	10%	464,62	511,09	562,19
RUSTENBURG	LUKA	359,68	10%	395,65	435,21	478,73
RUSTENBURG	MAMEROTSE	483,91	10%	532,30	585,53	644,08
KANANA	KANANA	173,92	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
BOITEKONG	BOITEKONG	173,92	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
LETHABONG	LETHABONG	173,92	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
PHOKENG	PHOKENG	173,92	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
TLHABANE	PHOKENG	298,15	10%	327,97	360,77	396,84
TLHABANE	KANANA	323,00	10%	355,30	390,83	429,91
CHANENG	CHANENG	173,92	10%	191,32	210,45	231,49
ESCORT ORDINARY PER VEHICLE PLUS R4,50 PER KM		172,08	10%	189,30	208,23	229,05
HEAVY VEHICLE ESCORTS PER 2 VEHICLES PLUS R4,50 PER KM		1 732,14	10%	1 905,35	2 095,89	2 305,48
WEEK DAYS		214,49	10%	235,94	259,53	285,49
SATURDAYS		214,49	10%	235,94	259,53	285,49
SUNDAY / PUBLIC HOLIDAY		258,14	10%	283,95	312,35	343,58
FUNERALS AND BONE SPORTING EVENTS PER VEHICLE		172,08	10%	189,30	208,23	229,05
WEIGHBRIDGE FEES						
LIGHT MOTOR VEHICLE (UP TO 3500KG)		1 154,75	10%	1 270,24	1 397,28	1 536,99
HEAVY MOTOR VEHICLE (3501KG AND UP)		1 732,14	10%	1 905,35	2 095,89	2 305,48
LIGHT MOTOR VEHICLE PER KM (MIN R6,91 250d)		31,18	10%	34,29	37,72	41,50
HEAVY MOTOR VEHICLE (ADDITIONAL COST PER KM)		34,97	10%	38,41	42,25	46,47
STORAGE (MOTOR VEHICLE) PER DAY		503,80	10%	554,18	609,60	670,56
STORAGE (GOODS) ONCE OFF ON RELEASE		3 174,97	10%	3 492,46	3 841,71	4 225,83
Heavy motor vehicle from 18h00-10h00 per day		R 119	10%	130,90	143,43	157,77
Light motor vehicle from 18h00-10h00 per day		R 89	10%	97,70	107,67	118,33
Motor cycle from 18h00-10h00 per day		R 59	10%	65,20	71,72	78,89

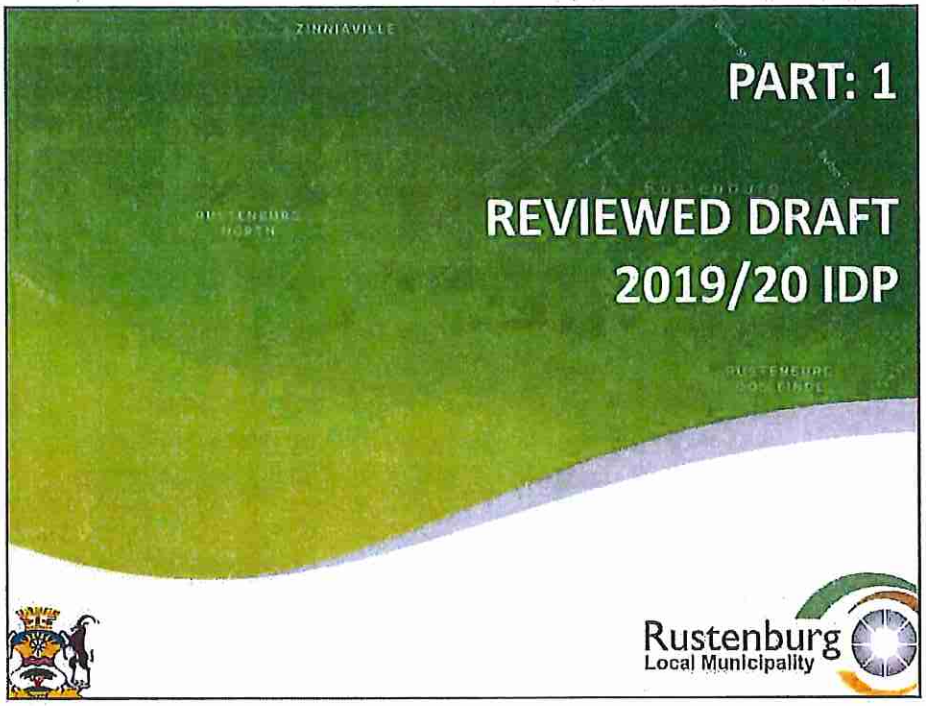
DOYZE media

Annexure B

PROGRAM

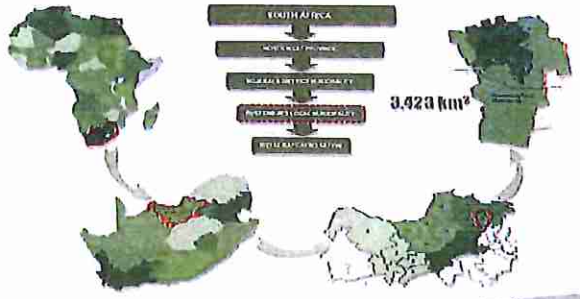
Item No	Activity	Responsibility
1.	Opening and Welcome	Chairperson
2.	Introductions	All
3.	Purpose of the Meeting	Executive Mayor
4.	Presentations	
4.1.	Draft IDP Review 2019/2020	Municipal Manager
4.2.	Draft MTREF 2019/2022	Municipal Manager
4.3.	Budget related Policies and Tariffs	Municipal Manager
5	Schedule of Public Participation	MMC IDP
6	Vote of Thanks	Speaker
7.	Closure	Chairperson


OUTLINE
Part 1
•Draft 2019/20 IDP Review
Part 2
•Budget Related Policies
Part 3
•2019/22 Draft MTREF Budget
Rustenburg
Local Municipality


PART: 1
REVIEWED DRAFT
2019/20 IDP
Rustenburg
Local Municipality

BACKGROUND: GEOGRAPHIC LOCATION...

Rustenburg's privileged position as a major platinum producer in the world has led to its rapid economic growth and urban expansion.
Located in the North-West Province, Rustenburg is currently one of the fastest growing cities in South Africa.



Rustenburg Local Municipality

BACKGROUND

Section 34 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, on Annual review and amendment of integrated development plan states:

A municipal council –

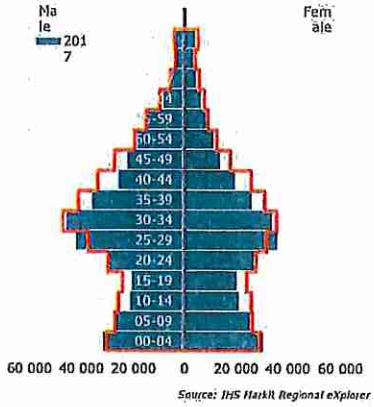
a) **Must** review its integrated development plan –
   (i) annually in accordance with an assessment of its performance measurements in terms of section 41; and
   (ii) to the extent that changing circumstances so demand; and

b) may amend its integrated development plan in accordance with a prescribed process.

Rustenburg Local Municipality

DEMOGRAPHICS

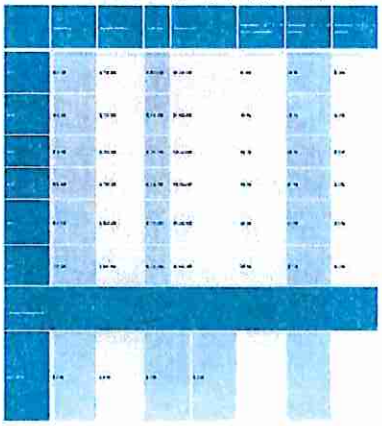
Population structure
Rustenburg, 2017 vs. 2022



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer

POPULATION PROJECTIONS - RUSTENBURG, BOJANALA PLATINUM, NORTH-WEST AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2017-2022 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

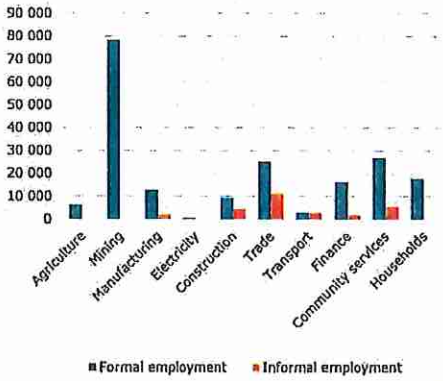
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479



7

BACKGROUND: EMPLOYMENT & ECONOMY

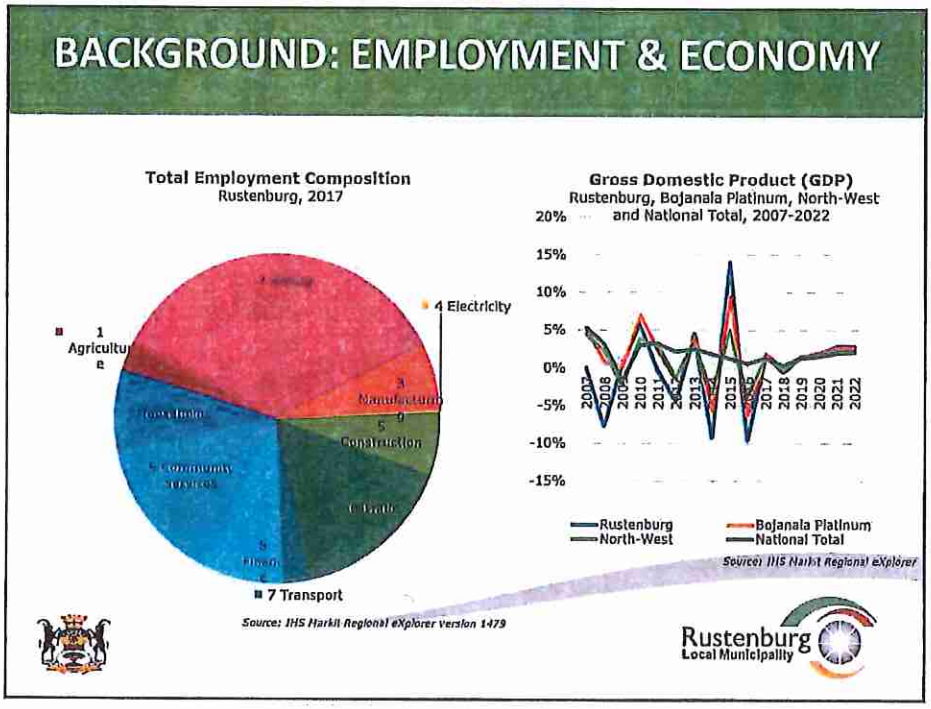
Formal and Informal employment by sector
Rustenburg, 2017



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479

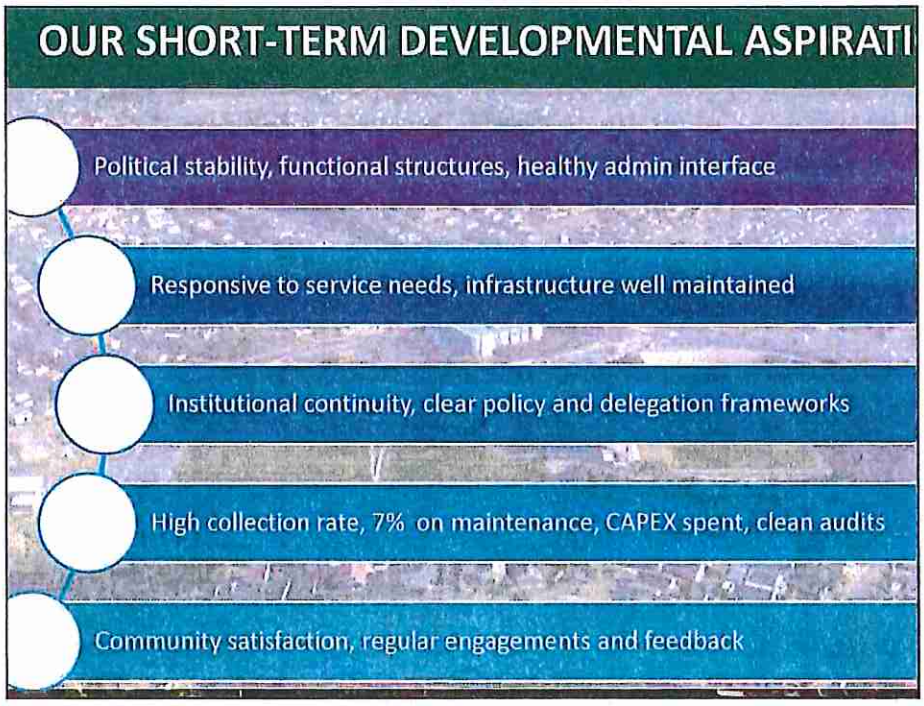
The number of formally employed people in Rustenburg Local Municipality counted 195 000 in 2017, which is about 87.70% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 27 400 or 12.30% of the total employment. Informal employment in Rustenburg increased from 21 800 in 2007 to an estimated 27 400 in 2017.

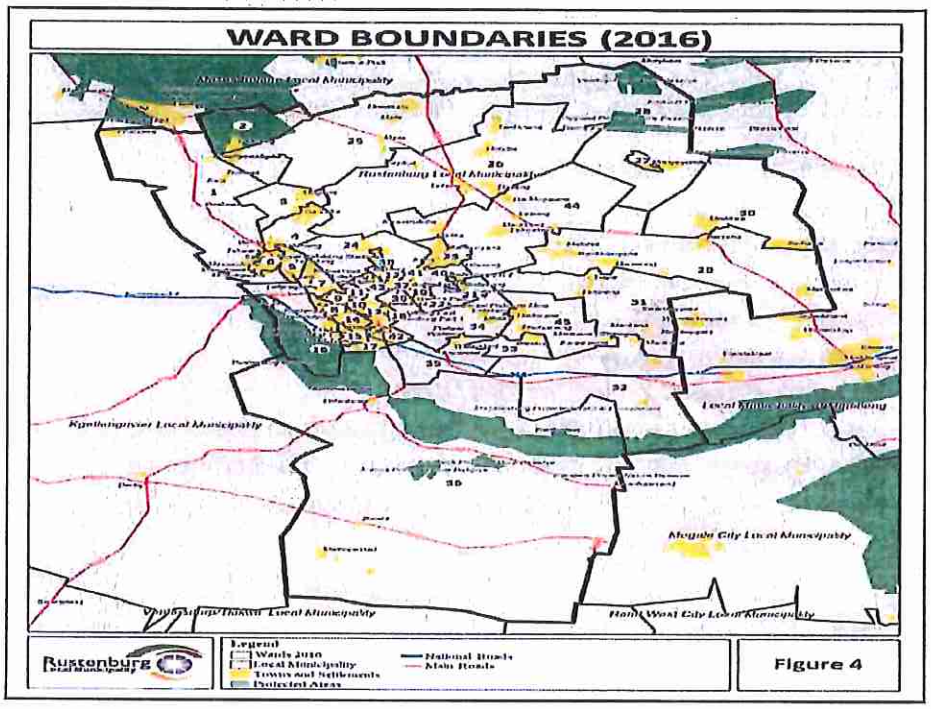
Rustenburg Local Municipality


BACKGROUND: EMPLOYMENT & ECONOMY
Total Employment Composition
Rustenburg, 2017
4 Electricity
1 Agricultu re
Manufacturin g
Construction
7 Transport
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1479
Gross Domestic Product (GDP)
Rustenburg, Bojanala Platinum, North-West and National Total, 2007-2022
20%
15%
10%
5%
0%
-5%
-10%
-15%
2007
2008
2009
2010
2011
2012
2013
2014
2015
2016
2017
2018
2019
2020
2021
2022
Rustenburg
North-West
Bojanala Platinum
National Total
Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer
Rustenburg
Local Municipality

Our Developmental Vision
VISION
A World Class City where all communities enjoys a high quality of Life and Diversity
MISSION
To continuously improve the quality of life, Economic Growth and Eradicate Poverty through best practice, sustainability and inclusive Governance.
VALUES:
Integrity & Transparency, Customer First, Accountable & Responsible and Speedy Execution
1 Efficient Provision of quality Basic Services and Infrastructure within a well-planned Spatial Structure
2 Drive diversified Economic growth and Job Creation
3 Ensure Municipal Financial Viability and Management
4 Maintain Clean, Green, Safe and Healthy Municipal Environment for all
5 Transform and maintain a vibrant and sustainable rural development
6 Uphold Good Governance and Public Participation Principles
7 Drive Optimal Institutional Development, Transformation and Capacity Building
STRATEGIC THRUSTS/ PRIORITIES
MUNICIPAL GOALS

Municipal Developmental Goals
• GOAL 1: AN ACCESSIBLE, CONNECTED CITY
• GOAL 2: AN ACTIVE, HEALTHY CITY
• GOAL 3: HABITABLE, CLEAN AND GREEN CITY
• GOAL 4: A FRIENDLY, SAFER CITY
• GOAL 5: A NEW POST MINING WORLD CITY
• GOAL 6: A SMART, PROSPEROUS CITY
• GOAL 7: A VIBRANT, CREATIVE AND INNOVATIVE CITY
• GOAL 9 A WELL-DESIGNED, SUBTROPICAL CITY
• GOAL 10: AN EFFICIENT, EFFECTIVE AND WELL-GOVERNED CITY
• GOAL 10: SUSTAINABLE LIVELIHOODS AND RESILIENT INFRASTRUCTURE
• GOAL 11: CITY OF SUSTAINABLE AND EFFICIENT RESOURCE MANAGEMENT
11
Rustenburg
Local Municipality


OUR SHORT-TERM DEVELOPMENTAL ASPIRATI
Political stability, functional structures, healthy admin interface
Responsive to service needs, infrastructure well maintained
Institutional continuity, clear policy and delegation frameworks
High collection rate, 7% on maintenance, CAPEX spent, clean audits
Community satisfaction, regular engagements and feedback



Translating community needs into projects

- Information is collected on the existing conditions within the municipality which are related to a particular Directorate. It focuses on the types of problems faced by people in the area and the causes of these problems.
- The identified problems are assessed and prioritised in terms of what is urgent and what needs to be done first.
- Information on availability of resources is also collected during this phase.
- At the end of this phase, the municipality will be able to provide:
  - An assessment of the existing level of development
  - Details on priority issues and problems and their causes and information on available resources.

14

Rustenburg Local Municipality

Translating community needs into projects

- During this phase the municipality works on the design and content of projects as informed by identified community needs.
- Clear details for each project has to be worked out in terms of:
  - Who is going to benefit from the project? Areas and ward
  - How much is it going to cost?
  - How is this project going to be funded?
  - How long would it take to complete?
  - Who is going to manage the project?
- Clear targets must be set and indicators worked out to measure performance as well as the impact of individual projects

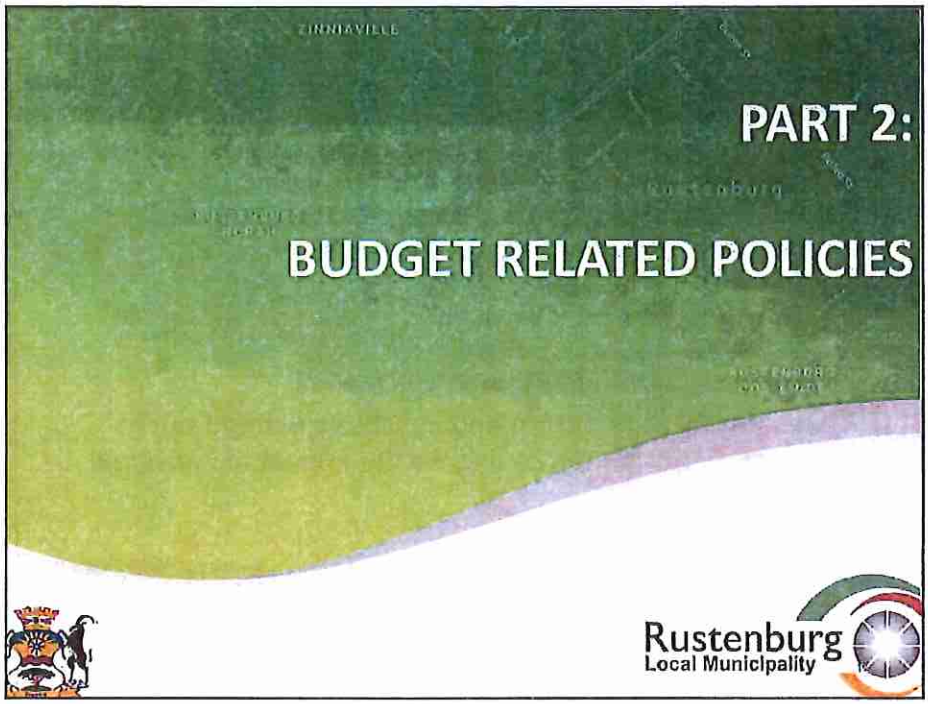
15

Rustenburg Local Municipality

INTERVENTION TO ADDRESS DEVELOPMENTAL NEEDS

- Once all projects have been identified, the municipality has to check again that they contribute to meeting the objectives outlined. These projects will provide an overall picture of the development plans.
- All the development plans must now be integrated. All the directorate must engage in a realignment sessions where they explore how their projects are interrelated. (Either based on their sector plans or from Community needs and Inter-dependencies)

Rustenburg Local Municipality



BUDGET RELATED POLICIES

BUDGET RELATED POLICIES WITH AMENDMENTS:

- Property rates
- Tariffs policy
- Fixed Assets Management Policy
- Supply Chain Management Policy

18

Rustenburg
Local Municipality

BUDGET RELATED POLICIES...

BUDGET RELATED POLICIES WITH NO AMENDMENTS:

- Cash Management and Investment Policy
- Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy
- Budget policy
- Indigent Policy
- Travelling and Subsistence
- Rewards, Gifts and Favour Policy
- Contract Management Policy
- Inventory Policy
- Borrowing Policy

19

Rustenburg Local Municipality

BUDGET RELATED POLICIES...

BUDGET RELATED POLICIES WITH NO AMENDMENTS:

- Funds and Reserves Policy
- Property rates By-Law
- Tariffs By-Law
- Credit Control and Debt Collection By-Law
- Commitment policy
- Unauthorized, Irregular and Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure policy

20

Rustenburg Local Municipality

MAIN POLICY AMENDMENTS/ POINTS TO CONSIDER ON POLICIES

Property rates policy:

- Rates clearance in line with Section 118 of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000)
- Definition of Rates Clearance Certificate
- Process of obtaining rates clearance certificate

21

Rustenburg Local Municipality

MAIN POLICY AMENDMENTS/ POINTS TO CONSIDER ON POLICIES...

Tariffs policy:

- Unit of Measure of tariff for sanitation charges.
- Accounts incorrectly billed: Correction will be applied in conjunction with the current by laws and in case where there is inconsistency, the by law will take precedence.

22

Rustenburg Local Municipality

MAIN POLICY AMENDMENTS/ POINTS TO CONSIDER ON POLICIES...

Fixed Assets Management Policy:

- This is a newly revised policy in order to align it to the requirements of Section 62 (1) (a) of MFMA. All section were reviewed.

23

Rustenburg Local Municipality

MAIN POLICY AMENDMENTS/ POINTS TO CONSIDER ON POLICIES...

Supply Chain Management Policy:

The following amendments/inclusions were effected on the SCM Policy:

- A process to appoint from a panel of service providers
- A section that speaks to support be given to community cooperatives in a form of development program
- Petty cash should be at R2000.00
- Reiterating the centralization of SCM processes
- Included the structure according to the MFMA

24

Rustenburg Local Municipality

BUDGET ASSUMPTIONS

The following are the key factors that have impact to the financial sustainability of the Municipality:

- Inflation outlook affecting the cost of living of households and thereby increases the vulnerability of paying municipal accounts
- Increase in cost of bulk services
- Salary increases
- The national downgrade by the rating agencies.
- National priority to speed up the implementation of radical socio-economic transformation policies

Rustenburg Local Municipality 25

BUDGET ASSUMPTIONS...

- CPI forecast is at 5.4% for both 2019/20 and 2020/21 financial years and 5.5% for 2021/22
- Interest rate forecasted at Prime + 1%
- Employee Related Cost of 7.2% for 2019/20, 5.4% for 2020/21 and 5.4% for 2021/22
- Remuneration of Councilors - Implementation as per the Gazette.
- Repairs and Maintenance as a percentage of operating expenditure for (2019/20 – 5.2% 2020/21 – 5.5% and 2021/22 – 5.5%)

Rustenburg Local Municipality

REVENUE OPTIMISATION
Free Basic Services Support

There are no changes to free basic service support

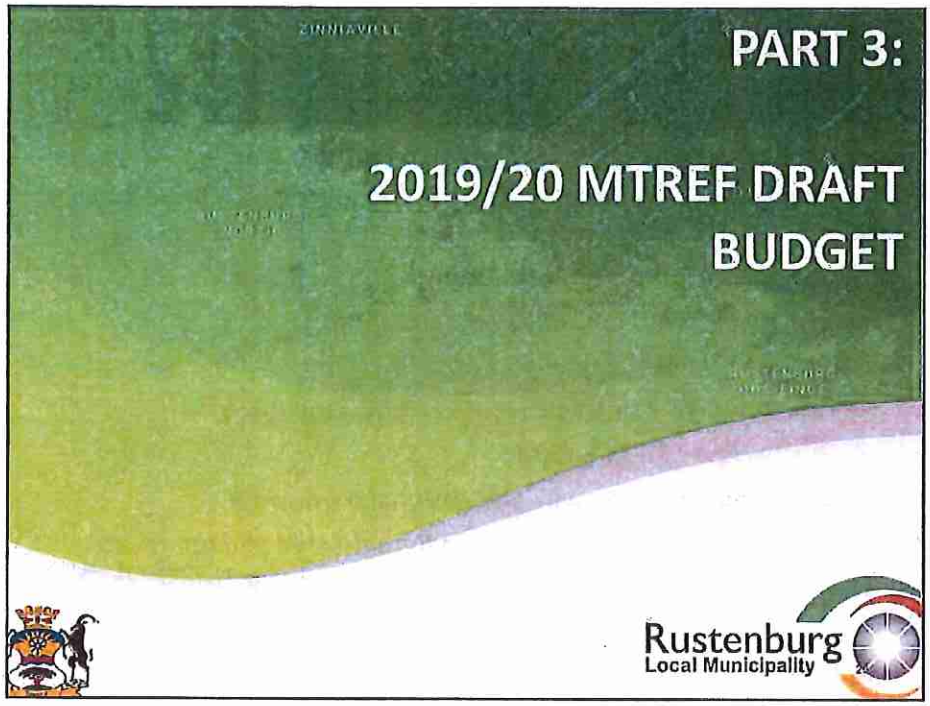
- Rustenburg Local Municipality offers the following Free Basic Services (FBS)
  - Water : 6Kl per household per month
  - Electricity : 50KWH per household per month
  - Sanitation : 100% subsidy
  - Refuse Removal : One free refuse removal per week
  - Property rates : 100% subsidy
- The above FBS are in line with the national framework.
- Free Basic Services are only provided to registered and approved indigents.
- Households with combined income equal or below R3 400 per month

Rustenburg Local Municipality

AVERAGE TARIFF INCREASES

SERVICE	Budget Year 2018/19	Budget Year 2019/20	Budget Year +1 2020/21	Budget Year +2 2021/22
Property rates	6,4%	6,5%	6,5%	6,5%
Water - Basic	11,6%	6,5%	6,7%	6,7%
Water - consumption	15,5%	12,2%	12,2%	12,2%
Electricity - Residential	6,0%	6,0%	6,0%	6,0%
Electricity - Commercial	2,3%	2,3%	2,3%	2,3%
Electricity - Government	0,0%	0,0%	0,0%	0,0%
Electricity - Agricultural	3,7%	3,8%	3,8%	3,8%
Electricity - Industrial	4,8%	4,3%	4,3%	4,3%
Electricity - Time of Use	5,4%	5,4%	5,4%	5,4%
Sanitation	15,0%	13,9%	6,7%	6,7%
Waste Removal	9,1%	9,1%	9,1%	9,1%

Rustenburg Local Municipality



DRAFT 2019/20 MTREF

Rustenburg Local Municipality is budgeting for a surplus before capital transfers and contributions of R301 million and R786 million after capital transfers and contributions which will be utilised towards funding the capital investment, funding the working capital of the municipality as well as towards building of reserves. There is positive increase in revenue of 5% and decrease in expenditure of 1%.

The table below sets out the Medium –Term Revenue and Expenditure Budget for the 2019/20 – 2021/22 financial years:

Description	Adjusted Budget	%	2019/20 Medium Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	2018/19	%	Budget year 2019/20	Budget year 2020/21	Budget year 2021/22
Total Revenue	4 830 995	5%	5 050 979	5 414 834	5 768 232
Total Expenditure	4 821 240	-1%	4 749 920	5 222 249	5 503 604
Surplus (Deficit)	9 755		301 059	192 584	264 628
Capital Transferes and contributions	535 082		485 172	485 667	514 082
Surplus/ (Deficit) – After Capital Transfers and contributions	545 837		788 231	678 251	778 710

30

Rustenburg
Local Municipality

OPERATING REVENUE

Table below table depicts revenue movement between 2018/19 adjusted and 2019/20, reflecting average increase of revenue.

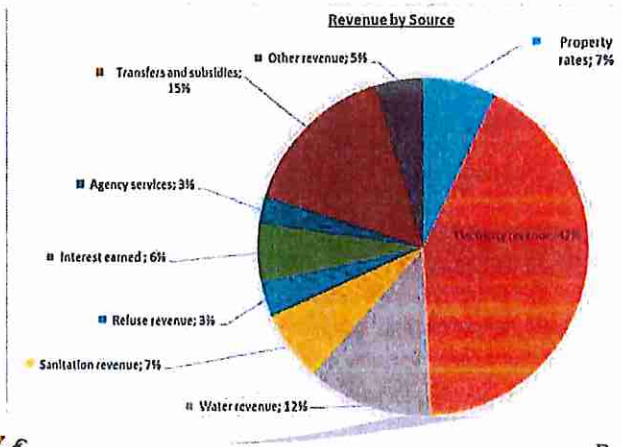
Description	Current Year 2018/19		2019/20 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework			
R thousand	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	% Increase	Tabled Budget Year 2019/20	Tabled Budget Year +1 2020/21	Tabled Budget Year +2 2021/22
Revenue By Source						
Property rates	340 075	340 075	6	362 089	381 172	401 679
Service charges - electricity revenue	1 976 697	1 976 697	7	2 105 675	2 215 125	2 335 900
Service charges - water revenue	581 946	571 946	8	619 817	652 481	687 585
Service charges - sanitation revenue	314 414	314 414	6	334 764	352 403	371 365
Service charges - refuse revenue	157 730	157 730	5	166 232	176 769	184 408
Rental of facilities and equipment	254	254	4 477	11 604	13 048	14 021
Interest earned - external investments	16 561	16 561	25	20 774	21 869	23 045
Interest earned - outstanding debtors	19 569	19 569	1 234	261 054	274 812	289 597
Dividends received	250 278	250 278	-100	–	–	–
Fines, penalties and forfeits	17 748	7 748	141	18 709	19 694	20 753
Licences and permits	9 653	9 653	6	10 213	10 751	11 330
Agency services	131 944	131 944	-1	131 249	138 165	145 599
Transfers and subsidies	703 274	837 371	-8	772 560	888 946	998 851
Other revenue	141 845	131 845	-50	65 763	69 229	72 954
Gains on disposal of PPE	117 080	64 690	164	170 477	200 368	211 147
Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)	4 779 287	4 830 995	5	5 050 979	5 414 834	5 768 232

Rustenburg Local Municipality

31

OPERATING REVENUE

A chart below indicates the revenue coverage of the municipality.



Rustenburg Local Municipality

32

OPERATING REVENUE

- The 2019/20 budget for property rates, electricity, water, sanitation and refuse represents approximately 72.0 % of the total budgeted revenue of R5.0 billion.
- The overall increase of 5% in anticipated revenue is mainly driven by an overall average 7% increase in tariffs across the different service offerings as well as anticipated disposal of non-strategic assets (R170 million).

33

Rustenburg Local Municipality

OPERATING EXPENDITURE

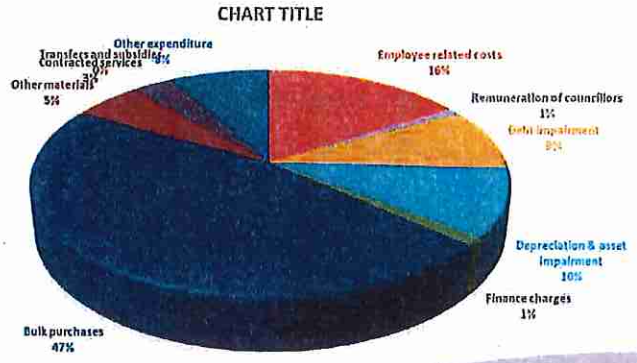
R thousand	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	% Increase	Tabled Budget Year 2019/20	Tabled Budget Year +1 2020/21	Tabled Budget Year +2 2021/22
Expenditure By Type						
Employee related costs	689 646	689 646	7.2	739 404	788 185	830 746
Remuneration of councillors	56 614	56 614	14.1	64 593	68 098	71 770
Debt impairment	539 436	539 436	27.6	390 638	495 770	522 541
Depreciation & asset impairment	446 984	446 984	0.4	448 974	470 144	495 532
Finance charges	100 026	43 413	47.1	63 877	66 645	70 243
Bulk purchases	2 008 835	2 008 835	7.2	2 153 163	2 325 278	2 450 843
Other materials	244 627	244 627	1.9	249 176	289 339	301 964
Contracted services	315 325	405 645	39.1	246 900	294 782	310 701
Transfers and subsidies	16 938	16 938	5.6	17 892	18 876	19 895
Other expenditure	354 102	369 102	1.7	375 304	405 132	426 363
Loss on disposal of PPE						
Total Expenditure	4 772 532	4 821 240	1.5	4 749 920	5 222 249	5 503 604

34

Rustenburg Local Municipality

OPERATING EXPENDITURE...

The chart below depicts the percentage of expenditure type contribution to the total expenditure:



35

Rustenburg Local Municipality

OPERATING EXPENDITURE ...

- The decrease of 1% in total expenditure is mainly driven by a reduction in contracted services (R158 million) as the municipality has procured its own yellow fleet it is expected that there will be a reduction in the hiring of plant, reduction in the waste contract as well as reduction in the water tanker contract as these will all be in-sourced. An additional reduction of R148 million in debt impairment resultant from an anticipated improved collection rate over the 2019/20 MTREF

36

Rustenburg Local Municipality

OPERATING EXPENDITURE ...

- Within the limited resources that are available, municipality aims to prioritise the maintenance of its current infrastructure.
- National Treasury norms, requires municipality to allocate a repairs and maintenance budget of 8% as a percentage of total PPE. For the 2019/20 financial year the budgeted repairs and maintenance amounts to only 2.4% of total PPE and 5.2% of total operating expenditure.
- This is inconsistent with the NT requirements. However, our allocations for the 2019/20 MTREF continues to place great emphasis and accompanying budget on the capital replacement projects (electrical infrastructure and A/C pipe replacement projects for water and sewer) to supplement the deficit of the repairs and maintenance budget.

37

Rustenburg Local Municipality

CAPITAL BUDGET

- Capital expenditure is funded through a mixture of grants, borrowings and internally generated funds.
- The proposed capital budget for the 2019/20 financial year is at R859 million. It is standing at R921 million and R791 million in the outer years.

Vote Description	2017/18	Current Year 2018/19	2019/20 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	Audited Outcome	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2019/20	Budget Year +1 2020/21	Budget Year +2 2021/22
Total Capital Expenditure	623 416	858 690	921 326	790 640	862 727
Funded by:					
National Government	578 922	532 317	484 272	484 767	513 182
Provincial Government	566	3 766	900	900	900
Transfers recognised - capital	579 488	536 082	485 172	485 667	514 082
Borrowing		79 000	60 000	60 000	64 200
Internally generated funds	43 928	243 607	376 154	244 973	284 445
Total Capital Funding	623 416	858 690	921 326	790 640	862 727

38

Rustenburg Local Municipality

CAPITAL BUDGET

- Capital expenditure is funded through a mixture of grants, borrowings and internally generated funds.
- Below is the breakdown of Capital Grant funding for the past three year and MTREF period

Description	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
R thousand	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2019/20	Budget Year +1 2020/21	Budget Year +2 2021/22
Capital Grant	530 606	526 209	509 694	485 172	485 667	514 082
Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)	169 603	193 471	223 230	220 252	241 777	261 369
Public Transport and Systems	345 354	246 815	212 560	137 610	110 150	110 107
Neighbourhood Development Partnership	–	–	–	15 000	8 000	10 000
Department of Energy	–	–	10 038	15 410	32 000	33 760
Water Infrastructure Grant	15 131	65 000	–	–	–	–
WSIG	–	17 257	60 000	68 000	92 840	97 946
SATA	518	3 684	3 766	900	900	900
Borrowing	68 311		79 000	60 000	60 000	64 200
Internally generated funds	49 222	43 928	243 607	376 164	244 973	284 445
Total Capital Funding	648 139	570 136	832 201	921 336	790 640	862 727

Rustenburg Local Municipality

39

CAPITAL BUDGET

- Capital expenditure funding for the past 3 years and MTREF is represented below, reflecting a significant decline in grant funding with relative increase from own source of funding..

Description	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
Funding	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2019/20	Budget Year +1 2020/21	Budget Year +2 2021/22
Capital Grant	82%	92%	61%	53%	61%	60%
Borrowing	10%	0%	10%	6%	8%	7%
Internally generated funds	8%	8%	29%	41%	31%	33%
Total Capital Funding	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

Rustenburg Local Municipality

40

CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

Capital Expenditure breakdown

The four highest vote expenses are:

- Infrastructure and Technical Services – R601,4 million
- Rustenburg Rapid Transport – R137,9 million
- Roads and Transport- R61,7 million
- Community Development – R54,5 million

41

Rustenburg Local Municipality

CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

Key projects for 2019/20 period are;

- Rustenburg Rapid Transport Project – R137 million
- Water conservation and demand management – R37 million
- Bulk Water Pipeline Bospoort – R39 million
- Upgrading & Extension Of The Bospoort Water Treatment Plant – R38 million
- Smart city prepaid meter – R50 million
- Funding of yellow fleet - R200 million

42

Rustenburg Local Municipality

THANK YOU
Rustenburg
Local Municipality

CLOSE OUT REPORT ON 2019/20 IDP/BUDGET PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

WARD	CONSULTATION DATE	TIME	VENUE	ACTIVITY	PARTICIPANTS	PRESENTING DIRECTOR DEPLOYED MMC AND WARD COUNCILLOR	SUPPORT PERSONNEL	CHALLENGES AND/OR ISSUES RAISED
ALL	16/04/2019	10:00	Old Town Hall	IDP Representative Forum	Ward Committees and Ward Councilors	IDP BTO MMC IDP MMC BTO	G Moopelwa V Mdhluli B Dikutle L Magale C Mosiane G Modipane	**Ward 3** 1. Streetlights not working **Ward 6** 1. Seven days too short for submission of inputs. 2. Public participation be taken seriously. 3. Replacement of asbestos roofs. 4. Waste management – garden refuse not collected 5. Water: Replacement of pipes will not improve the quality of water. **Ward 7** 1. Monitoring implementation of projects. Projects implemented without knowledge of ward committees and ward councillors. 2. Communication gap between Ward Councillor and Committees. 3. Follow ups on submissions be made.

								4. Is the IDP being budgeted for or timeframe of IDP. 5. Increase of transport costs. **Ward 8** 1. Tlhabane west – inaccurate bills 2. Community hall with dysfunctional toilets. 3. Housing project stopped last year – need clarification. **Ward11** 1. Consultation on projects implemented 2. Information not disseminated to wards. **Ward12** 1. River Side - Sewer leakages flowing into stream. Stench causing health hazard. **Ward 16** 1. No ward meetings held. 2. Installation of prepaid water meters – request. **Ward 22** 1. Allow other ward members to attend the Rep Forum. 2. Readiness with regard to migration – is plan available. 3. Population statistics not correct. 4. No schedule of public participation meetings given to ward committee members. 5. Sewer blockages. **Ward 26** 1. Tantanana to be listed in the ward.

ALL	16/04/2019	14:00	8th Floor chamber	Multi-stakeholder's Consultation Meeting	Government Department, mining houses, business and other major stakeholders: 58	IDP BTO MMC IDP MMC LED (Acting Executive Mayor)	G Moopelwa V Mdhluli B Dikutle L Magale C Mosiane G Modipane	**Issues Raised:** 1. Meeting not advertised. **2.** Budget not on website. **3.** 2017 Audit outcome not yet available. 4. Key values: transparency. 5. PAIA applications not attended to by MM & EM. 6. 7% on maintenance: (norm is 8%) 7. Free basic services: 262 000 household below minimum service. 8. 264m for not spent 9. Increase 5.4 %, 6.4 property rates. 10. Valuation roll: value dropped: increase in property rates. 11. Transnet pensioners. 12. 14% increase in Councillor remuneration.
All	17/04/2019	10:00	8th Floor Chamber	Stakeholder Consultation	NGOs, CBO's, Disability, Women and the Elderly	IDP BTO	G Moopelwa V Mdhluli G Modipane	Stakeholders stopped the meeting after signing the attendance register because the Mayor was not present. They demanded the attendance register as the meeting failed.
36	23/04/2019	09H00	Cyferbult	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD – Ms N Rampete MMC BTO – B Lekoro Cllr P Tsienyane	B Dikutle V Mdhluli P Ramesega	1. Thankful for water and electricity. 2. RDP Houses construction (100 houses delivered) 3. Cemetery development 4. High mast lights 5. High crime rate 6. High unemployment rate

								7. Waste depot / waste disposal site needed. 8. No learnerships (Since 1999).
36	23/04/2019	12H00	Molote City	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD – Ms N Rampete MMC BTO – B Lekoro Cllr P Tsienyane	B. Dikutle V Mdhuli P Ramesega	1. Are their villages still relevant in the NW Province. 2. Document not bettering the village: summary 3. Water – leaking pipes (2 years) no truck to transport 2. TLB - They buy water coupon. Reported to the municipality but no response. The past w councillors did not deliver any of the needs. 4.. Hall maintained by the municipality - Roof and toilets not done. 5.. Water tank gauge not working. 6. Development only in Mathopestad (one- sided) 7. RDP houses built belongs to the trust not the municipality. 8. Request RDP to be constructed for the community. 9. Road Maintenance – tarring of access roads 10. No street lights (High Mast lights) 11. Job creations – high unemployment rate 12. Sanitation 13. Free basis services – the indigents should register 14. No delivery / indigent community / false hopes

								15. Indigents registration to be done in the hall on an agreed date. 16. Co-operations 17. VIP Toilets
36	23/04/2019	14H30	Dinnie Estates	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS	Name: G. Moopelwa	1. Growing unemployment 2. Can't government divert economy through agriculture. 3. Parent without an ID need assistance.
35	23/04/2019	10H00	Ikemeleng sports ground	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS – M Halenyane	Name: G. Moopelwa	The community disrupted the meeting due to the absence of the Ward Councillor and the MMC or Executive Mayor. The meeting could not be held.
31	24/04/2019	10H00	Shakhina Church RDP	Public consultation	Community Members	DPS – Mr. K Boikanyo BTO -Mr. T Letlojane MMC Mhlungu MMC Kgaladi	Name: L. Magale 11 Officials	1. Skills Development in the area. 2. Provision of basic services, water, electricity, sanitation, etc. 3. Bridge between Mmaditlhokwa and Lapologang be constructed for safety of children.
32	24/04/2019	15H00	Marikana Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DRT – Mr K Boikanyo MMC Molubi Cllr Phillip	L. Magale – IDP 7 Officials	1. Land availability for housing 2. No electricity in the area. 3. No running water in the area. 4. Clarity on ownership of Marikana West houses - are they falling under Lonmin or Municipality 5. Budget must be presented per ward. 6. Houses be built for community earning more than R3500.00 (not flats). 7. A need for a Technical College for technical and engineering courses. 8. Youth Development a necessity.

								9. All residents be present at the community meetings. 10. 24 hours operating clinic requested, 11. A 3-year budget be presented. 12. The community to fall under the Mine (Lonmin) as the municipality is not helping them. 13. Foreigners occupying more than 6 stands – who is selling the land to foreigners? 14. What is the Municipality doing as Lonmin is taking care of waste removal? 15. Community not will to pay for rates and taxes because the municipality is doing nothing for them. 16. Adult Basic Education and Training needed.
33	24/04/2019	10H00	Nkaneng Sport ground	Public consultation	Community Members	BTO – Mr. G Ditsele MMC – None Cllr - None	IDP : C. Mosiane 8 Officials	1. Apollo lights donated by the mines not constructed. 2. Growing/escalating unemployment. 3. When will water projects be implemented. 4. The IDP meetings are useless for us because there are no results. 5. Request that the Executive Mayor attend public participation meetings. 6. Request land formalisation. 7. RDP houses needed. 8. Electrification

34	24/04/2019	15H00	Bokamoso stop sign	Public consultation	Community Members	DPS – Mr. K Boikanyo MMC Mhlungu MMC Kombe MMC Kgaladi Cllr Gegula	IDP – G Moopelwa	1. Community Development Budget of R54,5 million, what will it be used for? 2. Leaking water meters. 3. Usage of local businesses for maintenance. 1. No school in the area 2. No clinic 3. Cracked houses 4. Services bills very high. **Mfidikwe** 1. Maintenance of high mast lights. 2. Community hall. 3. Constructed road without stormwater drainage. **Bokamoso** 1. Leaking water pipes. 2. Slow response period by public safety. 3. Housing project be fast-tracked (4000) 4. Incomplete housing project creating a problem. People invading space left illegally. 5. People having multiple houses. 6. Cemetery – using Zakhele grave yard illegally. 7. Cleaning of ground open spaces. 8. Sanitation project not progressing. 9. Community hall requested. 10. Unemployment

45	24/04/2019	16H00	Photsaneng old primary school	Public consultation	Community Members	DCSS – Mr A Pholose Ms Y Roboji MMC Makhaula	IDP: C. Mosiane 10 Officials	1. Mines are providing services only in/at informal settlements 2. Houses are only built at Bokamoso and not other areas. 3. Free electricity needed. 4. Proper RDP Houses. 5. SASSA pay point 6. Home Affairs services. 7. Waste Collection; waste is only collected at paved and tarred roads. 8. Apollo Lights 9. Youth Activities: No Sports facilities. 10. Escalating unemployment. 11. Local youth are on contract basis while outsiders are permanently employed. 12. Police Station 13. Introduction of agriculture projects - youth to be engaged. 14. The Councillor to consider the aged community members and start engaging them in meetings. 15. Grass cutting and trees required 16. Malfunctioning street lights to be repaired. **FINANCE** 1. Clarify to community, who qualifies for indigent registration.

								2. Clarity on FLISP to those earning more than 10 000 requested.
29	26/04/2019	10H00	Rankelenyana Sassa paypoint	Public consultation	Community Members	DRT – Mr. O Moleele MMC Molubi Clr Mafoko	B Dikutle - IDP 9 Officials	1. High unemployment rate. 2. What is the criteria used for job opportunities at RLM? Application forms are not given to the community. 3. House 112 – reported water leak but not attended to. Photo to be sent to ward councillor. 4. No delivery at Rankelenyane since 2013. 5. The Speaker and Executive Mayor should attend community meetings. 6. Sanitation subsidy does not apply as the community is using – VIP toilets. 7. Refused removal not done at some streets (DCD). 8. Road projects – what is the status quo. 9. Incomplete RDP Houses (20 special houses constructed and 80 outstanding still outstanding).
30	26/04/2019	10H00	Bethanie Tribal hall	Public consultation	Community Members	LED- Mr T Sehloho MMC – None Clr Monageng	IDP : G Moopelwa 4 Officias	The meeting did not take place as there were only 4 community members.
44	26/04/2019	14H00	Lesung community hall	Public consultation	Community Members	LED – Mr E Komane MMC Molubi	IDP - G. Moopelwa 10 officials	The meeting did not take place as there were few community members.
22	26/04/2019	16H00	Sunrise Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD – Ms. Nelly Rampete MMC N Babe	DCD: D Mafisa 9 Officials	**Issues Raised**

						Cllr Pelesi		- Reconstruction of the burnt infrastructure i.e. Clinic and Community.
23	26/04/2019	10H00	Makukama SASSA paypoint	Public consultation	Community members	DPS – Mr K Boikanyo MMC Makhaula MMC Mhlungu	IDP : L Magale 8 officials	**Challenges:** - Apollo lights not working. - Bospoort dam to be cleaned. - Dysfunctional robot to be fixed after RRT roads project. - Paved roads needed. - RDP Houses requested. - Electricity poles falling.
25	29/04/2019	16H00	Monakato Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members	BTO – Mr T Letlojane Clr Tlhapi		The meeting did not take place as there were few community members.
26	29/04/2019	10H00	Mamerotse Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DCSS – Mr. A Pholose Ms Y Roboji MMC Mashishi-Ntsime	IDP: G.Moopelwa 11 Officials	**MAMEROTSE** 1. Construction of Clinic. 2. Upgrading/construction of internal roads. 3. RDP Houses needed. 4. No water supply. 5. Telecommunication / network. 6. Job opportunities to be created. **TANTANANA** 1. Allocation of stands to unmarried youth. 2. RDP Houses needed. **TLASENG** 1. Community Hall requested. 2. No stormwater drainage on constructed roads. **TSITSING** 1.High mast lights needed.

								2.Community Hall needed. 3.Indigent registration for those earning less than R3400 per month. 4.Sanitation system required. 5.Clinic to be built. **ENTIRE WARD** 1. Youth Development Programmes to be developed. 2. Poverty alleviation programmes needed. 3. Indigent registration 4. Police station be centralised.
27	29/04/2019	14H00	B Tause hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DTIS – Mr. O Masilo MMC N Babe	IDP: G Modipane 10 Officials	1. High mast lights needed. 2. Rapid growth/escalating unemployment. 3. The bridge that was on 2017/18 budget was not constructed. 4. Time frames are demanded for projects stipulated for Ward 27. 5. RDP Houses are built on wrong places. 6. Establish committee to take care of community's projects and report back. 7. Water pipes bursting cause water wastage. 8. Storms during heavy rains - houses and furniture damages. 9. Show houses for RDP houses are demanded to do away with size confusions. 10. Maintenance of the B Tause Hall.
28	29/04/2019	16H00	Rethusegile High school	Public Consultation	Community Members	DRT – O Moleele	4 Officials	1. Residents complained about Water Contractor not having a

						MMC Mhlungu MMC Babe		site office and requested the municipality to intervene. 2. A complaint of pothole and lack of stops signs was noted. 3. The municipality not reporting the previous issues raised on the previous public participation sessions. 4. The residents requested the municipality to have a budget for their ward.
40	29/04/2019	16H00	Ext 23 Paardekral hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DPS – Mr K Boikanyo Clr Damoyi	3 Officials	1. Removal of illegal occupants of the land by Public Safety in December was not well received. 2. There is nothing forthcoming from public participations. Cllrs come and go without making any impact in the community. 3. Road Infrastructure was submitted for Ward 23 but no development yet. 4. Storm water contract in the Ward not completed. The contractor did not complete the work and rather left holes

								which are a mess during rainy seasons. 5. Indigent Registration office at the Municipality. Community raised issues that Municipality registers people as indigent but later cut their services. 6. Anglo Mine donated land to Municipality and Ext 23 community would like to be considered as well in the development of land. 7. The issue of the smart meters to be fast tracked and local people to be employed to do the work. 8. The community feels the Municipality only come to them during election time and when they have pass certain things after that they do not see them anymore. 9. A previous budget of R1 billion which was to accommodate Ext 16 but they have not yielded from it. 10. Community members also raised that the services

								received are skewed. The Cllr is focusing on other areas and Ext 23 is neglected. 11. There are two heaps along the main road which are a hazard because they narrow the road. 12. The issue of only youth being considered for jobs is also a concern for those above the age of 35 as they also need to survive. 13. The Cllr is working closely with ward committee but not with the Policing Forum which is wrong.
14; 15; 16; 17; 18; 42	29/04/2019	18H00	Rustenburg old town hall	Public consultation	Community Members	BTO – Mr G Ditsele Mr E Komane MMC Kgaladi Clr du Plessis Mr O Masilo Clr Minny Clr Malan	IDP: B. Dikutle 5 officials	1. Replacement of water pipes; still not done (5 Contracts) 2. Completion date of RRT and what the grant was used for. 3. Audit report not yet received from AG. 4. Load shedding -substation (Waterkloof) not completed. (National Load shedding) 5. Budget not ward-based 6. Submitted written inputs of this meeting to appear on the budget. 7. Budget is not credible.

								8. 2017/18 audit report; audited outcome (misleading councillors and residents). 9. Old figures of 2017/18 – 12 October 2018 AFS not tabled in Council. 10. PTNG was used for RRT -. Item tabled on the 26 October 2018. 11. R1 billion should be in the bank on 30 June 2018. All contractors not paid. Project at stand still. Stations guarded but not functional. 12. Property rates and services Pg. 1245 variance of 40.69%. 13. Employee costs 7%. 14. 128% increase in councillors' salaries 15. Table A6; Budgeted outcome – community have no confidence in the municipality. 16. RWST – R9.7 Billion - AFS signed discloses R8billion assets are not R300 million. 17. Budget not tabled before Finance Portfolio Committee. 18. Revenue enhancement is meaningless. 19. Section 72 report: Executive Mayor custodian of the budget – to be redone. 20. Capital expenditure: Three (4) highest votes (error to be corrected to be (3)).

								21. R18m – Cooperative develop / youth development not accounted for. 22. Roll- over monies not necessary – disciplinary actions be taken against officials who do not spend. 23. Co-operatives not registered. 24. EPWP – have been employed for a long time. 25. 2016 – deadline for RRT – where is the roll-over budget.
19	30/04/2019 **The meeting was rescheduled for the 02 May 2019**	16H00	Boikagong primary school Paardekraal Car Wash	Public consultation	Community Members	DTIS – Mr O Masilo Clr Chabalala		1. Provision of stands/land for housing. 2. Construction and upgrading of roads 3. High mast lights needed. 4. Indigent registration for those earning less than R3400 per month. 5. Provision of electricity to stop illegal connections. 6. Continuous water supply. 7. Stormwater drainage required 8. Completion of parks. 9. Erection/construction of speed humps.
20	30/04/2019	16H00	Next to library Boitekong	Public consultation	Community Members (85)	DCD: Mr. M Moalusi MMC V Makhaula	IDP – G Moopelwa Officials 6	10. Cemetery – does it belong to the entire Boitekong or Ward 20 only. 2. Clarity on why the library is operating for 5 days

								3. Request date when the cemetery will start functioning. 4. Linkage between water and electricity (When water account is not paid, electricity is disconnected). 5. Youth unemployment is high. 7. Municipality not employing Boitekong youth. 8. Establishment of development forum for the Ward (BuFora). 9. 24-hour Clinic service 10. That the debts owed by the community be written off. 11. Electricity that was cut due to debts be reinstated. 12. Nearby wine not employing the community 13. Title deeds
21	30/04/2019	10H00	Joe ground	Public consultation	Community Members	DPHS- Ms M Halenyane MMC Mashishi-Ntsime	Ms G Moopelwa	1. No delivery for the ward. 2. 24-hour clinic service & medical supply. 3. Park be constructed/developed. 4. Police station – be relocated to be closer to the people. 5. Petrol station be constructed. 6. Land / new stands provision, 7. Primary school be provided. 8. Shopping complex be provided. 9. Change of ownership of stands and RDP houses is a challenge. 10. People who registered as applicants for RDP houses and were approved but houses not allocated, have a challenge of

								re-registering as they are regarded as beneficiaries. 11. High unemployment rate. 12. Allocation of a site for disability centre 13. Title deeds for RDP house owners. 14. Littering caused by non-collection of garden waste.
12	30/04/2019	16H00	Meriting community hall	Public consultation	Community Members	RRT – Mr. O Moleele MMC Molubi Cllr J Ngwako	Name: B. Dikutle 5 Officials	1. Youth development – no sport activities. 2. Air pollution: stench caused by river causing health hazards. 3. Painting of roads 4. Breakdown of budget per and indicate who is responsible for the project. 5. No housing allocation for ward 12. 6. Housing: not enough water to supply houses. 7. Clinic required next to community hall at Ext 2. 8. Request title deeds for Ext 2. 9. Appointment letter for roads projects be signed. 10. Be specific on commencement date of projects.
39	30/04/2019	16H00	Ramochana Sports Ground	Public consultation	Community Members	BTO : Mr I Mashao MMC Mhlungu, MMC Kgaladi Councillor: J Wolf	16 Officials DCD, DPHS, DPS, BTO, DTIS and OSP	1. Clinic- Community is using Boitekong Clinic which does not operate 24hrs. 2. Community Hall- Currently using the School Hall for Community meetings. 3. RDP houses needed.

24	02/05/2019	14H00	Living by faith Church	Public consultation	Community Members	DCD – Ms D Rampete MMC – None Cllr Motlhamme	Ms G Moopelwa Ms D Mafisa Officials 15	1. Development of Parks, the municipality wants 10 people per cooperative in each ward to assist with activities such as converting Illegal dumping spots to smaller community managed Parks. 2. For the roads and storm water project the ward community should be considered for employment. 3. The exact projects (location) for the budget allocated for Roads and Storm Water as R500 000 budgeted for 2019/20 seems like a small budget. Is it just a maintenance budget? 4. How will the municipality monitor the impact of these cooperatives? 5. What support will be provided for the cooperatives (PPE, working equipment etc.)
38	02/05/2019	15H00	Freedom park taxi rank	Public consultation	Community Members	DRT – Mr. F Ntlhamu MMC Molubi Cllr Jikeka	IDP: G Moopelwa 8 Officials	1. Formalization of the land where shack dwellers are situated next to the taxi rank. 2. 24Hour operating clinic. 3. They require that advertisement for SMMEs should be distributed in the entire ward, and that the 30% allocation should be thoroughly explained to them by LED directorate.

								4. Require acknowledgement of cooperatives and NPO/NGO.
41	02/05/2019	15H00	Seraleng Community office	Public consultation	Community Members	DTIS: Mr. O Mosoane MMC J Mashishi-Ntsime Cllr Xhinela	B Dikutle T Ntabanyane	1. High Mast light were installed with a shortage of four (4). 2. High mast lights required in Bosfontein. 3. Community Hall needed. 4. Library needed. 5. Development of sports field. 6. Police station needed. 7. Speed humps in the main road. 8. Internal roads construction or upgrading.
43	02/05/2019	17H00	Seraleng Ext 5 grounds	Public consultation	Community Members	LED- Mr. T Sehloho MMC – None Clr Megalanyane	B Dikutle – IDP V Mdhluli – BTO K Matsemela – DCD K Genge – LED	1. Funding for SMME's. 2. High unemployment rate. 3. Dumping site closed. 4. Electrification project – local people to be considered. 5. Brick Wall that was on the budget not delivered. 6. Projects to be managed. 7. Houses were built but contractors not introduced to the community. 8. Only 1 main hole in the areas. 9. Require stormwater drainage. 10. Substandard RDP houses constructed.
37	02/05/2019	15H00	Bana Pele Primary School	Public consultation	Community Members	DCSS – Mr A Pholose Ms Y Roboji MMC Xatasi	6 Officials	1. Sewer pipe breaks leading to overflowing sewerage. 2. Regular electricity cuts and the response time of the municipality is very long. 3. Rampant electricity cable theft. 4. Unstable water supply resulting in longer periods without water.

								5. Need for speed humps on the roads due to high accident rate. 6. General feeling that Sondela is not prioritised for service delivery. 7. Sondela service delivery needs not prioritised. 8. The service at the local clinic is poor due to the low nurse to patient ratio. People stand in queues for hours and return home without being attended to. 9. No solid waste removal from ward 37 as a result there is waste littered on the streets resulting in an environmental and health hazard. 10. There is a need for a police station as the Boitekong Police Station is not servicing them. There is a sense of being discriminated against by the Boitekong Police Station officers. 11. No youth development and skills development programmes rolled out in the ward. 12. High unemployment rate and a sense of being overlooked when job opportunities arise. 13. Bana Pele Primary School pupils are vulnerable on the roads as there is no scholar patrol for the school. Therefore, there is a need for scholar patrol services to be provided.

								14. Need for a well-resourced day care centre as the current one is in an environmentally hazardous area, therefore posing a health risk to the kids. 15. Lack of support to the co-operatives by RLM. 16. Need for indigent registration for the ssssselderly and child-headed families.
01	03/05/2019	10h00	Phatsima Community Hall	Public consultation	Community Members (77)	IDP – Ms G Moopelwa Mr. T Sehloho Cllr M Malla	10 Officials	1. Fencing of cemetery
02	03/05/2019	14H00	Robega community hall	Public consultation	Community Members	DCSS – Mr. A Pholose Ms Y Roboji MMC Lekoro		1. Need for paving of internal roads in Robega 2. Incomplete internal roads construction resulting in rubble dumps and waste dumps 3. RDP houses not electrified. Eskom transfers DB box from the shack to the newly built RDP house at a cost though most of the residents are pensioners. 4. Need for maintenance of electrical infrastructure. 5. Need for RDP houses for the elderly and child-headed families. 6. Need for indigent registration for the elderly and child-headed families. 7. Need for the refurbishment of the community hall in Robega

								8. Need for the construction of a community hall in Chaneng. 9. High youth unemployment rate.
03 & 04	03/05/2019	15H30	Luka clinic	Public consultation	Community Members (28)	DTIS – O Masilo MMC Mhlungu Cllr Rantho Cllr Sephai	12 Officials	1. Stand- Registration for RDP's 2. High mast Lights installation.
05 & 06	03/05/2019	16H00	Saron Primary School	Public consultation	Community Members	LED – N Mantswe MMC Kgaladi Clr Njikelane Clr Masilo	4 Officials	1. Needs raised in the previous consultation were not distributed to the community members. These were needed for community to make comparisons between the needs expressed and those delivered. 2. Amounts of the budget were not clear (small print) and not broken down in detail, for ward members to understand how the spending was allocated to their ward. 3. RLM not delivering for wards 5 and 6. 4. Agriculture: where is the land for agricultural projects in the masterplan. 5. Masosobane needs the sports ground to be revamped. 6. Needs local business development 7. Supply chain to prioritise local businesses and local contractors, not out of town contractors 8. High mast lights needed.

								9. Houses are dilapidated – RDP housing needed. 10. Scholar transport for children in Phokeng needed. 11. Primary school needed in the area 12. Agriculture projects – what has been done in this issue. 13. RDP housing needed. **Ward 6 Issues:** 1. RDP houses needed. 2. De-bushing in the Bafokeng High School area to reduce crime 3. Ward committee not doing its work to inform community. 4. RBA not doing its work. 5. High mast lights needed. 6. Education: especially ABET and vocational training for skills development. 7. Policing – 24 hours 8. Clinic: people queue at 02:00 and are informed later that the doctor is not available. 9. Communication between RLM and RBA on RDPs in Phokeng failed since 2006. 10. De-bushing required administrative channels to be followed by RLM and RBA councillors before it can be done. 11. Investigation into the electrical skills development project for

								youth which has ended without any benefit for the trained youth. 12. High mast lights 13. Subcontracting 14. Appointment of CLO in the community. The meeting ended without closing after 19:00 due to an argument about the appointment of CLOs in local projects.
09; 10; 11; 13	03/05/2019	17h00	Tlhabane community hall	Public consultation	Community Members (70)	BTO -Mr. G Ditsele MMC Wolmarans Cllr F Moatshe Cllr K Mokotedi Cllr L Mokwele LED – Mr. E Komane	IDP – B Dikutle 8 Officials	1. The community to be afforded enough chance to participate in amendment of policies. 2. Budget assumptions to be informed by economic outlook. 3. Sanitation – walls were broken during AC replacement. 4. SCM policy for sub-contracting to be relaxed 5. Criteria used for local SMMEs budget spread. 6. Criteria to appoint local companies. 7. Writing off of prescribed debts for the elderly and the deceased. 8. Stormwater drainage 9. Budget for smart meters to be spread per ward. 10. The elderly to be informed on their water bills. 11. Apollo lights be installed at Dr Moroka and Lebone Street (upper) adjacent Bojanala Bus Services

								12. Not benefitting from Eskom free electricity. 13. High grading – how does the municipality assist SMMES to qualify. 14. No budget for Ward 11 15. Breakdown of maintenance budget for rehabilitation of infrastructure. 16. Contracts are given to outsiders (other provinces) 17. RRT road dirty since 2013, what is the completion date. 18. Youth employment.
08	03/05/2019	17h00	Tlhabane west primary	Public Consultation	Community Members	DCD- N Rampete Clr Nkgoang	DCD: D Mafisa 7 Officials	1. What IDP stand for even before the presentation starts. 2. Magalieswater not user friendly therefore why increase tariffs? Randwater had drinkable water and the municipality must make means of providing clean water. 3. Where to get information on learnerships? 4. What is the municipality's Gross Domestic Product (GDP) and Earning Before Interest, Taxes. Depreciation and Amortization (EBITDA). 5. Why charge for basic and usage. 6. Cooperatives bought documents but to date they have not been appointed or called to briefing session.

								7. More information on the project at mall BP garage in Tlhabane, when will it be finished. Also, the mall project next to the gold club, when will it start who is intends for job creation. 8. Cllr requested to call community meetings to cascade information. 9. With the sourcing of new fleet, will there be new job opportunities, or will these be for existing employees? 10. RRT is on the RLM budget but it is a grant. 11. Hoping the newly built fleet will assist in debushing and grass cutting as there are several rape and murder incidents in the tall grass. 12. Appreciate the process that have started with the development of the Recreational centre and University in Rustenburg. 13. Electricity and water charges remain the same even when people are not home for a month. 14. SCM policy need to be amended to ensure that the 30-day payment is done and that SMMEs should buy tender document at a lower fee.

								15. Start date of SMART meter project and its benefits. 16.. What is being done about illegal connections in other areas of the municipality as these are affecting the ward. 17. When pathways are paved, paving installed by households is removed and not redone. 18. Proposal for total free water for the elderly.
07	03/05/2019	16h00	Elshadai hall	Public Consultation	Community Members (28)	DRT – Mr. F Ntlhamu Clr Mokgatle MMC Mashishi-Ntsime	12 Officials	1. The community wants the implementation of new roads & stormwater projects across the ward. 2. The community want the installation of high masts 3. They want a walkway provision 4. They require a clinic. 5. The want the cleaning of the existing VIP toilets 6. They want maintenance of roads and stormwater drainage. 7. They want a commitment from the Mines regarding the SLPs 8. They require that advertisement for SMMEs should be distributed in the entire ward, and that the 30% allocation should be thoroughly be explained to them by LED Department.

								9. Require the acknowledgement of corporative and NPO/NGO

Batshegi Dikutle

From: Colleen Mmutle <CMmutle@nwpg.gov.za>
Sent: Friday, 10 May 2019 15:33
To: Batshegi Dikutle
Subject: Re: MEC Comments on Draft IDP 2019/20 Review - RLM

Importance: High

Greetings Madam

We have aggreed with Office of the Premier that we will have session with sector departments before 25 May and send comments
>>> Batshegi Dikutle <bdikutle@rustenburg.gov.za> 2019/05/10 3:05 PM >>>
Dear Madam

As discussed telephonically, please send us the MEC comments.

Regards

Batshegi Dikutle
Acting Manager Strategy and Planning
Rustenburg Local Municipality
0145903263
0761684506

Disclaimer